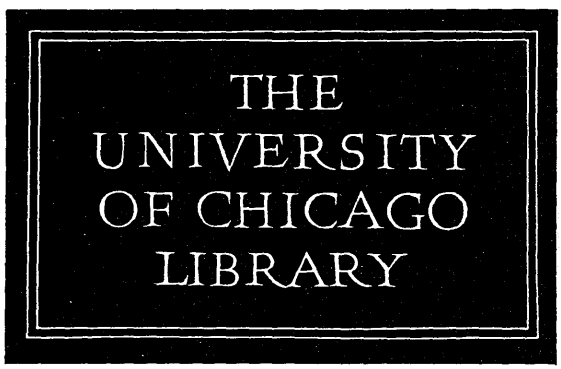

THE
UNIVERSITY
OF CHICAGO
LIBRARY

MACMILLAN'S LATIN SERIES

EDITED BY

JOHN COPELAND KIRTLAND

Professor of Latin in The Phillips Exeter Academy

MACMILLAN'S LATIN SERIES

CORNELIUS NEPOS: TWENTY LIVES. Edited by J. E. BARSS, Hotchkiss School. 90 cents.

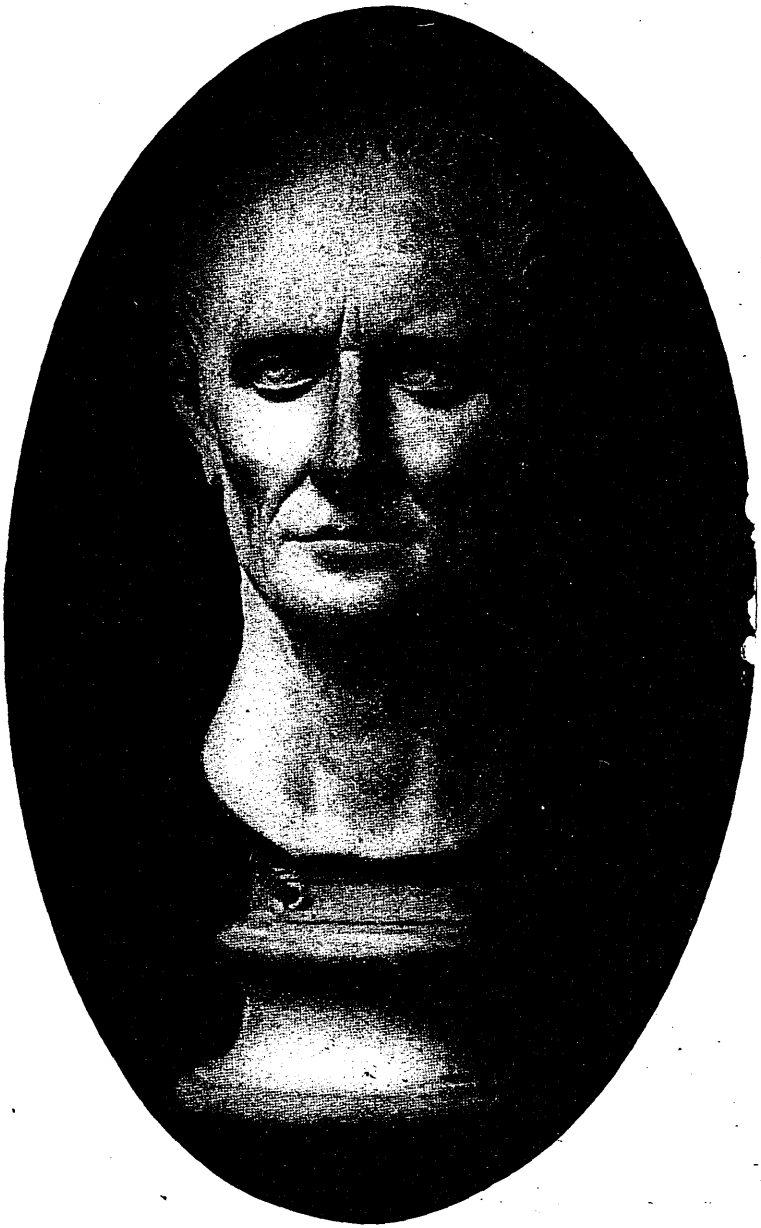
THE POEMS OF OVID: SELECTIONS. Edited by C. W. BAIN, South Carolina College. $1.10.

MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO: TEN ORATIONS, WITH THE LETTERS TO HIS WIFE. Edited by R. A. von MINCKWITZ, De Witt Clinton High School, New York City. $1.25.

CAESAR: THE GALLIC WAR, BOOKS I–VII. Edited by A. L. HODGES, Wadleigh High School, New York City.

VERGIL: THE AENEID. Edited by D. O. S. LOWELL, Roxbury Latin School, and C. W. GLEASON, Volkmann School, Boston.

SALLUST: THE CATILINE. Edited by J. C. KIRTLAND, Phillips Exeter Academy.



GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

(From the bust in the British Museum, London)

Macmillan's Latin Series

CAESAR

THE GALLIC WAR

BOOKS I–VII

EDITED BY

ARCHIBALD LIVINGSTON HODGES

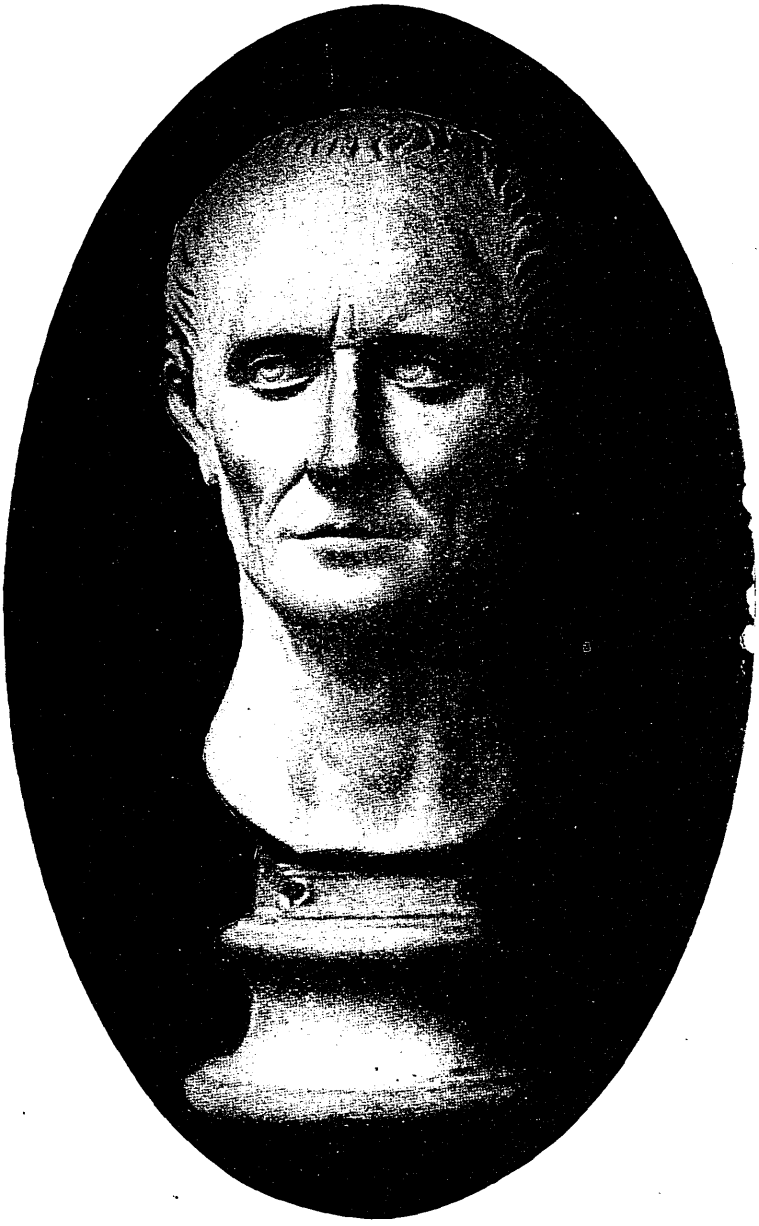
INSTRUCTOR IN LATIN IN THE WADLEIGH HIGH SCHOOL, NEW YORK CITY

New York

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1909

All rights reserved



GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

(From the bust in the British Museum, London)

Macmillan's Latin Series

CAESAR

THE GALLIC WAR

BOOKS I–VII

EDITED BY

ARCHIBALD LIVINGSTON HODGES

INSTRUCTOR IN LATIN IN THE WADLEIGH HIGH SCHOOL, NEW YORK CITY

New York

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1909

All rights reserved

PA6235
.H68
1909

Copyright, 1909,
By THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.

Set up and electrotyped. Published September, 1909.

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

312517

PREFACE

In spite of the attempts which have been made to find a substitute, most students of Latin still read Caesar, and read him as their first Latin author. In the opinion of many teachers there are good reasons why this should be so. Caesar's style is direct, even if not particularly simple; his story is interesting in itself, and especially interesting when put in its proper setting and made a part of the larger story of the development of Rome and of Europe; his vocabulary is pure, concrete, and not excessively copious; last but not least, he furnishes an admirable drill-book for training in syntax, that is to say in linguistic logic. To help the student avail himself as fully as possible of the advantages which the study of Caesar offers is the purpose of this book.

The text is, in the main, Meusel's. It varies from his somewhat in the treatment of assimilation in compounds (Hale and Buck's grammar has been followed here) and in the spelling of certain words. Furthermore, some passages regarded by Meusel as probably spurious have been retained, not to do too great violence to the traditional text. But aside from these variations this text differs from Meusel's in not more than three or four places.

In the marking of hidden quantities Bennett's *Latin Language* has been followed in almost all cases, but the vowel before *gn* in *dignus* and its derivatives has

been marked. Vowels standing before *i*-consonant have been marked, because there is no simple way of indicating the diphthongal sound which appears to have existed there, and because it was believed that a more nearly correct pronunciation would be secured by marking them than by leaving them unmarked. For the quantity of vowels in Celtic names Holder has been the authority chiefly used.

The notes on Book II have been made full and complete in themselves, that those teachers who so desire may begin with that book. The notes contain, of necessity, much grammatical explanation and many references to the grammars; but both notes and introduction aim to furnish material which may lead the student to appreciate the narrative as a piece of historical literature, important in itself and in its bearings. In the treatment of topography and military operations Holmes's great works have been constantly consulted, as well as earlier authorities on the same subjects. A portion of the text has been edited for sight-reading, with brief foot-notes.

Walde's *Lateinisches Etymologisches Wörterbuch* has been of great assistance in the preparation of the word-groups. These are not exhaustive, but are intended to assist the student in gaining a knowledge of Latin words. To further the same end, the words chosen by Professor Gonzalez Lodge as the ones to be learned by the time the student finishes the reading of Caesar have been marked with an asterisk in the vocabulary. I am greatly indebted to Professor Lodge for permission to use the list contained in his *Vocabulary of High School Latin.* The meanings of a few Celtic proper

names have been given, but only the more important ones, or those that seemed to invite comparison with roots appearing in Latin words.

The campaign-maps are on the same scale as the general map of Gaul, being, in fact, portions of the latter, with necessary additions. All modern names have been rigorously excluded from maps and battle-plans, in the belief that they tend only to confuse the young student. To compensate for this omission, a modern map has been added. This does not profess to be a complete map of the territory included in it, but is practically a copy of the ancient map, showing modern instead of ancient names, and generally only names mentioned in the introduction, notes, and vocabulary. It is hoped that it will enable the student to orient himself as he reads, and gain an appreciation of the fact that Gaul was the country which is now France.

So many people have helped me, either by actual assistance rendered or by encouragement, that it is impossible to mention them all by name. But I must acknowledge the kindness of Mr. St. George Stock in allowing me to make use of the material contained in the introduction to his edition of Caesar; of Professor Charles E. Bennett, who provided me with proof-sheets of his *Latin Language* in advance of its publication; of the officials of the Astor, Columbia, and Harvard libraries; of the late Mr. Richard A. von Minckwitz of the De Witt Clinton High School, Miss Anna Pearl MacVay of the Wadleigh High School, and Mr. William F. Abbot of the Worcester Classical High School, in reading and criticising the introduction; especially of Miss Caroline P. Townsend of the Worces-

ter Classical High School, whose counsel and assistance have been freely placed at my disposal in the preparation of all parts of the work. Lastly, it is a pleasure to acknowledge my deep obligations to the editor-in-chief of this series, Professor John C. Kirtland, to whose accurate scholarship and cordial coöperation a great part of whatever merit the book may possess is due.

ARCHIBALD L. HODGES.

NEW YORK CITY,
July 20, 1909.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

PAGE

GALLIC WARS BEFORE 58 B.C. 1

THE LIFE OF CAESAR 8

CAESAR'S FIELD OF MILITARY OPERATIONS . . . 21

ROMAN MILITARY ORGANIZATION IN CAESAR'S TIME . 31

BOOKS FOR REFERENCE AND READING 52

TEXT

BOOK I. *The Geography of Gaul* 55

The Helvetian War 55

The Campaign against Ariovistus . . 72

BOOK II. *The War with the Belgae* 90

BOOK III. *Trouble in the Alps* 109

The Campaign against the Veneti and Other Maritime Tribes 112

The Campaign in Aquitania . . . 119

A Short Campaign against the Morini and Menapii 122

BOOK IV. *The War against the Usipetes and Tencteri, and Caesar's Passage of the Rhine* . . 124

Caesar's First Expedition to Britain . . 134

BOOK V. *Caesar's Second Expedition to Britain* . . 145

Uprisings in Northern Gaul . . . 156

BOOK VI. *Operations in Northern Gaul and the Second Passage of the Rhine* 174

Gaul and Germany Described and Compared 179

SIGHT-READING

PAGE

BOOK VI. *The War upon Ambiorix and the Eburones* 187

BOOK VII. *A General Uprising of Gaul* . . . 199

NOTES 255

WORD-GROUPS 403

VOCABULARY 419

MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS

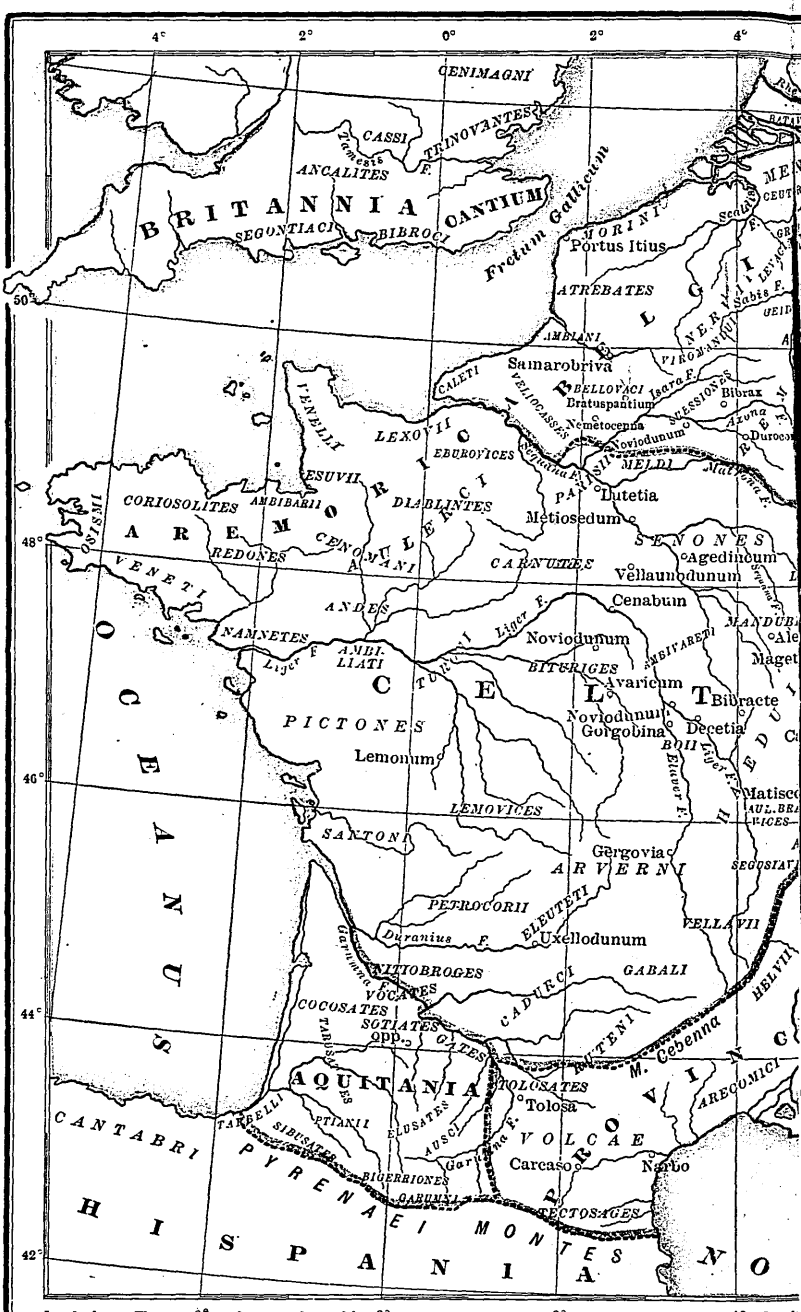
GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR		*Frontispiece*
		PAGE
MAP OF GAUL (*colored*)	*Before*	1
MODERN MAP (*colored*)	*Before*	21
A COIN OF CAESAR		21
A GALLIC CHIEF		22
GALLIC HOUSES		25
A GALLIC SOLDIER		26
CAESAR AS *IMPERATOR*	*Facing*	32
PILA		35
GLADIUS AND *VAGINA*		36
CASSIS		37
VEXILLUM		39
CORNU		39
TUBA		39
LITUUS		39
TABERNACULA		41
CASTRA		42
TRIPLEX ACIES		44
ARRANGEMENT OF A COHORT		44
VINEA		47
PLUTEI		47
TURRIS		48
ARIES AND *TESTUDO*		49
FALX		50

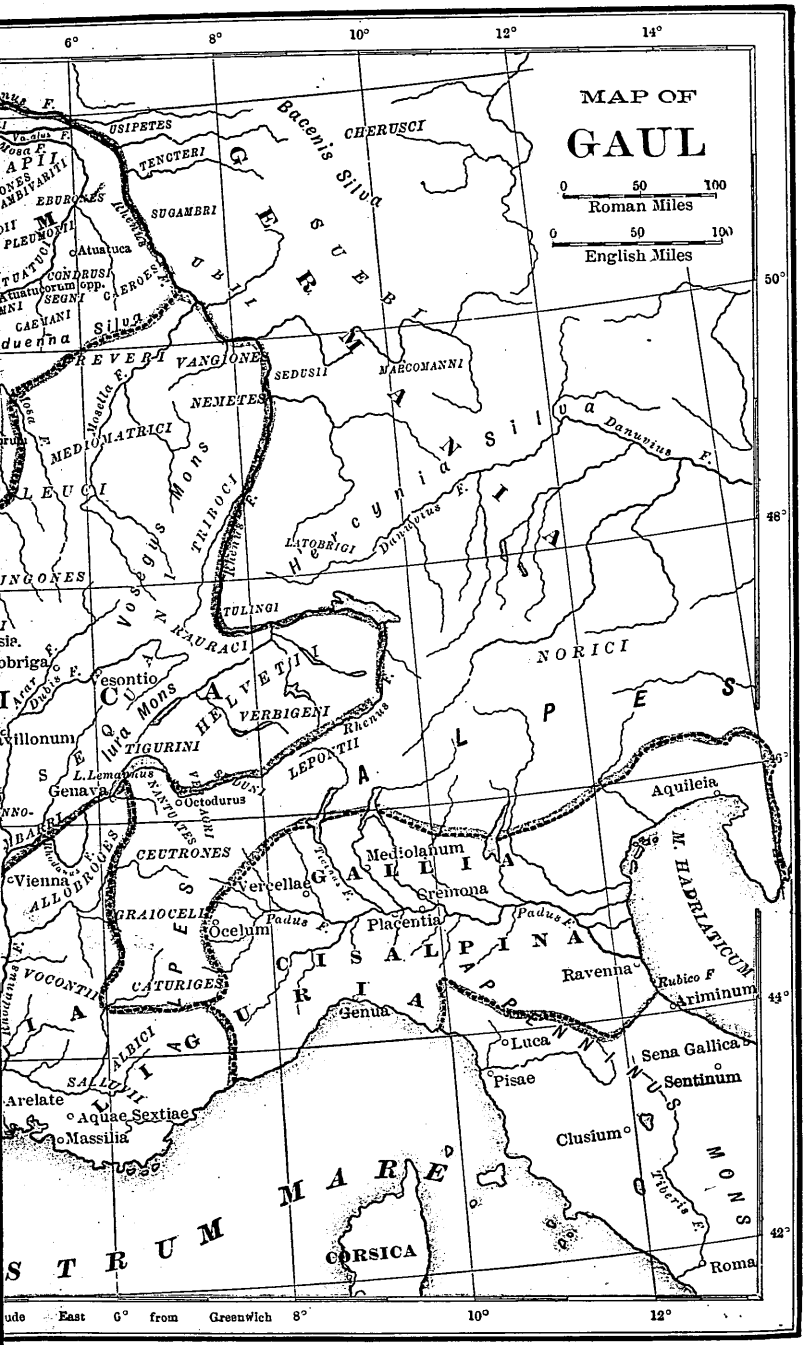
PAGE

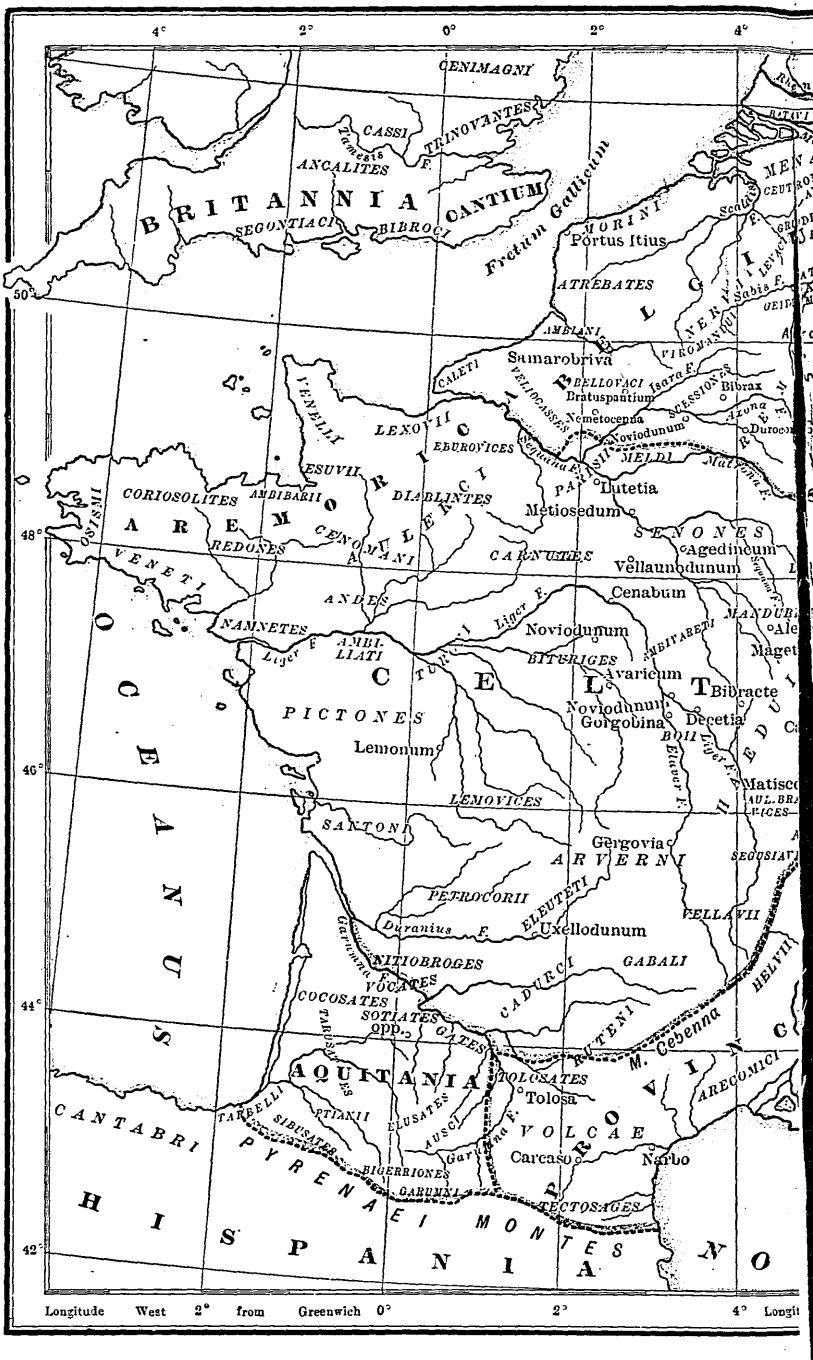
CATAPULTA 50
BALLISTA 50
PROW OF BIREME 51
STERN OF TRIREME 51
THE CAMPAIGN OF 58 B.C. (*colored*) . . . *Facing* 55
COINS OF ORGETORIX AND DUMNORIX 56
CARRUS 58
CAESAR'S INTRENCHMENTS ALONG THE RHONE (*colored*) . 59
A ROMAN CAVALRYMAN 63
THE DEFEAT OF THE HELVETII (*colored*) 70
PLAN OF VESONTIO 77
A ROMAN LEGIONARY 81
THE DEFEAT OF ARIOVISTUS (*colored*) 87
THE CAMPAIGN OF 57 B.C. (*colored*) . . . *Facing* 91
TESTUDO 93
SAGITTARIUS 93
THE BATTLE ON THE AXONA (*colored*) 95
SOLDIERS BUILDING AN *AGGER* 97
ROMAN SOLDIERS ON THE MARCH 99
THE BATTLE ON THE SABIS (*colored*) 102
CASTELLUM AND SIGNAL-TOWER 107
A BATTLE 111
SOLDIERS BURNING A BARBARIAN VILLAGE . . . 123
A HORSE WITH *EPHIPPIUM* 125
CAESAR'S BRIDGE OVER THE RHINE 132
ROMAN SOLDIERS CROSSING A BRIDGE 133
ROMAN SHIPS 136
AQUILIFER 138
A ROMAN COIN SHOWING AN *ESSEDUM* 142
THE CAMPAIGN OF 54 B.C. (*colored*) . . . *Facing* 145
BRITAIN ACCORDING TO CAESAR'S DESCRIPTION . . . 152
TRAGULA AND *AMENTUM* 168

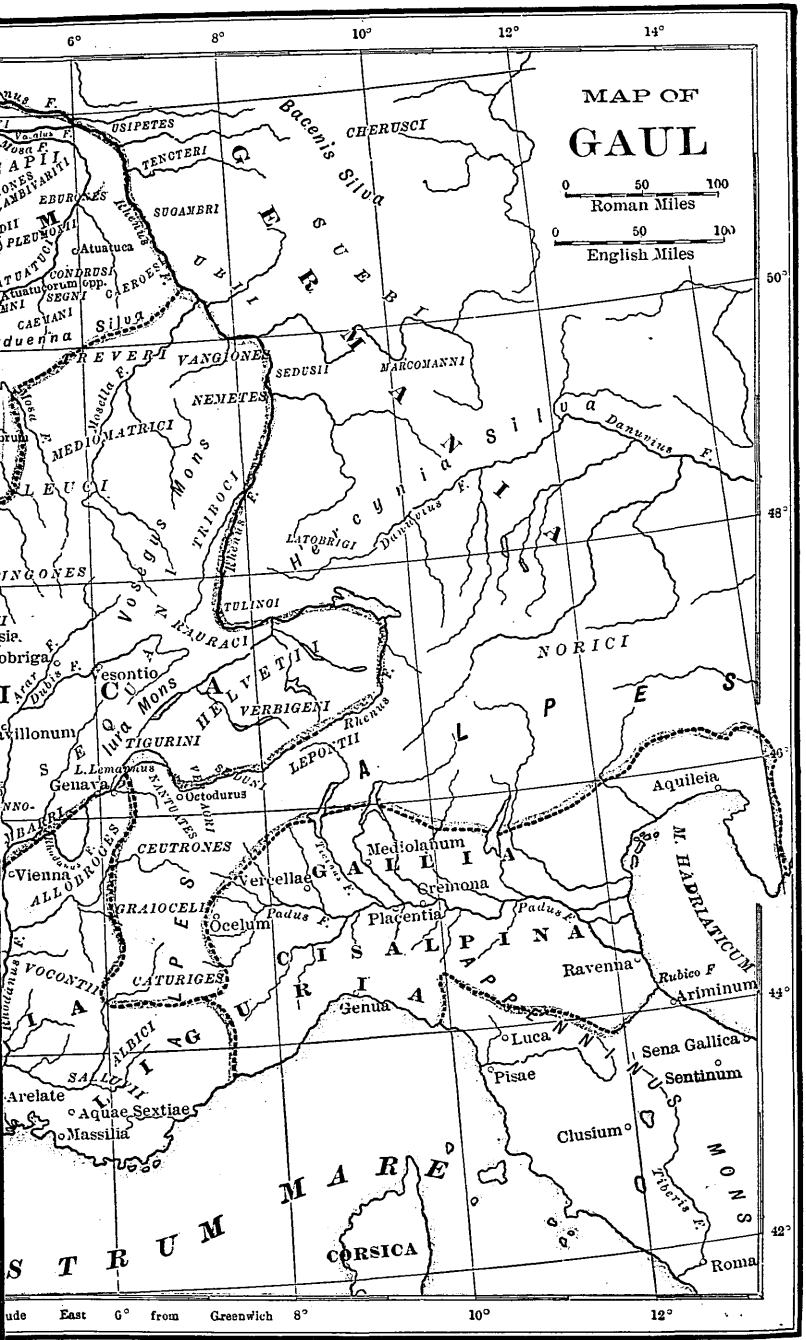
PAGE

VERCINGETORIX 198
A COIN OF VERCINGETORIX 201
THE CAMPAIGN OF 52 B.C. (*colored*) . . . *Facing* 203
PLAN OF AVARICUM 207
THE ROMAN WORKS AT AVARICUM 209
A GALLIC WALL 214
THE BATTLE AT GERGOVIA (*colored*) 228
THE EXPEDITION OF LABIENUS (*colored*) 234
THE INVESTMENT OF ALESIA (*colored*) 240
THE ROMAN WORKS AT ALESIA 243


4°
2°
0°
2°
4°
50°
48°
46°
44°
42°
CENIMAGNI
CASSI
TRINOVANTES
ANCALITES
BRITANNIA
CANTIUM
SEGONTIACI
BIBROCI
Fretum Gallicum
MORINI
Portus Itius
ATREBATES
AMBIANI
VELIOCASSES
CALETI
Samarobriva
BELLOVACI
Bratuspantium
Isara F.
Bibrax
Nemetocenna
Noviodunum
Durocor
LEXOVII
EBUROVICES
Sequana F.
MELDI
Lutetia
Metiosedum
CORIOSOLITES
AMBIBARII
DIABLINTES
CENOMANI
CARNUTES
SENONES
Agedincum
Vellaunodunum
REDONES
VENETI
ANDES
Cenabum
NAMNETES
Liger F.
AMBI-LIATI
Noviodunum
BITURIGES
Avaricum
Bibracte
PICTONES
Lemonum
Gorgobina
Decetia
LEMOVICES
SAXONES
Gergovia
ARVERNI
PETROCORII
ELEUTETI
Duranius F.
Uxellodunum
VELLAVII
GABALI
CADURCI
COCOSATES
SOTIATES
opp.
M. Cebenna
AQUITANIA
TOLOSATES
Tolosa
ARECOMICI
VOLCAE
CANTABRI
TARBELLI
SIBUSATES
ELUSATES
AUSCI
Carcaso
Narbo
PYRENAEI MONTES
BIGERRIONES
GARUNNI
SECTOSAGES
HISPANIA
Longitude West 2° from Greenwich 0° 2° 4° Longit


MAP OF
GAUL
0 50 100
Roman Miles
0 50 100
English Miles
6°
8°
10°
12°
14°
50°
48°
46°
42°
Bacenis Silva
CHERUSCI
USIPETES
TENCTERI
SUGAMBRI
EBURONES
CONDRUSI
CAERESI
SEGNI
CAEMANI
Silva
GERMANIA
SUEBI
HELVETII
SEQUANI
REVERI
VANGIONES
SEDUSII
MARCOMANNI
NEMETES
MEDIOMATRICI
Mosella F.
Vosegus Mons
TRIBOCI
LEUCI
Hercynia Silva
Danubius F.
LATOBRIGI
TULINGI
VINDELICIA
NORICI
ALPES
RAURACI
Rhenus F.
Arar F.
Dubis F.
Besontio
Jura Mons
VERBIGENI
TIGURINI
LEPONTII
Genava
L. Lemanus
Octodurus
Aquileia
M. ADRIATICUM
CEUTRONES
Mediolanum
GALLIA
CISALPINA
Vercellae
Cremona
Padus F.
Placentia
GRAIOCELI
Ocelum
Ravenna
Rubico F.
Ariminum
CATURIGES
Genua
APPENNINUS
Luca
Pisae
Sena Gallica
Sentinum
ALBICI
SALLUVII
Arelate
Aquae Sextiae
Massilia
Clusium
Tiberis F.
MONS
MARE
CORSICA
Roma
East 0° from Greenwich 8° 10° 12°


4°
2°
0°
2°
4°
50°
48°
46°
44°
42°
CENIMAGNI
CASSI
TRINOVANTES
ANCALITES
BRITANNIA
CANTIUM
SEGONTIACI
BIBROCI
Fretum Gallicum
MORINI
Portus Itius
ATREBATES
AMBIANI
CALETI
Samarobriva
BELLOVACI
Bratuspantium
Nemetocenna
Noviodunum
VELIOCASSES
LEXOVII
EBUROVICES
SUESSIONES
Bibrax
Durocor
MELDI
PARISII
Lutetia
Metiosedum
SENONES
Agedincum
Vellaunodunum
CARNUTES
Cenabum
Noviodunum
BITURIGES
Avaricum
Bibracte
Gorgobina
Decetia
Lemonum
PICTONES
LEMOVICES
SANTONI
Gergovia
ARVERNI
PETROCORII
Uxellodunum
NITIOBROGES
GABALI
VOCATES
COCOSATES
SOTIATES
CADURCI
GATES
AQUITANIA
TOLOSATES
Tolosa
M. Cebenna
VOLCAE
Carcaso
Narbo
TARBELLI
SIBUSATES
TIANII
ELUSATES
AUSCI
CANTABRI
BIGERRIONES
GARUMNI
TECTOSAGES
PYRENAEI MONTES
HISPANIA
OCEANUS
VENETI
OSISMI
CORIOSOLITES
AMBIBARII
REDONES
ESUVII
DIABLINTES
CENOMANI
NAMNETES
AMBILIATI
ANDES
ARMORICI
Liger F.
Sequana F.
Matrona F.
Durius F.
Garumna F.
Ligeris F.
Elaver F.
Sabis F.
Scaldis F.
Isara F.
Axona F.
Mosa F.
Mare Britannicum
Longitude West 2° from Greenwich 0° 2° 4° Longit


MAP OF
GAUL
0 50 100
Roman Miles
0 50 100
English Miles
6°
8°
10°
12°
14°
50°
48°
46°
44°
42°
Bacenis Silva
CHERUSCI
USIPETES
TENCTERI
SUGAMBRI
EBURONES
Atuatuca
CONDRUSI
CAEROESI
SEGNI
CAEMANI
Silua
TREVERI
VANGIONES
SEDUSII
MARCOMANNI
NEMETES
MEDIOMATRICI
Mosella F.
Mosa F.
Rhenus F.
Danubius F.
Hercynia Silua
LEUCI
Vosegus Mons
TRIBOCI
HELVETII
TULINGI
NORICI
VINDELICI
Arar F.
Dubis F.
Vesontio
Cura Mons
VERRUCINI
TIGURINI
VERAGRI
SEDUNI
LEPONTII
Rhenus F.
Genava
L. Lemanus
Octodurus
Aquileia
CEUTRONES
Mediolanum
Vercellae
Cremona
Padus F.
Placentia
Ocelum
GRAIOCELI
CISALPINA
M. HADRIATICUM
Ravenna
Rubico F.
Ariminum
VOCONTII
CATURIGES
Genua
Luca
Pisae
Sena Gallica
Sentinum
ALBICI
SALLUVII
Arelate
Aquae Sextiae
Massilia
Clusium
Tiberis F.
MARE
CORSICA
Roma
Greenwich
East
from

INTRODUCTION

GALLIC WARS BEFORE 58 B.C.

Importance.

THE history of Rome down to the Christian era is largely the record of her struggles with the peoples whom she was bringing under her dominion. Of these the Gauls were the most formidable. At various times the fear of a Gallic war or, worse still, the stern reality engaged the skill and courage of the wisest statesmen and bravest generals of Rome. The struggle continued for hundreds of years, with alternating periods of war and peace. The subjugation of the Transalpine Gauls by Caesar, an account of which is to be read in this book, was but the closing scene in a long and bloody drama.

A parallel.

The story of the struggle resembles in many respects that of the wars between the settlers of America and the American Indians. The Gauls, like the Indians, were divided into tribes more or less independent of one another. In both cases lack of proper organization and of unity of purpose put the savage or partially civilized tribes at a disadvantage with their more civilized opponents. In both contests the attitude of those destined to become the conquerors was gradually changed from defense to open aggressiveness. In both stories the romantic element is very prominent, and it is not always easy to disentangle the truth from the interwoven fiction.

Wars in Cisalpine Gaul. — The historian Livy tells us that at the time of Tarquinius Priscus, about the beginning of the sixth century before Christ, Transalpine Gaul, the country north and west of the Alps, was full to overflowing of a seething mass of

humanity. By command of the aged king of the Bituriges, who were then the leading people of the Celtae,[1] the surplus of six tribes, among them the Bituriges, the Arverni, and the Haedui, set out for other lands. Having crossed the Alps they came into northern Italy, where, in the fertile country between the mountains and the Po, they formed settlements, with Mediolanum (Milan) for their chief town. Soon other tribes came, among them the Boii and Lingones, who crossed the Po and made settlements between that river and the Apennines.

Settlement of Cisalpine Gaul.

The Senones came later. They pushed farther south and attacked the town of Clusium in Etruria. Here three brothers named Fabius, who had been sent by the Roman senate to treat with the Gauls on behalf of Clusium, forgot their sacred character as ambassadors and fought with the Clusines against the Gauls. This breach of the law of nations highly exasperated the barbarians, and only the counsels of the older men prevented them from seeking immediate vengeance. Soon, however, when all negotiations failed, they marched for Rome. The Romans met them at the Allia, a small stream flowing into the Tiber a few miles north of the city, and suffered a complete defeat. Rome was captured and laid in ashes. The date of this event is usually given as 390 B.C.

Capture and burning of Rome.

The main points of this narrative are very likely true, but the account is embellished in the pages of Livy with stories as plainly fabulous as those told of the battle of Lake Regillus. The legends of Camillus and of Brennus, of the aged nobles calmly sitting on their chairs of state awaiting death, of Marcus Manlius and the geese which by their cackling saved the Capitol may be read in most Roman histories and need not be given here.

The capture of Rome was only a temporary reverse, and she soon recovered from its effects and continued her career of conquest. Gradually her power was extended and confirmed. The Senones at times gave trouble, but in 289 B.C. a colony

[1] See *B.G.* I. 1.

was planted in their territory, at Sena Gallica. This was the first Roman colony on Gallic soil. A few years later the Senones were completely subdued and almost annihilated. Thus after more than a century the burning of Rome was avenged. Soon after this the Boii were defeated with great slaughter, and a colony was established fifty miles beyond Sena Gallica, at Ariminum.

Roman colonies in Cisalpine Gaul.

After the war with Pyrrhus, which made Rome mistress of southern Italy, and the First Punic War, which gave her command of the sea and freed her temporarily from the fear of Carthage, the Romans turned their attention again to the Gauls. In 223 B.C. for the first time a Roman army crossed the Po. The following year the Romans defeated the Insubres and took their chief city, Mediolanum. The consul Marcus Claudius Marcellus slew with his own hand the Insubrian chieftain and thus won the *spolia opima*. Two more colonies were founded, and Cisalpine Gaul began to be regarded as a dependency of Rome.

Conquest of the Insubres.

In 218 B.C. Hannibal, with his Carthaginian army, started from Spain to invade Italy. The Romans hoped that the Gauls might be induced to offer opposition to his progress, but in this they were disappointed. Some of the Transalpine Gauls did, it is true, come out in defense of their own homes; but when Hannibal reached Cisalpine Gaul, he found many of the inhabitants ready to rally around his standard. The defeat of Scipio on the Ticinus gave courage to those who wavered, and throughout the Hannibalian war Gauls were generally to be found fighting on the side of the Carthaginians. The conclusion of peace after the defeat of Hannibal at Zama left the Romans free to chastise his allies in the north. This they did with completeness, though the operation was protracted. By 191 B.C., however, the consul was able to boast that of the Boii he had left only old men and children alive. Thenceforth, beyond an occasional minor insurrection, there was quiet submission from the Gauls dwelling south of the Alps.

Second Punic War.

Operations in Transalpine Gaul. — Not until considerably later did the Romans carry war across the Alps. In the interval the Gallic name did not drop out of sight entirely, for even in Asia Minor Roman armies had to contend with Gauls. Up to the middle of the second century before Christ the relations between Rome and Transalpine Gaul seem to have been not unfriendly.

Massilia.

Massilia (the modern Marseilles), in southern Gaul, was founded about six hundred years before the Christian era by Greeks from the Ionian city of Phocaea. They brought with them to their Gallic home Greek customs and letters. Other Greeks, too, settled along the coast of the Mediterranean, and hence a flavor of Greek culture pervaded the life of this region and gradually spread into the interior. In 154 B.C. Massilia and two of her dependent cities found themselves threatened by neighboring Ligurian tribes. Massilia had been a steadfast friend of Rome, and in her distress she asked aid of the Romans. This was promptly granted, and an army was sent, which defeated the Ligurians and relieved the dependencies of Massilia. It is rather surprising that a pretext had not been found before this for the invasion of Transalpine Gaul, for Spain had been subject to Rome for half a century, and the direct road to Spain led through southern Gaul. But in spite of this, Rome does not seem to have profited very much from this first victory.

Roman colonies in Transalpine Gaul.

In 125 B.C. Massilia again asked help, which was again granted. In 122 B.C. the first Roman settlement in Transalpine Gaul was made at Aquae Sextiae (Aix). Roman armies defeated the powerful Arverni and Allobroges, and in 118 B.C. the consul Quintus Marcius Rex extended the conquests of Rome so that the road through southern Gaul to the Pyrenees was completely opened. In the same year the important colony of Narbo Martius (Narbonne) was established.

The Cimbri and Teutoni.

A strange, fierce enemy soon brought terror to Gauls and Romans alike. Vast hordes of barbarians, the Cimbri and

Teutoni, suddenly appeared on the very borders of civilization. The Cimbri are thought to have dwelt in Jutland, and it was said they had been driven from their home by an inundation. The Teutoni perhaps lived somewhat farther south. The Roman consul Gnaeus Papirius Carbo first met the barbarians in Noricum, in 113 B.C. He was defeated, and his army barely escaped annihilation. Later the Cimbri and Teutoni overran Gaul.[1] The people were shut up in their towns and compelled to sustain life by the most direful means.[2] The Belgae alone succeeded in protecting their own domains, though the barbarians left among them their heavy belongings with a guard of six thousand men. These, Caesar tells us,[3] held their own against the surrounding peoples for many years; but when the main forces of the Cimbri and Teutoni had been destroyed, they finally consented to lay down their arms and to join themselves with the Belgae under the name Atuatuci.

The Atuatuci.

The Romans were long unable to make headway against the Cimbri and Teutoni. Some of the tribes of Gaul joined forces with the invaders. The Helvetii were a rich, powerful, and peaceful tribe. Excited, however, by cupidity, two of their four cantons, the Tigurini and the Tougeni, took up arms in the hope of plunder. In 107 B.C. they defeated and killed the Roman consul Lucius Cassius Longinus, slaughtered a considerable part of his army, and sent the rest under the yoke. In this battle was slain the *legatus* Lucius Piso, great-grandfather of Calpurnia, whom Caesar married just before entering upon the governorship of Gaul.[4] But a more fearful disaster was to come. In 105 B.C. the Cimbri and their allies defeated two Roman armies, killing, it is said, eighty thousand soldiers and half as many camp-followers. Great was the alarm at Rome.

Roman armies defeated.

Gaius Marius was now the idol of the Roman people. He was rough and uncouth, but had displayed great qualities as a strategist and a fighter. He had just vanquished Jugurtha, and the people insisted on making him consul for 104 B.C., to end

Gaius Marius.

[1] Cf. *B.G.* 1. 33. [2] Cf. *B.G.* 7. 77. [3] *B.G.* 2. 29. [4] Cf. *B.G.* 1. 7 and 12.

the war against the Cimbri and Teutoni. These, however, instead of invading Italy, turned aside to Spain, where they remained two years. Marius was reëlected for 103 B.C., and again for 102. In the latter year the barbarians returned from Spain. Marius was on the watch for them, and at Aquae Sextiae met the Teutoni as they passed through southern Gaul, inflicting a crushing defeat upon them. But the Cimbri reached Cisalpine Gaul by another route. In 101 B.C. Marius, consul for the fifth time, and Quintus Lutatius Catulus gained a complete victory over them at Vercellae.[1]

From this time on there was comparative peace in Gaul for many years. The war with Sertorius in Spain affected Gaul somewhat, but Pompey allayed all disaffection. In 63 B.C., at the time of the conspiracy of Catiline, envoys of the Allobroges were at Rome seeking redress for official abuses in their own land. The conspirators tried to involve them in the conspiracy, but without success. It was through them that Cicero obtained the final proofs convicting Lentulus and other associates of Catiline. A grateful senate thanked the envoys — but did not correct the abuses. The Allobroges rose in revolt. Though they were subdued, they long remained restive.[2]

Envoys of the Allobroges in Rome.

Gaul just before Caesar's Governorship. — Roman power about 60 B.C. extended to Lake Geneva, and from the Rhone to the Alps. Farther west it covered the southern coast of Gaul and the country for a considerable distance inland. The simple name *provincia* (modern Provence) is used by Caesar to designate this province. The governor of Cisalpine Gaul seems sometimes to have had jurisdiction over the Transalpine province also.

Extent of Roman power in Transalpine Gaul.

Outside the province there had long been two factions in Gaul.[3] The leading place in one was held by the Haedui, and the Sequani and Arverni led the other. The Haedui and Sequani dwelt on opposite sides of the Arar (Saône) and quarreled with each other for the control of the river and the tolls of the traffic

Two factions in Gaul.

[1] Cf. *B.G.* 1. 40. [2] Cf. *B.G.* 1. 6 and 44. [3] Cf. *B.G.* 1. 31 and 6. 12.

upon it. The Haedui were allies of the Roman people, and were strong from their military valor and numerous dependencies. When the Arverni and Sequani were unable to hold their own against the Haedui, they invited the Suebi to come across the Rhine from Germany to assist them.[1] At first only a few came, but soon others followed, until there were in Gaul a hundred and twenty thousand Germans. Ariovistus, king and general-in-chief of the allies, defeated the Haedui at Magetobriga, probably in the year 60 B.C. He compelled the Haedui to swear never to ask aid of the Roman people. The druid Diviciacus, who alone did not suffer himself to be bound by this oath, went to Rome to ask aid, but without success. Ariovistus proved a hard master to the Sequani, whom he had come to assist. They were first deprived of a third of their lands, and afterwards another third was demanded. If the Romans had not finally interfered, all Gaul might have become Germanized, with results impossible to calculate.

The Haedui defeated by Ariovistus.

In the year 61 B.C. the Helvetii, a large tribe inhabiting a district having nearly the boundaries of modern Switzerland, determined to migrate from home and settle in the southwestern part of Gaul.[2] The smallness of their country was the reason assigned, and the coming of so many Germans into Gaul no doubt was another reason for their determination. The departure was set for the spring of 58 B.C., and the intervening time was to be spent in preparation. Alarming reports of the threatening danger reached Rome. A new Gallic war was feared, but the successes of Ariovistus calmed this fear to some extent. As yet, the peril from the presence of the German hordes in Gaul was thought to be distinctly less than that from some great movement of the Gauls themselves. In spite of the alliance between the Haedui and Rome, Caesar during his consulship, in 59 B.C., caused the senate to address Ariovistus as "king and friend."[3] In this year by the *Lex Vatinia* the Roman people gave Caesar, as proconsul, the provinces of

The Helvetii prepare to migrate.

Caesar appointed governor of Gaul

[1] Cf. *B.G.* I. 31. [2] Cf. *B.G.* I. 2. [3] Cf. *B.G.* I. 35.

Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum and granted him an army of three legions. To this the senate added Transalpine Gaul and a fourth legion.

THE LIFE OF CAESAR

Birth, 100 [102] B.C.

The First Period. — Julius Caesar (*Gaius Iulius Caesar*) was born, according to the common account, July 12, 100 B.C., though some put the date two years earlier. He was of a noble family, several members of which, but not his father or grandfather, had held the consulship. The name *Iulius* was supposed to be derived from that of the son of Aeneas, Iulus, who was the reputed founder of the Julian house. Thus the lineage

Family.

of the family was traced back to the gods; for Aeneas was the son of Venus, and grandson of Jove. Through his father's mother Caesar claimed descent from King Ancus.

The family, though noble, was allied with the democracy. Marius, who conquered Jugurtha and the Cimbri and Teutoni, and who, though he became seven times consul, was yet a man of the people, had married the sister of Caesar's father. Thus connected with the *populares*, the party of the people, as well as with the *optimates*, the party of the aristocracy or senatorial nobility, Caesar favored the former. His uncle Marius became his model, though he tried to avoid the coarseness and brutality which disfigured the life of the other. By his words in the fortieth chapter of the first book of the *Gallic War* he seems to suggest a comparison between himself and his uncle.

Youth and early training.

Caesar's youth was passed in troublous times. The Social War and the First Civil War early inured him to the sight and thought of bloodshed. Little is known of his boyhood. He lost his father at an early age, and much of his training was in the hands of his mother. He probably studied with the best teachers to be had at Rome. The name of one is given, Gnipho, a native of Cisalpine Gaul, who was a grammarian and rhetorician of repute.

In 87 B.C., when Caesar was only thirteen (or fifteen, if we accept the earlier date for his birth), Marius caused him to be appointed *flamen Dialis*, or priest of Jupiter. This position gave dignity, but little else. The next year Marius died. Sulla was now the leader of the *optimates*. After the death of Marius this party gained the ascendancy, and Sulla made Caesar an object of persecution. In 83 B.C. the latter married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, who had been a friend of Marius and his colleague in the consulship. Sulla ordered him to divorce his wife. Pompey obeyed a similar order, but Caesar refused to obey, and preferred to be outlawed and to lose priesthood and possessions. For some time he wandered a fugitive among the Sabine mountains. Sulla finally yielded to entreaty and pardoned him, remarking at the same time that the youth would one day be the ruin of the *optimates*, for there was many a Marius in him.

Flamen Dialis, 87 B.C.

Persecuted by Sulla.

Caesar saw some military service in Asia, and in 80 B.C. won a 'civic crown' of oak leaves by saving the life of a Roman citizen. Two years later he returned to Rome. Sulla was dead, and no doubt Caesar expected, in the party strife likely to follow, a favorable opportunity to enter public life. None appearing, he adopted a common device for attracting public notice. He brought against Gnaeus Dolabella, who had governed Macedonia as proconsul, a charge of extortion in his province, in a speech which was greatly admired, though the influence of the *optimates* was sufficient to secure the acquittal of the accused. A hint from the *optimates* that his absence from Rome for a time would be desirable perhaps strengthened in Caesar's mind, if it did not actually awaken, a desire to study oratory abroad under a great teacher, Molo of Rhodes. On the way to Rhodes, so the story goes, he was captured by pirates and held until a ransom should be paid. He was very friendly with the pirates, informing them, however, that when liberated he should return and crucify them all. The pirates enjoyed the joke hugely, but Caesar kept his

First military service.

Foreign travel and study.

word. During his absence from Rome he raised troops, though he held no military commission, and succeeded in maintaining the authority of Rome in certain cities of Asia Minor which Mithridates was trying to win over.

Beginning of political career, 68 B.C.

Having returned to Rome, Caesar was military tribune in 74 B.C. In 68 B.C. he was one of the quaestors, or state treasurers. During this year his wife, Cornelia, and his aunt Julia, widow of Marius, died, and he pronounced funeral orations over both. Afterwards his duties as quaestor took him to Farther Spain.

Aedile, 65 B.C.

In 65 B.C. he was aedile. The aediles had charge of the public buildings and superintendence of public games and festivals. The state granted to them for expenses a certain sum of money, to which they themselves usually added large amounts. By his unprecedented lavishness of expenditure Caesar completely won the favor of the masses. He exhibited so many gladiators in the games that the senate through fear set a limit to the number of slaves which might be thus employed. Caesar left the aedileship owing enormous sums of money.

Conspiracy of Catiline, 63 B.C.

In 63 B.C. occurred the conspiracy of Catiline. Lucius Sergius Catilina, represented by Roman writers as a brave but totally unprincipled man, had planned with others to massacre the leaders of the *optimates*, pillage Rome, and seize the government. The plot was thwarted by Cicero, who had the previous year defeated Catiline in his candidacy for the consulship. Caesar was thought by many to have been implicated in this conspiracy, and some modern scholars have even believed that Catiline was a mere tool in his hands. The truth cannot now be known, but Cicero, in his fourth oration against Catiline, manifests considerable anxiety to gain the good will of Caesar, evidently feeling that he is a man to be reckoned with.

Pontifex maximus.

In this year Caesar was elected *pontifex maximus*, official head of the state religion, in spite of the utmost efforts of the *optimates* to elect their candidate. This election quieted for a time his creditors. He held the priesthood as long as he lived.

In 62 B.C. Caesar was praetor. The next year he was governor of Farther Spain, where he gained some military successes and accumulated a large amount of money, which enabled him to pay his debts. In the following year he became a candidate for the consulship. The most prominent man in Rome at this time was Gnaeus Pompeius (Pompey). Recent successful military operations in Asia had given him unbounded popularity, and although he had adhered to the aristocratic party during the struggle between Marius and Sulla, he had for some time been coquetting with the *populares*. Crassus was the wealthiest man in Rome. He had political ambitions, and was in close relations with Caesar, to whom he had lent money. These three men formed a political league, generally known in history as the First Triumvirate. Each of the three no doubt expected to use the others for his own advantage, but the sequel showed the prestige of Pompey and the wealth of Crassus unequally matched against the brains of Caesar.

Praetor, 62 B.C.

The First Triumvirate 60 B.C.

Caesar was consul in 59 B.C. Supported by the influence of Pompey and Crassus, he conducted affairs with vigor and ability, securing the passage of some really excellent laws. He received, as proconsul, according to custom, a provincial governorship. His province included Cisalpine Gaul, Transalpine Gaul, and Illyricum, and the appointment was for five years. The friendship between Pompey and Caesar was strengthened by the marriage of Caesar's daughter Julia to Pompey. Caesar, whose second wife had been divorced by him, married Calpurnia, daughter of Lucius Calpurnius Piso, one of the consuls of the year 58 B.C.

Consul, 59 B.C.

Appointed governor of Gaul.

The governorship of Gaul afforded Caesar the opportunity which he wished. The province was near enough to Rome to allow him to keep in close touch with the political life of the capital, especially since he usually spent his winters in Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum. Transalpine Gaul gave him a field for military action, allowed him to train an army, and furnished

An advantageous position.

him the money which he needed to further his ambitions. It is altogether probable that Caesar conceived at the outset the intention of conquering that portion of Gaul which still remained free, and that he hoped and expected to become the first power in the Roman world; but it is by no means certain, perhaps is improbable, that he then aimed at the subversion of the republican constitution and the overthrow of the power of the senate which he afterwards accomplished.

The Period of the Gallic War. — Caesar spent the first three
58 B.C. months of the year 58 B.C. near Rome. There were preparations to be made. Besides, he had to defend himself against charges of maladministration in his consulship, the usual lot of
B. G. I. an ex-consul. Meanwhile disquieting rumors came to Rome. It was reported that the Helvetii were to assemble March 28 at the bank of the Rhone, to begin the migration for which they had been preparing. Caesar recognized that this movement must be stopped, and accordingly he started for his province, arriving on the farther side of the Alps in April. Soon after he was in Geneva and saw how matters stood. By midsummer he had checked the migration, killing, according to his own story, more than two thirds of the Helvetii and their allies, and compelling the rest to return to the lands from which they had come. He then turned his attention to Ariovistus and the Germans, who were in Gaul ostensibly for the purpose of protecting certain Gallic states against others. By the end of the campaign of this year he had freed Gaul from the German invaders.

57 B.C., *B. G.* II. In 57 B.C. an uprising took place among the Belgae, who dwelt in the northern part of Gaul. They felt sure that Caesar's coming boded no good to themselves, or to Gaul in general. Caesar defeated them in two pitched battles and several smaller engagements and broke their military prestige. During
B. G. III, 1–6. the winter of 57–56 B.C. Servius Galba, who was quartered with a part of the army among the tribes near the Alps, was at-

tacked by the natives, and, though he extricated himself, yet thought it better to move his winter quarters into a more friendly region.

In the spring of 56 B.C. Caesar met Pompey and Crassus at Luca in Etruria. It was agreed that at the expiration of Caesar's term as governor his command should be extended for five years more. He would then again be eligible to the consulship. Pompey and Crassus were to hold the consulship in 55 B.C., and then to receive five-year terms as governors of provinces, Crassus in Syria and Pompey in Spain. After this conference Caesar went back to his province and conducted a successful naval campaign against some of the tribes of the western coast. Labienus, Caesar's *legatus*, held in check the Belgae; Sabinus, another *legatus*, defeated the Venelli and allied tribes; while Publius Crassus, son of the triumvir, who was serving with Caesar, received the submission of the greater part of Aquitania.

56 B.C.

B. G. III, 7–29

In the year 55 B.C. the Usipetes and Tencteri, German tribes, crossed the Rhine and established themselves on the Gallic side of the river. It was contrary to Caesar's policy to allow them to remain there, and so he marched against them. He had no great difficulty in defeating them, and determined to follow up his advantage by crossing the Rhine. Accordingly he built a bridge over the river and led his army across. He did not remain long, however, but returned after ravaging the country. Though summer was well advanced, he then crossed over into Britain. His purpose in so doing was to reconnoiter the country and, if time permitted, to punish the Britons, who had repeatedly aided the Gauls in their conflicts with the Romans. Only the first part of his purpose was accomplished, but the knowledge gained proved useful in the following year.

55 B.C., *B. G.* IV.

The earlier part of the year 54 B.C. was devoted to a second expedition to Britain. Caesar crossed the channel with five legions and half of his cavalry. A storm destroyed a part of

54 B.C. *B. G.* V

his ships, which were lying at anchor, so that he thought it best to beach those which were left. He then proceeded towards the interior of the island and crossed the River Thames. After some fighting, and partial submission on the part of the Britons, the Romans returned to Gaul. The legions were placed in several camps for the winter. The division under command of Sabinus and Cotta was attacked by the Eburones under Ambiorix and practically annihilated. Another division, commanded by Quintus Cicero, brother of the orator, was also attacked, but defended itself heroically until it was relieved by Caesar's arrival.

53 B.C., *B. G.* VI.

At the opening of 53 B.C. the situation in Gaul was threatening. The Belgae were disaffected and were intriguing with the Germans. Caesar ravaged the country of the Nervii. His great purpose this year was to take vengeance on the Eburones and Ambiorix for their acts of the previous year. Ambiorix contrived to elude him, but the Eburones were destroyed. Labienus defeated the Treveri, and Caesar, to frighten the Germans who had assisted the Treveri, crossed the Rhine a second time.

52 B.C., *B. G.* VII.

The next year, 52 B.C., saw the culmination of the war. The Roman government was thrown into confusion early in the year by the murder of Clodius, a disreputable leader of the popular party and the bitter enemy of Cicero. The Gauls thought this a favorable opportunity to strike a supreme blow for liberty. A leader arose in Vercingetorix, who, had he appeared at an earlier period in the war, might have rendered more difficult, if not impossible, the task of subjugation which Caesar carried through. "The seventh book is a tragedy, with the revolt of Gaul for its subject and for its hero Vercingetorix." The Gauls planned to prevent Caesar from joining his army, which could thus be more easily dealt with; but Caesar, as usual, was too quick for them. He traveled secretly from Cisalpine Gaul and arrived before his enemies were aware of his approach. Now began the great final struggle. With the exception of the

peoples of Aquitania, barely three or four tribes in all Gaul held aloof from the movement. The struggle ended at Alesia; the gallant leader surrendered, and Gaul was Caesar's.

The next two years, 51 and 50 B.C., were spent in calming minor disturbances and conquering the few tribes which still held out. By the capture of Uxellodunum the conquest of the country was completed. 51 and 50 B.C., *B. G.* VIII.

The Period of the Civil War. — The compact of Luca had been all but carried out. Crassus had gone to his province in 54 B.C. and had been killed there. Pompey governed Spain through a deputy, remaining himself near Rome. The control of the Roman world lay in the hands of Caesar and Pompey. Between these two, of whom a writer has said that Caesar could not brook a superior, Pompey an equal, a breach was sure to come. Pompey was becoming jealous of Caesar's great popularity and influence, and was being led to identify himself more and more with the senatorial, or aristocratic, party. The death, in 54 B.C., of Caesar's daughter Julia, wife of Pompey, to whom both her husband and her father were devotedly attached, severed a strong bond of union between the two men. **Relations of Caesar and Pompey.**

An event which served to hasten the rupture occurred in 52 B.C. This was the murder of Clodius, mentioned above. Owing to the bitterness of feeling which led to this murder, and which was raised to a high pitch after it, the capital was filled for a time with anarchy and tumult. Order was not restored until the appointment of Pompey as consul without colleague. This appointment marked the end of Pompey's nominal alliance with the popular party and the beginning of his real alliance with the senatorial party. The senate, though corrupt, was yet the guardian of the constitution, and was determined to curb the growing power of Caesar and prevent, if possible, the fulfilment of his further ambitions. Pompey had a supreme confidence that his military renown and present

power would prove an overmatch for Caesar's strength and reputation resulting from the Gallic War.

The immediate causes of the war.

Caesar knew that if he were to become a private citizen, he would quickly be put at the mercy of his enemies. While in office, he could not be impeached, but many were lying in wait to attack him the moment the shield of official position should be removed. Accordingly he wished to become a candidate for the consulship of 48 B.C., since his term of office as governor of Gaul would expire in 49 B.C. This had, indeed, been a part of the program arranged at Luca. But he could not legally become a candidate unless actually in Rome, nor could he legally come to Rome so long as he retained the governorship. Caesar's enemies insisted on the strict application of the laws to his case, while he wished to be elected to the consulship in his absence. The senate tried by various expedients to shorten his term of office and weaken his army. Caesar proposed concessions, even offering to resign his command if Pompey would do the same. This Pompey refused to do. Finally the senate voted that Caesar should disband his army before a certain day,[1] or be regarded a public enemy. The consuls were invested with dictatorial power, and Pompey was placed in command of the senatorial army.

The senate's ultimatum.

The beginning of the struggle, 49 B.C.

War thus became inevitable. Caesar crossed the Rubicon, which formed the boundary line between his province and Italy, and marched southward. City after city surrendered to him as he advanced. Pompey fell back to Brundisium, whither Caesar followed him. Pompey then abandoned Italy and crossed over to Greece. This left Caesar master of Rome and Italy less than three months after the beginning of the war. But though he commanded Italy, Pompey was in Greece and a powerful army under Pompey's generals held Spain. Sicily, Sardinia, and Africa were also occupied

[1] Whether Caesar's term was legally to expire March 1, 49 B.C., or was to continue to the end of the year, he had counted on remaining in office until the beginning of 48.

by adherents of the senatorial party. Sending some of his generals against these, Caesar himself set out for Spain. On the way, as Massilia refused to submit to him, he laid siege to the town. Not being immediately successful, he left a force to continue the siege and proceeded to Spain. In a little more than a month he defeated the Pompeians there, and returning through Gaul found Massilia just on the point of surrendering. After its surrender he returned to Rome and assumed the office of dictator, to which he had been appointed in his absence. He laid down this office after eleven days, but not before he had caused some important laws to be passed, and had held an election in which he was chosen for the consulship of the next year.

Dictator.

He now turned his attention to Pompey, who was still in Greece and had greatly enlarged his army by recruits from Greece and the East. After a vigorous campaign of more than six months he defeated this army in the decisive battle of Pharsalus, in August, 48 B.C. Pompey in despair crossed over into Egypt, where he asked the protection of Ptolemy, the king; but he was treacherously murdered by order of the king's advisers. Caesar is said to have shed tears on learning of the death of his rival.

Pharsalus, 48 B.C.

Murder of Pompey.

After Pompey's death Caesar became involved in wars in Egypt and Asia Minor. When these had been successfully finished, he returned to Rome, but soon set out for Africa, where there was still a senatorial army. In April, 46 B.C., he defeated this army in the battle of Thapsus, and all northern Africa submitted to his authority. He returned to Rome again and celebrated magnificent triumphs, though not for his victories over Roman citizens. The half-forgotten Gallic hero Vercingetorix was dragged from the Roman dungeon where he had lain for six years, led in Caesar's triumphal procession, and then solemnly beheaded at the foot of the Capitol as a warning to 'traitors.' Public thanksgivings of unprecedented length were decreed, and honors of all sorts were showered upon the con-

Thapsus, 46 B.C.

Execution of Vercingetorix.

queror. He seemed to win all hearts by his clemency. He was created dictator for ten years (afterwards for life) and made guardian of the public morals. He was already *pontifex maximus*, and in these several capacities he made many wholesome laws and reforms, one of the most important being the reform of the calendar, which had come to vary greatly from the solar year. In commemoration of this reform the name July (*mensis Iulius*) was given to the month *Quinctilis*, in which he was born, and the calendar established by him, slightly changed, is the one we still use.

Dictator for ten years.

Munda, 45 B.C.

In 45 B.C. fighting was resumed, this time in Spain, but after a vigorous campaign the final victory was won at Munda, and Caesar was master of the Roman world. He was now hardly past the prime of life, and could apparently look forward to many years of power. The senate conferred upon him the title *imperator* (military head of the state), which was to be held for life and was probably intended to be hereditary. This made him practically the first of a line of monarchs, though lacking the title of king. Probably this title too would have been given him but for the deep hatred which the Romans had for the kingly name. But he was hailed as *pater patriae*, and his portrait was placed on Roman coins. As head of the state he took to himself the prerogatives, if not the name, of royalty. He maintained a splendid court, and undertook to reward his friends and adherents in right princely fashion. He planned great public works, such as the establishment of a library and the digging of a canal through the isthmus of Corinth. More and greater than this, he began to make extensive and far-reaching changes in the Roman constitution, looking toward the reorganization of the government of the whole empire.

Imperator.

Not all Romans were content with things as they were and with the prospects for the future. There were men who looked with disfavor on the honors and power conferred upon Caesar. As early as the beginning of 44 B.C. a conspiracy was begun, which had for its object the killing of the 'tyrant' and the res-

toration of the republic. Some of the conspirators were actuated by patriotic motives, while others were Caesar's personal enemies. The assassination took place on the Ides of March, as planned, but the reëstablishment of the republic was impossible. Caesar's death plunged the state into anarchy and confusion, from which it was not rescued until his successor Augustus was firmly established upon the imperial throne.

Death, March 15, 44 B.C.

Caesar, the Man. — For details regarding Caesar's personal appearance we have to depend on the gossip of later writers, since none of the many existing statues and busts is known to have been taken from life, or to represent the man as he actually was. Suetonius says that he was tall and slender, with a fair complexion and bright, black eyes. His health was generally good, and he was capable of great endurance. He seemed never to feel fatigue, and could travel night and day, sleeping in his carriage. Late in life, however, he became subject to epilepsy. He was very fastidious in dress, and received with delight the honor bestowed by the senate in authorizing him to wear in public a crown of bay, because thereby he could hide his growing baldness.

Physical characteristics.

Caesar was a man of remarkable mental strength and unbounded confidence in himself and in his destiny. Ambition was his ruling passion, and to that everything else was subordinate. He seems to have been by nature kind-hearted and generous, and he boasts of his clemency; yet his cruelties in his Gallic campaigns are appalling. He tells of them himself, however, apparently with perfect frankness. In the Civil War and afterward his forbearance toward the vanquished was politic and most admirable. In the use of money he was lavish and altogether unscrupulous. Bribery, direct and indirect, was one of his chief methods of attracting support, at least in his earlier career. But no one was more faithful to a friend than he, and he had warm friends in all ranks of life. The soldiers of his army were devoted to him. So were many of his personal

Moral qualities.

friends; yet some of his greatest troubles, and at last his death, came from the treachery of men in whose friendship he had confided.

Varied activities.

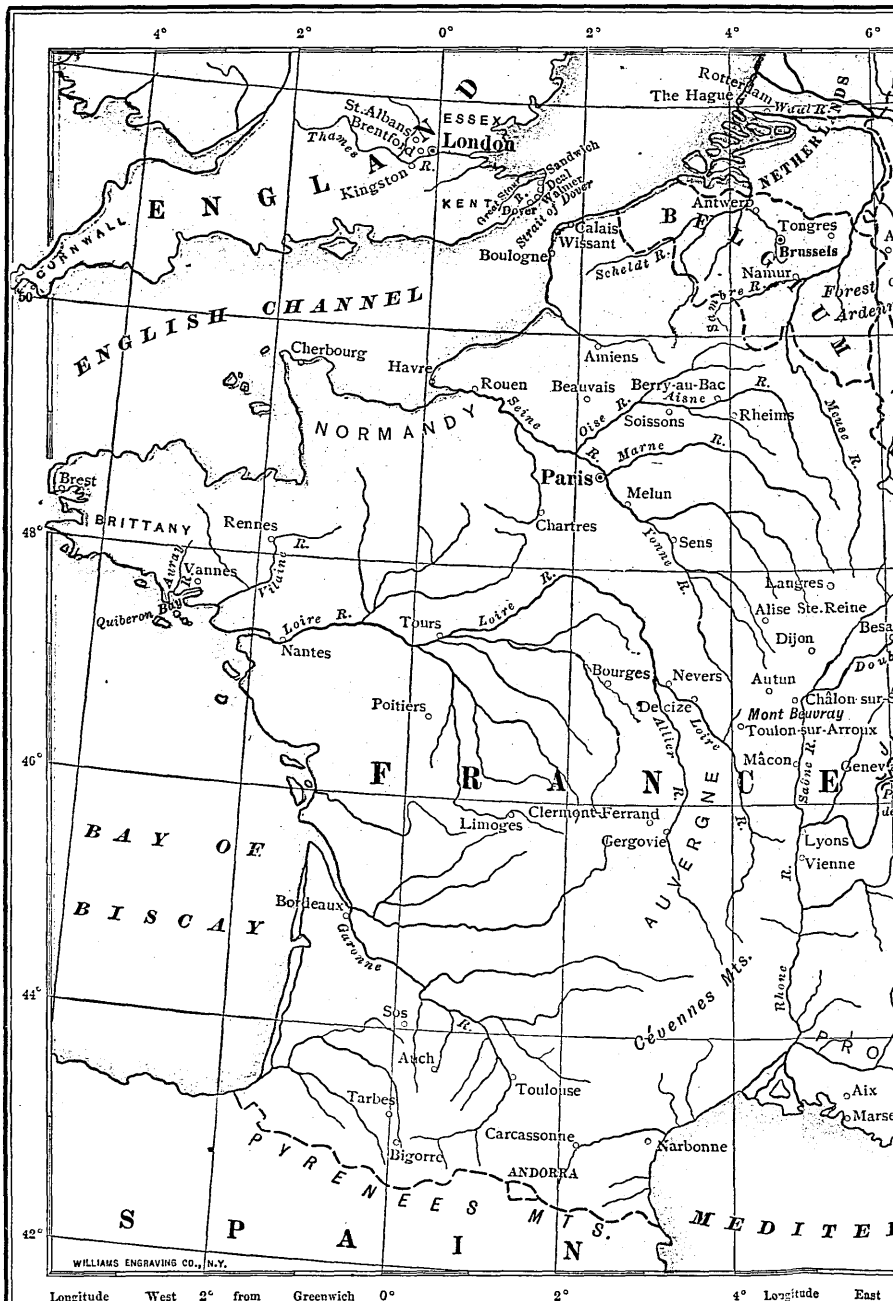
Caesar's ability manifested itself in everything which he undertook, and in many different ways. Though in early life he had comparatively little military experience, yet after the age of forty he became one of the world's greatest generals. His engineering works were worthy of one bred to the life of an engineer. As an orator the Romans ranked him second to Cicero only. As a writer he cultivated the fields of poetry, history, science, philosophy, and all of them with success. His work as a statesman gave definite shape to the subsequent history of Rome, and through her strongly influenced the destinies of mankind.

Caesar's Commentaries. — Besides some fragments, the only writings of Caesar which have been preserved to us are the *Commentaries on the Gallic War* and the *Commentaries on the Civil War*. The style of these is direct and, for the most part, clear. The work on the Civil War is in three books, with continuations in three books by other hands.

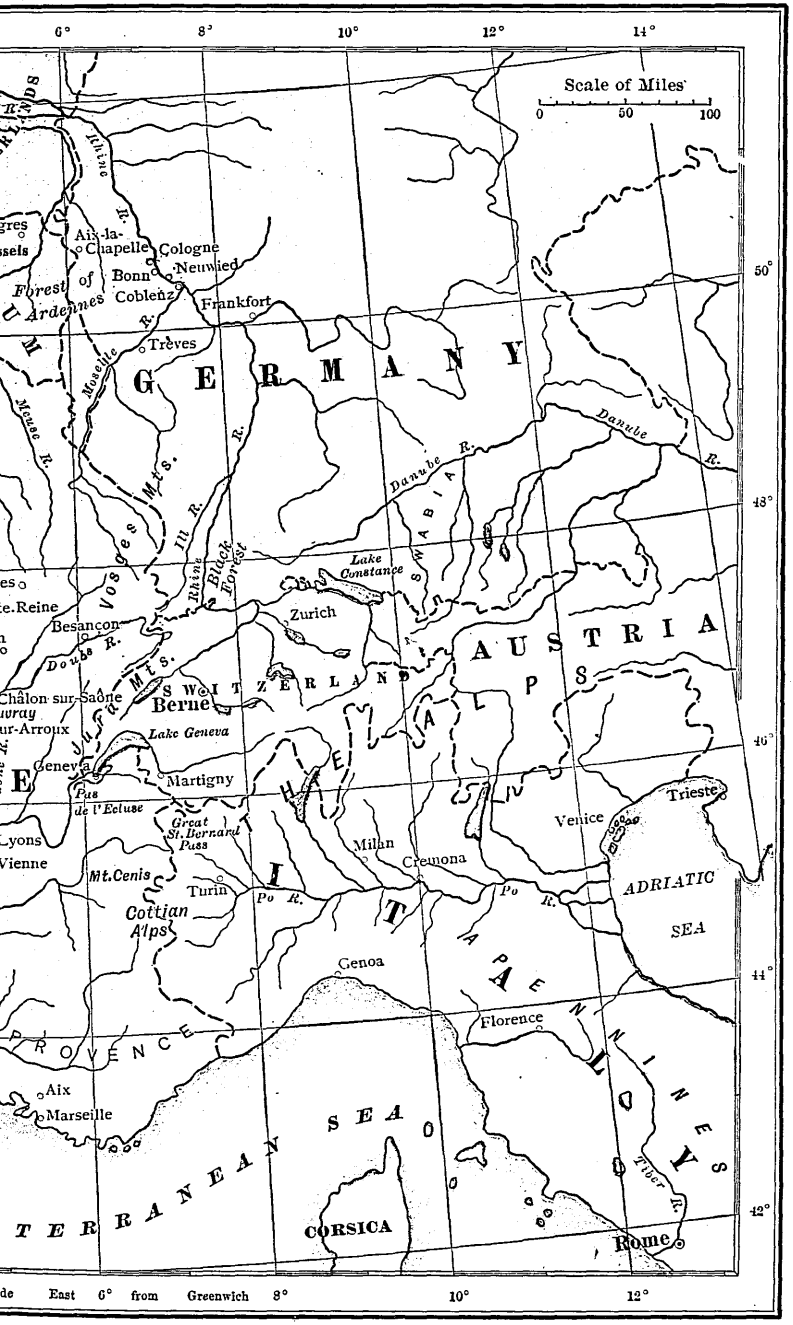
De Bello Gallico.

Caesar's account of the Gallic War is in seven books, to which an eighth was added by another writer, probably Hirtius, one of Caesar's officers. The events are narrated by years, each year usually occupying a book. Caesar speaks of himself in the third person. The general trustworthiness of the account seems fairly well established, though Caesar represents his own motives in the most favorable light, and very likely sometimes suppresses troublesome facts. Minor discrepancies between different parts of the work are no doubt due to haste of composition, or to the fact that the different parts were composed at different times. Some mistakes may be due to corruptions which crept in while the text was transmitted in handwritten copies during the centuries before the invention of printing.

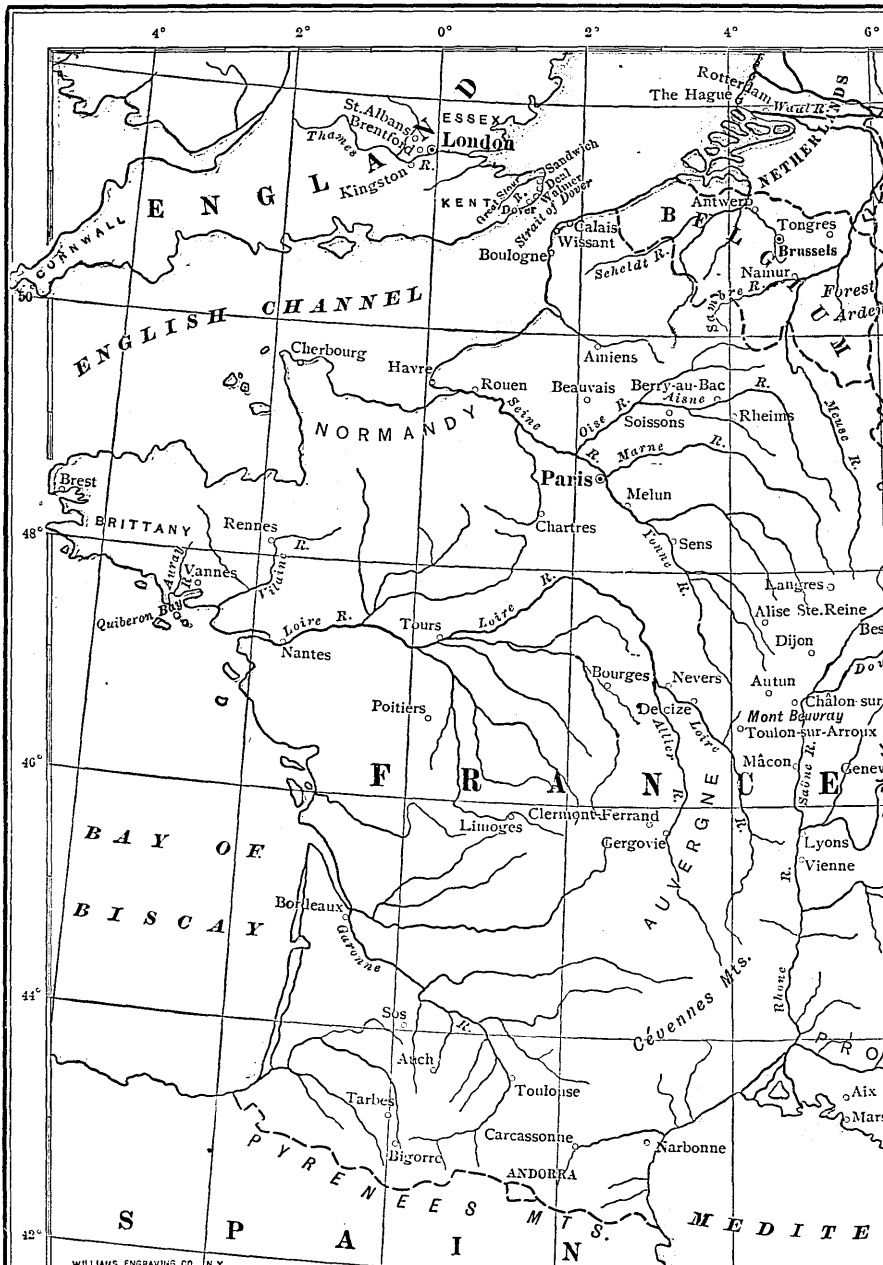
The *Commentaries on the Gallic War* give us many curious facts about the world outside of Rome. Almost our earliest


4°
2°
0°
2°
4°
6°
50°
48°
46°
44°
42°
ENGLAND
ESSEX
London
St. Albans
Brentford
Thames R.
Kingston
KENT
Great Stone
Dover
Deal
Sandwich
Walmer
Strait of Dover
Rotterdam
The Hague
Waal R.
NETHERLANDS
Antwerp
BELGIUM
Calais
Wissant
Boulogne
Tongres
Brussels
Namur
Scheldt R.
Sambre R.
Meuse R.
Forest of Ardenne
CORNWALL
ENGLISH CHANNEL
Cherbourg
Havre
Amiens
Rouen
Beauvais
Berry-au-Bac
Aisne R.
Soissons
Rheims
Seine R.
Oise R.
Marne R.
NORMANDY
Paris
Melun
Chartres
Brest
BRITTANY
Rennes
Sens
Vannes
Auray R.
Vilaine R.
Quiberon Bay
Loire R.
Tours
Nantes
Yonne R.
Langres
Alise Ste. Reine
Dijon
Bourges
Nevers
Autun
Châlon-sur-Mont Beauvray
Toulon-sur-Arroux
Decize
Allier R.
Poitiers
Mâcon
Saône R.
Geneva
FRANCE
Limoges
Clermont-Ferrand
Gergovie
AUVERGNE
Lyons
Vienne
Rhone R.
BAY OF BISCAY
Bordeaux
Garonne R.
Cévennes Mts.
Sos
Auch
Toulouse
Tarbes
Aix
Marseilles
Carcassonne
Narbonne
Bigorre
PYRENEES MTS.
ANDORRA
SPAIN
MEDITERRANEAN
WILLIAMS ENGRAVING CO., N.Y.
Longitude West 2° from Greenwich 0°
2°
4° Longitude East

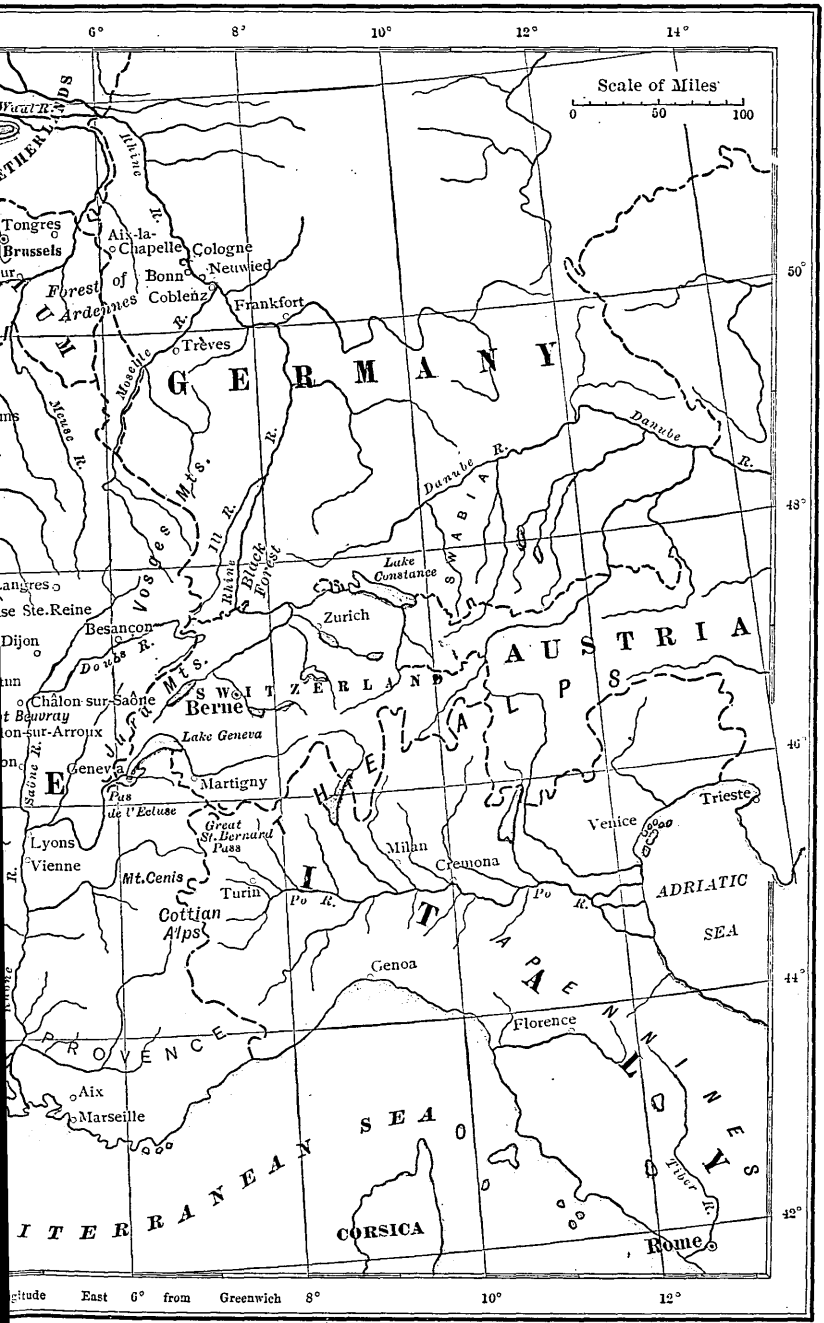
MODERN MAP


6°
8°
10°
12°
14°
Scale of Miles
0
50
100
50°
48°
46°
44°
42°
Rhine R.
Aix-la-Chapelle
Cologne
Neuwied
Bonn
Coblenz
Forest of Ardennes
Frankfort
Treves
Moselle R.
Meuse R.
GERMANY
Danube R.
Vosges Mts.
Ill R.
Rhine R.
Black Forest
Lake Constance
SWABIA
Zurich
Besançon
Doubs R.
JURA MTS.
SWITZERLAND
Berne
Lake Geneva
Geneva
Martigny
Pas de l'Ecluse
Great St. Bernard Pass
Mt. Cenis
Cottian Alps
Turin
Po R.
Milan
Cremona
Venice
Trieste
ADRIATIC SEA
AUSTRIA
ALPS
APENNINES
Genoa
Florence
PROVENCE
Aix
Marseille
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
CORSICA
Rome
Tiber R.
Lyons
Vienne
Châlon-sur-Saône
East 6° from Greenwich 8°
10°
12°

N MAP


4°
2°
0°
2°
4°
6°
ENGLAND
ESSEX
London
St. Albans
Brentford
Thames R.
Kingston
KENT
Sandwich
Dover
Strait of Dover
Calais
Boulogne
Wissant
Rotterdam
The Hague
Waal R.
NETHERLANDS
Antwerp
BELGIUM
Tongres
Brussels
Namur
Sambre R.
Forest of Ardes
Meuse R.
CORNWALL
ENGLISH CHANNEL
Cherbourg
Havre
Amiens
Rouen
Beauvais
Berry-au-Bac
Aisne R.
Soissons
Rheims
Seine R.
Oise R.
Marne R.
NORMANDY
Paris
Melun
Brest
BRITTANY
Rennes
Chartres
Sens
Vilaine R.
Vannes
Arrar R.
Quiberon Bay
Loire R.
Tours
Nantes
Yonne R.
Langres
Alise Ste. Reine
Dijon
Bourges
Nevers
Autun
Châlon sur
Mont Beuvray
Toulon-sur-Arroux
Decize
Allier R.
Poitiers
Mâcon
Saone R.
FRANCE
BAY OF BISCAY
Limoges
Clermont-Ferrand
Cergovie
Lyons
Vienne
Rhone R.
AUVERGNE MTS.
Bordeaux
Garonne R.
Sos
Aich
Cévennes Mts.
Rhone
Toulouse
Tarbes
Carcassonne
Narbonne
Aix
Bigorre
PYRENEES MTS.
ANDORRA
SPAIN
MEDITE
50°
48°
46°
44°
42°
WILLIAMS ENGRAVING CO., N.Y.
Longitude West 2° from Greenwich 0°
2°
4° Longitude East

MODERN MAP


6°
8°
10°
12°
14°
Scale of Miles
0
50
100
50°
48°
46°
44°
42°
Tongres
Brussels
Aix-la-Chapelle
Cologne
Neuwied
Bonn
Coblenz
Frankfort
Forest of Ardennes
Trèves
Rhine R.
Moselle R.
Meuse R.
GERMANY
Danube R.
Vosges Mts.
Jura Mts.
Black Forest
SWABIA
Lake Constance
Zurich
Besançon
Dijon
Châlon-sur-Saône
Berne
SWITZERLAND
AUSTRIA
ALPS
Lake Geneva
Geneva
Martigny
Pas de l'Ecluse
Great St. Bernard Pass
Lyons
Vienne
Mt. Cenis
Turin
Cottian Alps
Milan
Cremona
Venice
Trieste
ADRIATIC SEA
Po R.
APENNINES
Genoa
Florence
PROVENCE
Aix
Marseille
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
CORSICA
Tiber R.
Rome
Greenwich
East
from

trustworthy information regarding Britain, Germany, and Gaul comes from them. Caesar was a close observer; though he was sometimes imposed upon by false information, yet modern investigation verifies many of his seemingly improbable statements. These lands were to the Romans the home of the wild, the strange, and the impossible, and far more extravagant stories than Caesar tells would readily have been believed of them. Caesar himself was the explorer, conqueror, and historian of this strange world. A halo of romance crowns the hero who carries his country's arms into an unknown land, far more than him whose deeds are done in the plain sight of his countrymen. Moreover, Caesar's deeds in Gaul were by no means insignificant in themselves. In ten years, according to Plutarch, he took more than eight hundred towns, conquered three hundred tribes, and fought with three millions of men, killing one million and capturing another. Besides, he freed Rome from a fear which had haunted her for centuries, and opened a new world to the Romans for colonization and occupation.

Interest and importance of the work.



A COIN OF CAESAR

CAESAR'S FIELD OF MILITARY OPERATIONS

Gaul. — Gaul in Caesar's time included *Gallia Cisalpina* ('Gaul this side the Alps,' *i.e.* northern Italy) and *Gallia Transalpina* ('Gaul across the Alps'). *Gallia Cisalpina* was also called *Gallia Citerior* ('Hither Gaul'). It came to be regarded as an integral part of Italy, and Caesar sometimes says *Italia* when he refers to Cisalpine Gaul.[1] *Gallia Transal-*

Divisions of Gaul.

[1] E.g. *B. G.* I. 10.



A GALLIC CHIEF

pina, or *Gallia Ulterior* ('Farther Gaul'), included modern France, the most of Switzerland, Germany west of the Rhine, Belgium, and a part of Holland. The Roman province (*Gallia provincia*, sometimes called simply *provincia*) occupied the southeastern part of this region. The rest of Transalpine Gaul was divided, Caesar tells us,[1] into three parts, inhabited respectively by the *Belgae*, the *Aquitani*, and the *Celtae*, or *Galli* proper. Caesar sometimes uses the name *Gallia* to designate the division inhabited by the *Celtae;* elsewhere by *Gallia* he generally means Transalpine Gaul exclusive of the province.

Soil, climate productions.

The soil of Gaul was fertile, producing cereals and timber, and supporting large numbers of cattle and swine. The climate seems to have been somewhat colder than that of the same regions to-day, though the valley of the Rhone closely resembled Italy in climate and products. Minerals — gold, silver, iron, and copper — were found in different parts of the country, and the Aquitani especially were skilled in mining and quarrying.

Inhabitants.

Caesar's division of the inhabitants of Gaul into Belgae, Aquitani, and Celtae, though not strictly scientific, is convenient for understanding his narrative of the Gallic War. In reality no one of these peoples was homogeneous. Modern researches show that each included more than one race, or type.

Aquitani.

A part of the Aquitani seem to have been akin to the Iberians of Spain; but along with them dwelt another race, very likely belonging to the Ligurian stock, which we know inhabited other parts of southern Gaul. The relation between these two races and the modern Basques, who dwell among the Pyrenees, has not been determined with certainty.

Belgae and Celtae.

In sharp contrast to the Aquitani stood the Belgae and Celtae. The Aquitani were a small, dark people. The Gauls, or Celts, are represented by ancient writers as tall and large, with fair complexion, red or yellowish hair, and fierce blue

[1] *B.G.* I. 1.

eyes. Long before Caesar's time a people having these characteristics had invaded and conquered Gaul with the exception of Aquitania. The mixture, or partial amalgamation, of these invaders with the aboriginal race or races of central Gaul constituted Caesar's Celtae. The invaders of the north may have differed slightly from those farther south, though essentially the same race. These northern invaders were the Belgae, who were perhaps more or less mixed with Germans. According to a statement reported by Caesar as made to him by Belgian chiefs, the most of the Belgae were of German origin.[1]

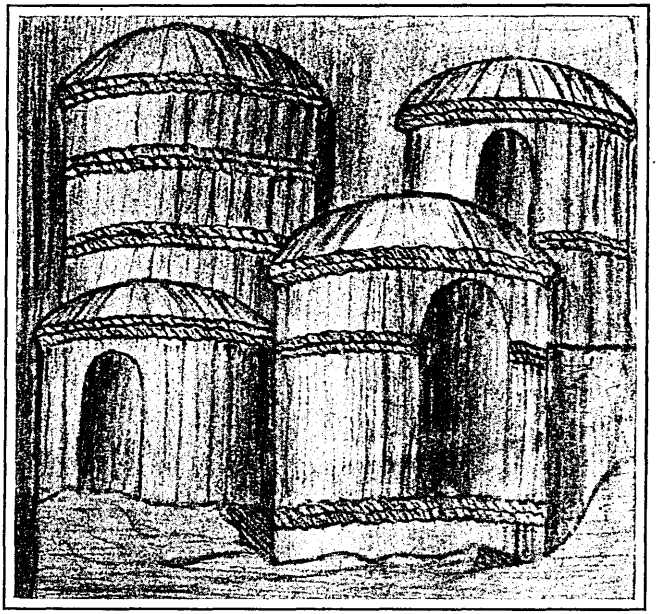
Language. Caesar speaks of a difference in language between the Belgae and the Celtae, but this difference was probably only slight. The languages of both belonged, of course, to the Celtic family, living members of which are still found in Ireland, Scotland, Wales, and elsewhere. The languages of the Celtic group closely resemble those of the Italic group, of which Latin is one. Of the Celtic of Caesar's time no texts are preserved, but there are numerous proper names and a few other words. The language of the Belgae may have had some German admixture.

Character, civilization, and mode of life. The Gauls were a lively race, fond of boasting, curious, quick to learn, quarrelsome among themselves, but generous and sympathetic. Caesar often speaks of their changeableness. They were prone to excess in eating and drinking. They loved to deck themselves out with golden ornaments. Their ordinary clothing consisted of a woolen shirt or tunic, trousers, and a colored cloak, probably somewhat like a Scottish plaid. Their houses were generally of timber or wattlework, round, and covered with thatch. They had some skill in mechanic arts, such as bridge-building and other kinds of engineering. They had passed so far from the barbarian stage that they even had a crude literature, art, and philosophy of their own. The Celtae were more civilized than the Belgae. The Aquitani were comparatively unimportant, and less is known of them than of the other Gauls.

[1] *B.G.* 2. 4.

The Gauls were brave in battle. The Belgae especially had great repute among the other Gauls for military prowess, because they alone had successfully resisted the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutoni.[1] The Gauls were full of fiery impetuosity, but lacked endurance, and hence were at a disadvantage with the smaller and more wiry Romans. Their weapons were huge

Military spirit.



GALLIC HOUSES

swords and lances, and they made comparatively little use of defensive armor. Cavalry formed a large part of their fighting strength. The time had been when they carried their arms across the Rhine into Germany, but in the first century before Christ the tide of invasion was running the other way. There had been a marked decline of martial spirit, due partly to the corrupting influences coming from the Roman province. The

[1] Cf. *B. G.* 2. 4.



A GALLIC SOLDIER

Greek culture which at an early period pervaded southern Gaul from Massilia and the other Greek settlements had been partially replaced by a vicious sort of Roman culture.

Population. The population of Gaul was very numerous. Napoleon III estimated that in Caesar's time the country had more than seven million inhabitants. They were divided into many tribes,—sixty, according to one authority, over three hundred, according to another. The apparent discrepancy is due to the fact that some tribes were subdivided, and the name of a large tribe often covered smaller dependent tribes.

Political condition. There was no national unity, though some of the larger tribes exercised a virtual sovereignty over others. Each tribe seems earlier to have had its king and its council of elders, which Caesar calls a senate; but at the time of which Caesar writes most tribes had deposed their kings and were governed by elective magistrates. The government was, however, oligarchical rather than democratic, and the deposed kings or their descendants always stood ready to seize any opportunity of recovering the throne. Hence the states were rent continually by party spirit. Caesar often found this circumstance favorable to his own purposes, since by espousing the cause of one party he could use it in gaining control of the state.

Classes. Caesar speaks of three classes among the Gauls,—the druids, the knights, and the common people.[1] The last were of small account politically, being in general little better than serfs. The knights, *equites*, formed a military class, a kind of order of nobility. The druids had charge of religious matters.

Druidism. Of the religion, druidism, not much is known in detail. A long and severe course of training, sometimes lasting twenty years, was required of those who would become druids.[2] A great part of the training consisted in committing to memory verses containing the ethical and theological precepts of the religion. The druids taught the doctrine of the immortality of the soul and its passage from one body to another. Magic

[1] *B.G.* 6. 13. [2] Cf. *B.G.* 6. 13 and 14.

and human sacrifices formed a part of their ritual. The power of the druids, even in temporal matters, was very great. They acted as judges, and their decisions, enforced by the prestige of religion, were almost universally obeyed. In the determining of political movements, too, it was natural that their influence should be strong. Caesar found the help of the druid Diviciacus of great value to him, but more often, no doubt, druidical influences worked against the Romans. In fact, in this state religion rested the germ which under more favorable conditions might have developed into a form of national unity.

We learn from other writers that there were three orders of druids: the minstrels, who celebrated in verse the heroes of the race; the diviners, whose function it was to penetrate into the future and to interpret the mysteries of nature; the druids proper, who busied themselves with the higher philosophy and ethics of their religion. The strong arm of the Roman government diminished the power of the druids, changed many features of druidism, and put an end to human sacrifice. Yet traces and reminders of old forms and ceremonies long remained, and perhaps have never wholly disappeared.

Effects of Caesar's conquest.

The story of Caesar's conquest of Gaul must have had for his countrymen an interest very similar to that the Spaniards felt, and we still feel, in reading of the conquest of Mexico by Cortez or that of Peru by Pizarro. The effects of the conquest of Gaul were far greater than those of these latter-day conquests. It formed a step in the Romanization of southern and western Europe, which had already begun. After Caesar's time Transalpine Gaul remained generally peaceful. From 27 B.C. it embraced four provinces: the southern part, *Gallia Narbonensis;* the central part, *Gallia Lugdunensis;* the northern and northeastern part, *Belgica;* the southwestern part, as far north as the Loire, *Aquitania*. Gradually Latin became the language of the country. As the power of Rome became firmly fixed and Roman settlers arrived in great numbers, Roman forms of local government, Roman art, science, and literature became

established. New cities were founded, and those already existing were more or less completely transformed. Military roads traversed the country, and bridges spanned the streams. Aqueducts, arches, and temples were built on Roman models. Later, when Christianity became the religion of Rome, it extended itself to Gaul as well as to other parts of the Roman world. As time passed on, the Latin language developed into French, and mingled Gauls and Romans became the French people. Though France is still Gallic in many of its habits and ways of thinking, it is essentially a 'Latin nation.'

Britain. — To the early Greeks and Romans the existence of Britain was unknown. Even down to Caesar's time little was known of it except its name and, rather vaguely, its situation. Caesar is the first ancient writer who gives us any definite information regarding the land and its people.

The people of Britain.

Some of the inhabitants of Britain were Celts, but there were also non-Celtic inhabitants. The Britons were rather less civilized than the Gauls, and the tribes of the interior and the north were nearer a savage state than those of the southern coast. They practised a rude kind of agriculture, and knew something of boat-building and navigation. Mining was carried on, and tin was one of the principal articles of export. The chief fighting strength of the country lay in men trained to use war-chariots. The Britons dyed their bodies with woad, which produced a blue color, making them more fear-inspiring in battle and taking to some extent the place of clothing. The country was thickly populated, and the houses were similar to those of Gaul. Caesar tells us that the 'towns' of the Britons were mere walled spaces in the forest, into which they were accustomed to betake themselves to escape the invading enemy.[1] The morals of the people were in a rather primitive state, and cannibalism is said to have been not unknown. The religion of the country was druidism, and here, as in

[1] *B.G.* 5. 21.

Gaul, druids played a prominent part in the life of the people. The Gauls believed that druidism had been brought to their country from Britain.[1]

Caesar's expeditions to Britain were barren of immediate results. Not until a century later did the Romans again invade the island. They finally succeeded in conquering the greater part of it, and the country remained a Roman province for about four hundred years; but Roman influence was never so strong in Britain as in Gaul, and when it was removed, its effects in large measure disappeared from the life of the people.

Germany. — Germany lay just across the Rhine from Gaul. Its boundaries towards the east were to the Romans altogether indefinite. In earlier times no distinction had been made by Greek and Roman writers between the Gauls and the Germans. In Caesar's time the German was regarded as a kind of exaggerated Gaul, being bigger, fiercer, and more warlike than the latter. In reality the Germanic race and language differed much from the Celtic, though they had a certain kinship with each other.

The Germanic race.

Some of the Germans had advanced beyond barbarism, and practised agriculture and the raising of cattle. Private ownership of land was, however, unknown, and Caesar tells us that none were allowed to dwell longer than one year in the same place.[2] The Germans lived largely on milk and the flesh of cattle, and were clothed chiefly in garments made of skins. They were a virtuous and a hospitable people, but given to excess in eating and drinking. They were brave in battle and, like the Gauls, relied on the effect of a fierce attack. A distinctive feature of their military organization was their system of mingling cavalry and infantry. Caesar speaks with admiration of this system,[3] and made some use of it in his own army.[4]

German civilization and customs.

The Germans were divided into tribes, some of them having kings or princes. Local authority was administered in districts

Political condition.

[1] Cf. *B. G.* 6. 13.
[2] *B. G.* 4. 1 and 6. 22.
[3] *B. G.* 1. 48.
[4] Cf. *B. G.* 7. 13 and 65.

(*pagi*) by local magistrates. The germs of democratic government may be traced in a council of chiefs and a council of the people.

According to Caesar, the religion of the Germans was not druidism. He says that they worshiped only such divinities as could be apprehended by the senses, or those from which they received aid, as the Sun, Fire, the Moon.[1] According to Tacitus and other writers, the Germans were a very religious people and their priests were very powerful. **Religion.**

ROMAN MILITARY ORGANIZATION IN CAESAR'S TIME

The Army. — The original Roman army was the legion (*legio*), consisting, according to tradition, of three thousand men. As the power of Rome increased, the number of her soldiers increased, and the army came to be made up of several legions. **The legio**

The constitution of the legion in Caesar's time appears in the following table: —

2 centuries = 1 maniple (*manipulus*).
3 maniples = 1 cohort (*cohors*).
10 cohorts = 1 legion.

The century (*centuria*, *ordo*) ought by the derivation of the word (*centum*, 'hundred') to have contained 100 men. That was the original number, and may have been looked upon as the normal number. Thus the legion would contain 6000 men. But Caesar's legions were smaller than this. They appear seldom to have numbered more than 4000 men, often less. Perhaps we may estimate the average century at 60 men. **The centu**

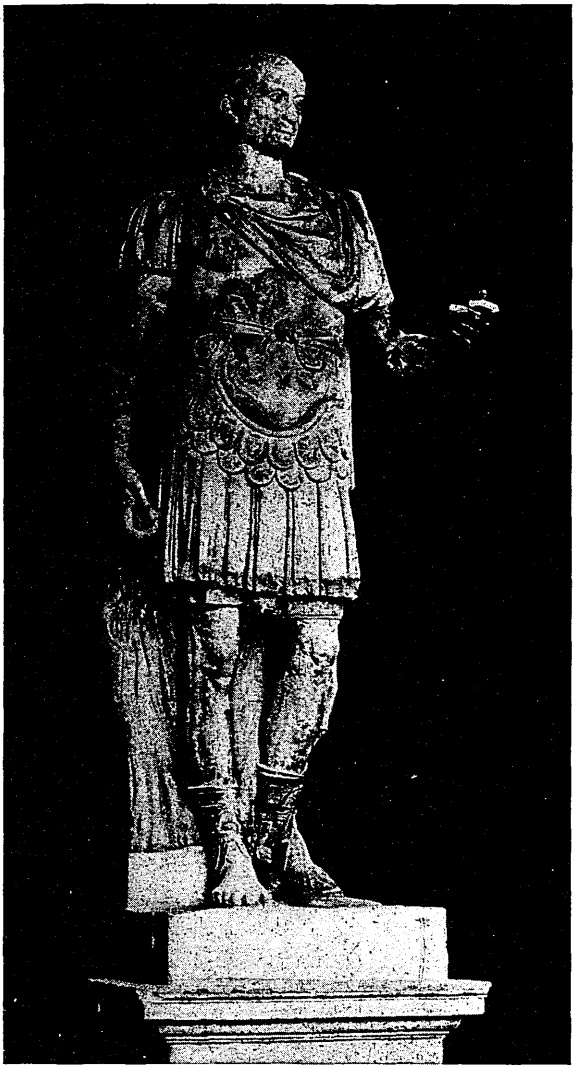
The regular commander of an army in Italy was one of the consuls. The governor of a province naturally would command

[1] *B.G.* 6. 21.

the army in that province. As possessor of the *imperium*, the
Imperator. specially conferred authority to command, the commander of an army was *imperator;* but it was not customary, perhaps not strictly legal, for him to assume that title as a mark of honor until after an important victory. After his defeat of the Helvetii Caesar was regularly styled *imperator.* Only the commander-in-chief could be *imperator.* He wore a purple cloak called *paludamentum.*

Next in rank to the governor, though a civil, not a military
Quaestor. officer, was the *quaestor.* Several *quaestores* were elected each year at Rome, and each governor of a province was accompanied by one of them. The *quaestor* had charge of the finances of the province and army, discharging the duties of a treasurer and a quartermaster-general. Caesar occasionally assigned his *quaestor* to a military command.

Legati. The military officers next to the general were called *legati. Legatus* is commonly translated 'lieutenant,' but the legates were very different from lieutenants in modern armies. They were assistants to the general, a sort of staff, and might be assigned to specific duties, to the command of a legion or of a number of legions, but had no independent authority. The legates were often men of considerable military ability and experience. The number which a general might have was fixed by the senate, which also had the appointment of them, though usually the wishes of the general himself were respected in the appointment. In the latter part of the Gallic War Caesar had ten legates. Several of these gained distinction in the field. Labienus was the most able and trusted of all, though he abandoned Caesar when the latter declared war against the senate. Quintus Cicero, brother of the orator, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, and others are mentioned by Caesar with commendation. Caesar apparently originated the custom of assigning a legate to each legion, at first merely as his personal representative, but later as commander of the legion. The legates were regularly of senatorial rank.



CAESAR AS *IMPERATOR*

(From the statue in the Palazzo dei Conservatori, Rome)

the army in that province. As possessor of the *imperium*, the
Imperator. specially conferred authority to command, the commander of an army was *imperator;* but it was not customary, perhaps not strictly legal, for him to assume that title as a mark of honor until after an important victory. After his defeat of the Helvetii Caesar was regularly styled *imperator*. Only the commander-in-chief could be *imperator*. He wore a purple cloak called *paludamentum*.

Next in rank to the governor, though a civil, not a military
Quaestor. officer, was the *quaestor*. Several *quaestores* were elected each year at Rome, and each governor of a province was accompanied by one of them. The *quaestor* had charge of the finances of the province and army, discharging the duties of a treasurer and a quartermaster-general. Caesar occasionally assigned his *quaestor* to a military command.

Legati. The military officers next to the general were called *legati*. *Legatus* is commonly translated 'lieutenant,' but the legates were very different from lieutenants in modern armies. They were assistants to the general, a sort of staff, and might be assigned to specific duties, to the command of a legion or of a number of legions, but had no independent authority. The legates were often men of considerable military ability and experience. The number which a general might have was fixed by the senate, which also had the appointment of them, though usually the wishes of the general himself were respected in the appointment. In the latter part of the Gallic War Caesar had ten legates. Several of these gained distinction in the field. Labienus was the most able and trusted of all, though he abandoned Caesar when the latter declared war against the senate. Quintus Cicero, brother of the orator, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, and others are mentioned by Caesar with commendation. Caesar apparently originated the custom of assigning a legate to each legion, at first merely as his personal representative, but later as commander of the legion. The legates were regularly of senatorial rank.



CAESAR AS *IMPERATOR*

(From the statue in the Palazzo dei Conservatori, Rome)

Tribuni militum.

The tribunes of the soldiers (*tribuni militum*) seem usually to have been of equestrian rank. They were appointed in part by the general, in part by the people. Appointments were often made for political reasons, reasons of friendship, and the like. A general might pay a delicate compliment to his creditor, and incidentally perhaps secure an extension of credit, by giving a tribuneship to the creditor's son. Hence many tribunes proved of no great service in war, and in times of actual danger some were worse than useless.[1] Each legion had six tribunes. They looked after arms and equipments; they presided over trials for military offenses; they saw to the selection of suitable places for camps and to the building of these; they formed a medium of communication between the general and his soldiers; sometimes they commanded cohorts or groups of cohorts. In earlier times the tribunes had more power, but as appointments came to depend on politics or favoritism, their more important duties were transferred to the legates.

The centurion.

Of great importance from a military point of view were the centurions (*centuriones*). These were soldiers who had especially distinguished themselves and therefore had been selected for command. Strength and stature were required in a centurion, bravery and sobriety, as well as skill in fighting and ability to enforce discipline. Each maniple, containing two centuries, had two centurions. Of these, one ranked higher than the other and in effect commanded the entire maniple. In case of his death or disability the maniple still had a commander in the person of the other centurion.

Promotion of centurions.

Appointment to a centurionship was a reward of merit, and centurions were advanced according to a regular system of promotion. What the system was is uncertain; but just as soldiers passed from lower to higher cohorts until they reached the first cohort, which thus contained the best troops in the legion, so centurions passed in some order from lower to higher cohorts, and from lower to higher maniples within the cohort.

[1] Cf. *B.G.* 1. 39.

Primi ordines. The six centurions of the first cohort probably constituted the *primi ordines*, or *centuriones primorum ordinum*, frequently mentioned. The first centurion of the first maniple of this *Primipilus.* cohort was called *primipilus*, and he sometimes virtually commanded the legion in action. With the position of *primipilus* the promotion of the centurion regularly ended. He was not fitted by birth or education for the positions of tribune and legate.

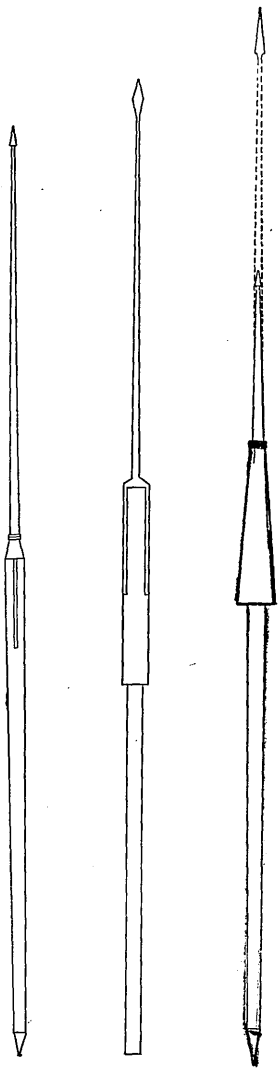
Praefecti. The *praefecti* did not belong to any of the foregoing classes of officers. The term is sometimes loosely used to denote subordinate officers appointed to special commands. By Caesar it is generally applied to the officers of the auxiliary troops or of the cavalry.

The legionary soldier. The regular soldier (*miles legionarius*) was always a Roman citizen, though Caesar enrolled in his armies some who did not become citizens until after enlistment. In early times soldiers were enrolled for short periods or for special emergencies. Later, military service came to be regarded as a special trade or occupation. Twenty years was set as the limit of service, though this term was often exceeded under the empire. After the expiration of his term a soldier sometimes reëntered the *Evocati.* service as an *evocatus* on the invitation of the general. *Evocati* had many privileges and immunities, being generally exempt from all duties except actual fighting.

Training. The training of the Roman soldier was severe. He was obliged to become as proficient in the use of his ax and shovel as in that of his sword and javelin. The simpler building and engineering tools were familiar to him. Though serving on foot, he could at a pinch acquit himself creditably on horseback. This versatility, controlled by a considerable rigidity of discipline, made Roman legions a match for armies much superior to them in numbers and composed of soldiers surpassing in both size and strength their Roman opponents.

Clothing and armor. The soldier wore a coarse, sleeveless tunic, and had a woolen cloak (*sagum*) to protect him from cold and wet. On

his feet were heavy sandals (*caligae*). Breeches were worn in the first century after Christ, but probably not in Caesar's time. The *lorica*, a jacket made in early times of leather, afterwards of iron rings like a coat of mail, protected the soldier's body. He probably wore a metal greave (*ocrea*) on his right shin. His head was protected in battle by a helmet (*galea*) of leather strengthened with metal, and provided with a device (*insigne*) which could easily be put on when battle was about to begin. The shield (*scutum*) was made of wood, and was generally rectangular, but with a slightly cylindrical curvature. It was covered with leather or with iron plates and strengthened with iron at top and bottom. At the middle of the outside surface was an iron boss (*umbo*) which made the shield stronger and served to turn aside blows falling upon it. The soldier's offensive weapons were javelin and sword. The javelin (*pilum*) had a round or square wooden shaft four to four and one half feet long, with an iron head and neck projecting two feet or more beyond the shaft. The neck was of soft iron, so that it bent easily, rendering the weapon useless for a return throw. The weight of this weapon was considerable. The sword (*gladius*) was short and pointed, and was used chiefly for stabbing, though it had two cutting edges. It hung usually at the right



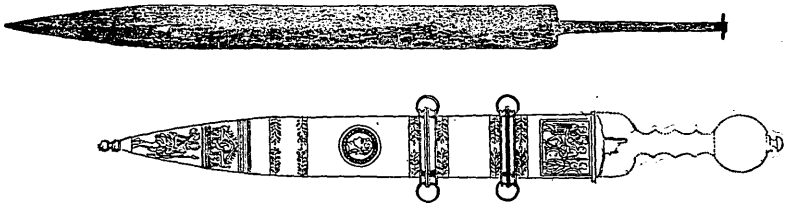
PILA

Arms.

side, suspended by a leather strap (*balteus*) passing over the left shoulder.

Pay and rations.

Shortly before the Civil War Caesar raised the pay of his soldiers to 225 *denarii* (about $40) per year. Previously it had been about half this sum. From the soldier's pay was deducted the cost of rations, clothing, and equipments. The ration was four *modii* (about a bushel) of grain (*frumentum*) per month. The grain was usually wheat, sometimes barley. It was ground in a hand-mill and either baked into bread or boiled into a sort of paste by the soldier himself. Other articles could be obtained by foraging, and luxuries could be



GLADIUS AND *VAGINA*

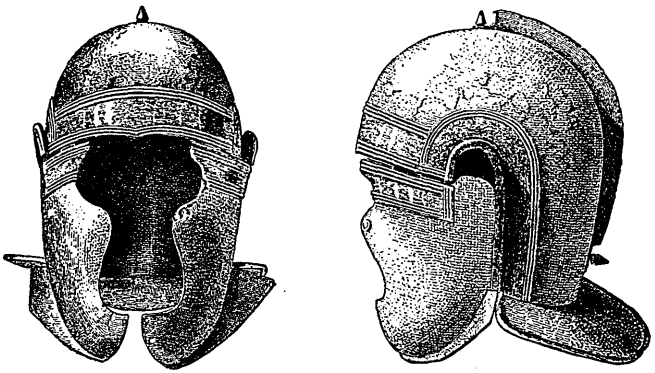
purchased of traders following the army. Prices were low, and the soldier, if he chose, could no doubt save a considerable part of his pay. Gifts and plunder increased his remuneration, and when his term of service expired, a soldier usually received a grant of land or money, or both. The pay of a centurion was double that of a common soldier.

Caesar's legions.

On his arrival in Transalpine Gaul Caesar found there one legion. Three others were wintering at Aquileia in the nearer province. These four were numbered VII, VIII, IX, and X. He brought the three from Aquileia and levied two more, XI and XII, in Cisalpine Gaul. After the campaigns of the first year he levied two more legions, XIII and XIV. These eight legions made up his army until 54 B.C., when probably [1] another legion, XV, was enrolled. In the winter of this year one legion

[1] See notes on *B.G.* 5. 24.

and five cohorts were annihilated, and five cohorts were probably used to fill gaps in the remaining legions. The legion entirely destroyed appears to have been XV, and the ten cohorts to have formed XIV. After this disaster Caesar borrowed a legion from Pompey and raised two others. The new ones were no doubt numbered XIV and XV; the borrowed legion was numbered I in Pompey's army, but was very likely identical with Caesar's VI, mentioned by the author of the eighth book. Thus in the last years of the war Caesar had ten legions (eleven, if I and VI were not the same).



CASSIS

Auxiliary troops and cavalry.

Besides the legions, the army contained auxiliary troops and cavalry. The auxiliaries (*auxilia, alarii*) were mostly Gauls, some furnished by allied Gallic states, others raised by the general himself in the province. They were light-armed troops carrying a small, round shield (*parma*) instead of the *scutum*. Caesar had also mercenary troops skilled in the use of special weapons, as bowmen from Crete and slingers from the Balearic Isles. The cavalry (*equitatus, equites*) was composed mostly of Gauls, with some Spanish and German mercenaries. Caesar had sometimes as many as 5000 horsemen. They appear to have worn on their heads regularly a metal helmet (*cassis*), instead

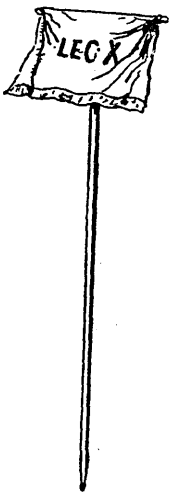
of the *galea*, and they carried one or more light spears (*hastae*). Like the light-armed infantry, they carried *parmae*. They were organized in *turmae*, each *turma* containing about thirty men. Smaller divisions were *decuriae*, of ten men each, commanded by *decuriones*. The senior decurion commanded the whole *turma*. In the eighth book Gaius Volusenus Quadratus is called *praefectus equitum*, meaning perhaps 'commander-in-chief of the cavalry.' But the term *praefectus equitum* was usually applied to the commander of an *ala*, which consisted of ten or twelve *turmae*. The commander-in-chief of the cavalry was usually a Roman,[1] but many of the subordinate officers were natives. Caesar regularly dismissed a part of his cavalry in the fall, to reassemble in the spring.

Non-combatants. There were numerous non-combatants in the army, servants (*calones*), drivers, etc. Traders (*mercatores*) followed the army to buy the booty and to sell to the soldiers articles not provided by the military authorities. A corps of smiths, carpenters, and engineers distinct from the legions seems not to have existed in Caesar's army.

Signa. The standard (*signum*) of the legion was an eagle, usually of silver, mounted on a staff. It was in charge of the *primipilus*, but was usually carried by a soldier specially appointed for the purpose (*aquilifer*). Other *signa* were of various shapes. A favorite device was the representation of a human hand. Often streamers, metallic decorations, or small banners were added. The bearers of these *signa* were called *signiferi*. The maniple had a *signum*, but there seems, at least in Caesar's army, to have been no separate standard for the cohort. The standard of the first maniple of the cohort probably served as a standard for the whole cohort. When the army was encamped, the *signa* were kept in a special place, and were objects of veneration, almost of worship, to the soldiers. The loss of a *signum* in battle was a great disgrace as well as a misfortune. The importance of the standard is indicated by

[1] Cf. *B.G.* 1. 52.

the numerous phrases in which *signum* occurs: for example, *signa inferre* ('advance to the attack'), *signa constituere* ('halt'), *signa convertere* ('wheel'), *a signis discedere* ('leave the ranks').



VEXILLUM

Vexilla. The *vexillum* was a flag, or banner. The raising of a red *vexillum* at the general's tent was the signal to arm for battle. Small bodies of troops sent on an expedition followed a *vexillum*, and *vexilla* were used by auxiliaries and cavalry. Sometimes a *vexillum* was used which had the general's name inscribed on it in purple letters.

Music. As in modern times, signals were given by wind-instruments of brass. There were several kinds of these instruments. The horn (*cornu*) was curved, the trumpet (*tuba*) straight. They signaled the advance or the retreat. The *bucina* was curved, and was used especially to signal the change of watches (*vigiliae*). The *lituus*, straight, but with a crook at the end, gave shrill notes for cavalry signals.


CORNU


TUBA


LITUUS

Length of march.

The Army on the March. — The march ordinarily began early in the morning and ended shortly after noon. A regular day's march was about fifteen miles, but in an emergency an army could accomplish double that distance. Forced marches (*magna itinera*) are often mentioned by Caesar. He tells us[1] that his usual marching column was formed with legions and baggage alternating. In the vicinity of an enemy this order was changed;[2] several legions marched in front, then the baggage of the whole army followed, and a strong guard brought up the rear. Over short distances, when approaching the enemy, the army was sometimes led in battle array. The army on the march was technically called *agmen*, when drawn up in battle array *acies*. The rear of the marching column was called *novissimum agmen*, the van *primum agmen*. Cavalry or light-armed infantry were often sent on in advance to reconnoiter.

Order of march.

Impedimenta.

The heavy baggage (*impedimenta*) was carried on wagons or by pack-animals. It consisted of tents, artillery (*tormenta*), and articles not belonging to the soldier's personal baggage. The term *impedimenta* also included the means of transportation, animals and wagons, and is occasionally used as equivalent to 'beasts of burden.'[3] The soldiers' packs (*sarcinae*) were usually carried suspended from forked sticks. A pack sometimes weighed fifty or sixty pounds. Besides armor, arms, and clothing, the soldier carried his own rations, his hatchet and spade, his cooking-utensils, one or more stakes (*valli*) for the fortification of the camp, and numerous smaller articles. The soldier with his pack was said to be *impeditus*. When he laid it down for the battle, or when he was marching without it, as sometimes happened in the immediate vicinity of the enemy, he was said to be *expeditus*.

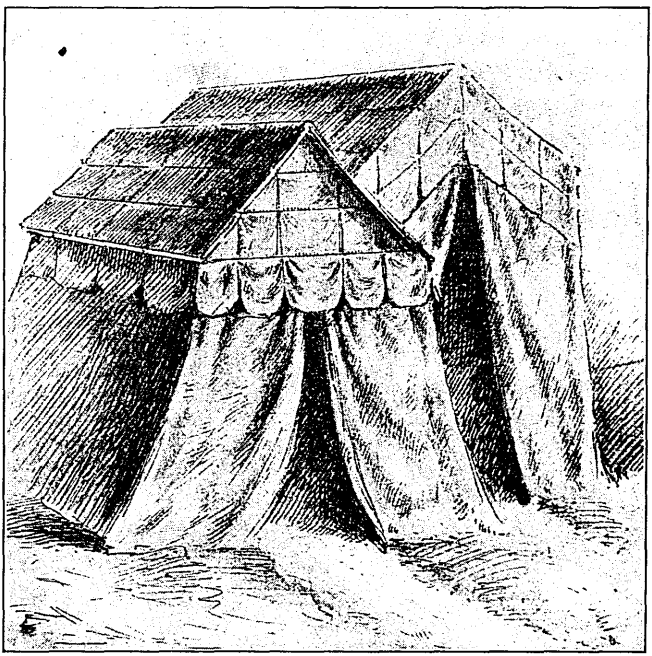
Sarcinae.

The crossing of rivers.

Rivers not more than four or five feet deep could be forded. Deeper rivers were usually bridged. Caesar twice bridged the Rhine, and his bridges, if not perfect models, seem to have served admirably the purpose for which they were built.

[1] *B.G.* 2. 17. [2] Cf. *B.G.* 2. 19. [3] E.g. *B.G.* 7. 45.

The Camp.—When the march of the army began in the morning, a detachment was sent in advance to select a suitable place (*locum idoneum castris deligere*) and lay out a camp (*castra metari*). When the army arrived at the spot selected, usually about noon or somewhat later, the soldiers proceeded



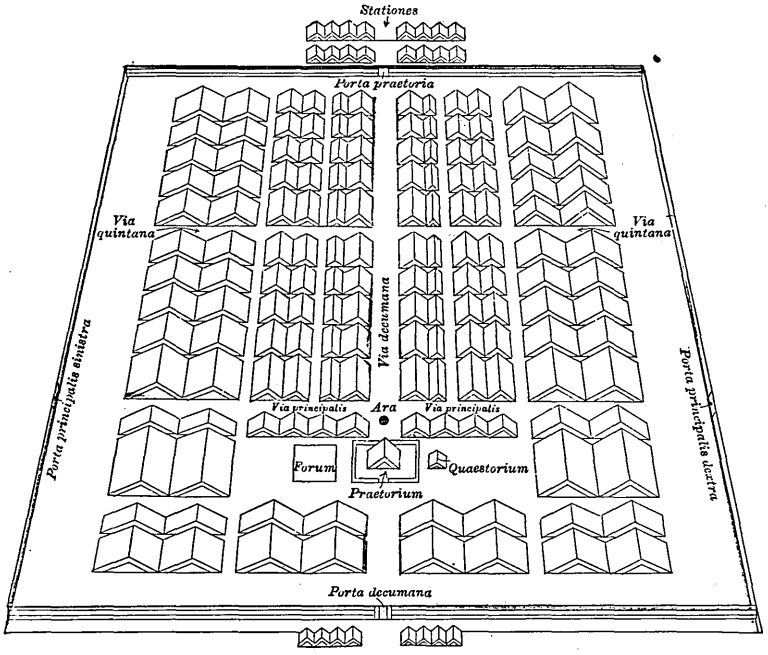
TABERNACULA

at once to the work of fortification (*castra munire*). The place desired was a gently rising slope in the vicinity of water, fuel, and fodder. The camp faced down the slope, and its rear was usually on the summit or near it.

Form of the camp.

The shape of the camp was necessarily somewhat dependent on the nature of the ground, but the usual form was oblong or square. Two lines extending through the camp and intersecting each other at right angles gave, where they crossed the

walls, the four principal gates of the camp. The front gate, in the middle of the wall facing the enemy, was the *porta praetoria;* the one opposite, the *porta decumana.* On the right and left as one faced the *porta praetoria* were the *porta principalis dextra* and the *porta principalis sinistra.* These



CASTRA

were connected by a street 100 feet wide, *via principalis.* There were other streets, broad and narrow. A street started from the *porta praetoria* in the direction of the *porta decumana,* but it was interrupted by the *praetorium.*

Interior arrangement of the camp.

The *praetorium,* the general's headquarters, was near the rear of the camp, and close by were an altar and the *suggestus,* a platform or mound from which the general addressed his soldiers assembled in the *forum.* Around the wall, on the inside, a space of two hundred feet was left clear, that there

might be room for necessary movements of troops within the camp, and that missiles from without might not reach the soldiers in their tents. The tents (*tabernacula*) were usually of leather or skins (*pelles*). Ten soldiers occupied a tent together, constituting a mess (*contubernium*). The details of arrangement of Caesar's camps are unknown, but the accompanying illustration probably represents them approximately.

Fortification of the camp.

The fortifications of the camp consisted of a rampart (*vallum*, *agger*) and a trench (*fossa*) outside the wall. According to a late Roman writer the normal width of the trench was twelve feet, and the depth nine feet. This, if correct in the main, was of course constantly varied. Caesar often gives one dimension of his trenches, without specifying which one. In these cases width at the top is meant. The depth was less important, and probably bore a fixed ratio to the width. These trenches were not ordinarily filled with water. The earth removed in excavation was used in building the rampart. This was often strengthened by sods on the outside, and by logs or brushwood imbedded in the rampart itself. Obviously the size of the rampart would vary with the depth and width of the trench. No doubt it was usually at least six feet in height. The top was made flat, and wide enough to give firm footing for a row of soldiers. Often a parapet (*lorica*) of stakes (*valli*) was placed along the outer edge, to serve as a protection for the soldiers in case of an attack upon the camp. Wooden towers were sometimes built at intervals along the wall and connected by gangways or bridges (*pontes*). The gates were protected by earthworks so built that those entering must expose their right sides, which were unprotected by shields, to the defenders. Winter camps (*hiberna*) differed from summer camps chiefly in being more strongly fortified and in having wooden barracks in place of tents.[1]

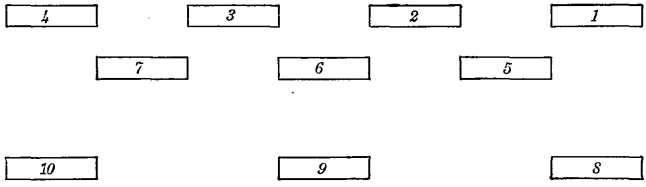
Winter quarters.

Guards.

Pickets (*stationes*) were thrown forward outside the gates in sufficient numbers to provide against surprise. Sometimes

[1] Cf. *B. G.* 3. 29.

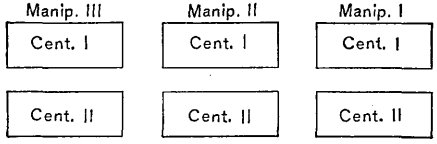
the picket consisted of a single cohort and some cavalry. In times of great danger this force was largely increased. At Avaricum[1] two legions were quartered before the camp. Sentinels (*vigiliae*), who were relieved at regular intervals of three hours (hence the use of *vigilia* as a measure of time), kept guard during the night.



TRIPLEX ACIES

Triplex acies.

The Army in Action.— The usual formation for battle was a triple line (*triplex acies*). When a legion was arranged in triple line, four cohorts stood in the front row, three in the second, and three in the third. The three maniples of a cohort were probably stationed side by side, the first centuries ahead of the second. If the century contained sixty men, the arrangement was very likely fifteen front and four deep. Thus each cohort would have a depth of eight men and a front of forty-five. According to a late writer each soldier had a right-and-left space of three feet in the rank, and the ranks were six feet apart. So, if we allow seven or eight feet between the maniples and a few feet between the centuries of a maniple, a cohort would occupy a rectangle about one hundred and fifty feet by forty-five feet. The space between cohorts may have been equal to the



ARRANGEMENT OF A COHORT

[1] Cf. *B. G.* 7. 24.

width of a cohort. If so, the legion would occupy a space of more than one thousand feet from right to left. In action the soldiers doubtless moved farther apart, filling the space between the cohorts and presenting an unbroken front to the enemy.

The battle.

When the army joined battle with the enemy, the soldiers in the first line discharged their *pila*. Then they rushed forward and with swords drawn continued the battle. The character of the weapons used rendered it necessary that fighting should be at close range; in fact, a battle consisted largely of single combats. When the soldiers of the first line became weary, they fell back, and the soldiers of the second line came forward through the intervals. Thus the two lines alternated, while the third line in the rear acted as a reserve ready to come up at the critical moment. The new recruits usually made up the third line, and thus had an opportunity to become accustomed to battle gradually without being put at first in positions of great danger or responsibility. The standards (*signa*) served as rallying-places for the soldiers. Their position during battle is not known, but probably it was a little behind the first line of cohorts.

The battle was won not so much by brute force as by well organized, persistent attack. When an army was once defeated, especially an army of barbarians, it was seldom necessary to defeat the same soldiers again. When the enemy fled, the light-armed infantry and the cavalry, who formed the wings of the army, started in pursuit. Usually most of the defeated were cut down or captured. Those captured were sometimes paroled, but more often they were either killed or sold as slaves.

Other formations.

Different formations were adopted to meet various emergencies. The wedge (*cuneus*) was used to make an irresistible attack on a particular spot, or to divide the enemy's line. The *orbis* was formed when an army, or a part of one, was attacked on the march. It was easy to change from the order of march usual in the vicinity of an enemy[1] to a condensed mass, circle or square,

[1] See p. 40.

offering equal resistance on all sides. The *testudo*, an arrangement in which the soldiers held their shields overlapped above their heads, was of use chiefly in advancing to attack fortified places, where missiles were likely to be received from overhead.

The favorite battle-ground of the Romans was the slope of a hill, where they could rush down upon the enemy and throw their *pila* downward, thus increasing their force. As already stated, camps were usually located in places which gave this advantage of position in case of attack.

Operations against Fortified Towns. — Many of Caesar's military movements were directed against fortified towns. There were several ways of proceeding against such towns. If the attempt seemed likely to be successful, a sudden attack (*oppugnatio repentina*) was made. While the wall was kept clear of defenders by light-armed troops, archers and slingers, and by the use of *tormenta*, other parts of the attacking army tried to force an entrance into the town by filling up the moats, breaking through the gates, undermining or pulling down the wall, or even sometimes by climbing over it. The attempt was often made before a camp was constructed by the attacking army (*ex itinere oppugnare*).[1]

The assault.

The siege.

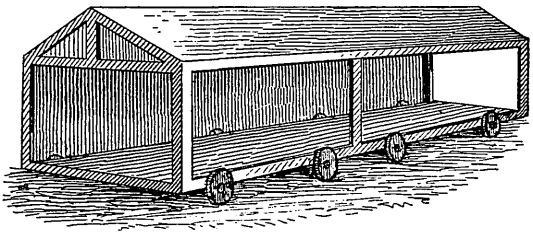
If the place was of considerable strength, a siege (*obsidio*, *obsessio*) might be begun. This often meant starving out the besieged, unless they surrendered before they were reduced to extremities. The town was first surrounded with a series of redoubts (*castella*) connected by lines of intrenchments (*munitiones*). Such a series of works is called in modern times a contravallation. Outside of these works were the forces of the besiegers, sometimes divided up among several camps, to ward off sallies against different points in the line. Sometimes another line of intrenchments was drawn around the outside, to keep off assistance coming to the besieged from without. Thus it was at Alesia.[2]

[1] Cf. *B.G.* 2. 12.

[2] Cf. *B.G.* 7. 74.

A third method of procedure was by special siege-works of attack. This was used against places strongly fortified or difficult of access, and was often combined with the siege proper. The important feature of this method was the building of the

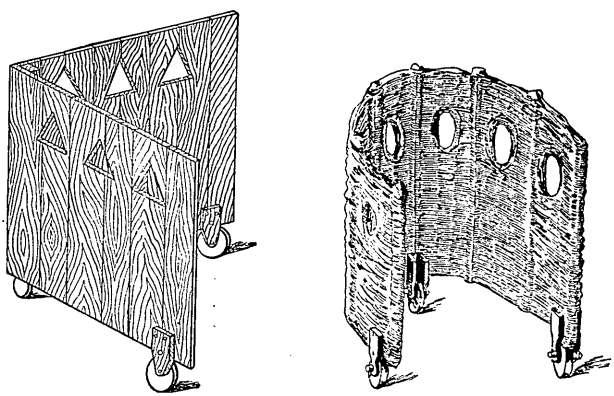
The attack by siege-works.



VINEA

agger. In its usual form this was an elevated roadway, built chiefly of logs. It was begun out of reach of missiles from the wall of the town, and then carried toward the wall, usually at a right angle to it, though sometimes it turned as it ap-

Agger.

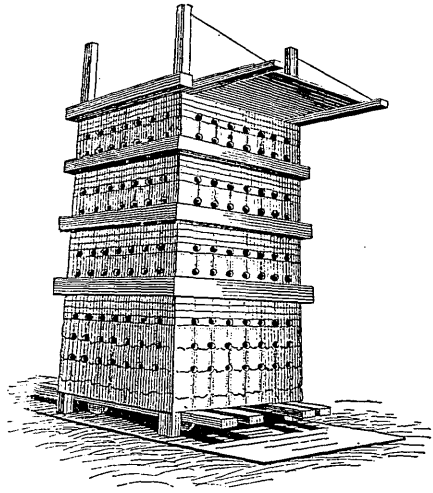


PLUTEI

proached the wall and ran for some distance parallel to the latter. As the building of the *agger* progressed, rows of sheds (*vineae*) open at the ends were placed end to end on the completed portion, forming a covered passage along which material could be brought. In front of those engaged in the work were

Vineae.

Plutei. *plutei*, shield-like protections or screens, made of planks or of woven branches and mounted on wheels or rollers. These, as well as the *vineae*, were often covered with skins, to protect them from fire. As the *agger* was constructed chiefly of wood, it also might be set on fire; accordingly the exposed portions were faced with stone or earth, or covered with skins or wet cloths.



TURRIS

The height and general shape of the *agger* varied of course with the conditions. Usually its upper surface formed a plane leading directly toward the base of the wall. If the town was much elevated above the surrounding country, this plane must have had a considerable upward slope. Sometimes, however, it appears that the upper surface of the *agger* was horizontal, or nearly so. On it

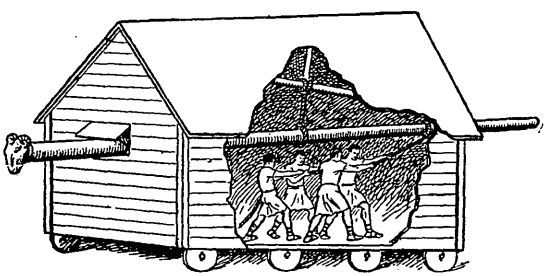
Turris. was built a tower (*turris*), which might be thirty or forty feet square or even larger. This was very solidly made of timber, and was pushed forward on rollers as the *agger* was completed. The tower was built up in stories until it was as high as the wall. In the top of it were soldiers, whose duty it was to clear the wall of defenders, while their companions below filled up the moat and tried to breach the wall. Men working near the wall

Testudines, musculi. were protected by strongly timbered sheds (*testudines*, *musculi*). If the town was on level ground and not difficult of access, sometimes no *agger* was built, but two towers were moved toward the wall on the surface of the ground itself, while between them the soldiers worked to make a breach. On the

agger, or between these towers if no *agger* was built, the soldiers massed, after the breach was made, to deliver the assault.

Some think that the *agger* was made as high as the top of the wall of the town, its purpose being to give a passage for an assaulting column, which might pass from it upon the wall by drawbridges or similar means. Undoubtedly the *agger* was sometimes as high as the wall. It might even carry more than one tower, and have soldiers stationed on it. There may have been a form of *agger* which was built parallel to the wall and carried several towers. But it is not certain that the purpose of these forms was different from that of the form first described. The whole subject is one about which great uncertainty and difference of opinion exist.

Different theories of the *agger*.



ARIES AND *TESTUDO*

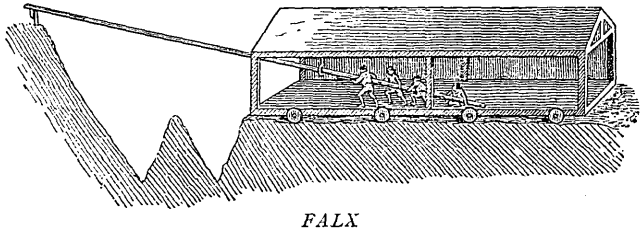
In breaching the wall various instruments and devices might be used. The battering-ram (*aries*) consisted of a heavy log provided with a metallic head, often shaped like a ram's head. It was suspended horizontally by the middle in the interior of a tower or inside a *testudo* or *musculus*. The ram was swung backward and forward to strike the wall with its head. Its length was sometimes more than one hundred feet, and a large number of men were required to work it. The *falx* was somewhat similar, except that instead of a solid head it had a hook to pull off stones from the wall. Walls were often undermined, and sometimes, where the situation permitted, gates were set on fire by the besiegers.

Aries.

Falx.

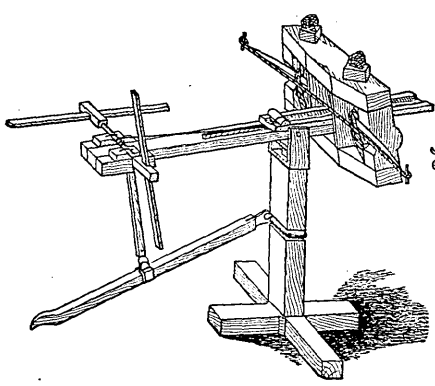
Means and methods of resistance

Various means were used by the besieged to counteract the efforts of the attacking army. Bags of straw or wool were lowered from the wall to deaden the blows of the ram. Great

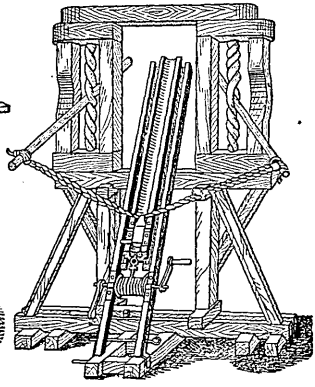


FALX

rocks were rolled down upon the soldiers and their implements. Nooses or huge tongs were let down to catch the *aries* and the *falx*, and either turn them aside or draw them up. Fire-balls,



CATAPULTA



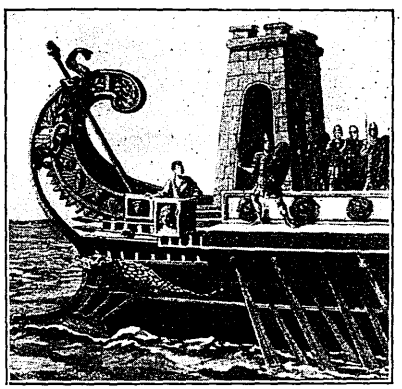
BALLISTA

burning pitch and suet, and blazing arrows were discharged at the *agger* and *turris*. Above all, a continuous shower of missiles was rained upon the attackers.

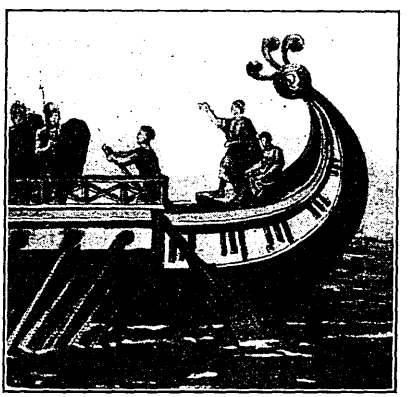
Tormenta.

Both besieged and besiegers were often provided with instruments (*tormenta*) for hurling heavy missiles. These consisted of heavy crossbows with highly elastic strings of sinew or hair.

The *catapulta* discharged huge arrows, either horizontally or with a slight elevation. The *scorpio* was a smaller weapon of a similar kind. The *ballista* threw large stones or beams at a considerable angle. Caesar had *tormenta*, but the Gauls with whom he fought probably did not have them.



PROW OF BIREME



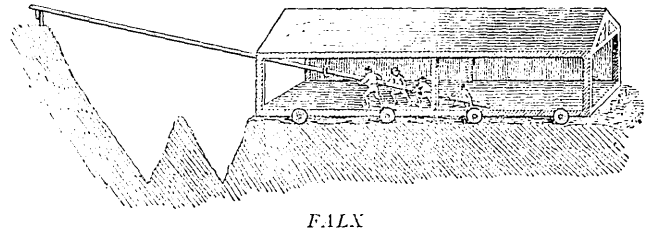
STERN OF TRIREME

The Navy. — Ships of war (*naves longae*) were long and narrow. They were propelled chiefly by oars, though sails also were used. The trireme was the usual type of war-vessel. It had three banks, or rows, of oars, one above another. The ships were steered by rudders (*gubernacula*), huge paddles on either side of the stern. At the prow was the beak (*rostrum*), a piece of timber tipped with bronze or iron, projecting forward near the water-line or sometimes below it. The object of this was to ram the enemy's ship and sink it. Towers were often erected on deck and manned with soldiers in time of battle, and *tormenta* were used. The fighters were regular legionary soldiers temporarily on board. A favorite manœuver was to catch the enemy's ship with grappling-irons, let down a gangway, and board the ship. The fighting then was hand-to-hand, just as in a land-battle.

The trireme.

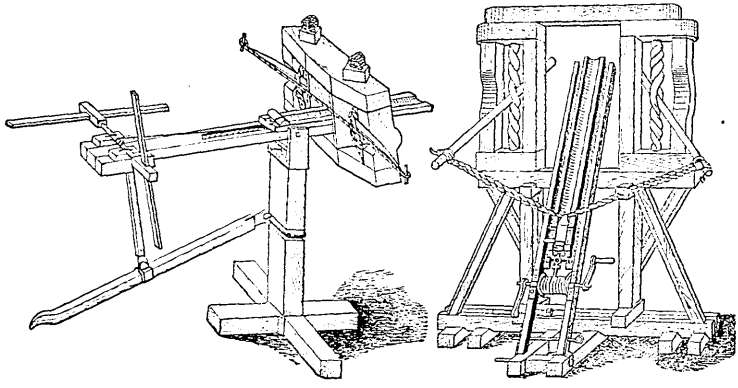
Means and methods of resistance

Various means were used by the besieged to counteract the efforts of the attacking army. Bags of straw or wool were lowered from the wall to deaden the blows of the ram. Great



FALX

rocks were rolled down upon the soldiers and their implements. Nooses or huge tongs were let down to catch the *aries* and the *falx*, and either turn them aside or draw them up. Fire-balls,



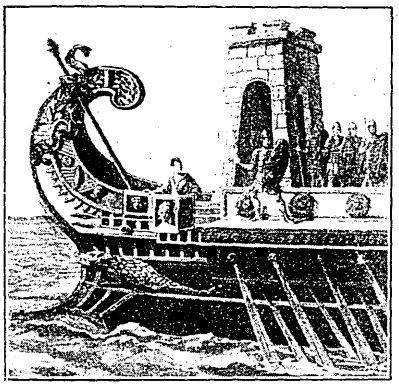
CATAPULTA *BALLISTA*

burning pitch and suet, and blazing arrows were discharged at the *agger* and *turris*. Above all, a continuous shower of missiles was rained upon the attackers.

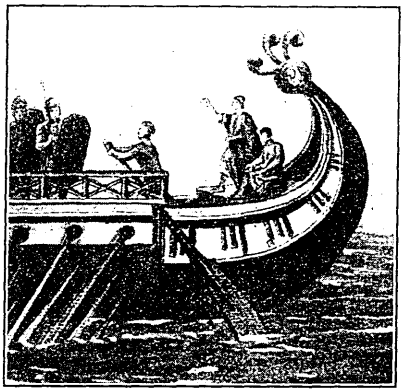
Tormenta.

Both besieged and besiegers were often provided with instruments (*tormenta*) for hurling heavy missiles. These consisted of heavy crossbows with highly elastic strings of sinew or hair.

The *catapulta* discharged huge arrows, either horizontally or with a slight elevation. The *scorpio* was a smaller weapon of a similar kind. The *ballista* threw large stones or beams at a considerable angle. Caesar had *tormenta*, but the Gauls with whom he fought probably did not have them.



PROW OF BIREME



STERN OF TRIREME

The Navy. — Ships of war (*naves longae*) were long and narrow. They were propelled chiefly by oars, though sails also were used. The trireme was the usual type of war-vessel. It had three banks, or rows, of oars, one above another. The ships were steered by rudders (*gubernacula*), huge paddles on either side of the stern. At the prow was the beak (*rostrum*), a piece of timber tipped with bronze or iron, projecting forward near the water-line or sometimes below it. The object of this was to ram the enemy's ship and sink it. Towers were often erected on deck and manned with soldiers in time of battle, and *tormenta* were used. The fighters were regular legionary soldiers temporarily on board. A favorite manœuver was to catch the enemy's ship with grappling-irons, let down a gangway, and board the ship. The fighting then was hand-to-hand, just as in a land-battle.

The trireme.

Other kinds of ships.

Transports (*naves onerariae*) were wider and shorter than ships of war. *Naves actuariae* were vessels propelled by both oars and sails. *Navigia speculatoria* were small, swift vessels used for reconnoitering. Some of the larger ships were completely decked over, but many were open, or decked only at prow and stern.

Books for Reference and Reading

General Histories of Rome

Any standard history covering the period of Caesar's life may be consulted. The following are especially valuable:

Appian: *Roman History*, translated by White.
Arnold: *History of the Later Roman Commonwealth.*
Duruy: *History of Rome and of the Roman People.*
Ferrero: *Greatness and Decline of Rome.*
How-Leigh: *History of Rome to the Death of Caesar.*
Ihne: *History of Rome.*
Liddell: *History of Rome to the Establishment of the Empire.*
Long: *Decline of the Roman Republic.*
Merivale: *Fall of the Roman Republic.*
Merivale: *General History of Rome.*
Merivale: *History of the Romans under the Empire.*
Mommsen: *History of Rome.*
Pelham: *Outlines of Roman History.*
Shuckburgh: *History of Rome to the Battle of Actium.*
Taylor: *Constitutional and Political History of Rome.*

Histories of Countries Other than Rome

Church: *Story of Early Britain.*
Guizot: *History of France.*
Hug-Stead: *Story of Switzerland.*

MONTGOMERY: *Leading Facts of French History.*
SCARTH: *Roman Britain.*
TAYLOR: *History of Germany.*

Biographies and Special Histories

ALLCROFT: *The Making of the Monarchy.*
BARING-GOULD: *The Tragedy of the Caesars.*
BOISSIER: *Cicero and His Friends.*
CAESAR: *Civil War*, translated by Long.
DE QUINCEY: *The Caesars.*
DODGE: *Caesar.*
FORSYTH: *Life of Marcus Tullius Cicero.*
FOWLER: *Julius Caesar and the Foundation of the Roman Imperial System.*
FROUDE: *Caesar, a Sketch.*
HOLMES: *Ancient Britain and the Invasions of Julius Caesar.*
HOLMES: *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul.*
LIDDELL: *Life of Julius Caesar.*
MERIVALE: *The Roman Triumvirates.*
NAPOLEON III: *History of Julius Caesar.*
OMAN: *Seven Roman Statesmen of the Later Republic.*
PLUTARCH: *Lives of Illustrious Men: Caesar.*
STRACHAN-DAVIDSON: *Cicero and the Fall of the Roman Republic.*
SUETONIUS: *Lives of the Twelve Caesars*, translated by Thomson and Forester.
TACITUS: *Germania* and *Agricola*, translated by Church and Brodribb.
TROLLOPE: *The Commentaries of Caesar.*
TROLLOPE: *Life of Cicero.*

Maps and Illustrations

BAUMEISTER: *Bilder aus dem Griechischen und Römischen Altertum.*

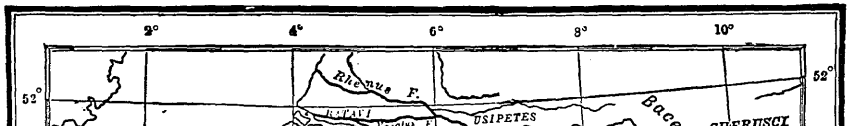
GURLITT: *Anschauungstafeln zu Caesars Bellum Gallicum.*
HILL: *Illustrations of School Classics.*
KAMPEN: *Quindecim ad Caesaris de Bello Gallico Commentarios Tabulae.*
KIEPERT: *Atlas Antiquus.*
OEHLER: *Bilder-Atlas zu Caesars Büchern de Bello Gallico.*
RHEINHARD: *Album des Classischen Altertums.*
SCHREIBER: *Atlas of Classical Antiquities.*

Histories of Roman Literature

BROWNE: *History of Roman Classical Literature.*
CRUTTWELL: *History of Roman Literature.*
MACKAIL: *Latin Literature.*
SIMCOX: *History of Latin Literature.*
TEUFFEL-SCHWABE: *History of Roman Literature.*

Miscellaneous

APPACH: *C. Julius Caesar's British Expeditions.*
CHAPMAN: *Caesar and Pompey.*
CHURCH: *Roman Life in the Days of Cicero.*
DAVIS: *A Friend of Caesar.*
GOW: *Companion to School Classics.*
GUHL-KONER: *The Life of the Greeks and Romans.*
HARRINGTON: *Helps to the Intelligent Study of College Preparatory Latin.*
JUDSON: *Caesar's Army.*
LUCAN: *Pharsalia,* translated by Ridley.
MIDDLETON-MILLS: *Student's Companion to Latin Authors.*
MONTESQUIEU: *Grandeur and Decadence of the Romans.*
SCOTT: *Portraitures of Julius Caesar.*
SEELEY: *Roman Imperialism.*
SHAKSPERE: *Julius Caesar.*
VINE: *Caesar in Kent.*
WILLARD: *Julius Caesar, an Historical Tragedy.*


2°
4°
6°
8°
10°
52°
50°
48°
46°
44°
42°
Rhenus F.
Vacalus F.
Mosa F.
BATAVI
TUNGRI
TREVERI
NERVII
MENAPII
CEUTRONES
AMBIVARITI
EBURONES
Isarna F.
Scaldis F.
Sabis F.
Axona F.
Matrona F.
Sequana F.
Liger F.
Arar F.
Dubis F.
Rhodanus F.
Druentia F.
Varus F.
Durance F.
Isara F.
Vesubris F.
Mosella F.
Rhenus F.
Ticinus F.
Addua F.
Athesis F.
Brenta F.
Silis F.
Tagliamento F.
Timavus F.
Arsia F.
Formio F.
Aesis F.
Metaurus F.
Rubicon F.
Arnus F.
Tiber F.
Liris F.
Volturnus F.
Silarus F.
Aufidus F.
Bradanus F.
Casuentus F.
Frento F.
Tifernus F.
Sagrus F.
Aternus F.
Matrinus F.
Vomanus F.
Tavus F.
Atesis F.
Plavis F.
Piave F.
Silis F.
Liquentia F.
Romanis F.
Tagliamento F.
Natisone F.
Frigid

BOOK I

The Geography of Gaul

I. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partīs trīs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cottīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septemtriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur, pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septemtriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montīs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septemtriōnēs.

The Helvetian War

The Helvetii, influenced by Orgetorix, prepare to migrate. Orgetorix forms a conspiracy.

II. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus rēgnī

cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent; perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī. Id hōc facilius iīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fīēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnīs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

III. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sēmentīs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant. Orgetorīx dux dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante



COINS OF ORGETORIX AND DUMNORIX

habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī

acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset; nōn esse dubium quīn tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trīs potentissimōs ac fīrmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

Orgetorix is accused of treason; his death.

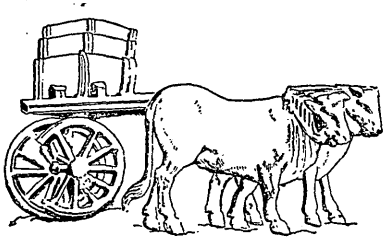
IV. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat ut īgnī cremārētur. Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnīs clientīs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam dīceret sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

Preparations for migration go on. Routes by which the Helvetii may leave their home.

V. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut domum reditiōnis spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs fīnitimīs utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum

Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi ascīscunt.

VI. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur (mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent); alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea quod inter fīnīs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est, proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus, Ģenava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnīs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlīs L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.



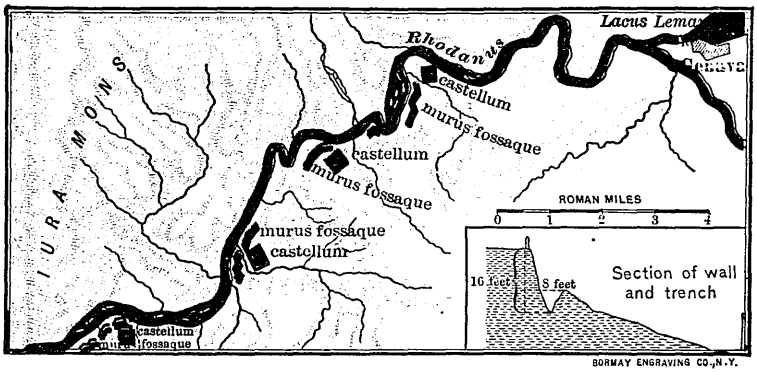
CARRUS

Caesar builds fortifications along the Rhone, and prevents the Helvetii from crossing the river.

VII. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet rescindī. Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi

esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciendī temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Īdūs Aprīlīs reverterentur.

VIII. Interea eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnīs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum XVIII mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs

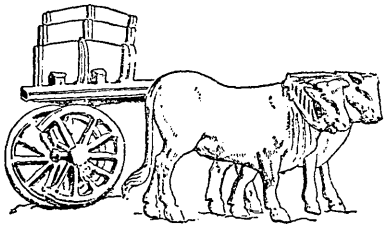


CAESAR'S INTRENCHMENTS ALONG THE RHONE

quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī nāvibus iūnctīs

Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi ascīscunt.

VI. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur (mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent); alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea quod inter fīnīs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est, proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus, Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnīs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlīs L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.



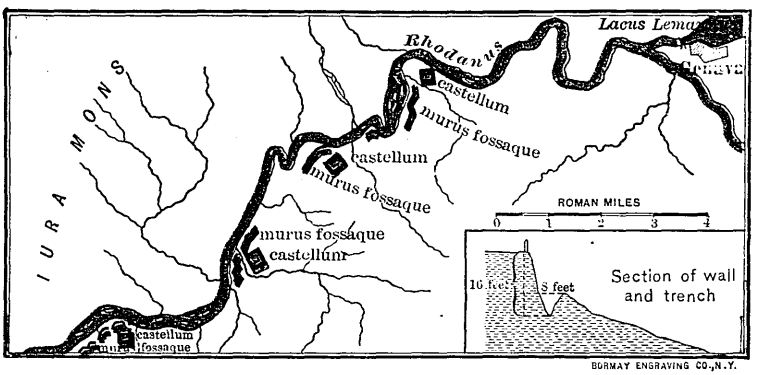
CARRUS

Caesar builds fortifications along the Rhone, and prevents the Helvetii from crossing the river.

VII. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet rescindī. Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibī

esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciendī temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Īdūs Aprīlīs reverterentur.

VIII. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnīs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum XVIII mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs



CAESAR'S INTRENCHMENTS ALONG THE RHONE

quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī nāvibus iūnctīs

ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

The Helvetii obtain permission to pass through the country of the Sequani. Caesar hurriedly raises an army.

IX. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit, et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnīs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit, — Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

X. Caesarī nūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnīs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trīs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hībernīs ēdūcit, et quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpīs erat cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs locīs superiōribus occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnīs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde

in Allobrogum fīnīs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

The Haedui, Ambarri, and Allobroges ask for help.

XI. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnīs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Haeduōrum fīnīs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: 'Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, līberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint.' Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

Part of the Helvetii cross the Arar. The Tigurini are cut to pieces by Caesar.

XII. Flūmen est Ārar, quod per fīnīs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trīs iam partīs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantīs adgressus magnam partem eōrum concīdit reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset, pa-

trum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

The Helvetii send an embassy to Caesar. His terms are rejected.

XIII. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō ēius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: 'Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod improvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī quī flūmen trānsīssent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret. Sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.'

XIV. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: 'Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre, sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quārē timēret neque

sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur



A ROMAN CAVALRYMAN
(From a gravestone)

quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrārentur eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālīs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et

diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum.' Dīvicō respondit: 'Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōnsuērint; ēius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem.' Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

A cavalry skirmish.

XV. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant quās in partīs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt, et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter xv iter fēcērunt utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

The Haedui are slow in furnishing grain.

XVI. Interim cottīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent pūblicē pollicitī flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septemtriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat propterea ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī; cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere. Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et

diem īnstāre quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat (quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem), graviter eōs accūsat quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus ab iīs nōn sublevētur, praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit; multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

XVII. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: 'Esse nōn nūllōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant quod dēbeant: Praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre, neque dubitāre dēbēre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab īsdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.'

Evidence of the treachery of Dumnorix is presented to Caesar.

XVIII. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat, sed quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: 'Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrīs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, propterea

quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse; ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam adfīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā dēspērāre.' Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque ēius equitibus (nam equitātuī quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant Dumnorīx praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

XIX. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per fīnīs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitātis sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret. Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam nē ēius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et cottīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur; simul com-

monefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta et ostendit quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cognitā statuat vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

Diviciacus intercedes for Dumnorix, and Caesar pardons him.

XX. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: 'Scire sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.' Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī ēius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem ēius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnīs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī cūstōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur scīre possit.

Caesar plans to attack the Helvetii; the fright of Considius.

XXI. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostīs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus quī cognōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus quī iter cognōverant summum iugum montis ascen-

dere iubet; quid suī cōnsilī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

XXII. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostīs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proelioque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē quō cōnsuērat intervāllō hostīs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

Caesar turns aside towards Bibracte; the Helvetii follow.

XXIII. Postrīdiē ēius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

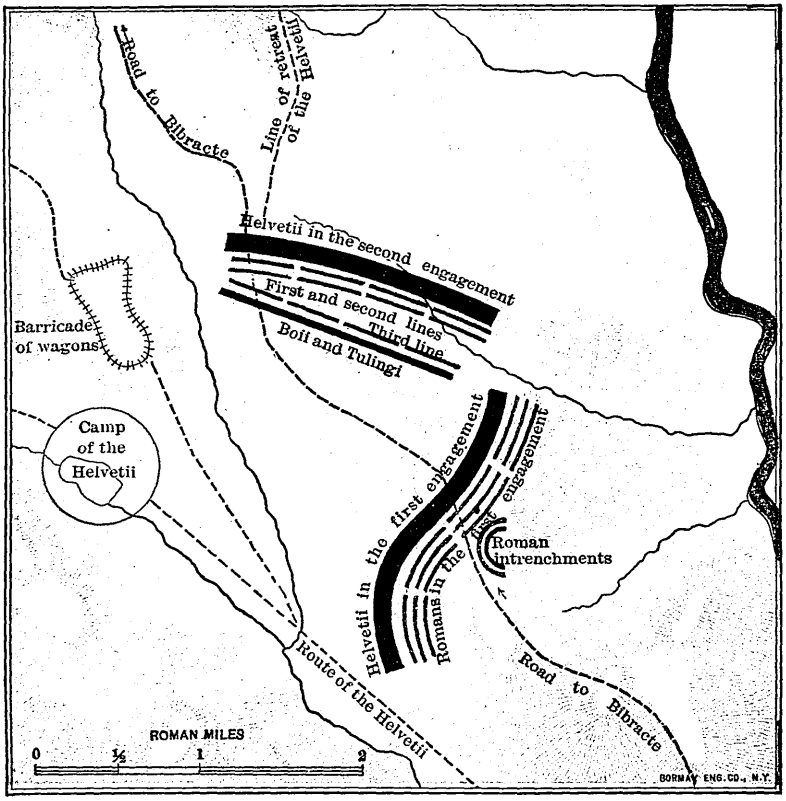
XXIV. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia conlocārī ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum ab iīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

A battle takes place, in which the Helvetii are defeated.

XXV. Caesar prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō quod plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et conligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pugnāre poterant; multī ut diū iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mīlle passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō adgressī circumvenīre, et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa sīgna bipartītō intulērunt, prīma et secunda aciēs ut victīs ac submōtīs resisteret, tertia ut venientīs sustinēret.

XXVI. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta

et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientīs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās



THE DEFEAT OF THE HELVETII

subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt

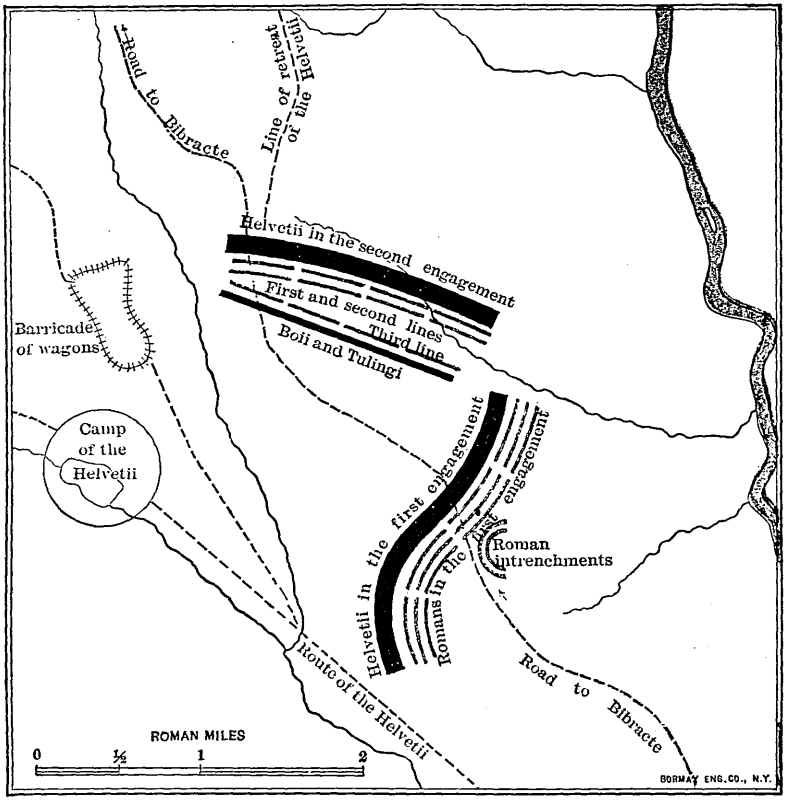
nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō; in fīnīs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent: 'Quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum.' Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

The survivors surrender themselves to Caesar, who orders them to return to their homes.

XXVII. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā circiter hominum mīlia sex ēius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō adficerentur sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnīsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

XXVIII. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnīs ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnīs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in fīnīs suōs unde erant profectī revertī iussit; et quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnīs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae

et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō prœliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientīs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās



THE DEFEAT OF THE HELVETII

subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia CXXX superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt

nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō; in fīnīs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent: 'Quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum.' Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

The survivors surrender themselves to Caesar, who orders them to return to their homes.

XXVII. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā circiter hominum mīlia sex ēius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō adficerentur sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse exīstimārent, primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnīsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

XXVIII. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnīs ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnīs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in fīnīs suōs unde erant profectī revertī iussit; et quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnīs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae

Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in fīnibus suīs conlocārent concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

The number of the Helvetii and their allies.

XXIX. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt, litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae, et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim quot puerī, senēs, mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlium XXXVI, Latobrigōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

The Campaign against Ariovistus

The Gauls congratulate Caesar.

XXX. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: 'Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetīsset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī relīquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent reliquāsque cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās habērent.' Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: 'Sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent.' Eā rē per-

missā diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūre iūrandō nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

Diviciacus asks Caesar's help against Ariovistus and the Germans.

XXXI. Eō conciliō dīmissō īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum quī ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt, petiēruntque utī sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: 'Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea quae dīxissent ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea quae vellent impetrārent, propterea quod sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.' Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus: 'Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsīsse; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrīs; nunc esse in Galliā ad c et xx mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientīs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, et iūre iūrandō cīvitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs quōminus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte profūgisse, et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur. Sed pēius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidisse, prop-

tereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIIII ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs utī omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellerentur, atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque līberōs poscere, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem ēius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, īrācundum, temerārium; nōn posse ēius imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxilī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdīs remōtās ā Germānīs petant, fortūnamque quaecumque accidat experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.'

Caesar determines to aid the Gauls.

XXXII. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā omnēs quī aderant magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent, sed trīstīs capite dēmissō terram intuērī. Ēius reī quae causa esset mīrātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permanēre. Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam

omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, īdem Dīviciācus Haeduus respondit: 'Hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent, absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, propterea quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnīs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte ēius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.'

XXXIII. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfīrmāvit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram: 'Magnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum fīnem iniūriīs factūrum.' Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit. Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quārē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret, in prīmīs quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepenumerō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur. Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat, neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam adrogantiam sūmpserat ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

He sends an embassy to Ariovistus, who returns an insolent reply.

XXXIV. Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent utī aliquem locum medium utrīusque conloquiō dēligeret: 'Velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere.' Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus

respondit: 'Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partīs Galliae venīre audēre quās Caesar possidēret neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidērī quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.'

A second embassy and a second reply.

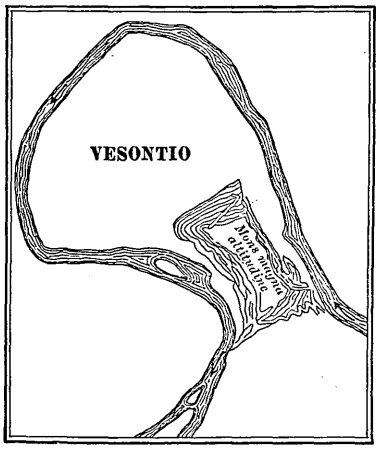
XXXV. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: 'Quoniam tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in conloquium venīre invītātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē discendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet, Sēquanīsque permitteret ut quōs illī habērent voluntāte ēius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacesseret nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferret. Sī ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātus cēnsuisset utī quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.'

XXXVI. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: 'Iūs esse bellī ut quī vīcissent iīs quōs vīcissent quem ad modum vellent imperārent. Item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī. Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superātī essent, stīpendiāriōs esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem

iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum inlātūrum, sī in eō manērent quod convēnisset stīpendiumque quotannīs penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederētur; intellēctūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIIII tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.'

The Gauls complain of new hardships. Caesar hastens to Vesontio.

XXXVII. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant, — Haeduī questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, fīnīs eōrum populārentur; sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.



PLAN OF VESONTIO

XXXVIII. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret

magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idemque nātūrā locī sīc mūniēbātur ut magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dubis ut circinō circumductum paene tōtum oppidum cingit, reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sescentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita ut rādīcēs ēius montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.

A panic seizes the soldiers.

XXXIX. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī magnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepenumerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentīs animōsque perturbāret. Hīc prīmum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, praefectīs, reliquīsque quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā inlātā, quam sibi ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat ut ēius voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōn nūllī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam iī quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriōnēsque quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et magnitūdinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque

Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dīcēbant. Nōn nūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac sīgna ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientīs mīlitēs neque propter timōrem sīgna lātūrōs.

Caesar quiets their fears by a remarkable speech.

XL. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus vehementer eōs incūsāvit: prīmum, quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. 'Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetīsse; cūr hunc tam temere quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī cognitīs suīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? Aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā dēspērārent? Factum ēius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā nōbīs accēpissent sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterea quod quōs aliquamdiū inermīs sine causā timuissent, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent. Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepenumerō Helvētiī congressī nōn sōlum in suīs sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus plērumque superārint; quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse diūturnitāte bellī dēfatīgātīs Gallīs Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsīs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantīs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs

exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere adroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque sīgna lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam. Suam innocentiam perpetuā vītā, fēlīcitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam. Itaque sē quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fuisset repraesentātūrum, et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam prīmum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praeterea nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram.' Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat maximē.

The army moves toward Ariovistus.

XLI. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī inlāta est, prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfīrmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt utī Caesarī satisfacerent: 'Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse.' Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquīsītō per Dīviciācum, quod ex Gallīs eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut mīlium amplius L circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlia passuum IIII et XX abesse.

Negotiations between Caesar and Ariovistus.

XLII. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: 'Quod anteā dē conloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset sēque id sine perīculō facere posse exīstimāret.' Nōn respuit condiciōnem Caesar, iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id quod anteā petentī dēnegāsset ultrō pollicērētur; magnamque in spem veniēbat prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cognitīs suīs postulātīs, fore utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar addūceret: 'Verērī sē nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū veníret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.' Caesar quod neque conloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātuī committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus dētrāctīs eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē cōnfīdēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn inrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit plūs quam pollicitus



A ROMAN LEGIONARY
(From a gravestone)

exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere adroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque sīgna lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam. Suam innocentiam perpetuā vītā, fēlīcitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam. Itaque sē quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fuisset repraesentātūrum, et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam prīmum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram.' Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat maximē.

The army moves toward Ariovistus.

XLI. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī inlāta est, prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt utī Caesarī satisfacerent: 'Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse.' Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquīsītō per Dīviciācum, quod ex Gallīs eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut mīlium amplius L circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlia passuum IIII et XX abesse.

Negotiations between Caesar and Ariovistus.

XLII. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: 'Quod anteā dē conloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset sēque id sine perīculō facere posse exīstimāret.' Nōn respuit condiciōnem Caesar, iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id quod anteā petentī dēnegāsset ultrō pollicērētur; magnamque in spem veniēbat prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cognitīs suīs postulātīs, fore utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar addūceret: 'Verērī sē nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.' Caesar quod neque conloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātuī committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus dētrāctīs eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē cōnfīdēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn inrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit plūs quam pollicitus



A ROMAN LEGIONARY
(From a gravestone)

esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum ad equum rescrībere.

A conference is held, in which Caesar makes demands of Ariovistus.

XLIII. Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus aequum ferē spatium ā castrīs Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad conloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equīs dēvexerat passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt. Ariovistus ex equīs ut conloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad conloquium addūcerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplissima missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō magnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac līberālitāte suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtum. Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent; quae senātūs cōnsulta, quotiēns, quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent; ut omnī tempore tōtīus Galliae prīncipātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amīcitiam appetīssent. 'Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id iīs ēripī quis patī posset?' Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret, obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

Ariovistus rejects Caesar's demands and makes others in his turn, which Caesar rejects.

XLIV. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: 'Trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn

suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquisse; sēdīs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnīs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnīs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experīrī velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint.

'Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petīsse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditīciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appetierit. Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae oppugnandae causā facere; ēius reī testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit.

'Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sīcut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs fīnīs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse inīquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus. Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum ut nōn scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. Dēbēre sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quem exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste

habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum (id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre), quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam ēius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcessisset et līberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, magnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum, et quaecumque bella gerī vellet sine ūllō ēius labōre et perīculō cōnfectūrum.'

XLV. Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: 'Neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, līberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.'

The conference is broken off by signs of bad faith on the part of the Germans.

XLVI. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit, suīsque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostīs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs. Posteāquam in vulgus mīlitum ēlātum est quā adrogantiā in conloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs ēius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs conloquium dirēmisset, multō māior alacritās studiumque pugnandī māius exercituī iniectum est.

Ariovistus wishes to renew negotiations, but casts into chains envoys whom Caesar sends.

XLVII. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsit: 'Velle sē dē iīs rēbus quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eō; utī aut iterum conloquiō diem cōnstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret.' Conloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis quod prīdiē ēius diēī Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant quīn tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum ex suīs sēsē magnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat. Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Caburī fīlium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem, cūius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Metium, quī hospitiō Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit ut quae dīceret Ariovistus cognōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: 'Quid ad sē venīrent? An speculandī causā?' Cōnantīs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

Caesar tries in vain to induce Ariovistus to fight.

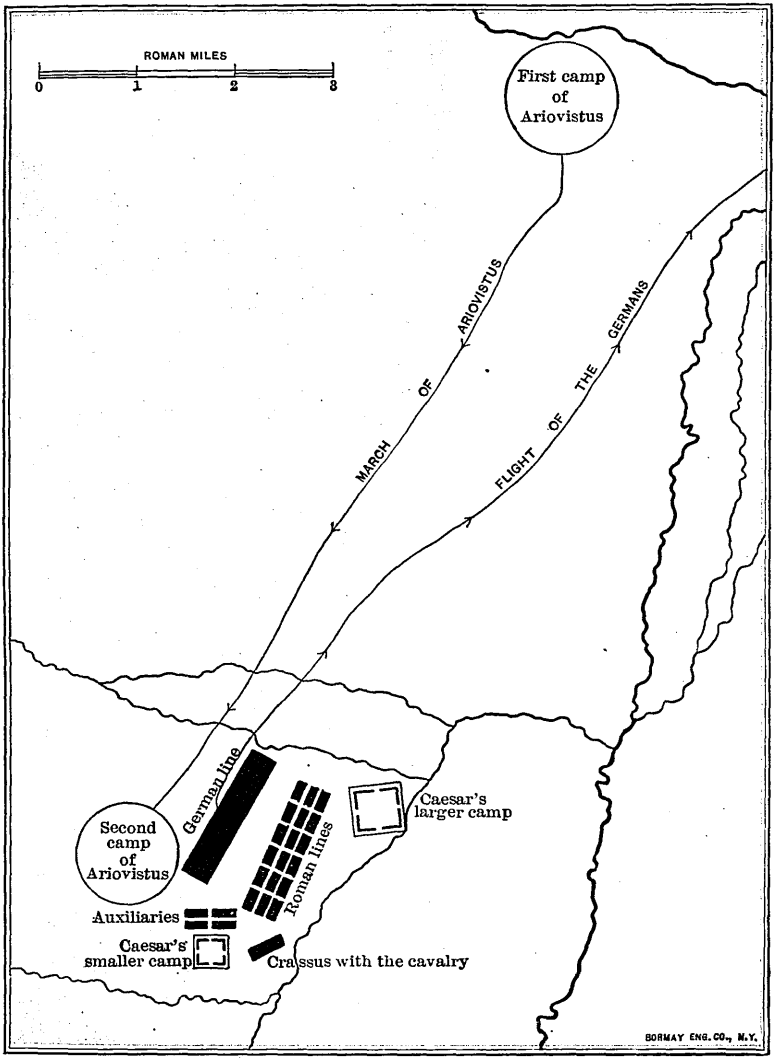
XLVIII. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē ēius diēī praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō cottīdiē contendit. Genus hōc erat pugnae quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī

singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur, ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant. Hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

XLIX. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant circiter passūs sescentōs ab hīs castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sescentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum XVI mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit.

Fighting at last begins.

L. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ex castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā māiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit hostibusque pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppugnāret, mīsit. Ācriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et inlātīs et acceptīs vulneribus in castra redūxit. Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: 'Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.'



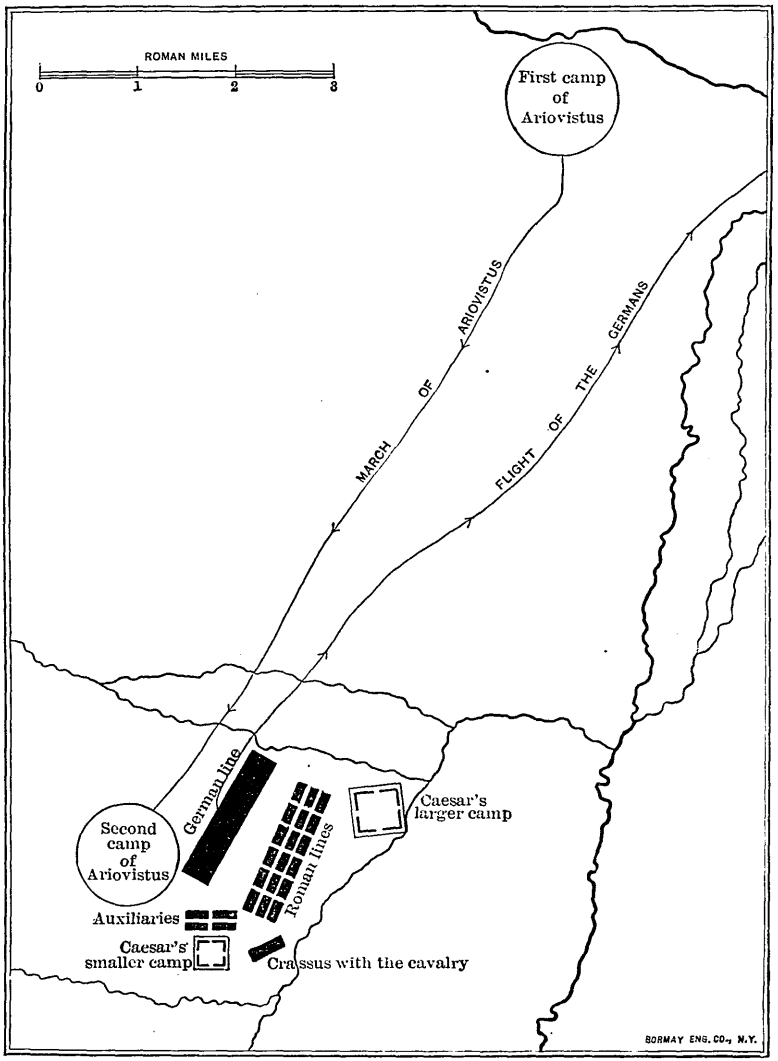
THE DEFEAT OF ARIOVISTUS

singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur, ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant. Hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

XLIX. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant circiter passūs sescentōs ab hīs castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sescentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum XVI mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit.

Fighting at last begins.

L. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ex castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā māiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit hostibusque pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppugnāret, mīsit. Ācriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et inlātīs et acceptīs vulneribus in castra redūxit. Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: 'Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.'



THE DEFEAT OF ARIOVISTUS

A decisive battle. The Germans are defeated, and those who survive the battle flee across the Rhine.

LI. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est relīquit, ālāriōs omnīs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse triplicī īnstrūctā aciē ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscentīs mīlitēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

LII. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testīs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē fīrmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit. Et ita nostrī ācriter in hostīs sīgnō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium pīla in hostīs coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectīs pīlīs comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalangem īnsilīrent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedītior erat quam iī quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

LIII. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus

inventīs sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnīs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Duae fīliae; hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā cūstōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostīs equitātū īnsequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ex manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque ēius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat, utrum īgnī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

Caesar, after placing the army in winter quarters, departs for Hither Gaul.

LIV. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quos Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs sēnsērunt; īnsecūtī magnum ex iīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

BOOK II

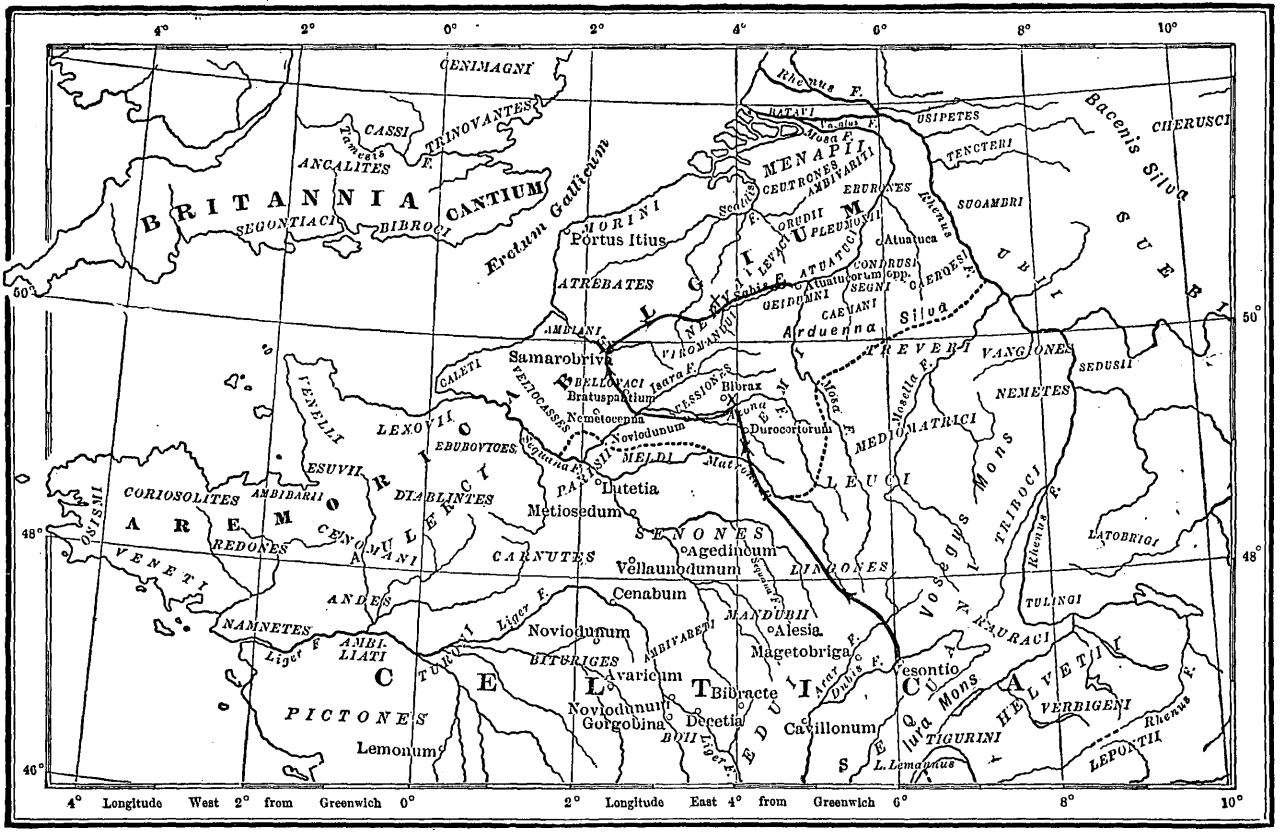
The War with the Belgae

The Belgae conspire.

I. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnīs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum, quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōn nūllīs etiam quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

Caesar with his army hastens towards them. The Remi join him.

II. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit, et initā aestāte in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā castra movet diēbusque circiter xv ad fīnīs Belgārum pervenit.



THE CAMPAIGN OF 57 B.C.

III. Eō cum dē improvīsō celeriusque omnium opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dīcerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnīs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque quī cis Rhēnum incolant sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse; tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent.

The strength of the Belgae.

IV. Cum ab iīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat: 'Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent expulisse, sōlōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā omnī Galliā vexātā Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnīs ingredī prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī sūmerent.' Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dīcēbant, propterea quod propinquitātibus adfīnitātibusque coniūnctī quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia centum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlecta mīlia LX, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; fīnīs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam

prūdentiamque summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferrī. Oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta L; totidem Nerviōs, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; XV mīlia Atrebātīs, Ambiānōs X mīlia, Morinōs XXV mīlia, Menapiōs VII mīlia, Caletōs X mīlia, Veliocassīs et Viromanduōs totidem, Atuatucōs XVIIII mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caeroesōs, Caemanōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL mīlia.

Caesar sends a force of Haedui to threaten the Bellovaci; he himself crosses the Axona.

V. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus docet quantopere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit. 'Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in fīnīs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint.' Hīs datīs mandātīs eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam omnīs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque iam longē abesse ab iīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīrī iubet.

He relieves Bibrax, a town of the Remi.

VI. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae



TESTUDO

oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec: ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī. Cum fīnem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex iīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntiōs ad eum mittit, nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.



SAGITTARIUS

VII. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem ducibus ūsus quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant Numidās et Crētēs sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārīs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque quō adīre potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt

prūdentiamque summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferrī. Oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta L; totidem Nerviōs, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; XV mīlia Atrebātīs, Ambiānōs X mīlia, Morinōs XXV mīlia, Menapiōs VII mīlia, Caletōs X mīlia, Veliocassīs et Viromanduōs totidem, Atuatucōs XVIII mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caeroesōs, Caemanōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL mīlia.

Caesar sends a force of Haedui to threaten the Bellovaci; he himself crosses the Axona.

V. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus docet quantopere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit. 'Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in fīnīs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint.' Hīs datīs mandātīs eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam omnīs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque iam longē abesse ab iīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīrī iubet.

He relieves Bibrax, a town of the Remi.

VI. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae



TESTUDO

oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec: ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūlli. Cum fīnem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex iīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntiōs ad eum mittit, nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

VII. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem ducibus ūsus quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant Numidās et Crētēs sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārīs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque quō adīre potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt



SAGITTARIUS

et ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque īgnibus sīgnificābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

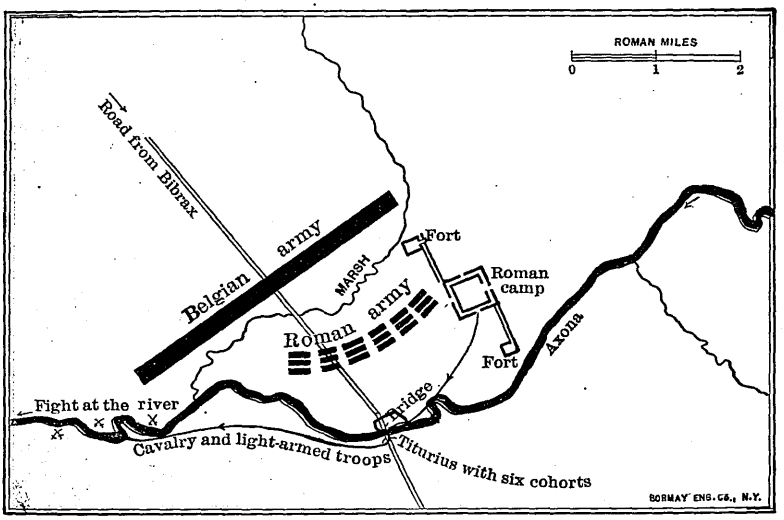
Description of Caesar's camp on the Axona.

VIII. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cottīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent perīclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, — quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitiē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum locī aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastīgātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, — ab utrōque latere ēius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum, et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantīs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscrīpserat in castrīs relīctīs, ut sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxērunt.

A battle, in which the Belgae are defeated with much loss.

IX. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs adgrederentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. Titū-

rius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.



THE BATTLE ON THE AXONA

X. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque ponte trā- 5
dūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostīs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine adgressī magnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantīs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt, prīmōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. 10
Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pugnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et quōrum in 15
fīnīs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūte-

et ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque īgnibus sīgnificābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

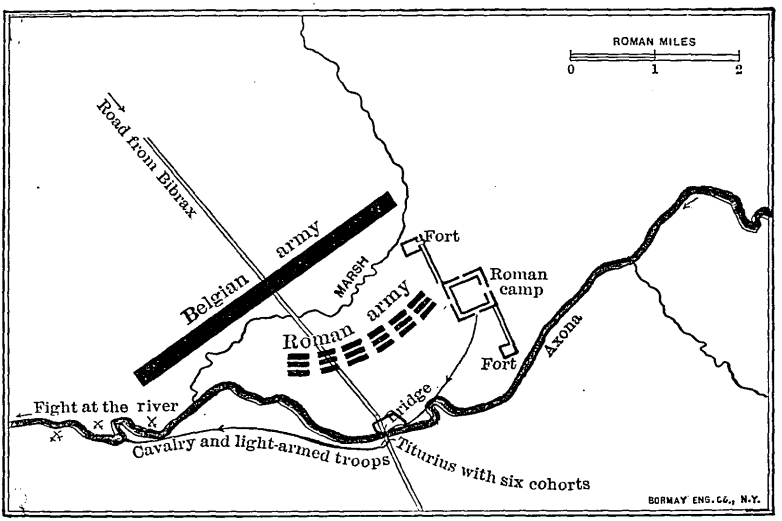
Description of Caesar's camp on the Axona.

VIII. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cottīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent perīclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, — quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitiē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum locī aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastīgātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, — ab utrōque latere ēius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum, et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantīs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscrīpserat in castrīs relictīs, ut sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxērunt.

A battle, in which the Belgae are defeated with much loss.

IX. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs adgrederentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. Titū-

rius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.



THE BATTLE ON THE AXONA

X. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostīs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine adgressī magnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantīs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt, prīmōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pugnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et quōrum in fīnīs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūte-

rentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant. Hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

XI. Eā rē cōnstitūtā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā īnsidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, praemīsit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs vēnītum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā perīculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēī spatium; sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

Caesar receives the submission of the Suessiones, Bellovaci, and Ambiani.

XII. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in fīnīs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem paucīs dēfendentibus expugnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs vīneās agere quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs

ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō, turribusque cōnstitūtīs magnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs ut cōnservārentur impetrant.

XIII. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs



SOLDIERS BUILDING AN *AGGER*

in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Brātuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepērunt sēsē in ēius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

XIV. Prō hīs Dīviciācus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba: 'Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent Haeduōs

ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnīs indīgnitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ēius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnīs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.'

XV. Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit, et quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, DC obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs ab eō locō in fīnīs Ambiānōrum pervēnit; quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

The Nervii.

Eōrum fīnīs Nerviī attingēbant. Quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: 'Nūllum esse aditum ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguescere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.'

The Nervii plan an attack.

XVI. Cum per eōrum fīnīs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia passuum decem abesse; trāns id flūmen omnīs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab iīs Atuatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque

per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

XVII. Hīs rēbus cognitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit, quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant. Cum ex dēditīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā



ROMAN SOLDIERS ON THE MARCH

nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī reī student, sed quicquid possunt pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque īnflexīs

ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnīs indīgnitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ēius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnīs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.'

XV. Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit, et quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, DC obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs ab eō locō in fīnīs Ambiānōrum pervēnit; quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

The Nervii.

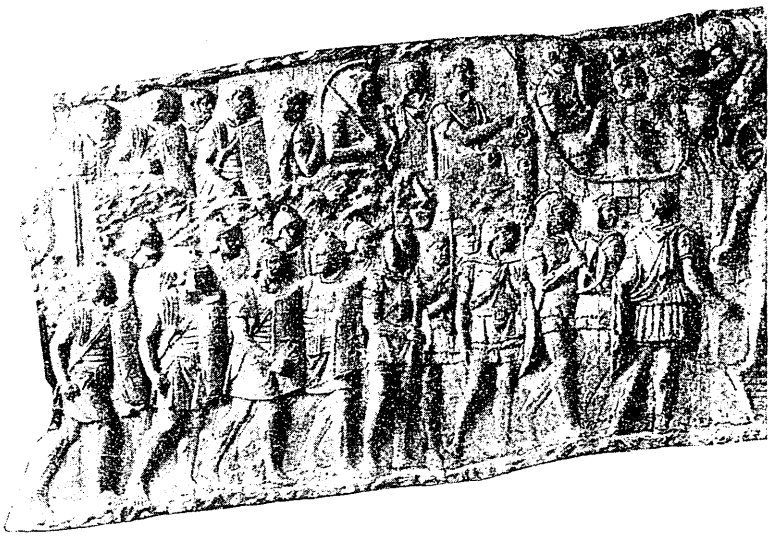
Eōrum fīnīs Nerviī attingēbant. Quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: 'Nūllum esse aditum ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguescere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.'

The Nervii plan an attack.

XVI. Cum per eōrum fīnīs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia passuum decem abesse; trāns id flūmen omnīs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab īīs Atuatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque

per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

XVII. Hīs rēbus cognitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit, quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant. Cum ex dēditīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā



ROMAN SOLDIERS ON THE MARCH

nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant quod Nervii antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī reī student, sed quicquid possunt pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque īnflexīs

crēbrīsque in lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs effēcerant ut īnstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmentum praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

XVIII. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōminávimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs īnfimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

The Romans are taken by surprise, but soon the value of experience and discipline is shown.

XIX. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedīmenta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad fīnem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentīs īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae prīmae vēnerant opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs quī in silvīs abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proelī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfīrmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prō-

turbātīs incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

XX. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum (quod erat īnsīgne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret), sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrībere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant.

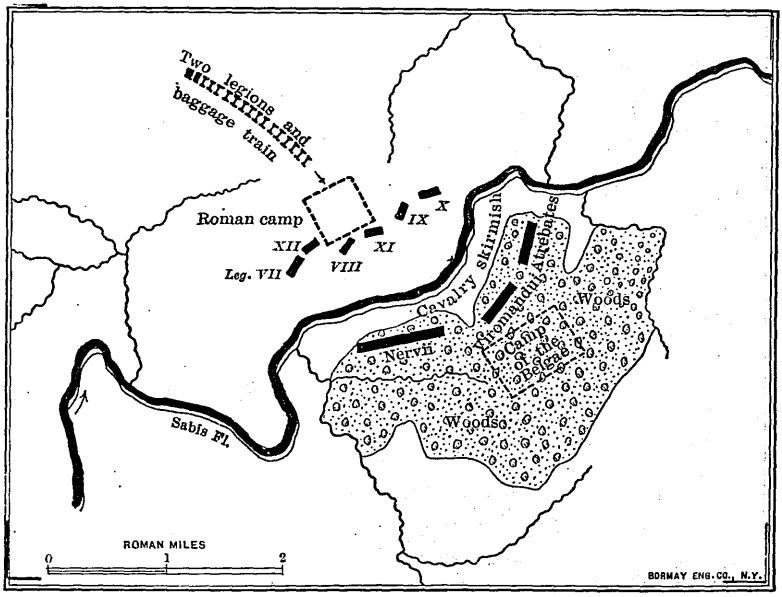
XXI. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs ad cohortandōs mīlitēs, quam partem fors obtulit, dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proelī committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus ut nōn modo ad īnsīgnia accommodanda sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma sīgna cōnspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

The battle rages fiercely with varying fortunes.

XXII. Īnstrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō atque

ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectīs prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

XXIII. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs



THE BATTLE ON THE SABIS

vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātīs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsīre cōnantīs īnsecūtī gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentīs hostīs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressae, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs

proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

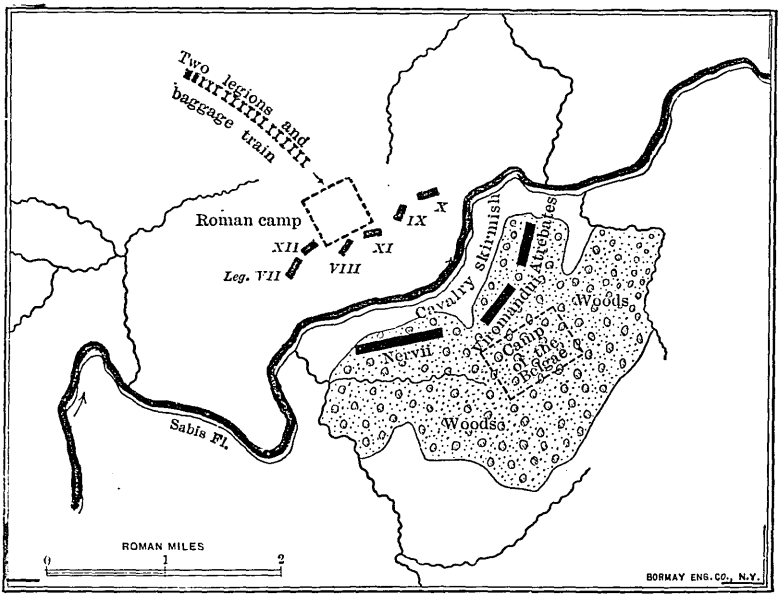
XXIV. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsīsse cōnspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostīs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxilī causā ā cīvitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra nostra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, fundītōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnīs partīs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostīs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

Caesar himself fights in the ranks, while the result of the contest continues doubtful.

XXV. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī sīgnīsque in ūnum locum conlātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, — quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, sīgniferō interfectō, sīgnō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset,

ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectīs prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

XXIII. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs



THE BATTLE ON THE SABIS

vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātīs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsīre cōnantīs īnsecūtī gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentīs hostīs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressae, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs

proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

XXIV. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsīsse cōnspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostīs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxilī causā ā cīvitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra nostra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, fundītōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnīs partīs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostīs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

Caesar himself fights in the ranks, while the result of the contest continues doubtful.

XXV. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī sīgnīsque in ūnum locum conlātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, — quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, sīgniferō interfectō, sīgnō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset,

reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vītāre, hostīs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntīs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre, et rem esse in angustō vīdit, neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submittī posset, — scūtō ab novissimīs mīlitī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit, centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs sīgna īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cūius adventū spē inlātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

XXVI. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa sīgna in hostīs īnferrent. Quō factō cum aliīs aliī subsidium ferrent neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt. Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant proeliō nūntiātō cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōnspicātus decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

At last the Nervii are utterly defeated and almost annihilated.

XXVII. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostīs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent, equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pugnandō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum prīmī

eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumulō, tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

XXVIII. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt; et in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte ex DC ad trīs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad D quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōnservāvit suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et fīnitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

The Atuatuci assemble in one town; Caesar besieges it.

XXIX. Atuatucī, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpīs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius pedum CC relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant, tum magnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabīs in mūrō conlocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, iīs impedīmentīs quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs cūstōdiam ex suīs ac praesidium sex mīlia hominum ūnā relīquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs

exagitātī, cum aliās bellum īnferrent, aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

XXX. Ac prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum XII in circuitū XV mīlium crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vīneis āctīs, aggere exstrūctō turrim procul cōnstituī vīdērunt, prīmum inrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō īnstituerētur: 'Quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus, praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallīs prae magnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est), tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē posse conlocāre cōnfīderent?'

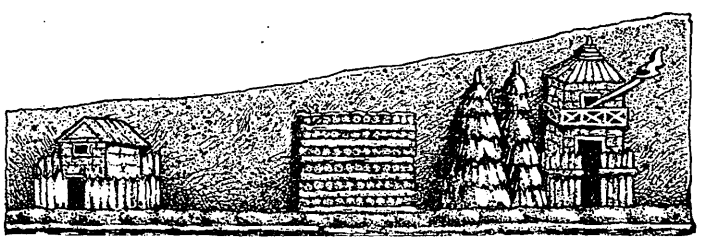
The Atuatuci surrender on favorable terms; but attempting treachery, they are afterwards sold as slaves.

XXXI. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre mūrīs vīdērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: 'Nōn sē exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere' dīxērunt. 'Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset Atuatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnīs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvīs fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.'

XXXII. Ad haec Caesar respondit: 'Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī priusquam mūrum ariēs attigisset sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in Nerviīs fēcisset factūrum fīnitimīsque imperātūrum nē quam dēditīciīs

populī Rōmānī iniūriam īnferrent.' Rē renūntiātā ad suōs quae imperārentur facere dīxērunt. Armōrum magnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sīc ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

XXXIII. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum iīs quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pelli-



CASTELLUM AND SIGNAL-TOWER

bus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, īgnibus sīgnificātiōne factā ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis inīquō locō contrā eōs quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent pugnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum rēiectī sunt. Postrīdiē ēius diēī refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs sectiōnem ēius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab iīs quī ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium LIII.

Meantime several maritime states have been subjugated by Crassus.

XXXIV. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Ōsismōs, Coriosolitēs, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Rēdonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnīs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

The army goes into winter quarters; a thanksgiving.

XXXV. Hīs rēbus gestīs omnī Galliā pācātā tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est utī ab iīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Italiam Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andīs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae iīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum xv supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

BOOK III

Trouble in the Alps

Galba is sent into the Alps to hold in check certain mountain tribes. He occupies Octodurus.

I. Cum in Italiam proficīscerētur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātīs, Veragrōs, Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā fīnibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpīs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit quod iter per Alpīs, quō magnō cum perīculō magnīsque cum portōriīs mercātōrēs īre cōnsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā conlocāret. Galba secundīs aliquot proeliīs factīs castellīsque complūribus eōrum expugnātīs, missīs ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā cōnstituit cohortīs duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquīs ēius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodurus, hiemāre; quī vīcus positus in valle nōn magnā adiectā plānitiē altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partīs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem ēius vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuam ab hīs relīctam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

The mountaineers threaten him.

II. Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsīssent frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallīs concesserat omnīs noctū discessisse, montīsque quī impendērent ā maximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: prīmum, quod legiōnem, neque eam plēnissimam dētrāctīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillā-

tim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, absentibus, propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē prīmum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī exīstimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē līberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

III. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūnītiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum exīstimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquīrere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī perīculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae ēius modī sententiae dīcēbantur, ut impedīmentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā īsdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Māiōrī tamen partī placuit hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cāsum cōnsiliō interim reī ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

He repulses them, but thinks it best to return to the province.

IV. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut iīs rēbus quās cōnstituissent conlocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus sīgnō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī prīmō integrīs vīribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant,—quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pugnā

excēdendī, sed nē saucīō quidem ēius locī ubi cōnstiterat relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

V. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pugnārētur ac nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius īnstārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum



A BATTLE

perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmī pīlī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsilī magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent, post datō sīgnō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

VI. Quod iussī sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cognōscendī quid fieret neque suī conligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt, et ex hominum mīlibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte

tim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, absentibus, propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē prīmum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī exīstimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē līberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

III. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūnitiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum exīstimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquīrere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī perīculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae ēius modī sententiae dīcēbantur, ut impedīmentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā īsdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Māiōrī tamen partī placuit hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cāsum cōnsiliō interim reī ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

He repulses them, but thinks it best to return to the province.

IV. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut iīs rēbus quās cōnstituissent conlocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus sīgnō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī prīmō integrīs vīribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant,—quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pugnā

excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem ēius locī ubi cōnstiterat relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

V. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pugnārētur ac nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius īnstārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum



A BATTLE

perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmī pīlī centuriō, quem Nerviciō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsilī magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent, post datō sīgnō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

VI. Quod iussī sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cognōscendī quid fieret neque suī conligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt, et ex hominum mīlibus amplius XXX, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte

interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sīc omnibus hostium cōpiīs fūsīs armīsque exūtīs sē intrā mūnītiōnēs suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō sē in hīberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus vīderat, maximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus posterō diē omnibus ēius vīcī aedificiīs incēnsīs in prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātīs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

The Campaign against the Veneti and Other Maritime Tribes

Roman officers, sent among the tribes of the coast after grain, are detained.

VII. Hīs rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs, atque ita initā hieme in Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adīre et regiōnēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Ēius bellī hàec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrīs in fīnitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī causā dīmīsit; quō in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitēs, Q. Velānius cum T. Sīliō in Venetōs.

VIII. Hūius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvīs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in magnō impetū maris vāstī atque apertī paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnīs ferē quī eō marī ūtī cōnsuērunt habent vectīgālīs. Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Sīlī atque Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent recuperātūrōs exīsti-

mābant. Hōrum auctōritāte fīnitimī adductī (ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentīna cōnsilia) eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnīs fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant ut in eā lībertāte quam ā māiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: 'Sī velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.'

Preparations for war.

IX. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ā Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvīs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod īnfluit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā īnstituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs ipse, cum prīmum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cognitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus admīsissent intellegēbant, — lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnīs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, — prō magnitūdine perīculī bellum parāre et maximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre īnstituunt, hōc māiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigātiōnem impedītam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfīdēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse, ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant. Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvīs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmum bellum gestūrum

cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Ōsismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs ascīscunt; auxilia ex Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

X. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant,—iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum coniūrātiō, in prīmīs nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegeret omnīs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnīs autem hominēs nātūrā lībertātī studēre et condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

XI. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat, Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessītī dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquītāniam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitēs, Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D. Brūtum adulēscentem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre iusserat, praeficit et cum prīmum possit in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

The towns and ships of the Veneti.

XII. Erant ēius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmīs lingulīs prōmunturiīsque neque pedibus aditum habērent cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod accidit semper hōrārum XII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs

in vadīs adflīctārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur. Ac sī quandō magnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, dēspērāre fortūnīs suīs coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cūius reī summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus īsdem opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur, summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, magnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllīs portibus difficultās nāvigandī.

XIII. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs, ad magnitūdinem flūctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvīs vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus, cōnfīxa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revinctae; pellēs prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sīve propter inopiam līnī atque ēius ūsūs īnscientiam sīve eō, quod est magis vērī simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī ēius modī congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illīs essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim iīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant, tanta in iīs erat fīrmitūdō, neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā mīnus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtius, et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cautīs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

The Romans are victorious in a naval battle.

XIV. Complūribus expugnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque iīs nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter CCXX nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtae īnsertae adfīxaeque longuriīs, nōn absimilī fōrmā mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant, atque eō magis quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare ab exercitū tenēbantur.

XV. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvīs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī

expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervenīrent, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

The survivors surrender, and Caesar punishes them.

XVI. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis in quibus aliquid cōnsilī aut dīgnitātis fuit eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubīque fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

Sabinus defeats the Venelli and their allies.

XVII. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum iīs cōpiīs quās ā Caesare accēperat in fīnīs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx ac summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī Eburovīcēs Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt; magnaque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, et quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī cultūrā et cottīdiānō labōre sēvocābat. Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cottīdiēque prōductīs cōpiīs pugnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret sed etiam nostrōrum mīlitum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuit ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō

absente quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā lēgātō dīmicandum nōn exīstimābat.

XVIII. Hāc cōnfīrmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iīs quōs auxilī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet utī ad hostīs trānseat, et quid fierī velit ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet, neque longius abesse quīn proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxilī ferendī causā proficīscātur. Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse; ad castra īrī oportēre. Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur, — superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōnfīrmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui reī parum dīligenter ab iīs erat prōvīsum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovīcem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt quam ab iīs sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī ut explōrātā victōriā sarmentīs virgultīsque conlēctīs, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

XIX. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab īmō acclīvis circiter passūs mīlle. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatī ad sē conligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātīque pervēnērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus sīgnum dat. Impedītīs hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnscientiā ac dēfatīgātiōne, virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne ut nē prīmum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs vīribus mīlitēs nostrī cōnsecūtī magnum numerum eōrum occīdērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsectātī paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, relīquērunt. Sīc ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pugnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar est certior factus, cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella

suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus, sīc mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs ferendās mēns eōrum est.

The Campaign in Aquitania

Crassus conquers the Sotiates.

XX. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquītāniam pervēnisset (quae, ut ante dictum est, est tertia pars Galliae), cum intellegeret in iīs locīs sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Mānlius prōcōnsul impedīmentīs āmissīs profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā, auxiliīs equitātūque comparātō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Nārbōne, quae sunt cīvitātēs Galliae prōvinciae fīnitimae hīs regiōnibus, nōminātim ēvocātīs in Sōtiātium fīnīs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cūius adventū cognitō Sōtiātēs magnīs cōpiīs coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī prīmum equestre proelium commīsērunt; deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs subitō pedestrīs cōpiās, quās in convalle in īnsidiīs conlocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

XXI. Pugnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātēs superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtīus Aquītāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscentulō duce efficere possent perspicī cuperent; tandem cōnfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vīneās turrīsque ēgit. Illī aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cunīculīs ad aggerem vīneāsque āctīs (cūius reī sunt longē perītissimī Aquītānī propterea quod multīs locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi dīligentiā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōficī posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt sēque in dēditiōnem ut recipiat petunt. Quā rē impetrātā arma trādere iussī faciunt.

XXII. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum sescentīs dēvōtīs, quōs illī soldūriōs appellant, quōrum haec est condiciō, ut omnibus in vītā commodīs ūnā cum iīs fruantur quōrum sē amīcitiae dēdiderint, sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnscīscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam quī eō interfectō cūius sē amīcitiae dēvōvisset mortem recūsāret — cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnītiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma mīlitēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.

The Aquitani ask help from Spain.

XXIII. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in fīnīs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expugnātum cognōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās cīvitātēs lēgātī quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae fīnitimae Aquītāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū magnā cum auctōritāte et magnā hominum multitūdine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō iī dēliguntur quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnīs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam reī mīlitāris habēre exīstimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs intercludere īnstituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn cunctandum exīstimāvit quīn pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnīs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōnstituit.

Crassus defeats the Aquitani and their allies, and brings the greater part of Aquitania into submission.

XXIV. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplicī aciē īnstitūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōnsilī caperent exspectābat. Illī etsī propter multitūdinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur obsessīs viīs, commeātū interclūsō sine vulnere victōriā potīrī, et sī propter inopiam reī frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impedītōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs īnfīrmiōrēs animō adorīrī cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alacriōrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre quīn ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

XXV. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlīs coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnītiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfīdēbat, lapidibus tēlīsque subministrandīs et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandīs speciem atque opīniōnem pugnantium praebērent, cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur, tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitīs hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse dīligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.

XXVI. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fierī vellet ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, dēvectīs iīs cohortibus quae praesidiō castrīs relictae intrītae ab labōre erant et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōnspicī possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pugnam intentīs celeriter ad eās quās dīximus mūnītiōnēs pervēnērunt, atque hīs prōrutīs prius in hostium castrīs cōnstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidērī aut quid reī gererētur cognōscī posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā

parte audītō nostrī redintegrātīs vīribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriae accidere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus sē per mūnītiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōnsectātus ex mīlium L numerō, quae ex Aquītāniā Cantabrīsque convēnisse cōnstābat, vix quārtā parte relīctā multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

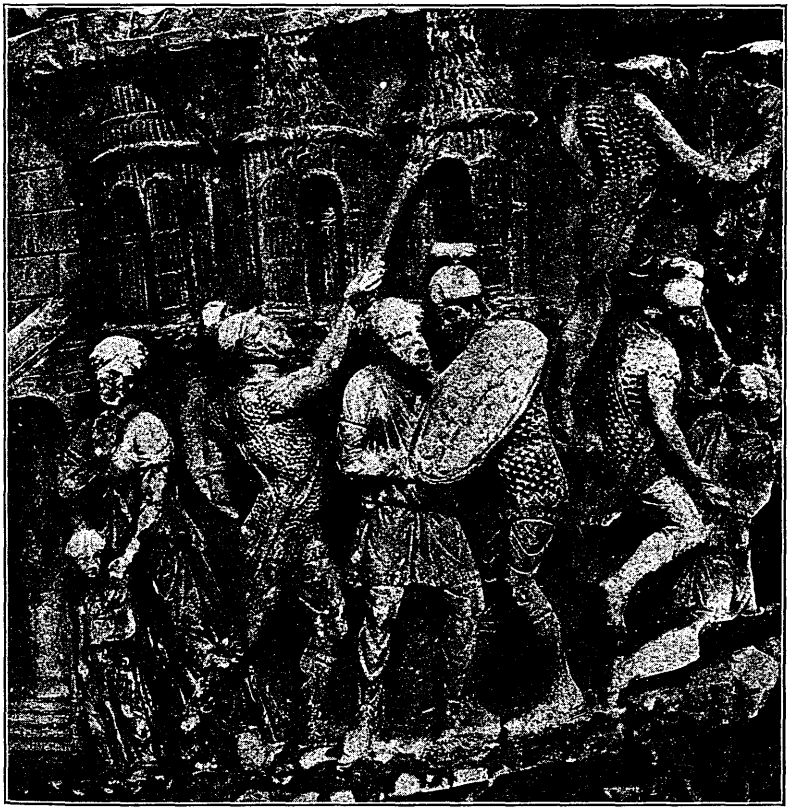
XXVII. Hāc audītā pugnā maxima pars Aquītāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsit; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptianiī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfīsae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

A Short Campaign against the Morini and Menapii

XXVIII. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs, quae proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse, continentīsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre īnstituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt, et complūribus interfectīs longius impedītiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

XXIX. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere īnstituit, et nē quis inermibus imprūdentibusque mīlitibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus

exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte magnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedīmenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, ēius modī sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae utī opus necessāriō intermitterētur, et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus mīlitēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs conlocāvit.



SOLDIERS BURNING A BARBARIAN VILLAGE

parte audītō nostrī redintegrātīs vīribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriae accidere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus sē per mūnītiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōnsectātus ex mīlium L numerō, quae ex Aquītāniā Cantabrīsque convēnisse cōnstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

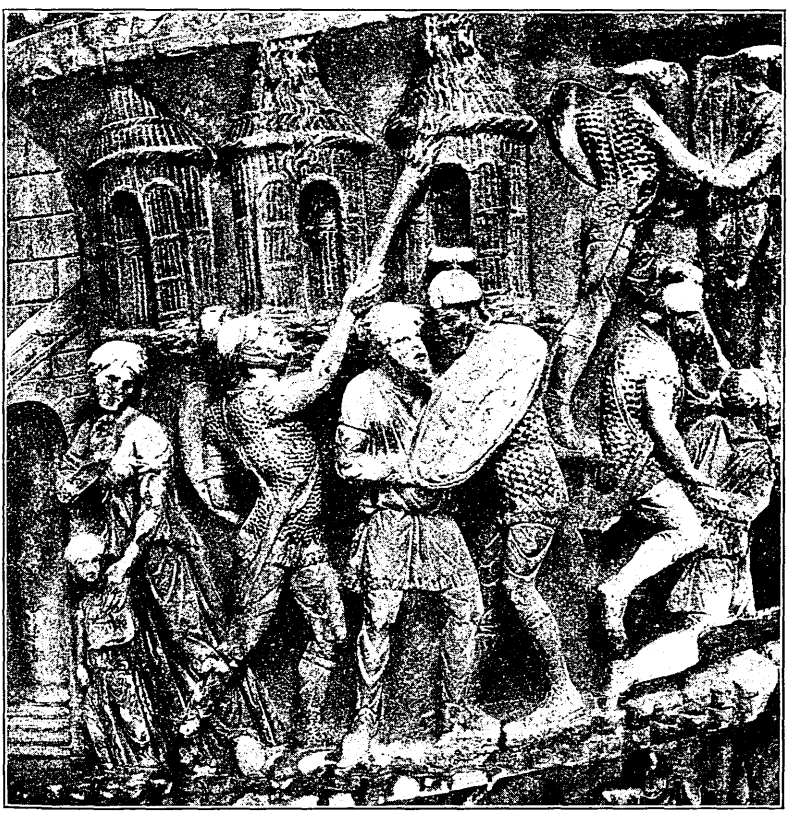
XXVII. Hāc audītā pugnā maxima pars Aquītāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsit; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptianiī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfīsae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

A Short Campaign against the Morini and Menapii

XXVIII. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs, quae proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse, continentīsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre īnstituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt, et complūribus interfectīs longius impedītiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

XXIX. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere īnstituit, et nē quis inermibus imprūdentibusque mīlitibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus

exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte magnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedīmenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, ēius modī sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae utī opus necessāriō intermitterētur, et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus mīlitēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs conlocāvit.



SOLDIERS BURNING A BARBARIAN VILLAGE

BOOK IV

The War against the Usipetes and Tencteri, and Caesar's Passage of the Rhine

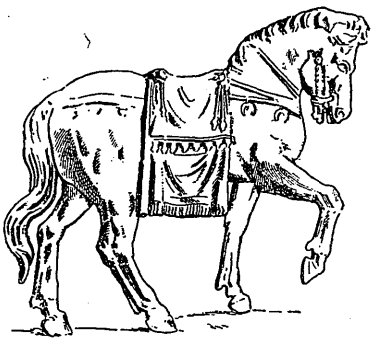
The Usipetes and Tencteri cross the Rhine into Gaul. Description of the Suebi.

I. Eā quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germāni et item Tencterī magnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt nōn longē ā marī, quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēbīs complūrīs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūrsus invicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cottīdiānā exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā adsuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrīs alit et immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locīs frīgidissimis neque vestītūs praeter pellīs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

II. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī

dēsīderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cottīdiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstīgiō adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adīre audent. Vīnum omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.



A HORSE WITH *EPHIPPIUM*

III. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suīs fīnibus vacāre agrōs; hāc rē sīgnificārī magnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia passuum C agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; iī paulō (quamquam sunt ēiusdem generis) sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicīs sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellīs expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis fīnibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālīs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs īnfīrmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

The Menapii are overpowered by the Usipetes and Tencteri.

IV. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs suprā dīximus, quī complūrīs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt;

ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia, vīcōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitūdinis adventū perterritī ex iīs aedificiīs quae trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāverant, et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant. Illī omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter cūstōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdīs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt, et trīduī viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt, atque omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō īnsciōs inopīnantīsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt, atque omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

The invaders are received in a friendly manner by certain of the Gallic tribes.

V. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et īnfīrmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, utī et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōnsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint prōnūntiāre cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque audītiōnibus permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vēstīgiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant, et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum fícta respondeant.

VI. Quā cōnsuētūdine cognitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōnsuērat ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea quae fore suspicātus erat facta cognōvit; missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōn nūllīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs, invītā-

tōsque eōs utī ab Rhēnō discēderent: 'Omnia quae postulāssent ab sē fore parāta.' Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in fīnīs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocātīs Caesar ea quae cognōverat dissimulanda sibi exīstimāvit, eōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōnfīrmātīs equitātūque imperātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōnstituit.

Caesar demands that the Germans depart from Gaul.

VII. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab iīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: 'Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īnferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō haec sit ā māiōribus trādita, quīcumque bellum īnferant resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dīcere: vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiam Rōmānī velint, posse iīs ūtilīs esse āmīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint; sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē dīī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possint.'

VIII. Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum est respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: 'Sibi nūllam cum iīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse quī suōs fīnīs tuērī nōn potuerint aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī darī, tantae praesertim multitūdinī, sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōnsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.'

IX. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dēlīberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cognōverat enim magnam partem equitātūs ab iīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā

ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque ēius reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

The Meuse and the Rhine.

X. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in fīnibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batāvōrum, neque longius inde mīlibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum īnfluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lēpontiīs, quī Alpīs incolunt, et longō spatiō per fīnīs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus fertur, et ubi Ōceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrīs diffluit partīs multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs effectīs, quārum pars magna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur (ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vīvere exīstimantur), multīsque capitibus in Ōceanum īnfluit.

The Germans seek delay. A cavalry skirmish takes place.

XI. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII mīlibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equitēs quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum quī abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum quattuor aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cognōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostīs proeliō lacesserent, et sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

XII. At hostēs, ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexērunt, quōrum erat quīnque mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius DCCC equitēs habērent, quod iī quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus hīs resistentibus cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, suffossīsque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt, atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur IIII et LXX, in hīs vir fortissimus Pīsō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cūius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multīs vulneribus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

Caesar defeats the German army and destroys it.

XIII. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab iīs quī per dolum atque īnsidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cognitā Gallōrum īnfīrmitāte quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōnsecūtī sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatī dandum exīstimābat. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē ēius diēī māne eādem et simulātiōne et perfidiā ūsī Germānī frequentēs omnibus prīncipibus māiōribusque nātū adhibitīs ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dīcēbātur, pūrgandī suī causā, quod contrā atque esset dictum

et ipsī petīssent proelium prīdiē commīsissent, simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinērī iussit; ipse omnīs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

XIV. Aciē triplicī īnstitūtā et celeriter octō mīlium itinere cōnfectō prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid agerētur Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī, et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsilī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere an castra dēfendere an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū sīgnificārētur, mīlitēs nostrī prīstinī diēī perfidiā incitātī in castra inrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedīmentaque proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suīs domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

XV. Germānī post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interfīcī vidērent, armīs abiectīs sīgnīsque mīlitāribus relīctīs sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, magnō numerō interfectō reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucīs vulnerātīs ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum CCCCXXX mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar iīs quōs in castrīs retinuerat discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxērunt. Hīs Caesar lībertātem concessit.

Caesar determines to cross over into Germany.

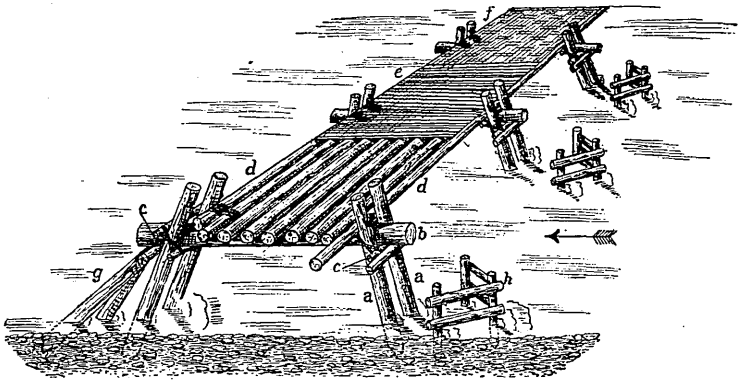
XVI. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit iūstis-

sima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre. Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsīsse neque proeliō interfuisse post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in fīnīs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum hīs coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset, quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, respondērunt: 'Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum fīnīre; sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum exīstimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?' Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret: 'Id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem ēius exercitūs Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse possent.' Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

He builds a bridge over the Rhine.

XVII. Caesar hīs dē causīs quās commemorāvī Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem, altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīstimābat. Ratiōnem pontis hanc īnstituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab īmō praeacūta, dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungē-

bat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfīxerat fistūcīsque adēgerat, nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastīgātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, iīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta, intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab īnferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūnctūra distābat, bīnīs utrimque fībulīs ab extrēmā parte dis-



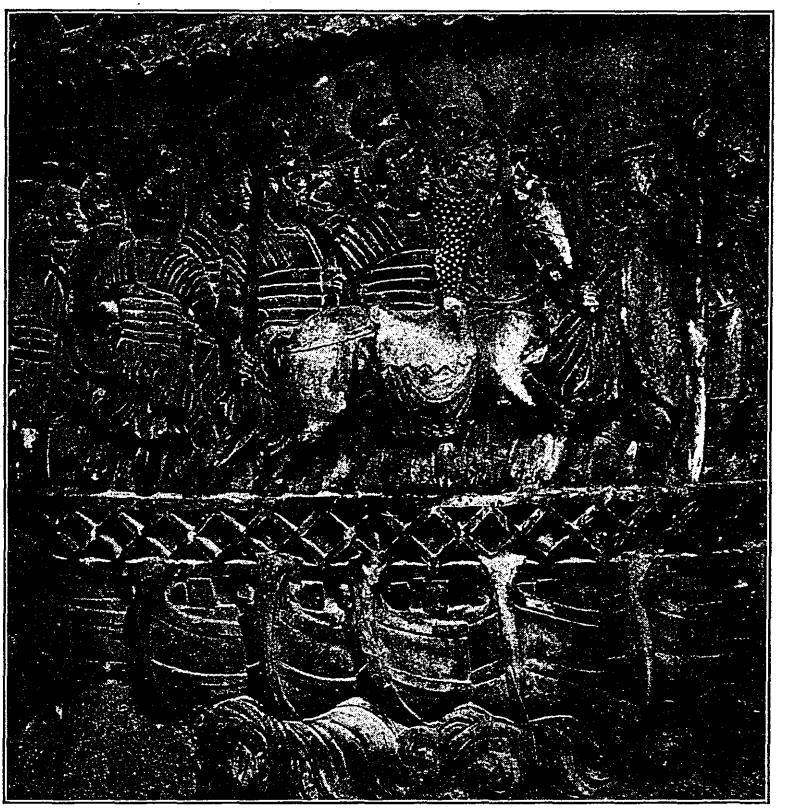
CAESAR'S BRIDGE OVER THE RHINE

a a, *tigna bina sesquipedalia.* b, *trabs bipedalis.* c c, *fibulae.* d d, *derecta materia.* e, *longurii.* f, *crates.* g, *sublicae oblique actae.* h, *sublicae supra pontem actae.*

tinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revinctīs tanta erat operis fīrmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō māior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut sī arborum truncī sīve nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs immissae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur neu pontī nocērent.

After spending eighteen days across the Rhine, Caesar returns into Gaul.

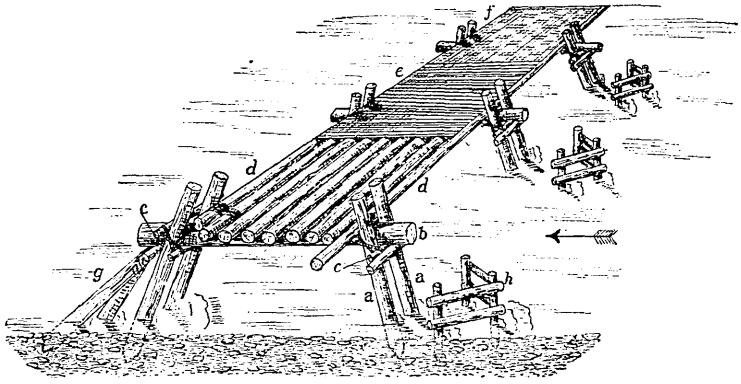
XVIII. Diēbus decem quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad



ROMAN SOLDIERS CROSSING A BRIDGE

utramque partem pontis fīrmō praesidiō relictō in fīnīs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus līberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore quō pōns īnstituī coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus iīs quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud

bat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfīxerat fistūcīsque adēgerat, nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastīgātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, iīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta, intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab īnferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūnctūra distābat, bīnīs utrimque fībulīs ab extrēmā parte dis-



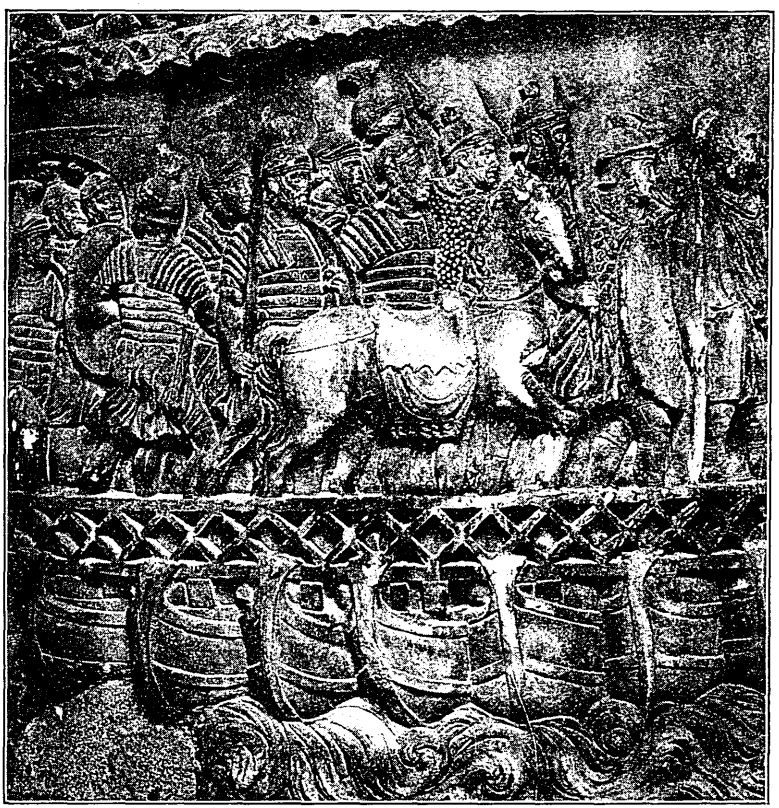
CAESAR'S BRIDGE OVER THE RHINE

a a, *tigna bina sesquipedalia.* b, *trabs bipedalis.* c c, *fibulae.* d d, *derecta materia.* e, *longurii.* f, *crates.* g, *sublicae oblique actae.* h, *sublicae supra pontem actae.*

tinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revinctīs tanta erat operis fīrmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō māior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut sī arborum truncī sīve nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs immissae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur neu pontī nocērent.

After spending eighteen days across the Rhine, Caesar returns into Gaul.

XVIII. Diēbus decem quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad



ROMAN SOLDIERS CROSSING A BRIDGE

utramque partem pontis fīrmō praesidiō relictō in fīnīs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus līberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore quō pōns īnstituī coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus iīs quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud

sē habēbant, fīnibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

XIX. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs sē in fīnīs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque hīs auxilium suum pollicitus sī ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab iīs cognōvit: 'Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnīs partīs dīmīsisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, līberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenīrent. Hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum quās Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibīdem dēcertāre cōnstituisse.' Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iīs rēbus cōnfectīs quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, — ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne līberāret, — diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptīs satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

Caesar's First Expedition to Britain

Preparations for the voyage.

XX. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septemtriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et sī tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur sī modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset, quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam neque hīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē

undique mercātōribus neque quanta esset īnsulae magnitūdō neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur neque quī essent ad māiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs reperīre poterat.

XXI. Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvīs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem iubet convenīre. Interim cōnsiliō ēius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit et cum iīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, cūiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat cīvitātēs hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit quī nāvī ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

XXII. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāsset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat,

magnum iīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōrī, lēgātīs, praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur, quōminus in eundem portum venīre possent ; hās equitibus dis-



ROMAN SHIPS

tribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

The voyage.

XXIII. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem

portum prōgredī et nāvīs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cūius locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, maximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque īnstabilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō sīgnō et sublātīs ancorīs circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac plānō lītore nāvīs cōnstituit.

The Britons unsuccessfully attempt to prevent a landing.

XXIV. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant, mīlitibus autem ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum pressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūius omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant ūtēbantur.

XXV. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvīs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī, atque inde fundīs, sagittīs,

magnum iīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōrī, lēgātīs, praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur, quōminus in eundem portum venīre possent ; hās equitibus dis-



ROMAN SHIPS

tribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

The voyage.

XXIII. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem

portum prōgredī et nāvīs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cūius locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, maximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque īnstabilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō sīgnō et sublātīs ancorīs circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac plānō lītore nāvīs cōnstituit.

The Britons unsuccessfully attempt to prevent a landing.

XXIV. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant, mīlitibus autem ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum pressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum ; cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūius omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant ūtēbantur.

XXV. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvīs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī, atque inde fundīs, sagittīs,

tormentīs hostīs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret: "Dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō." Hōc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostīs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.



AQUILIFER
(From a gravestone)

XXVI. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque fīrmiter īnsistere neque sīgna subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat sē adgregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārīs ex nāvī ēgredientīs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs

paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit, et quōs labōrantīs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostīs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

They sue for peace.

XXVII. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs sēsē pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt, et in petendā pāce ēius reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētur petīvērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

Storm and tide damage the fleet.

XXVIII. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem unde erant pro-

tormentīs hostīs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstiterunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret: "Dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō." Hōc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostīs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.



AQUILIFER
(From a gravestone)

XXVI. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere neque sīgna subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat sē adgregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārīs ex nāvī ēgredientīs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs

paucōs circumsistēbant, alii ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit, et quōs labōrantīs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostīs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

They sue for peace.

XXVII. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs sēsē pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt, et in petendā pāce ēius reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētur petīvērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

Storm and tide damage the fleet.

XXVIII. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem unde erant pro-

fectae referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum perīculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs cum flūctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

XXIX. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvīs quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat, quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflictābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancorīs, reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant quae ad reficiendās nāvīs erant ūsuī, et quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

The Britons decide to renew hostilities.

XXX. Quibus rēbus cognitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvīs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebelliōne factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere, quod hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

XXXI. At Caesar etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnīs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs

cottīdiē in castra cōnferēbat, et quae gravissimē adflictae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque, cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset effēcit.

The seventh legion is attacked.

XXXII. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, iī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem māiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar, id quod erat, suspicātus aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsilī, cohortīs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs, dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

The war-chariots of the Britons.

XXXIII. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pugnae. Prīmō per omnīs partīs perequitant et tēla coniciunt, atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant ut sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita

mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant, ac tantum ūsū cottīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

Caesar relieves the seventh legion. He defeats the Britons in battle.

XXXIV. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pugnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ēius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō continuit, et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrīs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnīs partīs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā ad castra vēnērunt.



A ROMAN COIN SHOWING AN *ESSEDUM*

XXXV. Caesar etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga

vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrīs ex iīs occīdērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

The Britons again ask for peace. Caesar returns to Gaul.

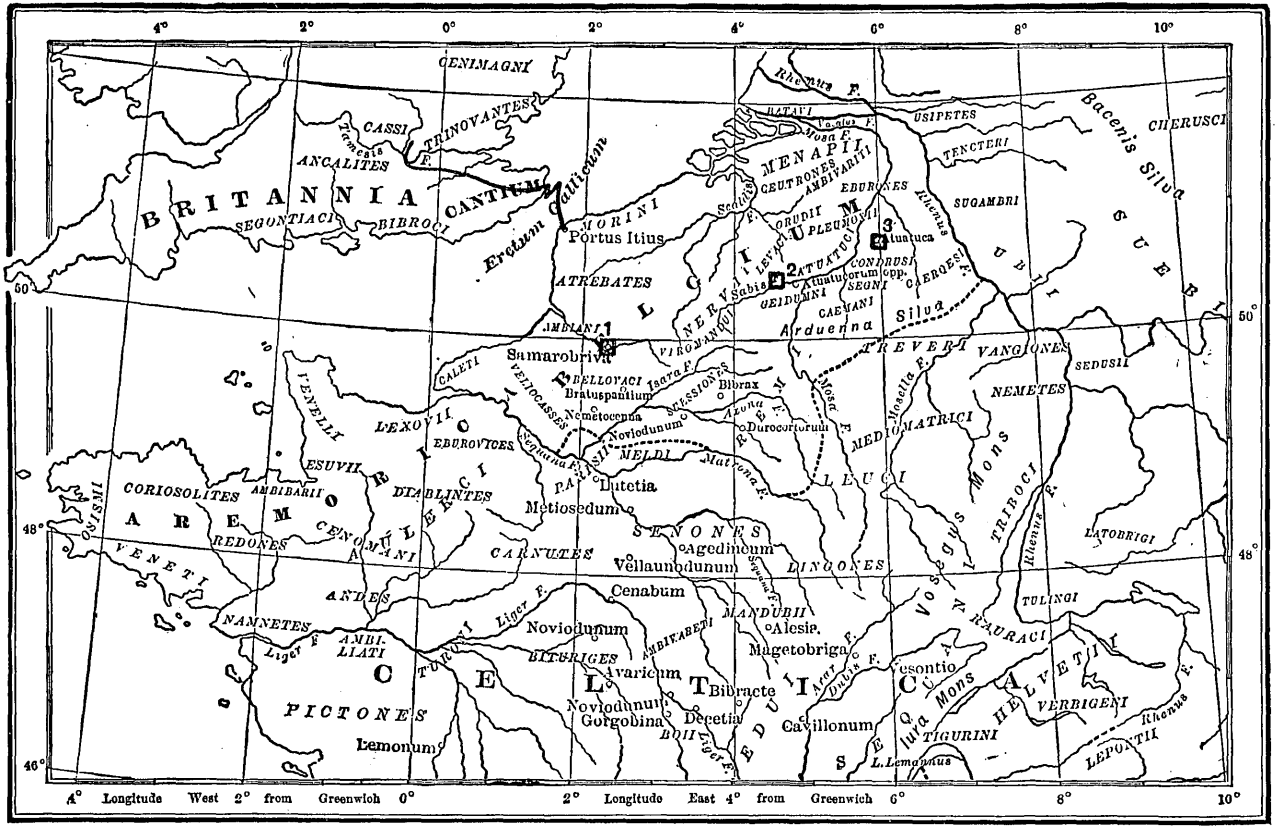
XXXVI. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctī, īnfīrmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvīs solvit, quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex iīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt, et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

The Morini and Menapii cause trouble. The army goes into winter quarters. A thanksgiving at Rome.

XXXVII. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter CCC atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī prīmō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia sex convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs quattuor fortissimē pugnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus acceptīs complūrīs ex hīs occīdērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt, magnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

XXXVIII. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iīs legiōnibus quās ex Britanniā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent, quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī vēnērunt. At Q.

Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnīs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum XX supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.



1, Camp of Trebonius. 2, Camp of Cicero. 3, Camp of Sabinus.

THE CAMPAIGN OF 54 B.C.

BOOK V

Caesar's Second Expedition to Britain

Having given orders for the building of a fleet, Caesar goes to Hither Gaul and Illyricum.

I. L. Domitiō, App. Claudiō cōnsulibus discēdēns ab hībernīs Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannīs facere cōnsuērat, lēgātīs imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, utī quam plūrimās possint hieme nāvīs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrent. Eārum modum fōrmamque dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnisque paulō facit humiliōrēs quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōnsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus magnōs ibi flūctūs fierī cognōverat; ad onera ac multitūdinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnīs āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum humilitās adiuvat. Ea quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvīs ex Hispāniā apportārī iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citeriōris perāctīs in Illyricum proficīscitur, quod ā Pīrustīs fīnitimam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, cīvitātibus mīlitēs imperat certumque in locum convenīre iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pīrustae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, quī doceant nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōnsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrent omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniūriīs satisfacere. Perceptā ōrātiōne eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī iubet; nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō cīvitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. Iīs ad diem adductīs, ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter cīvitātēs dat, quī lītem aestiment poenamque cōnstituant.

He checks an incipient revolt among the Treveri.

II. Hīs cōnfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs in citeriōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitīs omnibus hībernīs singulārī mīlitum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter DC ēius generis cūius suprā dēmōnstrāvimus nāvīs et longās XXVIII invēnit īnstrūctās, neque multum abesse ab eō, quīn paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possint. Conlaudātīs mīlitibus atque iīs quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fierī velit ostendit atque omnīs ad portum Itium convenīre iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trāiectum esse cognōverat, circiter mīlium passuum XXX ā continentī; huic reī quod satis esse vīsum est mīlitum relinquit. Ipse cum legiōnibus expedītīs quattuor et equitibus DCCC in fīnīs Trēverōrum proficīscitur, quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque imperiō pārēbant, Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dīcēbantur.

III. Haec cīvitās longē plūrimum tōtīus Galliae equitātū valet magnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit. In eā cīvitāte duo dē prīncipātū inter sē contendēbant, Indūtiomārus et Cingetorīx; ex quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cognitum est, ad eum vēnit, sē suōsque omnīs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōnfīrmāvit, quaeque in Trēverīs gererentur ostendit. At Indūtiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, iīsque quī per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant in silvam Arduennam abditīs, quae ingentī magnitūdine per mediōs fīnīs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre īnstituit; sed posteāquam nōn nūllī prīncipēs ex eā cīvitāte et auctōritāte Cingetorīgis adductī et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suīs prīvātīs rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitātī cōnsulere nōn possent, veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: 'Sēsē idcircō ab suīs discēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius cīvitātem in officiō continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprūden-

tiam lāberētur; itaque cīvitātem in suā potestāte esse, sēque, sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum et suās cīvitātisque fortūnās ēius fidei permissūrum.'

IV. Caesar etsī intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dīcerentur quaeque eum rēs ab īnstitūtō cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēverīs cōnsūmere cōgerētur omnibus rēbus ad Britannicum bellum comparātīs, Indūtiomārum ad sē cum CC obsidibus venīre iussit. Hīs adductīs, in iīs fīliō propinquīsque ēius omnibus, quōs nōminātim ēvocāverat, cōnsōlātus Indūtiomārum hortātusque est utī in officiō manēret; nihilō tamen sētius prīncipibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātīs hōs singillātim Cingetorīgī conciliāvit, quod cum meritō ēius ab sē fierī intellegēbat, tum magnī interesse arbitrābātur ēius auctōritātem inter suōs quam plūrimum valēre, cūius tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem perspexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indūtiomārus, suam grātiam inter suōs minuī, et quī iam ante inimīcō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.

The fleet and army assemble at Portus Itius.

V. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervēnit. Ibi cognōscit LX nāvīs, quae in Meldīs factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem unde erant profectae revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus īnstrūctās invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtīus Galliae convenit, numerō mīlia quattuor, prīncipēsque ex omnibus cīvitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

Dumnorix, refusing to obey Caesar's commands and acting treacherously, is killed.

VI. Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx Haeduus, dē quō ante ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōnstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, magnī

animī, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cognōverat. Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Haeduōrum Dumnorīx dīxerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitātis dēferrī; quod dictum Haeduī graviter ferēbant neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cognōverat. Ille omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā relinquerētur, partim quod īnsuētus nāvigandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impedīrī sēsē dīceret. Posteāquam id obstinātē sibi negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī adēmptā prīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārīque coepit utī in continentī remanērent; metū territāre: 'Nōn sine causā fierī ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris, ut quōs in cōnspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnīs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret;' fidem reliquīs interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere, ut quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

VII. Quā rē cognitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Haeduae dīgnitātis tribuēbat, coërcendum atque dēterrendum quibuscumque rēbus posset Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod longius ēius āmentiam prōgredī vidēbat, prōspiciendum nē quid sibi ac reī pūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī magnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōnsuēvit, dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret, nihilō tamen sētius omnia ēius cōnsilia cognōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem mīlitēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvīs iubet. At omnium impedītīs animīs Dumnorīx cum equitibus Haeduōrum ā castrīs īnsciente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs magnam partem equitātūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit retrahīque imperat; sī vim faciat neque pāreat, interficī iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem

implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns līberum sē līberaeque esse cīvitātis. Illī, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Haeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

The voyage to Britain.

VIII. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continentī cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et reī frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cognōsceret, cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum quem in continentī relinquēbat ad sōlis occāsum nāvīs solvit; et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō cursum nōn tenuit, et longius dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōnspexit. Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit ut eam partem īnsulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvīs cognōvit, cum magnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae, cum annōtinīs prīvātīsque quās suī quisque commodī causā fēcerat, amplius DCCC ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā lītore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

Caesar marches against the enemy and storms a stronghold.

IX. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captīvīs cognōvit quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictīs et equitibus CCC, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostīs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus quod in lītore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum cir-

citer XII, hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est. Illī equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbrīs arboribus succīsīs omnēs introitūs erant praeclūsī. Ipsī ex silvīs rārī prōpugnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredī prohibēbant. At mīlitēs legiōnis septimae testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adiectō locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientīs longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod locī nātūram ignōrābat et quod magnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus relinquī volēbat.

A storm shatters the fleet, which is lying at anchor. Caesar decides to beach the ships and build a fortification around them.

X. Postrīdiē ēius diēī māne tripartītō mīlitēs equitēsque in expedītiōnem mīsit, ut eōs quī fugerant persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Atriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt, quī nūntiārent superiōre nocte maximā coortā tempestāte prope omnīs nāvīs adflictās atque in lītus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis patī possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

XI. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvīs revertitur; eadem ferē quae ex nūntiīs litterīsque cognōverat cōram perspicit, sīc ut āmissīs circiter XL nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse magnō negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scrībit ut quam plūrimās possit iīs legiōnibus quae sint apud eum nāvīs īnstituat. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnīs nāvīs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne coniungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs

decem cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissīs. Subduetīs nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs eāsdem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit; ipse eōdem unde redierat proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, māiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant summā imperī bellīque administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō, cūius fīnīs ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamēsis, ā marī circiter mīlia passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

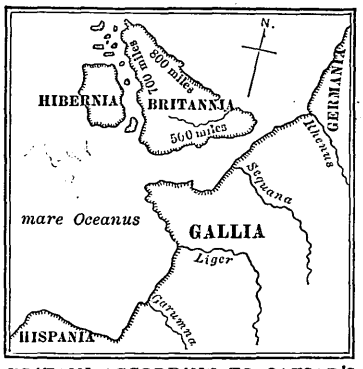
Britain: inhabitants, geography, customs of the people.

XII. Britanniae pars interior ab iīs incolitur quōs nātōs in īnsulā ipsā memoriā prōditum dīcunt, maritima pars ab iīs quī praedae ac bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē īsdem nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecoris magnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut aere aut nummō aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ēius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cūiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā remissiōribus frīgoribus.

XIII. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad meridiem spectat. Hōc latus tenet circiter mīlia passuum D. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia īnsula, dīmidiō minor, ut exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmissūs atque ex

Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est īnsula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae īnsulae exīstimantur, dē quibus īnsulīs nōn nūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctīs vidēbāmus. Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, DCC mīlium. Tertium est contrā septemtriōnēs, cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra; sed ēius angulus alter maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc mīlium passuum DCCC in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.

XIV. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in pugnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē commūnīs, et maximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum līberīs; sed quī sunt ex iīs nātī eōrum habentur līberī quō prīmum virgō quaeque dēducta est.



BRITAIN ACCORDING TO CAESAR'S DESCRIPTION

The Britons gain some slight advantages, but on the whole the Romans are superior.

XV. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collīsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs cupidius īnsecūtī nōn

nūllōs ex suīs āmīsērunt. At illī intermissō spatiō, imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnītiōne castrōrum subitō sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt, impetūque in eōs factō quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs conlocātī ācriter pugnāvērunt, duābusque missīs subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque hīs prīmīs legiōnum duārum, cum eae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere pugnae perterritīs nostrīs per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumīs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus mīlitum, interficitur. Illī plūribus submissīs cohortibus repelluntur.

XVI. Tōtō hōc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculīs omnium ac prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentīs possent neque ab sīgnīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad hūius generis hostem; equitēs autem magnō cum perīculō proeliō dīmicāre, propterea quod illī etiam cōnsultō plērumque cēderent, et cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsilīrent et pedibus disparī proeliō contenderent. Equestris autem proelī ratiō et cēdentibus et īnsequentibus pār atque idem perīculum īnferēbat. Accēdēbat hūc ut numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī magnīsque intervāllīs proeliārentur, statiōnēsque dispositās habērent atque aliōs alii deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatīgātīs succēderent.

XVII. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōnstitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē, cum Caesar pābulandī causā trīs legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sīc utī ab sīgnīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācriter in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt, neque fīnem sequendī fēcērunt quoad subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitīs hostīs ēgērunt, magnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī conligendī neque cōnsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus quae undique convēnerant auxilia discessērunt, neque

post id tempus umquam summīs nōbīscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

Caesar crosses the Thames.

XVIII. Caesar cognitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamēsim in fīnīs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam magnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus praefīxīsque mūnīta, ēiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfīxae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cognitīs ā captīvīs perfugīsque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū mīlitēs ierunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

Many tribes surrender to him.

XIX. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissīs ampliōribus cōpiīs, mīlibus circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relictīs itinera nostra servābat paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locīsque impedītīs ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat, atque iīs regiōnibus quibus nōs iter factūrōs cognōverat pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat; et cum equitātus noster līberius praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs effunderet, omnibus viīs sēmitīsque essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat, et magnō cum perīculō nostrōrum equitum cum hīs cōnflīgēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum agrīs vāstandīs incendiīsque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur quantum in labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī mīlitēs efficere poterant.

XX. Interim Trinovantēs, prope fīrmissima eārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem vēnerat, cūius pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā

mortem vītāverat, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in cīvitātem mittat, quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs XL frūmentumque exercituī, Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

XXI. Trinovantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī mīlitum iniūriā prohibitīs Cēnimagnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, Cassī lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab hīs cognōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant cum silvās impedītās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vītandae causā convenīre cōnsuērunt. Eō proficīscitur cum legiōnibus; locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī mīlitum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī ēiēcērunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

XXII. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē improvīsō adoriantur atque oppugnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā, multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorīge suōs incolumīs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vāstātīs fīnibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitātum lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōnstituit; interdīcit atque

imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus noceat.

He returns to Gaul.

XXIII. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvīs invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum magnum numerum habēbat et nōn nūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īnstituit. Ac sīc accidit utī ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis quae mīlitēs portāret dēsīderārētur; at ex iīs quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur priōris commeātūs expositīs mīlitibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius mīlitēs conlocāvit, ac summā tranquillitāte cōnsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnīsque incolumīs nāvīs perdūxit.

Uprisings in Northern Gaul

The legions are placed in winter quarters.

XXIV. Subductīs nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrīvae perāctō, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā propter sicci-tātēs angustius prōvēnerat, coāctus est aliter ac superiōribus annīs exercitum in hībernīs conlocāre legiōnēsque in plūrīs cīvitātēs distribuere. Ex quibus ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nerviōs Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esuviōs L. Rōsciō; quārtam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in cōnfīniō Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit; trīs in Bellovacīs conlocāvit, hīs M. Crassum et L. Mūnātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium lēgātōs praefēcit. Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum cōnscrīpserat, et cohortīs quīnque in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō

Ambiorīgis et Catuvolcī erant, mīsit. Hīs mīlitibus Q. Titūrium Sabīnum et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtīs legiōnibus facillimē inopiae reī frūmentāriae sēsē medērī posse exīstimāvit. Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnum hīberna, praeter eam quam L. Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem dūcendam dederat, mīlibus passuum c continēbantur. Ipse intereā, quoad legiōnēs conlocātās mūnītaque hīberna cognōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōnstituit.

The murder of Tasgetius.

XXV. Erat in Carnutibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius, cūius māiōrēs in suā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar prō ēius virtūte atque in sē benevolentiā, quod in omnibus bellīs singulārī ēius operā fuerat ūsus, māiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēgnantem inimīcī palam multīs ex cīvitāte auctōribus interfēcērunt. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plūrīs pertinēbat, nē cīvitās eōrum impulsū dēficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnutēs proficīscī iubet ibique hiemāre, quōrumque operā cognōverit Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. Interim ab omnibus quibus legiōnēs trādiderat certior factus est in hīberna perventum locumque hībernīs esse mūnītum.

The Eburones, led by Ambiorix, revolt.

XXVI. Diēbus circiter xv quibus in hīberna ventum est initium repentīnī tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis ortum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō; quī cum ad fīnīs rēgnī suī Sabīnō Cottaeque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hīberna comportāvissent, Indūtiomārī Trēverī nūntiīs impulsī suōs concitāvērunt, subitōque oppressīs lignātōribus magnā manū ad castra oppugnanda vēnērunt. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque ascendissent, atque ūnā ex parte Hispānīs equitibus ēmissīs equestrī proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppugnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt utī

aliquī ex nostrīs ad conloquium prōdīret: 'Habēre sēsē quae dē rē commūnī dīcere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minuī posse spērārent.'

Ambiorix makes proposals to Sabinus and Cotta.

XXVII. Mittitur ad eōs conloquendī causā C. Arpīnēius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūrī, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante missū Caesaris ad Ambiorīgem ventitāre cōnsuērat. Apud quōs Ambiorīx ad hunc modum locūtus est: 'Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiīs plūrimum eī cōnfitērī dēbēre, quod ēius operā stīpendiō līberātus esset quod Atuatucīs, fīnitimīs suīs, pendere cōnsuēsset, quodque eī et fīlius et frātris fīlius ā Caesare remissī essent, quōs Atuatucī obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnīs tenuissent; neque id quod fēcerit dē oppugnātiōne castrōrum aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū cīvitātis; suaque esse ēius modī imperia ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitūdō quam ipse in multitūdinem. Cīvitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentīnae Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperītus rērum ut suīs cōpiīs populum Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfīdat. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium; omnibus hībernīs Caesaris oppugnandīs hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidiō venīre posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūnī lībertāte cōnsilium initum vidērētur. Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfēcerit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem officī prō beneficiīs Caesaris; monēre, ōrāre Titūrium prō hospitiō ut suae ac mīlitum salūtī cōnsulat. Magnam manum Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trānsīsse; hanc adfore bīduō. Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium, velintne, priusquam fīnitimī sentiant, ēductōs ex hībernīs mīlitēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēdūcere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter L, alter paulō amplius ab iīs absit. Illud sē pollicērī et iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmāre, tūtum sē iter per suōs fīnīs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī

sēsē cōnsulere, quod hībernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō ēius meritīs grātiam referre.' Hāc ōrātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorīx.

The Romans hold a council of war. Sabinus and Cotta cannot agree.

XXVIII. Arpīnēius et Iūnius quae audierant ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illī repentīnā rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea dicēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda exīstimābant, maximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem ignōbilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt, magnaque inter eōs exsistit contrōversia. L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque tribūnī mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temere agendum neque ex hībernīs iniussū Caesaris discēdendum exīstimābant; quantāsvīs cōpiās etiam Germānōrum sustinērī posse mūnītīs hībernīs docēbant; rem esse testimōniō, quod prīmum hostium impetum multīs ultrō vulneribus inlātīs fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; intereā et ex proximīs hībernīs et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō, quid esse, levius aut turpius quam auctōre hoste dē summīs rēbus capere cōnsilium?

XXIX. Contrā ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum māiōrēs manūs hostium adiūnctīs Germānīs convēnissent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximīs hībernīs esset acceptum. 'Brevem cōnsulendī esse occāsiōnem. Caesarem sē arbitrārī profectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnutēs interficiendī Tasgetī cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs. Sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre: subesse Rhēnum; magnō esse Germānīs dolōrī Ariovistī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; ārdēre Galliam tot contumēliīs acceptīs sub populī Rōmānī imperium redāctam, superiōre glōriā reī mīlitāris exstīnctā. Postrēmō, quis hōc sibi persuādēret, sine certā spē Ambiorīgem ad ēius modī cōnsilium dēscendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtam: sī nihil esset dūrius, nūllō cum perīculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; sī

Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōnsentīret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positam salūtem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum quī dissentīrent cōnsilium quem habēre exitum? In quō sī nōn praesēns perīculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset timenda.'

XXX. Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā prīmīsque ōrdinibus ācriter resisterētur, "Vincite," inquit, "sī ita vultis," Sabīnus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut magna pars mīlitum exaudīret; "neque is sum," inquit, "quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis perīculō terrear. Hī sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposcent; quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum proximīs hībernīs coniūnctī commūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant, nōn rēiectī et relēgātī longē ā cēterīs aut ferrō aut famē intereant."

The Romans abandon their camp.

XXXI. Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum perīculum dēdūcant: 'Facilem esse rem, seu maneant seu proficīscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere.' Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs, superat sententia Sabīnī; prōnūntiātur prīmā lūce itūrōs. Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex īnstrūmentō hībernōrum relinquere cōgerētur. Omnia excōgitantur quārē nec sine perīculō maneātur et languōre mīlitum et vigiliīs perīculum augeātur. Prīmā lūce sīc ex castrīs proficīscuntur ut quibus esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimō cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine maximīsque impedīmentīs.

They are attacked on the march by Ambiorix.

XXXII. At hostēs posteāquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliīsque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, conlocātīs īnsidiīs bi-

partītō in silvīs opportūnō atque occultō locō ā mīlibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant; et cum sē maior pars agminis in magnam convallem dēmīsisset, ex utrāque parte ēius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt, novissimōsque premere et prīmōs prohibēre ascēnsū atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committere coepērunt.

XXXIII. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvīdisset, trepidāre et concursāre cohortīsque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur,—quod plērumque iīs accidere cōnsuēvit quī in ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitāsset haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nūllā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat, et in appellandīs cohortandīsque mīlitibus imperātōris et in pugnā mīlitis officia praestābat. Cum propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile per sē omnia obīre et quid quōque locō faciendum esset prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiārī ut impedīmenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōnsisterent. Quod cōnsilium, etsī in ēius modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē cecidit; nam et nostrīs mīlitibus spem minuit et hostīs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat, ut vulgō mīlitēs ab sīgnīs discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima habēret ab impedīmentīs petere atque adripere properāret, clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

After a long fight the Romans are defeated. The few survivors kill themselves.

XXXIV. At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iussērunt nē quis ab locō discēderet: 'Illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservārī quaecumque Rōmānī relīquissent; proinde omnia in victōriā posita exīstimārent.' Erant et virtūte et genere pugnandī parēs. Nostrī tametsī ab duce et ā fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem

salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorīx prōnūntiārī iubet ut procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant, et quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint, cēdant: 'Levitāte armōrum et cottīdiānā exercitātiōne nihil hīs nocērī posse;' rūrsus sē ad sīgna recipientīs īnsequantur.

XXXV. Quō praeceptō ab iīs dīligentissimē observātō, cum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere. Rūrsus cum in eum locum unde erant prōgressī revertī coeperant, et ab iīs quī cesserant et ab iīs quī proximī steterant circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquēbātur neque ab tantā multitūdine coniecta tēla cōnfertī vītāre poterant. Tamen tot incommodīs cōnflictātī multīs vulneribus acceptīs resistēbant, et magnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā, cum ā prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur, nihil quod ipsīs esset indīgnum committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō, quī superiōre annō prīmum pīlum dūxerat, virō fortī et magnae auctōritātis, utrumque femur trāgulā trāicitur; Q. Lūcānius, ēiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō fīliō subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnīs cohortīs ōrdinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā vulnerātur.

XXXVI. Hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōnspexisset, interpretem suum Cn. Pompēium ad eum mittit rogātum ut sibi mīlitibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondet: 'Sī velit sēcum conloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitūdine impetrārī posse quod ad mīlitum salūtem pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil nocitum īrī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere.' Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur, pugnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorīge ūnā conloquantur: 'Spērāre sē ab eō dē suā ac mīlitum salūte impetrārī posse.' Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō persevērat.

XXXVII. Sabīnus quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs mīlitum circum sē habēbat et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet, et cum propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, iussus arma abicere imperātum facit suīsque ut idem faciant imperat. Interim dum dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōnsultō ab Ambiorīge īnstituitur sermō, paulātim circumventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt impetūque in nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnāns interficitur cum maximā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressī. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magnā multitūdine hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit; ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pugnāns occīditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsī interficiunt. Paucī ex proeliō ēlāpsī incertīs itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hīberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

Ambiorix induces the Nervii to revolt.

XXXVIII. Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorīx statim cum equitātū in Atuatucōs, quī erant ēius rēgnō fīnitimī, proficīscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditātumque sē subsequī iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Atuatucīsque concitātīs posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit, hortāturque nē suī in perpetuum līberandī atque ulcīscendī Rōmānōs prō iīs quās accēperint iniūriīs occāsiōnem dīmittant. Interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs magnamque partem exercitūs interīsse dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negōtī subitō oppressam legiōnem quae cum Cicerōne hiemet interficī. Sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem. Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nerviīs persuādet.

The Eburones and Nervii and their allies attack Cicero's camp, but meet a vigorous resistance.

XXXIX. Itaque cōnfestim dīmissīs nūntiīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levācōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam maximās possunt manūs cōgunt, et dē im-

prōvīsō ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn nūllī mīlitēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnītiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentīnō equitum adventū interciperentur. Hīs circumventīs magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nerviī, Atuatucī, atque hōrum omnium sociī et clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant, atque hanc adeptī victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōnfīdēbant.

XL. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ā Cicerōne litterae, magnīs prōpositīs praemiīs sī pertulissent; obsessīs omnibus viīs missī intercipiuntur. Noctū ex māteriā quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant turrēs admodum cxx excitantur incrēdibilī celeritāte; quae deesse operī vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō māiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Ā nostrīs eādem ratiōne quā prīdiē resistitur. Hōc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēī oppugnātiōnem opus sunt noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, magnus mūrālium pīlōrum numerus īnstituitur; turrēs contabulantur, pinnae lōrīcaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō mīlitum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

XLI. Tum ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amīcitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, conloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte eadem quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat commemorant: 'Omnem esse in armīs Galliam, Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīsse, Caesaris reliquōrumque hīberna oppugnārī.' Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fideī faciendae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam ab iīs praesidī spērent quī suīs rēbus diffīdant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum

animō ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsent atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs per sē incolumibus ex hībernīs discēdere et quāscumque in partīs velint sine metū proficīscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet: 'Nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō ēius iūstitiā quae petierint impetrātūrōs.'

The Gauls undertake a siege.

XLII. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nerviī vāllō pedum decem et fossā pedum xv hīberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbīs cognōverant et quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captīvōs ab hīs docēbantur; sed nūllā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs circumcīdere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhaurīre cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cognōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium passuum trium in circuitū mūnītiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquīs diēbus turrīs ad altitūdinem vāllī, falcīs, testūdinēsque, quās īdem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

XLIII. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē maximō coortō ventō ferventīs fūsilīs ex argillā glandīs fundīs et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter īgnem comprehendērunt et ventī magnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sīcutī partā iam atque explōrātā victōriā, turrīs testūdinēsque agere et scālīs vāllum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedīmenta atque omnīs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnārent. Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit, sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus nu-

merus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstīpāverant recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turrī adāctā et contingente vāllum tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt suōsque omnīs remōvērunt, nūtū vōcibusque hostīs, sī introīre vellent, vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī turrisque succēnsa est.

The rivalry of Pullo and Vorenus.

XLIV. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam prīmīs ōrdinibus appropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant, uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pugnārētur, "Quid dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne? Aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit." Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnītiōnēs, quaeque pars hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa, inrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō relictō Pullō pīlum in hostīs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō, hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfīgitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfīgitur. Āvertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfīxum arbitrantur. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īnstat, in locum dēiectus īnferiōrem concidit. Huic rūrsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnītiōnēs recipiunt. Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine

utrumque versāvit ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset, neque dīiūdicārī posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

Caesar learns of the danger and hastens to the relief of Cicero.

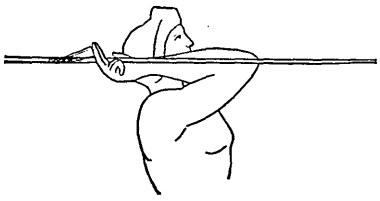
XLV. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppugnātiō, et maximē quod magnā parte mīlitum cōnfectā vulneribus rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōnspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus Nervius, nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā prīmā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hīc servō spē lībertātis magnīsque persuādet praemiīs ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō inligātās effert, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspīciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē perīculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cognōscitur.

XLVI. Caesar acceptīs litterīs hōrā circiter ūndecimā diēī statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum mittit, cūius hīberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum xxv; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficīscī celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium fīnīs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scrībit Labiēnō, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere possit, cum legiōne ad fīnīs Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter cccc ex proximīs hībernīs cōgit.

XLVII. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū certior factus eō diē mīlia passuum xx prōgreditur. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī attribuit, quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, obsidēs cīvitātum, litterās pūblicās, frūmentumque omne, quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā dēvexerat, relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus interitū Sabīnī et caede cohortium cognitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem

profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs recentī victōriā efferrī scīret, litterās Caesarī remittit quantō cum perīculō legiōnem ex hībernīs ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscrībit; docet omnīs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum tria mīlia passuum longē ab suīs castrīs cōnsēdisse.

XLVIII. Caesar cōnsiliō ēius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum commūnī salūtī auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Venit magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnīs. Ibi ex captīvīs cognōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in perīculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs magnīs praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat. Hanc Graecīs cōnscrīptam litterīs mittit, nē interceptā epistulā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōscantur. Sī adīre nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmentum dēligātā intrā mūnītiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scrībit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; hortātur ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ā nostrīs bīduō animadversa tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōnspicitur, dēmpta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū mīlitum recitat maximāque omnīs laetitiā adficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.



TRAGULA AND *AMENTUM*

The Gauls raise the siege and go to meet Caesar. He defeats them.

XLIX. Gallī rē cognitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter mīlia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus repetit, quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hunc admonet iter cautē dīligen-

terque faciat. Perscrībit in litterīs hostīs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar adlātīs suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōnfīrmat. Posterō diē lūce prīmā movet castra, et circiter mīlia passuum quattuor prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat magnī perīculī rēs tantulīs cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne līberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat. Cōnsīdit et quam aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit; atque haec etsī erant exigua per sē, vix hominum mīlium septem, praesertim nūllīs cum impedīmentīs, tamen angustiīs viārum quam maximē potest contrahit eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim speculātōribus in omnīs partīs dīmissīs explōrat quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsīre possit.

L. Eō diē parvulīs equestribus proeliīs ad aquam factīs utrīque sēsē suō locō continent, — Gallī, quod ampliōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnerant, exspectābant; Caesar, sī forte timōris simulātiōne hostīs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castrīs proeliō contenderet; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātīs itineribus minōre cum perīculō vallem rīvumque trānsīret. Prīmā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus committit. Caesar cōnsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque obstruī atque in hīs administrandīs rēbus quam maximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

LI. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invītātī cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōnstituunt, nostrīs vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductīs propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnītiōnem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt, praecōnibusque circummissīs prōnūntiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsīre, sine perīculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac sīc nostrōs contempsērunt ut obstrūctīs in speciem portūs singulīs ōrdinibus caespitum, quod eā nōn posse

introrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portīs ērūptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostīs in fugam dat, sīc utī omnīnō pugnandī causā resisteret nēmō, magnumque ex iīs numerum occīdit atque omnīs armīs exuit.

Caesar joins Cicero, and finds that the latter's soldiers have suffered severely in the siege.

LII. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant, omnibus suīs incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Īnstitūtās turrīs, testūdinēs, mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; prōductā legiōne cognōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum perīculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō ēius meritō legiōnemque conlaudat; centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captīvīs cognōscit. Posterō diē cōntiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfīrmat; quod dētrīmentum culpā et temeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferendum docet, quod beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

The Gauls abandon their intention of attacking the camps of Labienus and Roscius.

LIII. Interim ad Labiēnum per Rēmōs incrēdibilī celeritāte dē victōriā Caesaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum ab hībernīs Cicerōnis mīlia passuum abesset circiter LX eōque post hōram nōnam diēī Caesar pervēnisset, ante mediam noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmor orerētur, quō clāmōre sīgnificātiō victōriae grātulātiōque ab Rēmīs Labiēnō fieret. Hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlātā Indūtiomārus, quī posterō diē castra Labiēnī oppugnāre dēcrēverat, noctū profūgit cōpiāsque omnīs in Trēverōs redūcit. Caesar Fabium cum suā legiōne remittit in hīberna, ipse cum

tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam trīnīs hībernīs hiemāre cōnstituit; et quod tantī mōtūs Galliae exstiterant, tōtam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit. Nam illō incommodō dē Sabīnī morte perlātō omnēs ferē Galliae cīvitātēs dē bellō cōnsultābant, nūntiōs lēgātiōnēsque in omnīs partīs dīmittēbant, et quid reliquī cōnsilī caperent atque unde initium belli fieret explōrābant, nocturnaque in locīs dēsertīs concilia habēbant. Neque ūllum ferē tōtius hiemis tempus sine sollicitūdine Caesaris intercessit, quīn aliquem dē cōnsiliīs ac mōtū Gallōrum nūntium acciperet. In hīs ab L. Rōsciō, quem legiōnī tertiae decimae praefēcerat, certior factus est magnās Gallōrum cōpiās eārum cīvitātum quae Aremoricae appellantur oppugnandī suī causā convēnisse, neque longius mīlibus passuum octō ab hībernīs suīs āfuisse, sed nūntiō adlātō dē victōriā Caesaris discessisse, adeō ut fugae similis discessus vidērētur.

The Senones expel Cavarinus and disobey Caesar's command. Gaul is in confusion.

LIV. At Caesar prīncipibus cūiusque cīvitātis ad sē ēvocātīs aliōs territandō, cum sē scīre quae fierent dēnūntiāret, aliōs cohortandō magnam partem Galliae in officiō tenuit. Tamen Senonēs, quae est cīvitās in prīmīs fīrma et magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar apud eōs rēgem cōnstituerat, cūius frāter Moritasgus adventū in Galliam Caesaris cūiusque māiōrēs rēgnum obtinuerant, interficere pūblicō cōnsiliō cōnātī, cum ille praesēnsisset ac profūgisset, ūsque ad fīnīs īnsecūtī rēgnō domōque expulērunt; et missīs ad Caesarem satisfaciendī causā lēgātīs, cum is omnem ad sē senātum venīre iussisset, dictō audientēs nōn fuērunt. Ac tantum apud hominēs barbarōs valuit esse aliquōs repertōs prīncipēs bellī īnferendī tantamque omnibus voluntātum commūtātiōnem attulit ut— praeter Haeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs praecipuō semper honōre Caesar habuit, alterōs prō vetere ac perpetuā ergā populum Rōmānum fidē, alterōs prō recentibus Gallicī bellī officiīs — nūlla ferē cīvitās fuerit nōn suspecta nōbīs. Idque adeō haud sciō

mīrandumne sit, cum complūribus aliīs dē causīs, tum maximē quod quī virtūte bellī omnibus gentibus praeferēbantur, tantum sē ēius opīniōnis dēperdidisse ut populī Rōmānī imperia perferrent gravissimē dolēbant.

Indutiomarus tries to bring about a general uprising, but is defeated by Labienus and killed.

LV. Trēverī vērō atque Indūtiomārus tōtīus hiemis nūllum tempus intermīsērunt quīn trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs mitterent, cīvitātēs sollicitārent, pecūniās pollicērentur, magnā parte exercitūs nostrī interfectā multō minōrem superesse dīcerent partem. Neque tamen ūllī cīvitātī Germānōrum persuādērī potuit ut Rhēnum trānsīret, cum sē bis expertōs dīcerent, Ariovistī bellō et Tencterōrum trānsitū; nōn esse amplius fortūnam temptātūrōs. Hāc spē lāpsus Indūtiomārus nihilō minus cōpiās cōgere, exercēre, ā fīnitimīs equōs parāre, exsulēs damnātōsque tōtā Galliā magnīs praemiīs ad sē adlicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam hīs rēbus in Galliā auctōritātem comparāverat ut undique ad eum lēgātiōnēs concurrerent, grātiam atque amīcitiam pūblicē prīvātimque peterent.

LVI. Ubi intellēxit ultrō ad sē venīrī, alterā ex parte Senonēs Carnutēsque cōnscientiā facinoris īnstīgārī, alterā Nerviōs Atuatucōsque bellum Rōmānīs parāre, neque sibi voluntāriōrum cōpiās dēfore, sī ex fīnibus suīs prōgredī coepisset, armātum concilium indīcit. Hōc mōre Gallōrum est initium bellī; quō lēge commūnī omnēs pūberēs armātī convenīre cōguntur. Quī ex iīs novissimus vēnit, in cōnspectū multitūdinis omnibus cruciātibus adfectus necātur. In eō conciliō Cingetorīgem, alterius prīncipem factiōnis, generum suum, quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus Caesaris secūtum fidem ab eō nōn discessisse, hostem iūdicat bonaque ēius pūblicat. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in conciliō prōnūntiat arcessītum sē ā Senonibus et Carnutibus aliīsque complūribus Galliae cīvitātibus; hūc itūrum per fīnīs Rēmōrum eōrumque agrōs populātūrum ac, priusquam id faciat, castra Labiēnī oppugnātūrum. Quae fierī velit praecipit.

LVII. Labiēnus cum et locī nātūrā et manū mūnītissimīs castrīs sēsē tenēret, dē suō ac legiōnis perīculō nihil timēbat, nē quam occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae dīmitteret cōgitābat. Itaque ā Cingetorīge atque ēius propinquīs ōrātiōne Indūtiomārī cognitā, quam in conciliō habuerat, nūntiōs mittit ad fīnitimās cīvitātēs equitēsque undique ēvocat; hīs certam diem conveniendī dīcit. Interim prope cottīdiē cum omnī equitātū Indūtiomārus sub castrīs ēius vagābātur, aliās ut situm castrōrum cognōsceret, aliās conloquendī aut territandī causā; equitēs plērumque omnēs tēla intrā vāllum coniciēbant. Labiēnus suōs intrā mūnītiōnem continēbat timōrisque opīniōnem quibuscumque poterat rēbus augēbat.

LVIII. Cum māiōre in diēs contemptiōne Indūtiomārus ad castra accēderet, nocte ūnā intrōmissīs equitibus omnium fīnitimārum cīvitātum, quōs arcessendōs cūrāverat, tantā dīligentiā omnīs suōs cūstōdiīs intrā castra continuit ut nūllā ratiōne ea rēs ēnūntiārī aut ad Trēverōs perferrī posset. Interim ex cōnsuētūdine cottīdiānā Indūtiomārus ad castra accēdit atque ibi magnam partem diēī cōnsūmit; equitēs tēla coniciunt et magnā cum contumēliā verbōrum nostrōs ad pugnam ēvocant. Nūllō ab nostrīs datō respōnsō, ubi vīsum est, sub vesperum dispersī ac dissipātī discēdunt. Subitō Labiēnus duābus portīs omnem equitātum ēmittit; praecipit atque interdīcit perterritīs hostibus atque in fugam coniectīs (quod fore, sīcut accidit, vidēbat) ūnum omnēs petant Indūtiomārum, neu quis quem prius vulneret quam illum interfectum vīderit, quod morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere nōlēbat; magna prōpōnit iīs quī occīderint praemia; submittit cohortīs equitibus subsidiō. Comprobat hominis cōnsilium fortūna, et cum ūnum omnēs peterent, in ipsō flūminis vadō dēprehēnsus Indūtiomārus interficitur, caputque ēius refertur in castra; redeuntēs equitēs quōs possunt cōnsectantur atque occīdunt. Hāc rē cognitā omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviōrum quae convēnerant cōpiae discēdunt, paulōque habuit post id factum Caesar quiētiōrem Galliam.

BOOK VI

Operations in Northern Gaul and the Second Passage of the Rhine

Caesar augments his army.

I. Multīs dē causīs Caesar māiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns per M. Sīlānum, C. Antistium Rēgīnum, T. Sextium lēgātōs dīlēctum habēre īnstituit; simul ab Cn. Pompēiō prōcōnsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperiō reī pūblicae causā remanēret, quōs ex Cisalpīnā Galliā cōnsul sacrāmentō rogāsset ad sīgna convenīre et ad sē proficīscī iubēret, magnī interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opīniōnem Galliae exīstimāns tantās vidērī Italiae facultātēs ut, sī quid esset in bellō dētrīmentī acceptum, nōn modo id brevī tempore sarcīrī, sed etiam māiōribus augērī cōpiīs posset. Quod cum Pompēius et reī pūblicae et amīcitiae tribuisset, celeriter cōnfectō per suōs dīlēctū, tribus ante exāctam hiemem et cōnstitūtīs et adductīs legiōnibus duplicātōque eārum cohortium numerō quās cum Q. Titūriō āmīserat, et celeritāte et cōpiīs docuit quid populī Rōmānī disciplīna atque opēs possent.

Expeditions against several rebellious states.

II. Interfectō Indūtiomārō, ut docuimus, ad ēius propinquōs ā Trēverīs imperium dēfertur. Illī fīnitimōs Germānōs sollicitāre et pecūniam pollicērī nōn dēsistunt. Cum ā proximīs impetrāre nōn possent, ulteriōrēs temptant. Inventīs nōn nūllīs cīvitātibus iūre iūrandō inter sē cōnfīrmant obsidibusque dē pecūniā cavent; Ambiorīgem sibi societāte et foedere adiungunt. Quibus rēbus cognitīs Caesar, cum undique bellum parārī vidēret, Nerviōs, Atuatucōs, Menapiōs adiūnctīs

Cisrhēnānīs omnibus Germānīs esse in armīs, Senonēs ad imperātum nōn venīre et cum Carnutibus fīnitimīsque cīvitātibus cōnsilia commūnicāre, ā Trēverīs Germānōs crēbrīs lēgātiōnibus sollicitārī, mātūrius sibi dē bellō cōgitandum putāvit.

III. Itaque nōndum hieme cōnfectā proximīs quattuor coāctīs legiōnibus dē improvīsō in fīnīs Nerviōrum contendit, et priusquam illī aut convenīre aut profugere possent, magnō pecoris atque hominum numerō captō atque eā praedā mīlitibus concessā vāstātīsque agrīs in dēditiōnem venīre atque obsidēs sibi dare coēgit. Eō celeriter cōnfectō negōtiō rūrsus in hīberna legiōnēs redūxit. Conciliō Galliae prīmō vēre, ut īnstituerat, indictō, cum reliquī praeter Senonēs, Carnutēs, Trēverōsque vēnissent, initium bellī ac dēfectiōnis hōc esse arbitrātus, ut omnia postpōnere vidērētur, concilium Lutetiam Parīsiōrum trānsfert. Cōnfīnēs erant hī Senonibus cīvitātemque patrum memoriā coniūnxerant, sed ab hōc cōnsiliō āfuisse exīstimābantur. Hāc rē prō suggestū prōnūntiātā eōdem diē cum legiōnibus in Senonēs proficīscitur magnīsque itineribus eō pervenit.

IV. Cognitō ēius adventū Accō, quī prīnceps ēius cōnsilī fuerat, iubet in oppida multitūdinem convenīre. Cōnantibus, priusquam id efficī posset, adesse Rōmānōs nūntiātur. Necessāriō sententiā dēsistunt lēgātōsque dēprecandī causā ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Haeduōs, quōrum antīquitus erat in fidē cīvitās. Libenter Caesar petentibus Haeduīs dat veniam excūsātiōnemque accipit, quod aestīvum tempus īnstantis bellī, nōn quaestiōnis esse arbitrābātur. Obsidibus imperātīs c hōs Haeduīs cūstōdiendōs trādit. Eōdem Carnutēs lēgātōs obsidēsque mittunt ūsī dēprecātōribus Rēmīs, quōrum erant in clientēlā; eadem ferunt respōnsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equitēsque imperat cīvitātibus.

Caesar proceeds against the Menapii.

V. Hāc parte Galliae pācātā tōtus et mente et animō in bellum Trēverōrum et Ambiorīgis īnsistit. Cavarinum cum

equitātū Senonum sēcum proficīscī iubet, nē quis aut ex hūius īrācundiā aut ex eō quod meruerat odiō cīvitātis mōtus exsistat. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs, quod prō explōrātō habēbat Ambiorīgem proeliō nōn esse contentūrum, reliqua ēius cōnsilia animō circumspiciēbat. Erant Menapiī propinquī Eburōnum fīnibus, perpetuīs palūdibus silvīsque mūnītī, quī ūnī ex Galliā dē pāce ad Caesarem lēgātōs numquam mīserant. Cum hīs esse hospitium Ambiorīgī sciēbat; item per Trēverōs vēnisse Germānīs in amīcitiam cognōverat. Haec prius illī dētrahenda auxilia exīstimābat quam ipsum bellō lacesseret, nē dēspērātā salūte aut sē in Menapiōs abderet aut cum Trānsrhēnānīs congredī cōgerētur. Hōc initō cōnsiliō tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta ad Labiēnum in Trēverōs mittit duāsque ad eum legiōnēs proficīscī iubet; ipse cum legiōnibus expedītīs quīnque in Menapiōs proficīscitur. Illī nūllā coāctā manū locī praesidiō frētī in silvās palūdēsque cōnfugiunt suaque eōdem cōnferunt.

VI. Caesar partītīs cōpiīs cum C. Fabiō lēgātō et M. Crassō quaestōre celeriterque effectīs pontibus adit tripartītō, aedificia vīcōsque incendit, magnō pecoris atque hominum numerō potītur. Quibus rēbus coāctī Menapiī lēgātōs ad eum pācis petendae causā mittunt. Ille obsidibus acceptīs hostium sē habitūrum numerō cōnfīrmat, sī aut Ambiorīgem aut ēius lēgātōs fīnibus suīs recēpissent. Hīs cōnfīrmātīs rēbus Commium Atrebātem cum equitātū cūstōdis locō in Menapiīs relinquit; ipse in Trēverōs proficīscitur.

Labienus defeats the Treveri.

VII. Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī magnīs coāctīs peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiīs Labiēnum cum ūnā legiōne quae in eōrum fīnibus hiemābat adorīrī parābant, iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs missū Caesaris cognōscunt. Positīs castrīs ā mīlibus passuum xv auxilia Germānōrum exspectāre cōnstituunt. Labiēnus hostium cognitō cōnsiliō spērāns temeritāte eōrum fore aliquam dīmicandī facultātem, praesidiō quīnque cohortium impedīmentīs

relictō cum xxv cohortibus magnōque equitātū contrā hostem proficīscitur et mīlle passuum intermissō spatiō castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen rīpīsque praeruptīs. Hōc neque ipse trānsīre habēbat in animō neque hostīs trānsitūrōs exīstimābat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cottīdiē spēs. Loquitur cōnsultō palam, quoniam Germānī appropinquāre dīcantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fortūnās in dubium nōn dēvocātūrum et posterō diē prīmā lūce castra mōtūrum. Celeriter haec ad hostīs dēferuntur, ut ex magnō Gallōrum equitum numerō nōn nūllōs Gallicīs rēbus favēre nātūra cōgēbat. Labiēnus nocte tribūnīs mīlitum prīmīsque ōrdinibus convocātīs quid suī sit cōnsilī prōpōnit, et quō facilius hostibus timōris det suspiciōnem, māiōre strepitū et tumultū quam populī Rōmānī fert cōnsuētūdō castra movērī iubet. Hīs rēbus fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Haec quoque per explōrātōrēs ante lūcem in tantā propinquitāte castrōrum ad hostīs dēferuntur.

VIII. Vix agmen novissimum extrā mūnītiōnēs prōcesserat, cum Gallī cohortātī inter sē nē spērātam praedam ex manibus dīmitterent — 'Longum esse perterritīs Rōmānīs Germānōrum auxilium exspectāre, neque suam patī dignitātem ut tantīs cōpiīs tam exiguam manum, praesertim fugientem atque impedītam, adorīrī nōn audeant' — flūmen trānsīre et inīquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant. Quae fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnīs citrā flūmen ēliceret, eādem ūsus simulātiōne itineris placidē prōgrediēbātur. Tum praemissīs paulum impedīmentīs atque in tumulō quōdam conlocātīs, "Habētis," inquit, "mīlitēs, quam petīstis facultātem; hostem impedītō atque inīquō locō tenētis. Praestāte eandem nōbīs ducibus virtūtem quam saepenumerō imperātōrī praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec cōram cernere exīstimāte." Simul sīgna ad hostem convertī aciemque dērigī iubet, et paucīs turmīs praesidiō ad impedīmenta dīmissīs reliquōs equitēs ad latera dispōnit. Celeriter nostrī clāmōre sublātō pīla in hostīs immittunt. Illī ubi praeter spem quōs fugere crēdēbant īnfēstīs sīgnīs ad

sē īre vīdērunt, impetum nostrōrum ferre nōn potuērunt, ac prīmō concursū in fugam coniectī proximās silvās petiērunt. Quōs Labiēnus equitātū cōnsectātus magnō numerō interfectō, complūribus captīs paucīs post diēbus cīvitātem recēpit. Nam Germānī, quī auxiliō veniēbant, perceptā Trēverōrum fugā sēsē domum contulērunt. Cum hīs propinquī Indūtiomārī, quī dēfectiōnis auctōrēs fuerant, comitātī eōs ex cīvitāte excessērunt. Cingetorīgī, quem ab initiō permānsisse in officiō dēmōnstrāvimus, prīncipātus atque imperium est trāditum.

Caesar crosses the Rhine a second time.

IX. Caesar postquam ex Menapiīs in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsīre cōnstituit. Quārum ūna erat quod Germānī auxilia contrā sē Trēverīs mīserant; altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorīx receptum habēret. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus paulō suprā eum locum quō ante exercitum trādūxerat facere pontem īnstituit. Nōtā atque īnstitūtā ratiōne magnō mīlitum studiō paucīs diēbus opus efficitur. Firmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditiōnem vēnerant, pūrgandī suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt, quī doceant neque auxilia ex suā cīvitāte in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam; petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit darī, pollicentur. Cognitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēbīs auxilia missa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit, aditūs viāsque in Suēbōs perquīrit.

X. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suēbōs omnīs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere, atque iīs nātiōnibus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia pēditātūs equitātūsque mittant. Hīs cognitīs rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum dēligit; Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōnferant, spērāns barbarōs atque imperītōs hominēs inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs ad

inīquam pugnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūcī; mandat ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant, quaeque apud eōs gerantur cognōscant. Illī imperāta faciunt et paucīs diēbus intermissīs referunt: 'Suēbōs omnīs, posteāquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suīs sociōrumque cōpiīs, quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs fīnīs sē recēpisse; silvam esse ibi īnfīnītā magnitūdine, quae appellētur Bācenis; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre, et prō nātīvō mūrō obiectam Chēruscōs ab Suēbōrum Suēbōsque ab Chēruscōrum iniūriīs incursiōnibusque prohibēre; ad ēius silvae initium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōnstituisse.'

Gaul and Germany Described and Compared

Party spirit and parties in Gaul.

XI. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque sed paene etiam in singulīs domibus factiōnēs sunt, eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiciō habēre exīstimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat. Idque ēius reī causā antīquitus īnstitūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxilī egēret; suōs enīm quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitātēs dīvīsae sunt in duās partīs.

XII. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antīquitus erat in Haeduīs magnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē magnīs iactūrīs pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omnī nōbilitāte Haeduōrum interfectā tantum potentiā

antecesserant ut magnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab hīs prīncipum fīliōs acciperent, et pūblicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsilī initūrōs, et partem fīnitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaeque tōtīus prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus Dīviciācus auxilī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus īnfectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod ii quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam adgregāverant meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā Sēquanī prīncipātum dīmīserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, ii quī propter veterēs inimīcitiās nūllō modō cum Haeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī dīligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente conlēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat ut longē prīncipēs habērentur Haeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

The druids.

XIII. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus; quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur; ad eōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt, et sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē fīnibus contrōversia est, īdem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque

cōnstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs interdīcunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque iīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus communicātur. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō aut, sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte, succēdit aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs dē prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque pārent. Disciplīna in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta exīstimātur, et nunc quī dīligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt plērumque illō discendī causā proficīscuntur.

XIV. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt, mīlitiae vacātiōnem omniumque rērum habent immūnitātem. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquīsque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūllī vīcēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātīsque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causīs īnstituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplīnam efferrī velint neque eōs quī discunt litterīs cōnfīsōs minus memoriae studēre,—quod ferē plērīsque accidit ut praesidiō litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant. In prīmīs hōc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs, atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī ac terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

The knights.

XV. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannīs accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās īnferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiīsque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientīsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

Human sacrifices.

XVI. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt adfectī graviōribus morbīs quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque versantur aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrīsque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur, pūblicēque ēiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī magnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum ēius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

The religion of the Gauls.

XVII. Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt, — hūius sunt plūrima simulācra, hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur, — post hunc, Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōnstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent. Cum superāvērunt, animālia capta

immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs cumulōs locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.

Curious customs.

XVIII. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium fīniunt; diēs nātālīs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs līberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt, ut mūnus mīlitiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur, fīliumque puerīlī aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.

XIX. Virī quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Hūius omnis pecūniae coniūnctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque servantur; uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs sīcutī in līberōs vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae inlūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, ēius propinquī conveniunt, et dē morte sī rēs in suspīciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servīlem modum quaestiōnem habent, et sī compertum est, īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciātās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur in īgnem īnferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam servī et clientēs quōs ab īīs dīlēctōs esse cōnstābat iūstīs fūnebribus cōnfectīs ūnā cremābantur.

XX. Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre exīstimantur habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre ac fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet; quod saepe

hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant, quae esse ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt multitūdinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

The religion and customs of the Germans.

XXI. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent, quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint, neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnsistit; ā parvīs labōrī ac dūritiae student. Quī diūtissimē impūberēs permānsērunt maximam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hōc alī statūram, alī vīrīs nervōsque cōnfīrmārī putant. Intrā annum vērō vīcēsimum fēminae nōtitiam habuisse in turpissimīs habent rēbus; cūius reī nūlla est occultātiō, quod et prōmiscuē in flūminibus perluuntur et pellibus aut parvīs rēnōnum tegimentīs ūtuntur magnā corporis parte nūdā.

XXII. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, māiorque pars eōrum vīctūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut fīnīs habet propriōs, sed magistrātūs ac prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum quīque ūnā coiērunt quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsīre cōgunt. Eius reī multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā cōnsuētūdine captī studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs fīnīs parāre studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

XXIII. Cīvitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātīs fīnibus sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hōc proprium virtūtis

exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs fīnitimōs cēdere neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōnsistere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut inlātum dēfendit aut īnfert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint et vītae necisque habeant potestātem dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia nūllam habent īnfāmiam quae extrā fīnīs cūiusque cīvitātis fīunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiae minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur, cōnsurgunt iī quī et causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ā multitūdine conlaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum posteā fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniūriā prohibent sānctōsque habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque commūnicātur.

Gauls and Germans compared.

XXIV. Ac fuit anteā tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, ultrō bella īnferrent, propter hominum multitūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circum Hercyniam silvam (quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illī Orcyniam appellant), Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt; quae gēns ad hōc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem. Nunc, quod in eādem inopiā, egestāte, patientiā quā ante Germānī permanent, eōdem victū et cultū corporis ūtuntur, Gallīs autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trānsmarīnārum rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsūs largītur, paulātim adsuēfactī superārī multīsque victī proeliīs nē sē quidem ipsī cum illīs virtūte comparant.

The Hercynian Forest and the animals inhabiting it.

XXV. Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitūdō novem diērum iter expedītō patet; nōn enim aliter fīnīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum fīnibus, rēctāque flūminis Dānuvī regiōne pertinet ad fīnīs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus dīversīs ā flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium fīnīs propter magnitūdinem attingit; neque quisquam est hūius Germāniae quī sē aut adīsse ad initium ēius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārum nāscī cōnstat quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn sint, ex quibus quae maximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda videantur haec sunt.

XXVI. Est bōs cervī figūrā, cūius ā mediā fronte inter aurīs ūnum cornū exsistit excelsius magisque dērēctum hīs quae nōbīs nōta sunt cornibus. Ab ēius summō sīcut palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma magnitūdōque cornuum.

XXVII. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis caprīs figūra et varietās pellium, sed magnitūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdīs articulīsque habent, neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt neque, sī quō adflictae cāsū concidērunt, ērigere sēsē ac sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubīlibus; ad eās sē applicant atque ita paulum modo reclīnātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vēstīgiīs cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnīs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accīdunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclīnāvērunt, īnfīrmās arborēs pondere adflīgunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

XXVIII. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt magnitūdine paulō īnfrā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figūrā taurī. Magna vīs eōrum est et magna vēlōcitās, neque

hominī neque ferae quam cōnspexērunt parcunt. Hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt. Hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus, quae sint testimōniō, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed adsuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figūra et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsīta ab labrīs argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulīs prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

SIGHT-READING

The War upon Ambiorix and the Eburones

Caesar invades the land of the Eburones. Ambiorix escapes.

XXIX. Caesar postquam per Ubiōs explōrātōrēs comperit Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus, quod, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, minimē hominēs Germānī agrī cultūrae student, cōnstituit nōn prōgredī longius; sed nē omnīnō metum reditūs suī barbarīs tolleret, atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū partem ultimam pontis, quae rīpās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitūdinem pedum CC rescindit, atque in extrēmō ponte turrim tabulātōrum quattuor cōnstituit praesidiumque cohortium XII pontis tuendī causā pōnit magnīsque eum locum mūnītiōnibus fīrmat. Eī locō praesidiōque C. Volcācium Tullum adulēscentem praeficit. Ipse, cum mātūrēscere frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorīgis profectus per Arduennam silvam, quae est tōtius Galliae maxima atque ab rīpīs Rhēnī fīnibusque Trēverōrum ad Nerviōs pertinet mīlibusque amplius D in longitūdinem patet, L. Minucium

10. **Caesar**: the story is now resumed from Chap. X. 17. **tabulatorum quattuor**: *of four stories*. 20. **maturescere**: cf. *maturus*. 24. D: an exaggeration.

Basilum cum omnī equitātū praemittit, sī quid celeritāte itineris atque opportūnitāte temporis prōficere possit; monet ut īgnīs in castrīs fierī prohibeat, nē qua ēius adventūs procul sīgnificātiō fīat; sēsē cōnfestim subsequī dīcit.

XXX. Basilus ut imperātum est facit. Celeriter contrāque omnium opīniōnem cōnfectō itinere multōs in agrīs inopīnantīs dēprehendit; eōrum indiciō ad ipsum Ambiorīgem contendit, quō in locō cum paucīs equitibus esse dīcēbātur. Multum cum in omnibus rēbus tum in rē mīlitārī potest fortūna; nam ut magnō accidit cāsū ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparātum incideret, priusque ēius adventus ab hominibus vidērētur quam fāma ac nūntius adferrētur, sīc magnae fuit fortūnae omnī mīlitārī īnstrūmentō quod circum sē habēbat ēreptō, raedīs equīsque comprehēnsīs ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hōc factum est, quod aedificiō circumdatō silvā, ut sunt ferē domicilia Gallōrum, quī vītandī aestūs causā plērumque silvārum ac flūminum petunt propinquitātēs, comitēs familiārēsque ēius angustō in locō paulisper equitum nostrōrum vim sustinuērunt. Hīs pugnantibus illum in equum quīdam ex suīs intulit; fugientem silvae tēxērunt. Sīc et ad subeundum perīculum et ad vītandum multum fortūna valuit.

XXXI. Ambiorīx cōpiās suās iūdiciōne nōn condūxerit, quod proeliō dīmicandum nōn exīstimāret, an tempore exclūsus et repentīnō equitum adventū prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequī crēderet, dubium est; sed certē dīmissīs per agrōs nūntiīs sibi quemque cōnsulere iussit. Quōrum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentīs palūdēs profūgit;

1. **si quid proficere possit**: (*to see*) *if he can effect anything*, i.e. *to effect something, if he can.* 7. **indicio**: *on information.* 9. **ut**: *as*, answered by **sic**, *so also.* 10. **ipsum**: Ambiorix. — **incautum**: *off his guard.* 12. **magnae fuit fortunae**: *it was due chiefly to luck that*, lit. *it was (a thing) of great luck.* 13. **erepto**: concessive. — **raedis**: *wagons.* 16. **aestus**: *heat.* 17. **comites**: *companions.* 22. **iudicione**: *iudicio, designedly + -ne, whether.* 27. **continentis**: *continuous, wide-extended.*

quī proximī Ōceanō fuērunt, hī īnsulīs sēsē occultāvērunt quās aestūs efficere cōnsuērunt; multī ex suīs fīnibus ēgressī sē suaque omnia aliēnissimīs crēdidērunt. Catuvolcus, rēx dīmidiae partis Eburōnum, quī ūnā cum Ambiorīge cōnsilium inierat, aetāte iam cōnfectus, cum labōrem bellī aut fugae ferre nōn posset, omnibus precibus dētestātus Ambiorīgem, quī ēius cōnsilī auctor fuisset, taxō (cūius magna in Galliā Germāniāque cōpia est) sē exanimāvit.

One legion is stationed at Atuatuca. Caesar divides the rest of the army into three parts.

XXXII. Segnī Condrūsīque ex gente et numerō Germānōrum, quī sunt inter Eburōnēs Trēverōsque, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt ōrātum nē sē in hostium numerō dūceret, nēve omnium Germānōrum quī essent citrā Rhēnum ūnam esse causam iūdicāret: 'Nihil sē dē bellō cōgitāvisse, nūlla Ambiorīgī auxilia mīsisse.' Caesar explōrātā rē quaestiōne captīvōrum, sī quī ad eōs Eburōnēs ex fugā convēnissent, ad sē ut redūcerentur imperāvit; sī ita fēcissent, fīnīs eōrum sē violātūrum negāvit. Tum cōpiīs in trīs partīs distribūtīs impedīmenta omnium legiōnum Atuatucam contulit. Id castellī nōmen est. Hōc ferē est in mediīs Eburōnum fīnibus, ubi Titūrius atque Aurunculēius hiemandī causā cōnsēderant. Hunc cum reliquīs rēbus locum probābat, tum quod superiōris annī mūnītiōnēs integrae manēbant, ut mīlitum labōrem sublevāret. Praesidiō impedīmentīs legiōnem quārtam decimam relīquit, ūnam ex hīs tribus quās proximē cōnscrīptās ex Italiā trādūxerat. Eī legiōnī castrīsque Q. Tullium Cicerōnem praefēcit ducentōsque equitēs eī attribuit.

XXXIII. Partītō exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus

1. **insulis**: slight elevations of land surrounded by water at high tide. 3. **alienissimis**: *to absolute strangers.* — **dimidiae partis**: *of half.* 6. **detestatus**: *cursing.* 7. **taxo**: *with yew.* The bark and leaves are poisonous. 22. **sublevaret**: *he could lighten.*

tribus ad Ōceanum versus in eās partīs quae Menapiōs attingunt proficīscī iubet; C. Trebōnium cum parī legiōnum numerō ad eam regiōnem quae Atuatucīs adiacet dēpopulandam mittit; ipse cum reliquīs tribus ad flūmen Sabim, quod īnfluit in Mosam, extrēmāsque Arduennae partīs īre cōnstituit, quō cum paucīs equitibus profectum Ambiorīgem audiēbat. Discēdēns post diem septimum sēsē reversūrum cōnfīrmat, quam ad diem eī legiōnī quae in praesidiō relinquēbātur frūmentum dēbērī sciēbat. Labiēnum Trebōniumque hortātur, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur, ut rūrsus commūnicātō cōnsiliō explōrātīsque hostium ratiōnibus aliud initium bellī capere possint.

He invites other Gallic states to plunder the Eburones.

XXXIV. Erat, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, manus certa nūlla, nōn oppidum, nōn praesidium quod sē armīs dēfenderet, sed in omnīs partīs dispersa multitūdō. Ubi cuique aut vallēs abdita aut locus silvestris aut palūs impedīta spem praesidī aut salūtis aliquam offerēbat, cōnsēderat. Haec loca vīcīnitātibus erant nōta, magnamque rēs dīligentiam requīrēbat, nōn in summā exercitūs tuendā (nūllum enim poterat ūniversīs ā perterritīs ac dispersīs perīculum accidere), sed in singulīs mīlitibus cōnservandīs; quae tamen ex parte rēs ad salūtem exercitūs pertinēbat. Nam et praedae cupiditās multōs longius sēvocābat et silvae incertīs occultīsque itineribus cōnfertōs adīre prohibēbant. Sī negōtium cōnficī stirpemque hominum scelerātōrum interficī vellet, dīmittendae plūrēs manūs dīdūcendīque erant mīlitēs; sī continēre ad sīgna

1. **ad Oceanum versus**: *toward the ocean.* 3. **adiacet**: *lies next.* 10. **commodo**: abl. 13. **manus certa**: *i.e.* of the Eburones. 17. **vicinitatibus**: *to the neighbors* (*neighborhoods*). 19. **summa**: *the whole.* 21. **ex parte**: *to some extent.* 24. **stirpem hominum sceleratorum**: *race* (lit. *stock*) *of scoundrels.* The loss of his soldiers described in the previous book had made Caesar very bitter against the Eburones.

manipulōs vellet, ut īnstitūta ratiō et cōnsuētūdō exercitūs Rōmānī postulābat, locus ipse erat praesidiō barbarīs, neque ex occultō īnsidiandī et dispersōs circumveniendī singulīs deerat audācia. Ut in ēius modī difficultātibus, quantum dīligentiā prōvidērī poterat prōvidēbātur, ut potius in nocendō aliquid praetermitterētur, etsī omnium animī ad ulcīscendum ārdēbant, quam cum aliquō mīlitum dētrīmentō nocērētur. Dīmittit ad fīnitimās cīvitātēs nūntiōs Caesar; omnīs ēvocat spē praedae ad dīripiendōs Eburōnēs, ut potius in silvīs Gallōrum vīta quam legiōnārius mīles perīclitētur, simul ut magnā multitūdine circumfūsā prō tālī facinore stirps ac nōmen cīvitātis tollātur. Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

Germans cross the Rhine, induced by the hope of sharing in the plunder.

XXXV. Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerēbantur, diēsque appetēbat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedīmenta legiōnemque revertī cōnstituerat. Hīc quantum in bellō fortūna possit et quantōs adferat cāsūs cognōscī potuit. Dissipātīs ac perterritīs hostibus, ut dēmōnstrāvimus, manus erat nūlla quae parvam modo causam timōris adferret. Trāns Rhēnum ad Germānōs pervenit fāma dīripī Eburōnēs atque ultrō omnīs ad praedam ēvocārī. Cōgunt equitum duo mīlia Sugambrī, quī sunt proximī Rhēnō, ā quibus receptōs ex fugā Tencterōs atque Usipetēs suprā docuimus. Trānseunt Rhēnum nāvibus ratibusque xxx mīlibus passuum īnfrā eum locum ubi pōns erat perfectus praesidiumque ā Caesare relictum; prīmōs Eburōnum fīnīs adeunt; multōs ex fugā dispersōs excipiunt, magnō pecoris numerō, cūius sunt cupidissimī barbarī, potiuntur. Invītātī praedā longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palūdēs bellō latrōciniīsque nātōs, nōn silvae morantur. Quibus in

3. **ex occulto insidiandi**: *for making an attack from ambush.* 7. **quam**: completes the thought of *potius.* — **noceretur**: *harm should be done*, sc. *barbaris.* 10. **periclitetur**: *in periculum veniat.* 14. **appetebat**: *appropinquabat.* 18. **modo**: *even.* 20. **ultro**: *more than that.* 28. **latrociniis**: *for robberies*, with *natos.*

locīs sit Caesar ex captīvīs quaerunt; profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cognōscunt. Atque ūnus ex captīvīs, "Quid vōs," inquit, "hanc miseram ac tenuem sectāminī praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortūnātissimōs? Tribus hōrīs Atuatucam venīre potestis; hūc omnīs suās fortūnās exercitus Rōmānōrum contulit; praesidī tantum est ut nē mūrus quidem cingī possit neque quisquam ēgredī extrā mūnītiōnēs audeat." Hāc oblātā spē Germānī quam nactī erant praedam in occultō relinquunt; ipsī Atuatucam contendunt ūsī eōdem duce cūius haec indiciō cognōverant.

They are diverted from their purpose and attack Cicero's camp at Atuatuca.

XXXVI. Cicerō, quī omnīs superiōrēs diēs praeceptīs Caesaris summā dīligentiā mīlitēs in castrīs continuisset, ac nē cālōnem quidem quemquam extrā mūnītiōnem ēgredī passus esset, septimō diē diffīdēns dē numerō diērum Caesarem fidem servātūrum, quod longius prōgressum audiēbat neque ūlla dē reditū ēius fāma adferēbātur, simul eōrum permōtus vōcibus quī illīus patientiam paene obsessiōnem appellābant, sī quidem ex castrīs ēgredī nōn licēret, nūllum ēius modī cāsum exspectāns quō novem oppositīs legiōnibus maximōque equitātū, dispersīs ac paene dēlētīs hostibus in mīlibus passuum tribus offendī posset, quīnque cohortīs frūmentātum in proximās segetēs mittit, quās inter et castra ūnus omnīnō collis intererat. Complūrēs erant in castrīs ex legiōnibus aegrī relictī; ex quibus quī hōc spatiō diērum convaluerant, circiter CCC, sub vēxillō ūnā mittuntur. Magna

1. **profectum**: sc. *eum esse*. 4. **sectamini**: *sector, -ari*, derived from *sequor*. 7. **tantum**: *so little*. 15. **diffidens**: *feeling doubtful*. 18. **obsessionem**: *siege*. 19. **liceret**: this is the thought of those who complained. — **quo offendi posset**: *whereby a disaster could be suffered*. — **oppositis**: *opposing* (*the enemy*). The nine legions were those off on expeditions, as told in Chap. XXXIII. 22. **segetes**: *grain-fields*. 24. **aegri**: *ill*. 25. **convaluerant**: cf. Eng. 'convalescent.'

praetereā multitūdō cālōnum, magna vīs iūmentōrum, quae in castrīs subsēderat, factā potestāte sequitur.

XXXVII. Hōc ipsō tempore cāsū Germānī equitēs interveniunt, prōtinusque eōdem illō quō vēnerant cursū ab decumānā portā in castra inrumpere cōnantur, nec prius sunt vīsī obiectīs ab eā parte silvīs quam castrīs appropinquārent, ūsque eō ut quī sub vāllō tenderent mercātōrēs recipiendī suī facultātem nōn habērent. Inopīnantēs nostrī rē novā perturbantur, ac vix prīmum impetum cohors in statiōne sustinet. Circumfunduntur hostēs ex reliquīs partibus, sī quem aditum reperīre possint. Aegrē portās nostrī tuentur, reliquōs aditūs locus ipse per sē mūnītiōque dēfendit. Tōtīs trepidātur castrīs, atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit; neque quō sīgna ferantur neque quam in partem quisque conveniat prōvident. Alius castra iam capta prōnūntiat, alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperātōre victōrēs barbarōs vēnisse contendit; plērīque novās sibi ex locō religiōnēs fingunt Cottaeque et Titūrī calamitātem, quī in eōdem occiderint castellō, ante oculōs pōnunt. Tālī timōre omnibus perterritīs cōnfīrmātur opīniō barbarīs, ut ex captīvō audierant, nūllum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nītuntur sēque ipsī adhortantur nē tantam fortūnam ex manibus dīmittant.

XXXVIII. Erat aeger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius Baculus, quī prīmum pīlum apud Caesarem dūxerat, cūius mentiōnem superiōribus proeliīs fēcimus, ac diem iam quīntum cibō caruerat. Hīc diffīsus suae atque omnium salūtī inermis ex tabernāculō prōdit; videt imminēre hostīs atque in summō rem esse discrīmine; capit arma ā proximīs atque in portā cōn-

2. **subsederat**: *had stayed behind.* 4. **protinus**: *straight forward.* 6. **usque eo**: *even to this extent*, i.e. *and so completely was this the case.* 7. **tenderent**: *had booths* (*tentoria*). 12. **trepidatur**: impersonal. 17. **religiones**: *superstitious fears.* 24. **primum pilum duxerat**: he had been chief centurion of a legion, and was probably at this time an *evocatus.* 25. **cibo caruerat**: *had eaten nothing.* 27. **imminere**: *threaten.* 28. **discrimine**: *peril.*

sistit. Cōnsequuntur hunc centuriōnēs ēius cohortis quae in statiōne erat; paulisper ūnā proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptīs vulneribus; aegrē per manūs trāditus servātur. Hōc spatiō interpositō reliquī sēsē cōnfīrmant tantum ut in mūnītiōnibus cōnsistere audeant speciemque dēfēnsōrum praebeant.

XXXIX. Interim cōnfectā frūmentātiōne mīlitēs nostrī clāmōrem exaudiunt; praecurrunt equitēs, quantō rēs sit in perīculō cognōscunt. Hīc vērō nūlla mūnītiō est quae perteritōs recipiat; modo cōnscrīptī atque ūsūs mīlitāris imperītī ad tribūnum mīlitum centuriōnēsque ōra convertunt, quid ab hīs praecipiātur exspectant. Nēmō est tam fortis quīn reī novitāte perturbētur. Barbarī sīgna procul cōnspicātī oppugnātiōne dēsistunt; redīsse prīmō legiōnēs crēdunt, quās longius discessisse ex captīvīs cognōverant; posteā dēspectā paucitāte ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

They are repulsed, but the Romans lose many men. Caesar arrives at the camp.

XL. Cālōnēs in proximum tumulum prōcurrunt; hinc celeriter dēiectī sē in sīgna manipulōsque coniciunt, eō magis timidōs perterrent mīlitēs. Aliī cuneō factō ut celeriter perrumpant cēnsent: 'Quoniam tam propinqua sint castra, etsī pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquōs servārī posse;' aliī ut in iugō cōnsistant atque eundem omnēs ferant cāsum. Hōc veterēs nōn probant mīlitēs, quōs sub vēxillō ūnā profectōs docuimus. Itaque inter sē cohortātī duce C. Trebōniō, equite Rōmānō, quī iīs erat praepositus, per mediōs hostīs perrumpunt incolumēsque ad ūnum omnēs in castra perveniunt. Hōs subsecūtī cālōnēs equitēsque eōdem impetū mīlitum virtūte servantur. At iī quī in iugō cōnstiterant nūllō etiam nunc ūsū reī mīlitāris perceptō neque in eō quod probāverant cōnsiliō per-

3. **animus**: *consciousness.* — **per manus**: *from hand to hand.* 18. **se coniciunt**: for safety. 19. **cuneo**: *a wedge.* 28. **nullo usu percepto**: *having gained no experience.*

manēre, ut sē locō superiōre dēfenderent, neque eam quam prōfuisse aliīs vim celeritātemque vīderant imitārī potuērunt, sed sē in castra recipere cōnātī inīquum in locum dēmīsērunt. Centuriōnēs, quōrum nōn nūllī ex īnferiōribus ōrdinibus reliquārum legiōnum virtūtis causā in superiōrēs erant ōrdinēs hūius legiōnis trāductī, nē ante partam reī mīlitāris laudem āmitterent, fortissimē pugnantēs concidērunt. Mīlitum pars hōrum virtūte submōtīs hostibus praeter spem incolumis in castra pervēnit, pars ā barbarīs circumventa periit.

XLI. Germānī dēspērātā expugnātiōne castrōrum, quod nostrōs iam cōnstitisse in mūnītiōnibus vidēbant, cum eā praedā quam in silvīs dēposuerant trāns Rhēnum sēsē recēpērunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror ut eā nocte, cum C. Volusēnus missus cum equitātū in castra vēnisset, fidem nōn faceret adesse cum incolumī Caesarem exercitū. Sīc omnium animōs timor occupāverat ut paene aliēnātā mente dēlētīs omnibus cōpiīs equitātum sē ex fugā recēpisse dīcerent, neque incolumī exercitū Germānōs castra oppugnātūrōs fuisse contenderent. Quem timōrem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

XLII. Reversus ille, ēventūs bellī nōn ignōrāns, ūnum, quod cohortēs ex statiōne et praesidiō essent ēmissae, questus ('Nē minimum quidem cāsuī locum relinquī dēbuisse') multum fortūnam in repentīnō hostium adventū potuisse iūdicāvit, multō etiam amplius quod paene ab ipsō vāllō portīsque castrōrum barbarōs āvertisset. Quārum omnium rērum maximē admīrandum vidēbātur quod Germānī, quī eō cōnsiliō Rhēnum trānsierant, ut Ambiorīgis fīnīs dēpopulārentur, ad castra Rōmānōrum dēlātī optātissimum Ambiorīgī beneficium obtulerant.

2. **profuisse**: *to have helped.* 6. **partam**: *won:* 15. **fidem non faceret**: *i.e.* he was not believed. 16. **alienata mente**: *deprived of reason;* an abl. abs. 18. **oppugnaturos fuisse**: in direct discourse *oppugnavissent; incolumi exercitu* forms its protasis. 26. **avertisset**: the subject is *fortuna.* 29. **optatissimum**: *most welcome.*

Renewed operations against the Eburones. Ambiorix again escapes. The army is placed in winter quarters.

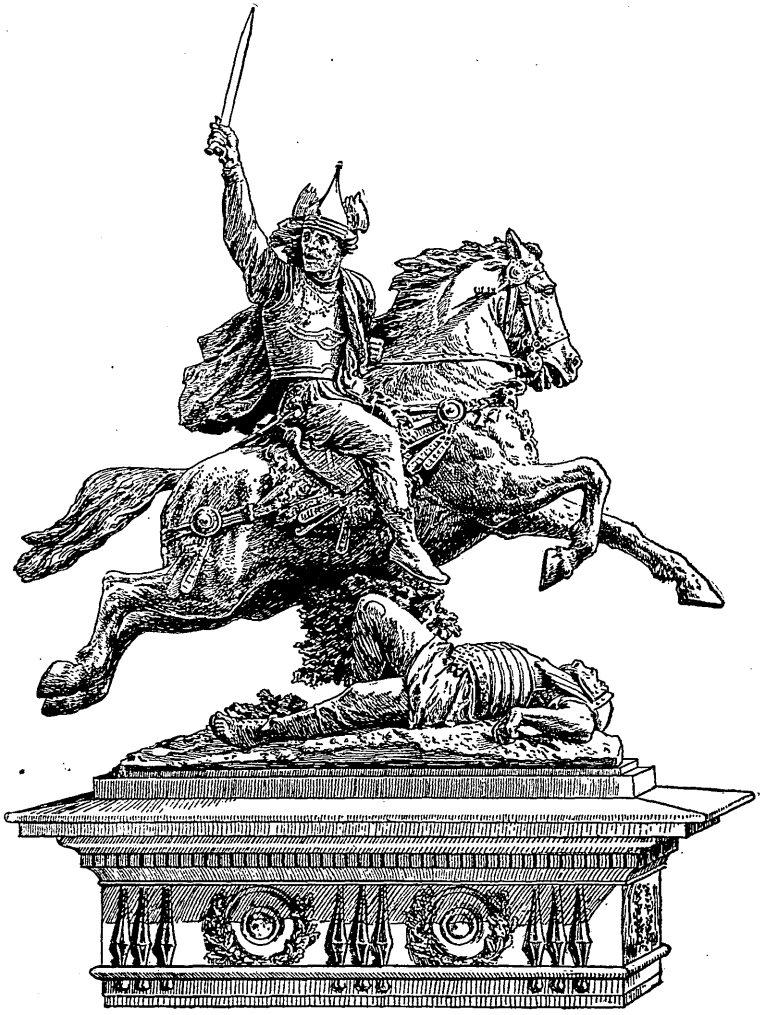
XLIII. Caesar rūrsus ad vexandōs hostīs profectus magnō equitum coāctō numerō ex fīnitimīs cīvitātibus in omnīs partīs dīmittit. Omnēs vīcī atque omnia aedificia quae quisque cōnspexerat incendēbantur; praeda ex omnibus locīs agēbātur; frūmenta nōn sōlum ā tantā multitūdine iūmentōrum atque hominum cōnsūmēbantur sed etiam annī tempore atque imbribus prōcubuerant, ut sī quī etiam in praesentiā sē occultāssent, tamen hīs dēductō exercitū rērum omnium inopiā pereundum vidērētur. Ac saepe in eum locum ventum est, tantō in omnīs partīs dīmissō equitātū, ut modo vīsum ab sē Ambiorīgem in fugā circumspicerent captīvī, nec plānē etiam abīsse ex cōnspectū contenderent; ut spē cōnsequendī inlātā atque īnfīnītō labōre susceptō quī sē summam ā Caesare grātiam initūrōs putārent paene nātūram studiō vincerent, semperque paulum ad summam fēlīcitātem dēfuisse vidērētur, atque ille latebrīs aut saltibus sē ēriperet, et noctū occultātus aliās regiōnēs partīsque peteret nōn māiōre equitum praesidiō quam quattuor, quibus sōlīs vītam suam committere audēbat.

XLIV. Tālī modō vāstātīs regiōnibus exercitum Caesar duārum cohortium damnō Durocortorum Rēmōrum dēdūcit, conciliōque in eum locum Galliae indictō dē coniūrātiōne Senonum et Carnutum quaestiōnem habēre īnstituit, et dē Accōne, quī prīnceps ēius cōnsilī fuerat, graviōre sententiā prōnūntiātā mōre māiōrum supplicium sūmpsit. Nōn nūllī iūdicium ve-

7. **procubuerant**: *had become lodged* (*on the ground*). 10. **modo**: *only an instant before.* 11. **circumspicerent**: *looked round in search of.* — **nec plane**: *and . . . not entirely.* 13. **inlata**: *being inspired* (*in them*). 16. **latebris aut saltibus**: *by* (*using*) *hiding-places or wooded glens.* 21. **damno**: *with the loss.* 22. **indicto**: *having been convoked.* 23. **quaestionem**: *investigation.* 25. **more maiorum**: the "good old-fashioned Roman mode" was to flog the traitor to death and then cut off his head.

ritī profūgērunt. Quibus cum aquā atque īgnī interdīxisset, duās legiōnēs ad fīnīs Trēverōrum, duās in Lingonibus, sex reliquās in Senonum fīnibus Agēdincī in hībernīs conlocāvit; frūmentōque exercituī prōvīsō, ut īnstituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

1. **Quibus . . . interdixisset**: *and when he had cut these off from fire and water*, the regular formula for banishment and outlawry.



VERCINGETORIX
(A modern statue)

BOOK VII

A General Uprising of Gaul

The Carnutes revolt.

I. Quiētā Galliā Caesar, ut cōnstituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs agendōs proficīscitur. Ibi cognōscit dē P. Clōdī caede; dē senātūsque cōnsultō certior factus, ut omnēs iūniōrēs Italiae coniūrārent, dīlectum tōtā prōvinciā habēre īnstituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et adfingunt rūmōribus Gallī, quod rēs poscere vidēbātur, retinērī urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venīre posse. Hāc impulsī occāsiōne quī iam ante sē populī Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent līberius atque audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictīs inter sē prīncipēs Galliae conciliīs silvestribus ac remōtīs locīs queruntur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere dēmōnstrant; miserantur commūnem Galliae fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus ac praemiīs dēposcunt quī bellī initium faciant et suī capitis perīculō Galliam in lībertātem vindicent. In prīmīs ratiōnem esse habendam dīcunt, priusquam eōrum clandēstīna cōnsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur; id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente imperātōre ex hībernīs ēgredī neque imperātor sine praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenīre possit; postrēmō, in aciē praestāre interficī quam

2. **Clodi**: the rioting which followed the death of Clodius reached almost the proportions of a civil war. 3. **consulto**: *decree.* — **iuniores**: *i.e.* the men of military age. 4. **coniurarent**: *should take the military oath.* 6. **adfingunt**: *make up.* 12. **recidere**: with **ad**, *befall, come home to.* 15. **in libertatem vindicent**: *claim for freedom,* i e. *declare to be free.* 17. **efferantur**: *are made known.*

nōn veterem bellī glōriam lībertātemque quam ā māiōribus accēperint recuperāre.

II. Hīs rēbus agitātīs profitentur Carnutēs sē nūllum perīculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre prīncipēsque ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur, et quoniam in praesentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, at iūre iūrandō ac fidē sanciātur petunt conlātīs mīlitāribus sīgnīs, quō mōre eōrum gravissima caerimōnia continētur, nē factō initiō bellī ab reliquīs dēserantur. Tum conlaudātīs Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrandō ab omnibus quī aderant, tempore ēius reī cōnstitūtō ā conciliō discēditur.

III. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs Cotuatō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātīs hominibus, Cēnabum sīgnō datō concurrunt, cīvīsque Rōmānōs quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōnstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, quī reī frūmentāriae iussū Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum dīripiunt. Celeriter ad omnīs Galliae cīvitātēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae māior atque inlūstrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque sīgnificant; hunc alī deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle gesta essent ante prīmam cōnfectam vigiliam in fīnibus Arvernōrum audīta sunt, quod spatium est mīlium passuum circiter CLX.

The Arverni, led by Vercingetorix, revolt, and are joined by many other states.

IV. Similī ratiōne ibi Vercingetorīx, Celtillī fīlius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cūius pater prīncipātum tōtīus Galliae obtinuerat et ob eam causam, quod rēgnum appetēbat,

3. **agitatis**: *having been discussed.* 6. **cavere inter se**: *to take precautions against one another.* 7. **sanciatur**: *that assurance be given.* 8. **caerimonia**: *rite.* 14. **civis**: *citizens.* — **negotiandi**: the *business* was chiefly lending money, trading in grain and slaves, and farming the revenues. 16. **iussu**: *by order.* 18. **quae**: *any.* 19. **deinceps**: *in turn.*

ā cīvitāte erat interfectus, convocātīs suīs clientibus facile incendit. Cognitō ēius cōnsiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquīsque prīncipibus, quī hanc temptandam fortūnam nōn exīstimābant, expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēsistit tamen atque in agrīs habet dīlectum egentium ac perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū quōscumque adit ex cīvitāte ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut commūnis lībertātis causā arma capiant, magnīsque coāctīs cōpiīs adversāriōs suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex cīvitāte. Rēx ab suīs appellātur. Dīmittit quōqueversus lēgātiōnēs; obtestātur ut in fidē maneant. Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parīsiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turonōs, Aulercōs, Lemovīcēs, Andōs, reliquōsque omnīs quī Ōceanum attingunt adiungit; omnium cōnsēnsū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte omnibus hīs cīvitātibus obsidēs imperat, certum numerum mīlitum ad sē celeriter addūcī iubet, armōrum quantum quaeque cīvitās domī quodque ante tempus efficiat cōnstituit; in prīmīs equitātuī studet. Summae dīligentiae summam imperī sevēritātem addit; magnitūdine supplicī dubitantīs cōgit. Nam māiōre commissō dēlictō īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs necat; leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectīs aut singulīs effossīs oculīs domum remittit, ut sint reliquīs documentō et magnitūdine poenae perterreant aliōs.



A COIN OF VERCINGETORIX

V. Hīs suppliciīs celeriter coāctō exercitū Lucterium Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturīgēs proficīscitur. Ēius adventū Biturīgēs ad Haeduōs, quōrum erant in fidē, lēgātōs mittunt

3. **patruo**: *uncle (father's brother)*. 9. **egentium**: part. of *egeo, to be in want.* 13. **quoqueversus**: *in all directions.* 14. **obtestatur**: *he implores.* 20. **quod**: an interrogative agreeing with *tempus.* 23. **delicto**: *crime.* 24. **desectis**: *cut off.* — **effossis**: *torn out.* 25. **documento**: *a warning.*

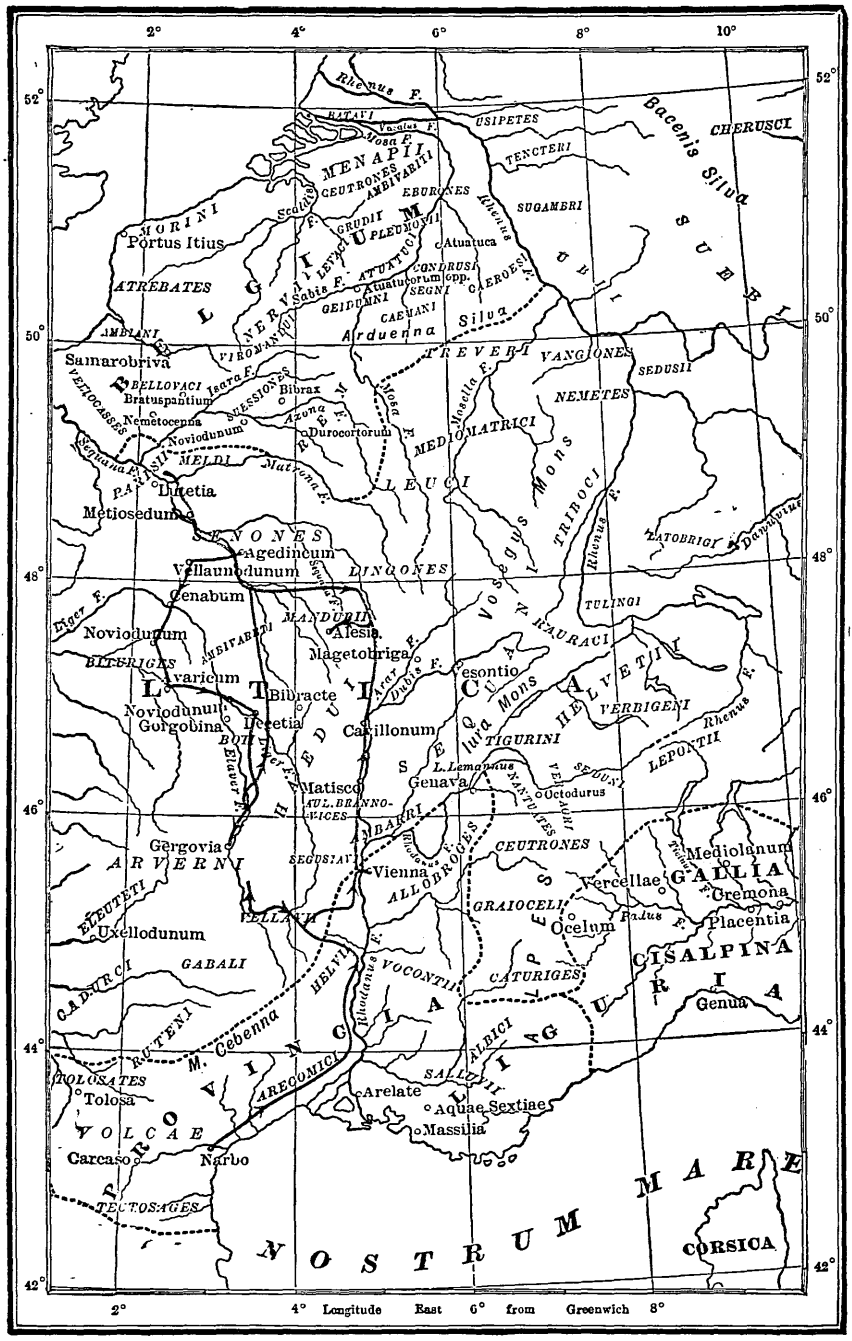
subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint. Haeduī dē cōnsiliō lēgātōrum quōs Caesar ad exercitum relīquerat cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturīgibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs ab Haeduīs dīvidit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsīre ausī domum revertuntur, lēgātīsque nostrīs renūntiant sē Biturīgum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōnsilī fuisse cognōverint, ut, sī flūmen trānsīssent, ūnā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent. Id eāne dē causā quam lēgātīs prōnūntiārint an perfidiā adductī fēcerint, quod nihil nōbīs cōnstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnendum. Biturīgēs eōrum discessū statim sē cum Arvernīs coniungunt.

Caesar hastens from Italy, repels a threatened attack on the province, and himself threatens the Arverni.

VI. Hīs rēbus in Italiam Caesarī nūntiātīs, cum iam ille urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēī commodiōrem in statum pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, magnā difficultāte adficiēbātur quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenīre posset. Nam sī legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō dīmicātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē iīs quidem eō tempore quī quiētī vidērentur suam salūtem rēctē committī vidēbat.

VII. Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam cīvitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobrogēs et Gabalōs ab utrīsque obsidēs accipit, et magnā coāctā manū in prōvinciam Nārbōnem versus inruptiōnem facere contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnibus cōnsiliīs antevertendum exīstimāvit ut Nārbōnem proficīscerētur. Eō cum vēnisset, timentīs cōnfīrmat, praesidia in Rutēnīs prōvinciālibus, Volcīs

10. **nihil constat**: *it is by no means clear.* 14. **Cn.**: *Gnaei*, gen. of *Gnaeus.* 20. **recte**: *well*, or *safely.* 22. **conciliat**: *wins over.* 24. **Narbonem versus**: *towards Narbo.* 25. **antevertendum**: *ought to take precedence of;* its subject is *ut Narbonem proficisceretur.* 27. **provincialibus**: *of the province.*



THE CAMPAIGN OF 52 B.C.

Arecomicīs, Tolōsātibus, circumque Nārbōnem, quae loca hostibus erant fīnitima, cōnstituit, partem cōpiārum ex prōvinciā supplēmentumque, quod ex Italiā addūxerat, in Helviōs, quī fīnīs Arvernōrum contingunt, convenīre iubet.

VIII. Hīs rēbus comparātīs, repressō iam Lucteriō et remōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia perīculōsum putābat, in Helviōs proficīscitur. Etsī mōns Cebenna, quī Arvernōs ab Helviīs disclūdit, dūrissimō tempore annī altissimā nive iter impediēbat, tamen discussā nive in altitūdinem pedum sex atque ita viīs patefactīs summō mīlitum labōre ad fīnīs Arvernōrum pervenit. Quibus oppressīs inopīnantibus, quod sē Cebennā ut mūrō mūnītōs exīstimābant, ac nē singulārī quidem umquam hominī eō tempore annī sēmitae patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrōrem īnferant. Celeriter haec fāma ac nūntiī ad Vercingetorīgem perferuntur; quem perterritī omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant ut suīs fortūnīs cōnsulat, neu sē ab hostibus dīripī patiātur, praesertim cum videat omne ad sē bellum trānslātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

He starts to the relief of Gorgobina, a town of the Boii, which Vercingetorix has attacked.

IX. At Caesar bīduum in hīs locīs morātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorīge ūsū ventūra opīniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēmentī equitātūsque cōgendī ab exercitū discēdit, Brūtum adulēscentem hīs cōpiīs praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnīs partīs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur: 'Datūrum sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castrīs absit.' Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, suīs

3. **supplementum**: *reinforcements.* 8. **durissimo tempore**: it was the depth of winter. — **nive**: *snow.* 9. **discussa**: *having been cleared away.* 13. **semitae patuerant**: *paths had been open.* 17. **obsecrant**: *beg.* 23. **usu ventura**: *would come to pass.* — **opinione praeceperat**: *had anticipated.* — **per causam**: *on the pretext.*

inopīnantibus quam maximīs potest itineribus Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus recentem equitātum, quem multīs ante diēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō per fīnīs Haeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant, ut sī quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Haeduīs inīrētur cōnsilī, celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit, priusque omnīs in ūnum locum cōgit quam dē ēius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset. Hāc rē cognitā Vercingetorīx rūrsus in Biturīgēs exercitum redūcit, atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proeliō victōs Caesar conlocāverat Haeduīsque attribuerat, oppugnāre īnstituit.

X. Magnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōnsilium capiendum adferēbat: sī reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō legiōnēs continēret, nē stīpendiāriīs Haeduōrum expugnātīs cūncta Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amīcīs in eō praesidium positum vidēret; sī mātūrius ex hībernīs ēdūceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūrīs subvectiōnibus labōrāret. Praestāre vīsum est tamen omnīs difficultātēs perpetī quam tantā contumēliā acceptā omnium suōrum voluntātēs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Haeduōs dē supportandō commeātū praemittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant hortenturque ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum magnō animō sustineant. Duābus Agēdincī legiōnibus atque impedīmentīs tōtīus exercitūs relictīs ad Bōiōs proficīscitur.

On the way he takes Vellaunodunum, Cenabum, and Noviodunum. Vercingetorix raises the siege of Gorgobina.

XI. Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodūnum vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret et quō expedītiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur, oppugnāre īnstituit eōque bīduō

2. **recentem**: *fresh;* a predicate adj. 15. **stipendiariis**: *dependents.* 16. **quod . . . videret**: *seeing that there was in him no protection for friends.* 18. **subvectionibus**: *transportation.* 19. **perpeti**: *per + pati.* 27. **quo . . . uteretur**: *that he might find provisioning an easier matter.*

circumvāllāvit; tertiō diē missīs ex oppidō lēgātīs dē dēditiōne arma cōnferrī, iūmenta prōdūcī, sescentōs obsidēs darī iubet. Ea quī cōnficeret, C. Trebōnium lēgātum relinquit; ipse, ut quam prīmum iter cōnficeret, Cēnabum Carnutum proficīscitur. Quī tum prīmum adlātō nūntiō dē oppugnātiōne Vellaunodūnī, cum longius eam rem ductum īrī exīstimārent, praesidium Cēnabī tuendī causā, quod eō mitterent, comparābant. Hūc bīduō pervenit. Castrīs ante oppidum positīs diēī tempore exclūsus in posterum oppugnātiōnem differt, quaeque ad eam rem ūsuī sint mīlitibus imperat; et quod oppidum Cēnabum pōns flūminis Ligeris contingēbat, veritus nē noctū ex oppidō profugerent, duās legiōnēs in armīs excubāre iubet. Cēnabēnsēs paulō ante mediam noctem silentiō ex oppidō ēgressī flūmen trānsīre coepērunt. Quā rē per explōrātōrēs nūntiātā Caesar legiōnēs, quās expedītās esse iusserat, portīs incēnsīs intrōmittit atque oppidō potītur perpaucīs ex hostium numerō dēsīderātīs quīn cūnctī caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitūdinī fugam interclūserant. Oppidum dīripit atque incendit, praedam mīlitibus dōnat, exercitum Ligerim trādūcit atque in Biturīgum fīnīs pervenit.

XII. Vercingetorīx, ubi dē Caesaris adventū cognōvit, oppugnātiōne dēsistit atque obviam Caesarī proficīscitur. Ille oppidum Biturīgum positum in viā, Noviodūnum, oppugnāre īnstituerat. Quō ex oppidō cum lēgātī ad eum vēnissent ōrātum ut sibi ignōsceret suaeque vītae cōnsuleret, ut celeritāte reliquās rēs cōnficeret quā plēraque erat cōnsecūtus, arma cōnferrī, equōs prōdūcī, obsidēs darī iubet. Parte iam obsidum trāditā, cum reliqua administrārentur, centuriōnibus et paucīs mīlitibus intrōmissīs, quī arma iūmentaque conquīrerent, equitātus hostium procul vīsus est, quī agmen Vercingetorīgis ante-

9. **posterum**: sc. *diem*. 12. **excubare**: *bivouac outside the camp*. 16. **perpaucis . . . caperentur**: *i.e.* all the enemy were taken except a very few. 17. **desideratis**, *being lacking*. 19. **praedam**: no doubt the people themselves as well as their effects. 22. **obviam proficiscitur**: *starts to meet*.

cesserat. Quem simul atque oppidānī cōnspexērunt atque in spem auxilī vēnērunt, clāmōre sublātō arma capere, portās claudere, mūrum complēre coepērunt. Centuriōnēs in oppidō, cum ex sīgnificātiōne Gallōrum novī aliquid ab iīs inīrī cōnsilī intellēxissent, gladiīs dēstrictīs portās occupāvērunt ṣuōsque omnīs incolumīs recēpērunt.

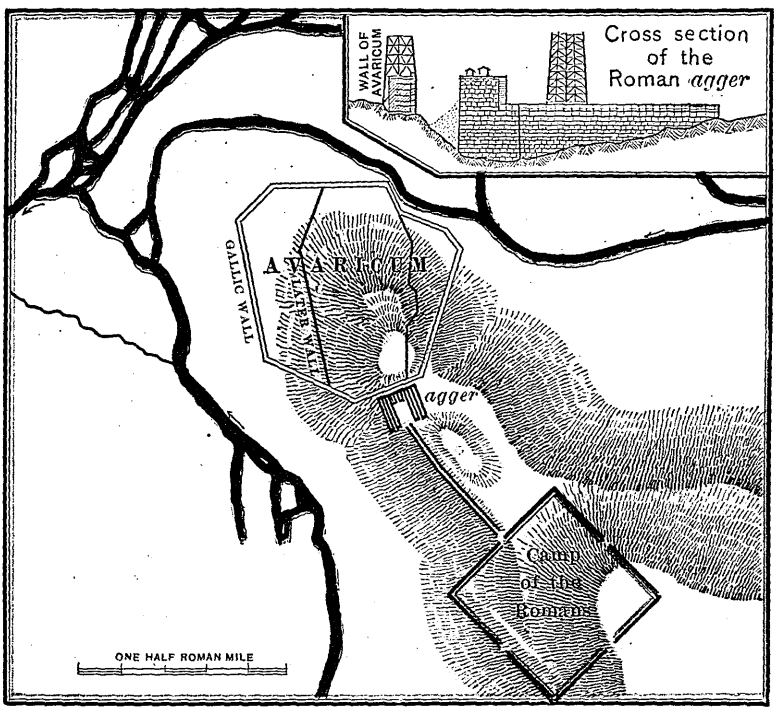
XIII. Caesar ex castrīs equitātum ēdūcī iubet proeliumque equestre committit; labōrantibus iam suīs Germānōs equitēs circiter CCCC submittit, quōs ab initiō sēcum habēre īnstituerat. Eōrum impetum Gallī sustinēre nōn potuērunt atque in fugam coniectī multīs āmissīs sē ad agmen recēpērunt. Quibus prōflīgātīs rūrsus oppidānī perterritī comprehēnsōs eōs quōrum operā plēbem concitātam exīstimābant ad Caesarem perdūxērunt sēsēque eī dēdidērunt. Quibus rēbus cōnfectīs Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat maximum mūnītissimumque in fīnibus Biturīgum atque agrī fertilissimā regiōne, profectus est, quod eō oppidō receptō cīvitātem Biturīgum sē in potestātem redāctūrum cōnfīdēbat.

The Gauls change their plan of action. The towns of the Bituriges are burned, except Avaricum.

XIV. Vercingetorīx tot continuīs incommodīs Vellaunodūnī, Cēnabī, Noviodūnī acceptīs suōs ad concilium convocat. Docet longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum gerendum atque anteā gestum sit. Omnibus modīs huic reī studendum, ut pābulātiōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equitātū ipsī abundent et quod annī tempore subleventur. Pābulum secārī nōn posse, necessāriō dispersōs hostīs ex aedificiīs petere; hōs omnīs cottīdiē ab equitibus dēlērī posse. Praetereā salūtis causā reī familiāris commoda neglegenda; vīcōs atque aedificia incendī oportēre hōc spatiō quōqueversus

4. **significatione**: *behavior.* 16. **agri fertilissima regione**: *in the most productive part of their domain.* 21. **atque**: *than,* after *alia.* 22. **studendum**: *their efforts must be directed.* 25. **secari**: *be cut.* 28. **hoc . . . quo**: *as far* (lit. *within this distance*) *in every direction as.*

quō pābulandī causā adīre posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum cōpiam suppetere, quod quōrum in fīnibus bellum gerātur, eōrum opibus subleventur; Rōmānōs aut inopiam nōn lātūrōs aut magnō cum perīculō longius ā castrīs prōcessūrōs, neque interesse ipsōsne interficiant an impedīmentīs exuant, quibus 5



PLAN OF AVARICUM

āmissīs bellum gerī nōn possit. Praetereā oppida incendī oportēre quae nōn mūnītiōne et locī nātūrā ab omnī sint perīculō tūta, nē suīs sint ad dētrāctandam mīlitiam receptācula neu Rōmānīs prōposita ad cōpiam commeātūs praedamque tollen-

5. **ipsosne**: *-ne, whether;* the indirect question is the subject of *interesse*. 8. **detractandam**: *evading*. — **receptacula**: *places of refuge*.

cesserat. Quem simul atque oppidānī cōnspexērunt atque in spem auxilī vēnērunt, clāmōre sublātō arma capere, portās claudere, mūrum complēre coepērunt. Centuriōnēs in oppidō, cum ex significātiōne Gallōrum novī aliquid ab iīs inīrī cōnsilī intellēxissent, gladiīs dēstrictīs portās occupāvērunt suōsque omnīs incolumīs recēpērunt.

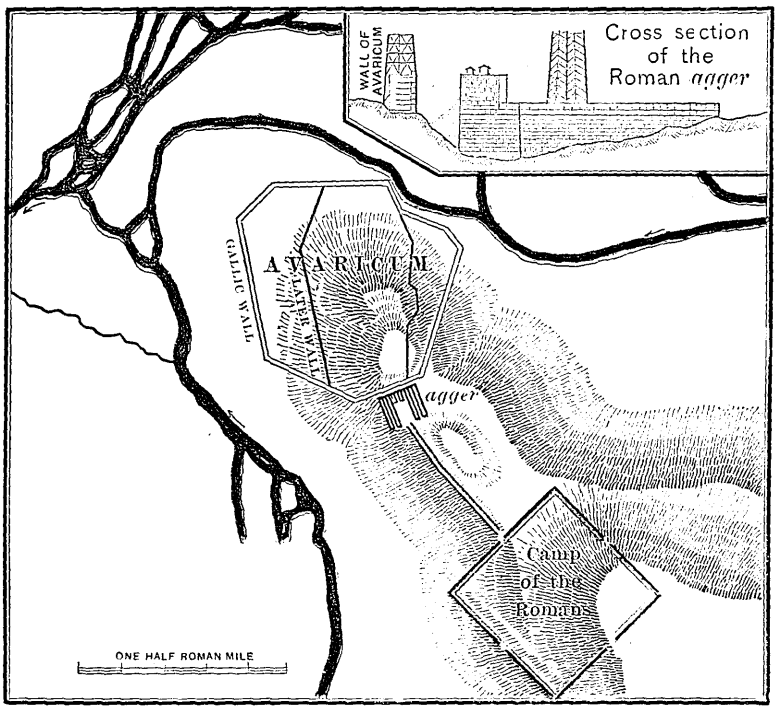
XIII. Caesar ex castrīs equitātum ēdūcī iubet proeliumque equestre committit; labōrantibus iam suīs Germānōs equitēs circiter CCCC submittit, quōs ab initiō sēcum habēre īnstituerat. Eōrum impetum Gallī sustinēre nōn potuērunt atque in fugam coniectī multīs āmissīs sē ad agmen recēpērunt. Quibus prōflīgātīs rūrsus oppidānī perterritī comprehēnsōs eōs quōrum operā plēbem concitātam exīstimābant ad Caesarem perdūxērunt sēsēque eī dēdidērunt. Quibus rēbus cōnfectīs Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat maximum mūnītissimumque in fīnibus Biturīgum atque agrī fertilissimā regiōne, profectus est, quod eō oppidō receptō cīvitātem Biturīgum sē in potestātem redāctūrum cōnfīdēbat.

The Gauls change their plan of action. The towns of the Bituriges are burned, except Avaricum.

XIV. Vercingetorīx tot continuīs incommodīs Vellaunodūnī, Cēnabī, Noviodūnī acceptīs suōs ad concilium convocat. Docet longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum gerendum atque anteā gestum sit. Omnibus modīs huic reī studendum, ut pābulātiōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equitātū ipsī abundent et quod annī tempore subleventur. Pābulum secārī nōn posse, necessāriō dispersōs hostīs ex aedificiīs petere; hōs omnīs cottīdiē ab equitibus dēlērī posse. Praetereā salūtis causā reī familiāris commoda neglegenda; vīcōs atque aedificia incendī oportēre hōc spatiō quōqueversus

4. **significatione**: *behavior*. 16. **agri fertilissima regione**: *in the most productive part of their domain*. 21. **atque**: *than*, after *alia*. 22. **studendum**: *their efforts must be directed*. 25. **secari**: *be cut*. 28. **hoc . . . quo**: *as far* (lit. *within this distance*) *in every direction as*.

quō pābulandī causā adīre posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum cōpiam suppetere, quod quōrum in fīnibus bellum gerātur, eōrum opibus subleventur; Rōmānōs aut inopiam nōn lātūrōs aut magnō cum perīculō longius ā castrīs prōcessūrōs, neque interesse ipsōsne interficiant an impedīmentīs exuant, quibus 5



PLAN OF AVARICUM

āmissīs bellum gerī nōn possit. Praetereā oppida incendī oportēre quae nōn mūnītiōne et locī nātūrā ab omnī sint perīculō tūta, nē suīs sint ad dētrāctandam mīlitiam receptācula neu Rōmānīs prōposita ad cōpiam commeātūs praedamque tollen-

5. **ipsosne**: *-ne, whether;* the indirect question is the subject of *interesse*. 8. **detractandam**: *evading*. — **receptacula**: *places of refuge*.

dam. Haec sī gravia aut acerba videantur, multō illa gravius aestimārī dēbēre, — līberōs, coniugēs in servitūtem abstrahī, ipsōs interficī, quae sit necesse accidere victīs.

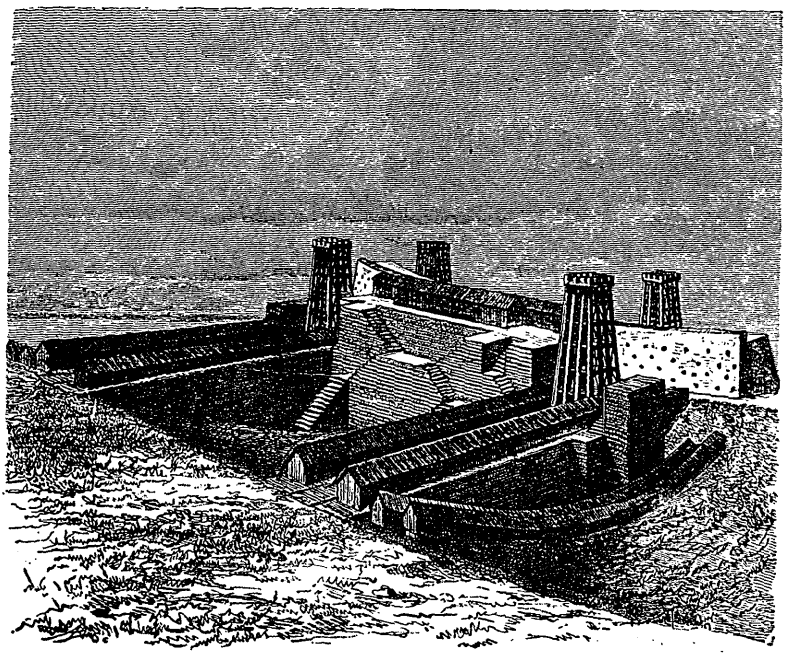
XV. Omnium cōnsēnsū hāc sententiā probātā ūnō diē amplius XX urbēs Biturīgum incenduntur. Hōc idem fit in reliquīs cīvitātibus. In omnibus partibus incendia cōnspiciuntur; quae etsī magnō cum dolōre omnēs ferēbant, tamen hōc sibi sōlācī prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope explōrātā victōriā celeriter āmissa recuperātūrōs cōnfīdēbant. Dēlīberātur dē Avaricō in commūnī conciliō, incendī placeat an dēfendī. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallīs ad pedēs Biturīgēs, nē pulcherrimam prope tōtīus Galliae urbem, quae et praesidiō et ōrnāmentō sit cīvitātī, suīs manibus succendere cōgantur; facile sē locī nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dīcunt, quod prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et palūde circumdata ūnum habeat et perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia dissuādente prīmō Vercingetorīge, post concēdente et precibus ipsōrum et misericordiā vulgī. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōneī dēliguntur.

XVI. Vercingetorīx minōribus Caesarem itineribus subsequitur et locum castrīs dēligit palūdibus silvīsque mūnītum ab Avaricō longē mīlia passuum XVI. Ibi per certōs explōrātōrēs in singula diēī tempora quae ad Avaricum gererentur cognōscēbat, et quid fierī vellet imperābat. Omnīs nostrās pābulātiōnēs frūmentātiōnēsque observābat, dispersōsque, cum longius necessario prōcēderent, adoriēbātur magnōque incommodō adficiēbat, etsī quantum ratiōne prōvidērī poterat ab nostrīs occurrēbātur, ut incertīs temporibus dīversīsque itineribus īrētur.

1. **acerba**: *bitter*. 2. **coniuges**: *wives*. 8. **solaci**: *solacium, comfort*. 10. **incendi**: sc. *-ne*. 11. **pulcherrimam**: *most beautiful*. 15. **Datur ... venia**: *the favor is granted*. 17. **vulgi**: subjective gen. The other members of the council are meant. 21. **certos**: *trustworthy*. 22. **in ... tempora**: *from time to time during the day*. 24. **necessario**: the adverb. 27. **ut ... iretur**: a result clause, almost equivalent to an abl. of means with *occurrebatur*, i.e. *our men met the emergency by going*, etc.

Caesar lays siege to Avaricum. He fails in an attempt to surprise the enemy's camp while Vercingetorix is absent.

XVII. Castrīs ad eam partem oppidī positīs Caesar quae intermissa flūmine et palūde aditum, ut suprā dīximus, angustum habēbat, aggerem apparāre, vīneās agere, turrīs duās cōnstituere coepit; nam circumvāllāre locī nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frū-



THE ROMAN WORKS AT AVARICUM

mentāriā Bōiōs atque Haeduōs adhortārī nōn dēstitit; quōrum alterī, quod nūllō studiō agēbant, nōn multum adiuvābant, alterī nōn magnīs facultātibus, quod cīvitās erat exigua et īnfīrma, celeriter quod habuērunt cōnsūmpsērunt. Summā difficultāte reī frūmentāriae adfectō exercitū tenuitāte Bōiōrum, indiligentiā Haeduōrum, incendiīs aedificiōrum, ūsque eō ut

1. **intermissa**: *free from, not shut in by.* 3. **apparare**: *make ready.* 9. **tenuitate**: *by reason of the poverty.*

dam. Haec sī gravia aut acerba videantur, multō illa gravius aestimārī dēbēre, — līberōs, coniugēs in servitūtem abstrahī, ipsōs interficī, quae sit necesse accidere victīs.

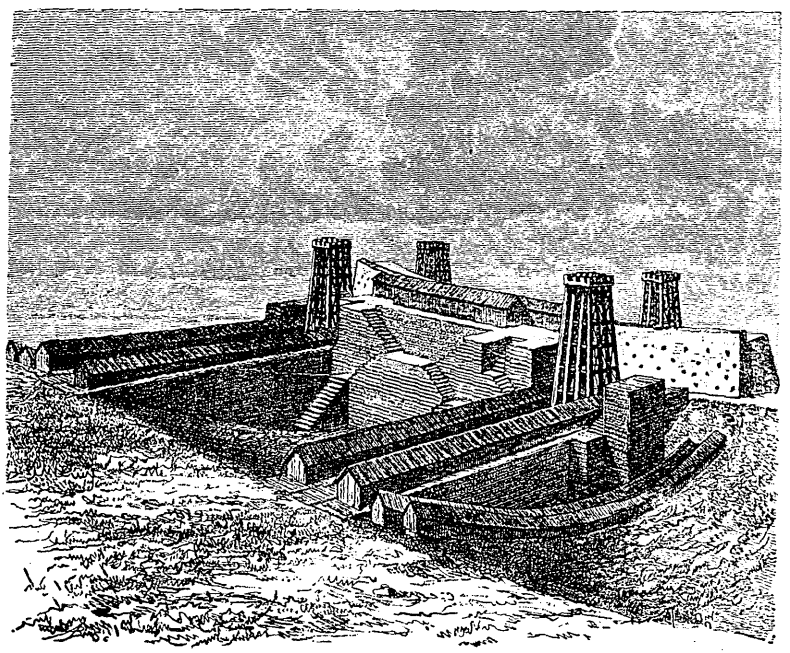
XV. Omnium cōnsēnsū hāc sententiā probātā ūnō diē amplius XX urbēs Biturīgum incenduntur. Hōc idem fit in reliquīs cīvitātibus. In omnibus partibus incendia cōnspiciuntur; quae etsī magnō cum dolōre omnēs ferēbant, tamen hōc sibi sōlācī prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope explōrātā victōriā celeriter āmissa recuperātūrōs cōnfīdēbant. Dēlīberātur dē Avaricō in commūnī conciliō, incendī placeat an dēfendī. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallīs ad pedēs Biturīgēs, nē pulcherrimam prope tōtīus Galliae urbem, quae et praesidiō et ōrnāmentō sit cīvitātī, suīs manibus succendere cōgantur; facile sē locī nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dīcunt, quod prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et palūde circumdata ūnum habeat et perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia dissuādente prīmō Vercingetorīge, post concēdente et precibus ipsōrum et misericordiā vulgī. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōneī dēliguntur.

XVI. Vercingetorīx minōribus Caesarem itineribus subsequitur et locum castrīs dēligit palūdibus silvīsque mūnītum ab Avaricō longē mīlia passuum XVI. Ibi per certōs explōrātōrēs in singula diēī tempora quae ad Avaricum gererentur cognōscēbat, et quid fierī vellet imperābat. Omnīs nostrās pābulātiōnēs frūmentātiōnēsque observābat, dispersōsque, cum longius necessario prōcēderent, adoriēbātur magnōque incommodō adficiēbat, etsī quantum ratiōne prōvidērī poterat ab nostrīs occurrēbātur, ut incertīs temporibus dīversīsque itineribus īrētur.

1. **acerba**: *bitter*. 2. **coniuges**: *wives*. 8. **solaci**: *solacium, comfort*. 10. **incendi**: sc. *-ne*. 11. **pulcherrimam**: *most beautiful*. 15. **Datur ... venia**: *the favor is granted*. 17. **vulgi**: subjective gen. The other members of the council are meant. 21. **certos**: *trustworthy*. 22. **in ... tempora**: *from time to time during the day*. 24. **necessario**: the adverb. 27. **ut ... iretur**: a result clause, almost equivalent to an abl. of means with *occurrebatur*, i.e. *our men met the emergency by going*, etc.

Caesar lays siege to Avaricum. He fails in an attempt to surprise the enemy's camp while Vercingetorix is absent.

XVII. Castrīs ad eam partem oppidī positīs Caesar quae intermissa flūmine et palūde aditum, ut suprā diximus, angustum habēbat, aggerem apparāre, vīneās agere, turrīs duās cōnstituere coepit; nam circumvāllāre locī nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frū-



THE ROMAN WORKS AT AVARICUM

mentāriā Bōiōs atque Haeduōs adhortārī nōn dēstitit; quōrum alterī, quod nūllō studiō agēbant, nōn multum adiuvābant, alterī nōn magnīs facultātibus, quod cīvitās erat exigua et īnfīrma, celeriter quod habuērunt cōnsūmpsērunt. Summā difficultāte reī frūmentāriae adfectō exercitū tenuitāte Bōiōrum, indīligentiā Haeduōrum, incendiīs aedificiōrum, ūsque eō ut

1. **intermissa**: *free from, not shut in by.* 3. **apparare**: *make ready.* 9. **tenuitate**: *by reason of the poverty.*

complūrīs diēs frūmentō mīlitēs caruerint et pecore ex longinquiōribus vīcīs adāctō extrēmam famem sustentārint, nūlla tamen vōx est ab iīs audīta populī Rōmānī māiestāte et superiōribus victōriīs indīgna. Quīn etiam Caesar cum in opere singulās legiōnēs appellāret, et sī acerbius inopiam ferrent, sē dīmissūrum oppugnātiōnem dīceret, ūniversī ab eō nē id faceret petēbant: 'Sīc sē complūrīs annōs illō imperante meruisse ut nūllam ignōminiam acciperent, numquam īnfectā rē discēderent; hōc sē ignōminiae lātūrōs locō, sī inceptam oppugnātiōnem relīquissent; praestāre omnīs perferre acerbitātēs quam nōn cīvibus Rōmānīs quī Cēnabī perfidiā Gallōrum interīssent parentārent.' Haec eadem centuriōnibus tribūnīsque mīlitum mandābant, ut per eōs ad Caesarem dēferrentur.

XVIII. Cum iam mūrō turrēs appropinquāssent, ex captīvīs Caesar cognōvit Vercingetorīgem cōnsūmptō pābulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum, atque ipsum cum equitātū expedītīsque, quī inter equitēs proeliārī cōnsuēssent, īnsidiandī causā eō profectum quō nostrōs posterō diē pābulātum ventūrōs arbitrārētur. Quibus rēbus cognitīs mediā nocte silentiō profectus ad hostium castra māne pervēnit. Illī celeriter per explōrātōrēs adventū Caesaris cognitō carrōs impedīmentaque sua in artiōrēs silvās abdidērunt, cōpiās omnīs in locō ēditō atque apertō īnstrūxērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar celeriter sarcinās cōnferrī, arma expedīrī iussit.

XIX. Collis erat lēniter ab īnfimō acclīvis. Hunc ex omnibus ferē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedīta cingēbat nōn lātior pedibus L. Hōc sē colle interruptīs pontibus Gallī fīdūciā locī continēbant, generātimque distribūtī omnia vada ēius palūdis obtinēbant, sīc animō parātī ut, sī eam palūdem Rōmānī perrumpere cōnārentur, haesitantīs premerent ex locō superiōre; ut quī propinquitātem locī vidēret parātōs prope

5. **acerbius**: *grauius.* 7. **meruisse**: *had served.* 8. **infecta**: *in-, not + facta.* 12. **parentarent**: *auenge.* 22. **artiores**: *denser.* 28. **generatim**: *by tribes.* 30. **haesitantis**: *impeditos.* 31. **ut**: with *existimaret.*

aequō Mārte ad dīmicandum exīstimāret, quī inīquitātem condiciōnis perspiceret inānī simulātiōne sēsē ostentāre cognōsceret. Indignantīs mīlitēs Caesar quod cōnspectum suum hostēs ferre possent tantulō spatiō interiectō et sīgnum proelī exposcentīs edocet quantō dētrīmentō et quot virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōnstāre victōriam: 'Quōs cum sīc animō parātos videat ut nūllum prō suā laude perīculum recūsent, summae sē inīquitātis condemnārī dēbēre nisi eōrum vītam laude suā habeat cāriōrem.' Sīc mīlitēs cōnsōlātus eōdem diē redūcit in castra, reliquaque quae ad oppugnātiōnem oppidī pertinēbant administrāre īnstituit.

Vercingetorix, being accused of treason by his people, defends himself.

XX. Vercingetorīx cum ad suōs redīsset, prōditiōnis īnsimulātus, quod castra propius Rōmānōs mōvisset, quod cum omnī equitātū discessisset, quod sine imperiō tantās cōpiās relīquisset, quod ēius discessū Rōmānī tantā opportūnitāte et celeritāte vēnissent: 'Nōn haec omnia fortuītō aut sine cōnsiliō accidere potuisse; rēgnum illum Galliae mālle Caesaris concessū quam ipsōrum habēre beneficiō' — tālī modō accūsātus ad haec respondit: 'Quod castra mōvisset, factum inopiā pābulī etiam ipsīs hortantibus; quod propius Rōmānōs accessisset, persuāsum locī opportūnitāte, quī sē ipse sine mūnītiōne dēfenderet; equitum vērō operam neque in locō palūstrī dēsīderārī dēbuisse et illīc fuisse ūtilem quō sint profectī. Summam imperī sē cōnsultō nūllī discēdentem trādidisse, nē is multitūdinis studiō ad dīmicandum impellerētur; cui reī propter animī mollitiem studēre omnīs vidēret, quod

1. **aequo Marte**: *on equal terms.* 2. **inani simulatione**: *in an empty pretense.* — **ostentare**: sc. *Gallos* as subject. 5. **quot**: *how many.* 6. **constare**: *cost,* with abl. of price. 12. **proditionis insimulatus**: *accused of treason.* 14. **sine imperio**: i.e. *sine imperatore.* 16. **fortuito**: *accidentally.* 19. **Quod castra movisset**: subject of *factum* (*esse*). 23. **palustri**: cf. *palus.* 24. **consulto**: *on purpose.* 26. **mollitiem**: cf. *mollis, soft.*

diūtius labōrem ferre nōn possent. Rōmānī sī cāsū intervēnerint, fortūnae, sī alicūius indiciō vocātī, huic habendam grātiam, quod et paucitātem eōrum ex locō superiōre cognōscere et virtūtem dēspicere potuerint, quī dīmicāre nōn ausī turpiter sē in castra recēperint. Imperium sē ā Caesare per prōditiōnem nūllum dēsīderāre, quod habēre victōriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallīs explōrāta; quīn etiam ipsīs remittere, sī sibi magis honōrem tribuere quam ab sē salūtem accipere videantur.' "Haec ut intellegātis," inquit, "ā mē sincērē prōnūntiārī, audīte Rōmānōs mīlitēs." Prōdūcit servōs, quōs in pābulātiōne paucīs ante diēbus excēperat et famē vinculīsque excruciāverat. Hī iam ante ēdoctī quae interrogātī prōnūntiārent mīlitēs sē esse legiōnāriōs dīcunt; famē atque inopiā adductōs clam ex castrīs exīsse, sī quid frūmentī aut pecoris in agrīs reperīre possent; similī omnem exercitum inopiā premī, nec iam virīs sufficere cūiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse; itaque statuisse imperātōrem, sī nihil in oppugnātiōne oppidī prōfēcisset, trīduō exercitum dēdūcere. "Haec," inquit, "ā mē beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis īnsimulātis, cūius operā sine vestrō sanguine tantum exercitum victōrem famē paene cōnsūmptum vidētis; quem turpiter sē ex hāc fugā recipientem nē qua cīvitās suīs fīnibus recipiat, ā mē prōvīsum est."

XXI. Conclāmat omnis multitūdō et suō mōre armīs concrepat, quod facere in eō cōnsuērunt cūius ōrātiōnem approbant: 'Summum esse Vercingetorīgem ducem, nec dē ēius fidē dubitandum, nec māiōre ratiōne bellum administrārī posse.' Statuunt ut decem mīlia hominum dēlēcta ex omnibus cōpiīs in oppidum submittantur, nec sōlīs Biturīgibus commūnem salūtem committendam cēnsent, quod paene in eō, sī id oppidum retinuissent, summam victōriae cōnstāre intellegēbant.

2. **fortunae**: dat. 7. **quin etiam**: *on the contrary.* 8. **remittere**: *reddere.* 10. **sincere**: *honestly.* 16. **sufficere**: *be adequate.* 20. **sanguine**: *blood.* 24. **concrepat**: *make a clatter.* 31. **constare**: *depend.*

The garrison of Avaricum offers a stubborn resistance.

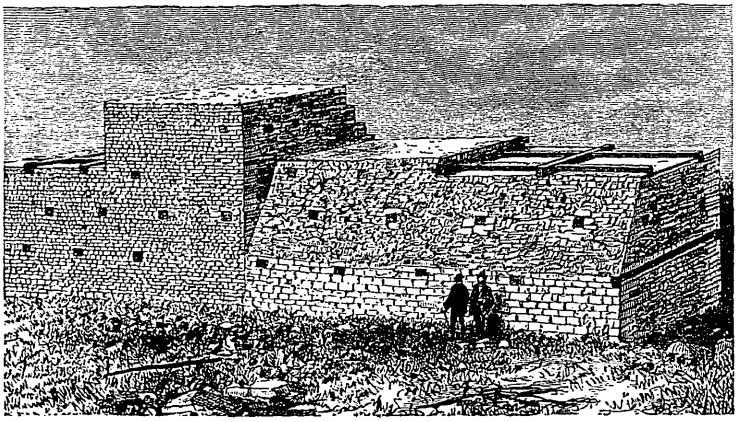
XXII. Singulārī mīlitum nostrōrum virtūtī cōnsilia cūiusque modī Gallōrum occurrēbant, ut est summae genus sollertiae atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda quae ā quōque trāduntur aptissimum. Nam et laqueīs falcīs āvertēbant, quās cum dēstināverant, tormentīs intrōrsus redūcēbant, et aggerem cuniculīs subtrahēbant, eō scientius quod apud eōs magnae sunt ferrāriae, atque omne genus cunīculōrum nōtum atque ūsitātum est. Tōtum autem mūrum ex omnī parte turribus contabulāverant atque hās coriīs intēxerant. Tum crēbrīs diurnīs nocturnīsque ēruptiōnibus aut aggerī īgnem īnferēbant aut mīlitēs occupātōs in opere adoriēbantur; et nostrārum turrium altitūdinem, quantum hās cottīdiānus agger expresserat, commissīs suārum turrium māliīs adaequābant; et apertōs cunīculōs praeūstā et praeacūtā māteriā et pice fervefactā et maximī ponderis saxīs morābantur moenibusque appropinquāre prohibēbant.

A description of Gallic walls.

XXIII. Mūrī autem omnēs Gallicī hāc ferē fōrmā sunt. Trabēs dērēctae perpetuae in longitūdinem paribus intervāllīs distantēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs in solō conlocantur. Hae revinciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggere vestiuntur; ea autem quae dīximus intervālla grandibus in fronte saxīs effarciuntur. Hīs

1. **consilia cuiusque modi**: *all sorts of devices.* 2. **sollertiae**: *dexterity.* 4. **laqueis**: *with nooses.* 5. **tormentis**: *with windlasses.* 6. **ferrariae**: *iron-mines.* 7. **usitatum**: *familiar.* 8. **contabulaverant**: *had built up in stories.* At frequent intervals were placed towers several stories in height. 9. **coriis**: *with hides.* 12. **cottidianus agger**: *the daily (increase in the height of the) agger.* — **commissis malis**: *the upright timbers having been joined together,* i.e. fresh lengths were added. 13. **apertos cuniculos morabantur**: probably equivalent to *cuniculos aperiebant et morabantur.* 14. **pice fervefacta**: *boiling pitch.* 17. **derectae**: *at right angles (to the direction of the wall).* — **perpetuae in longitudinem**: *along the whole length.* 19. **vestiuntur**: cf. *vestis, clothing.* 20. **effarciuntur**: *are filled in.*

conlocātīs et coagmentātīs alius īnsuper ōrdō additur, ut idem illud intervāllum servētur neque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed paribus intermissīs spatiīs singulae singulīs saxīs interiectīs artē contineantur. Sīc deinceps omne opus contexitur, dum iūsta mūrī altitūdō expleātur. Hōc cum in speciem varietātemque



A GALLIC WALL

opus dēfōrme nōn est alternīs trabibus ac saxīs, quae rēctīs līneīs suōs ōrdinēs servant, tum ad ūtilitātem et dēfēnsiōnem urbium summam habet opportūnitātem, quod et ab incendiō lapis et ab ariete māteria dēfendit, quae perpetuīs trabibus pedum quadrāgēnum plērumque intrōrsus revincta neque perrumpī neque distrahī potest.

The bravery of the Gauls.

XXIV. Hīs tot rēbus impedītā oppugnātiōne mīlitēs, cum tōtō tempore frīgore et adsiduīs imbribus tardārentur, tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt, et diēbus xxv

1. **coagmentatis**: *joined together.* 3. **arte**: *tightly.* 6. **rectis lineis**: *in straight lines.* 9. **perpetuis trabibus**: these were laid lengthwise of the wall. 10. **quadragenum**: gen. of the distributive numeral, *forty.*

aggerem lātum pedēs CCCXXX, altum pedēs LXXX exstrūxērunt. Cum is mūrum hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus cōnsuētūdine excubāret, mīlitēsque hortārētur nē quod omnīnō tempus ab opere intermitterētur, paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fūmāre aggerem, quem cunīculō hostēs succenderant, eōdemque tempore tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō duābus portīs ab utrōque latere turrium ēruptiō fīēbat. Aliī facēs atque āridam māteriam dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus iaciēbant, picem reliquāsque rēs quibus īgnis excitārī potest fundēbant, ut quō prīmum occurrerētur aut cui reī ferrētur auxilium vix ratiō inīrī posset. Tamen quod īnstitūtō Caesaris duae semper legiōnēs prō castrīs excubābant, plūrēsque partītīs temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est ut aliī ēruptiōnibus resisterent, aliī turrīs redūcerent aggeremque interscinderent, omnis vērō ex castrīs multitūdō ad restinguendum concurreret.

XXV. Cum in omnibus locīs cōnsūmptā iam reliquā parte noctis pugnārētur, semperque hostibus spēs victōriae redintegrārētur, eō magis quod deūstōs pluteōs turrium vidēbant nec facile adīre apertōs ad auxiliandum animadvertēbant, semperque ipsī recentēs dēfessīs succēderent, omnemque Galliae salūtem in illō vēstīgiō temporis positam arbitrārentur, accidit īnspectantibus nōbīs quod dignum memoriā vīsum praetereundum nōn exīstimāvimus. Quīdam ante portam oppidī Gallus per manūs sēbī ac picis trāditās glaebās in īgnem ē regiōne turris prōiciēbat; scorpiōne ab latere dextrō trāiectus exanimātusque concidit. Hunc ex proximīs ūnus iacentem trānsgressus eōdem illō mūnere fungēbātur; eādem ratiōne ictū scorpiōnis exanimātō alterō successit tertius et tertiō quārtus, nec prius ille est ā prōpugnātōribus vacuus relictus locus quam restīnctō aggere atque omnī parte submōtīs hostibus fīnis est pugnandī factus.

8. **faces**: *firebrands.* — **eminus**: *from a distance.* 18. **deustos**: *burned.* — **pluteos**: *mantelets.* 19. **apertos**: sc. *nostros.* 22. **dignum**: *worthy.* 24. **sebi**: *of tallow.* — **glaebas**: *lumps.* — **e regione**: *directly in front of.* 25. **scorpione**: *by a missile from a scorpion.* 27. **fungebatur**: *performed.*

Avaricum is finally taken and its inhabitants are mercilessly slaughtered.

XXVI. Omnia expertī Gallī, quod rēs nūlla successerat, posterō diē cōnsilium cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere hortante et iubente Vercingetorīge. Id silentiō noctis cōnātī nōn magnā iactūrā suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant, propterea quod neque longē ab oppidō castra Vercingetorīgis aberant et palūs perpetua quae intercēdēbat Rōmānōs ad īnsequendum tardābat. Iamque hōc facere noctū apparābant, cum mātrēs familiae repente in pūblicum prōcurrērunt, flentēsque prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum omnibus precibus petiērunt nē sē et commūnīs līberōs hostibus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fugam nātūrae et vīrium īnfīrmitās impedīret. Ubi eōs in sententiā perstāre vīdērunt, quod plērumque in summō perīculō timor misericordiam nōn recipit, conclāmāre et sīgnificāre dē fugā Rōmānīs coepērunt. Quō timōre perterritī Gallī, nē ab equitātū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupārentur, cōnsiliō dēstitērunt.

XXVII. Posterō diē Caesar prōmōtā turrī dērēctīsque operibus quae facere īnstituerat, magnō coortō imbrī nōn inūtilem hanc ad capiendum cōnsilium tempestātem arbitrātus, quod paulō incautius cūstōdiās in mūrō dispositās vidēbat, suōs quoque languidius in opere versārī iussit et quid fierī vellet ostendit; legiōnibusque in occultō expedītīs cohortātus ut aliquandō prō tantīs labōribus frūctum victōriae perciperent, īīs quī prīmī mūrum ascendissent praemia prōposuit mīlitibusque sīgnum dedit. Illī subitō ex omnibus partibus ēvolāvērunt mūrumque celeriter complēvērunt.

XXVIII. Hostēs rē novā perterritī, mūrō turribusque dēiectī in forō ac locīs patentiōribus cuneātim cōnstitērunt hōc animō, ut sī quā ex parte obviam venīrētur, aciē īnstrūctā dēpugnā-

4. **iactura**: *loss.* 5. **perpetua**: *without a break.* 12. **perstare**: *persist.* 13. **non recipit**: *does not admit of.* 17. **derectis**: *straightened out;* set in order and directed toward the points where they would be most effective. 22. **aliquando**: *at last.* 28. **foro**: *the market-place.* — **cuneatim**: *in compact (wedge-shaped) formation.*

rent. Ubi nēminem in aequum locum sēsē dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundī vīdērunt, veritī nē omnīnō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectīs armīs ultimās oppidī partīs continentī impetū petīvērunt, parsque ibi, cum angustō exitū portārum sē ipsī premerent, ā mīlitibus, pars iam ēgressa portīs ab equitibus est interfecta. Nec fuit quisquam quī praedae studēret. Sīc et Cēnabēnsī caede et labōre operis incitātī nōn aetāte cōnfectīs, nōn mulieribus, nōn īnfantibus pepercērunt. Dēnique ex omnī numerō, quī fuit circiter mīlium XL, vix DCCC, quī prīmō clāmōre audītō sē ex oppidō ēiēcerant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorīgem pervēnērunt. Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā excēpit, et veritus nē qua in castrīs ex eōrum concursū et misericordiā vulgī sēditiō orerētur, procul in viā dispositīs familiāribus suīs prīncipibusque cīvitātum disparandōs dēdūcendōsque ad suōs cūrāvit, quae cuique cīvitātī pars castrōrum ab initiō obvēnerat.

Vercingetorix inspires the Gauls to continue the war with renewed vigor.

XXIX. Posterō diē conciliō convocātō cōnsōlātus cohortātusque est nē sē admodum animō dēmitterent nēve perturbārentur incommodō: 'Nōn virtūte neque in aciē vīcisse Rōmānōs, sed artificiō quōdam et scientiā oppugnātiōnis, cūius reī fuerint ipsī imperītī. Errāre, sī quī in bellō omnīs secundōs rērum prōventūs exspectent. Sibi numquam placuisse Avaricum dēfendī, cūius reī testīs ipsōs habēret, sed factum imprūdentiā Biturīgum et nimiā obsequentiā reliquōrum utī hōc incommodum acciperētur. Id tamen sē celeriter māiōribus commodīs sānātūrum. Nam quae ab reliquīs Gallīs cīvitātēs dissentīrent, hās suā dīligentiā adiūnctūrum atque ūnum cōnsilium tōtīus Galliae effectūrum, cūius cōnsēnsuī nē orbis quidem terrārum possit obsistere; idque sē prope iam effectum habēre. Intereā aequum esse ab

3. **continenti impetu**: *in a steady rush.* 7. **Cenabensi**: *at Cenabum.* 8. **pepercerunt**: *spared.* 14. **disparandos**: *separandos.* 16. **obvenerat**: *had been assigned.* 24. **nimia obsequentia**: *the too ready compliance.* 25. **sanaturum**: cf. *sanus, sound.*

iīs commūnis salūtis causā impetrārī ut castra mūnīre īnstituerent, quō facilius repentīnōs hostium impetūs sustinēre possent.'

XXX. Fuit haec ōrātiō nōn ingrāta Gallīs, et maximē quod ipse animō nōn dēfēcerat tantō acceptō incommodō, neque sē in occultum abdiderat et cōnspectum multitūdinis fūgerat; plūsque animō prōvidēre et praesentīre exīstimābātur, quod rē integrā prīmō incendendum Avaricum, post dēserendum cēnsuerat. Itaque ut reliquōrum imperātōrum rēs adversae auctōritātem minuunt, sīc hūius ex contrāriō dignitās incommodō acceptō in diēs augēbātur. Simul in spem veniēbant ēius adfīrmātiōne dē reliquīs adiungendīs cīvitātibus, prīmumque eō tempore Gallī castra mūnīre īnstituērunt; et sīc erant animō cōnsternātī hominēs īnsuētī labōris ut omnia quae imperārentur sibi patienda exīstimārent.

XXXI. Nec minus quam est pollicitus Vercingetorīx animō labōrābat ut reliquās cīvitātēs adiungeret, atque eārum prīncipēs dōnīs pollicitātiōnibusque adliciēbat. Huic reī idōneōs hominēs dēligēbat, quōrum quisque aut ōrātiōne subdolā aut amīcitiā facillimē capere posset. Quī Avaricō expugnātō refūgerant armandōs vestiendōsque cūrat; simul, ut dēminūtae cōpiae redintegrārentur, imperat certum numerum mīlitum cīvitātibus, quem et quam ante diem in castra addūcī velit, sagittāriōsque omnīs, quōrum erat permagnus in Galliā numerus, conquīrī et ad sē mittī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter id quod Avaricī dēperierat explētur. Interim Teutomatus, Ollovicōnis fīlius, rēx Nitiobrogum, cūius pater ab senātū nostrō amīcus erat appellātus, cum magnō numerō equitum suōrum et quōs ex Aquītāniā condūxerat ad eum pervenit.

Caesar settles a dispute among the Haedui.

XXXII. Caesar Avaricī complūrīs diēs commorātus summamque ibi cōpiam frūmentī et reliquī commeātūs nactus exerci-

4. **animo defecerat**: *had lost courage.* 13. **consternati**: *thoroughly frightened.*—**insueti laboris**: *unused to labor.* 17. **adliciebat**: *tempted.* 18. **subdola**: *subtle.* 19. **capere**: *win over.*

tum ex labōre atque inopiā reficit. Iam prope hieme cōnfectā, cum ipsō annī tempore ad gerendum bellum vocārētur et ad hostem proficīscī cōnstituisset, sīve eum ex palūdibus silvīsque ēlicere sīve obsidiōne premere posset, lēgātī ad eum prīncipēs Haeduōrum veniunt ōrātum ut maximē necessāriō tempore cīvitātī subveniat: 'Summō esse in perīculō rem, quod cum singulī magistrātūs antīquitus creārī atque rēgiam potestātem annum obtinēre cōnsuēssent, duo magistrātum gerant et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creātum dīcat. Hōrum esse alterum Convictolitavem, flōrentem et inlūstrem adulēscentem; alterum Cotum, antīquissimā familiā nātum atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et magnae cognātiōnis, cūius frāter Valetiācus proximō annō eundem magistrātum gesserit. Cīvitātem esse omnem in armīs, dīvīsum senātum, dīvīsum populum, suās cūiusque eōrum clientēlās. Quod sī diūtius alātur contrōversia, fore utī pars cum parte cīvitātis cōnflīgat. Id nē accidat positum in ēius dīligentiā atque auctōritāte.'

XXXIII. Caesar etsī ā bellō atque hoste discēdere dētrīmentōsum esse exīstimābat, tamen nōn ignōrāns quanta ex dissēnsiōnibus incommoda orīrī cōnsuēssent, nē tanta et tam coniūncta populō Rōmānō cīvitās, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rēbus ōrnāsset, ad vim atque arma dēscenderet, atque ea pars quae minus sibi cōnfīderet auxilia ā Vercingetorīge arcesseret, huic reī praevertendum exīstimāvit; et quod lēgibus Haeduōrum iīs quī summum magistrātum obtinērent excēdere ex fīnibus nōn licēret, nē quid dē iūre aut dē lēgibus eōrum dēminuisse vidērētur, ipse in Haeduōs proficīscī statuit, senātumque omnem et quōs inter contrōversia esset ad sē Decetiam ēvocāvit. Cum prope omnis cīvitās eō convēnisset, docērēturque paucīs clam convocātīs aliō locō, aliō tempore atque opportuerit frātrem ā frātre renūntiātum, cum lēgēs duo ex ūnā

4. **elicere**: *draw out.* 12. **cognationis**: *connections.* 18. **detrimentosum**: cf. *detrimentum.* 22. **ornasset**: *had honored.* 24. **huic rei praevertendum**: *this matter must be first attended to.* 28. **quos inter**: i.e. *eos inter quos.* 29. **doceretur**: sc. *Caesar.* 31. **renunti-**

familiā vīvō utrōque nōn sōlum magistrātūs creārī vetārent sed etiam in senātū esse prohibērent, Cotum imperium dēpōnere coēgit, Convictolitavem, quī per sacerdōtēs mōre cīvitātis intermissīs magistrātibus esset creātus, potestātem obtinēre iussit.

Caesar sends Labienus northward with a part of the army; he himself marches against Gergovia.

XXXIV. Hōc dēcrētō interpositō cohortātus Haeduōs ut contrōversiārum ac dissēnsiōnis oblīvīscerentur atque omnibus omissīs rēbus huic bellō servīrent, eaque quae meruissent praemia ab sē dēvictā Galliā exspectārent, equitātumque omnem et peditum mīlia decem sibi celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiīs reī frūmentāriae causā dispōneret, exercitum in duās partīs dīvīsit: quattuor legiōnēs in Senonēs Parīsiōsque Labiēnō dūcendās dedit, sex ipse in Arvernōs ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flūmen Elaver dūxit; equitātūs partem illī attribuit, partem sibi relīquit. Quā rē cognitā Vercingetorīx omnibus interruptīs ēius flūminis pontibus ab alterā flūminis parte iter facere coepit.

XXXV. Cum uterque utrimque exīsset exercitus, in cōnspectū ferēque ē regiōne Caesaris castra pōnēbat dispositīs explōrātōribus, nēcubi effectō ponte Rōmānī cōpiās trādūcerent. Erat in magnīs Caesarī difficultātibus rēs, nē māiōrem aestātis partem flūmine impedīrētur, quod nōn ferē ante autumnum Elaver vadō trānsīrī solet. Itaque, nē id accideret, silvestrī locō castrīs positīs ē regiōne ūnīus eōrum pontium quōs Vercingetorīx resciṇdendōs cūrāverat, posterō diē cum duābus legiōnibus in occultō restitit; reliquās cōpiās cum omnibus impedīmentīs, ut cōnsuērat, mīsit carptīs quibusdam cohortibus, ut numerus legiōnum cōnstāre vidērētur. Hīs quam longissimē possent prōgredī iussīs, cum iam ex diēī tempore coniectūram caperet

atum: sc. *esse, had been declared elected.* Valetiacus held the election at which Cotus was declared elected. As this election was illegal, there was a vacancy in the magistracy, which was filled by the priests. 3. **intermissis magistratibus**: *i.e.* since there was an interregnum. 18. **necubi**: *that nowhere.* 25. **carptis**: *divided.* 26. **constare**: *to be complete.*

in castra perventum, īsdem sublicīs, quārum pars īnferior integra remanēbat, pontem reficere coepit. Celeriter effectō opere legiōnibusque trāductīs et locō castrīs idōneō dēlēctō reliquās cōpiās revocāvit. Vercingetorīx rē cognitā, nē contrā suam voluntātem dīmicāre cōgerētur, magnīs itineribus antecessit.

XXXVI. Caesar ex eō locō quīntīs castrīs Gergoviam pervēnit, equestrīque eō diē proeliō levī factō, perspectō urbis sitū, quae posita in altissimō monte omnīs aditūs difficilīs habēbat, dē oppugnātiōne dēspērāvit; dē obsessiōne nōn prius agendum cōnstituit quam rem frūmentāriam expedīsset. At Vercingetorīx castrīs prope oppidum in monte positīs, mediocribus circum sē intervāllīs sēparātim singulārum cīvitātum cōpiās conlocāverat, atque omnibus ēius iugī collibus occupātīs quā dispicī poterat horribilem speciem praebēbat; prīncipēsque eārum cīvitātum, quōs sibi ad cōnsilium capiendum dēlēgerat, prīmā lūce cottīdiē ad sē convenīre iubēbat, seu quid commūnicandum seu quid administrandum vidērētur, neque ūllum ferē diem intermittēbat quīn equestrī proeliō interiectīs sagittāriīs quid in quōque esset animī ac virtūtis suōrum perīclitārētur. Erat ē regiōne oppidī collis sub ipsīs rādīcibus montis, ēgregiē mūnītus atque ex omnī parte circumcīsus; quem sī tenērent nostrī, et aquae magnā parte et pābulātiōne līberā prohibitūrī hostīs vidēbantur. Sed is locus praesidiō ab hīs nōn īnfīrmō tenēbātur. Tamen silentiō noctis Caesar ex castrīs ēgressus, priusquam subsidiō ex oppidō venīrī posset, dēiectō praesidiō potītus locō duās ibi legiōnēs conlocāvit fossamque duplicem duodēnum pedum ā māiōribus castrīs ad minōra perdūxit, ut tūtō ab repentīnō hostium incursū etiam singulī commeāre possent.

Some of the Haedui plan a revolt.

XXXVII. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis Haeduus, cui magistrātum adiūdicātum ā Caesare dēmōn-

6. **quintis castris**: i.e. *in five days*, since camp was pitched at the end of every day's march. 21. **circumcisus**: *steep*. 26. **duodenum pedum**: *of twelve feet each*. 28. **incursu**: *attack*.

strāvimus, sollicitātus ab Arvernīs pecūniā cum quibusdam adulēscentibus conloquitur, quōrum erat prīnceps Litaviccus atque ēius frātrēs, amplissimā familiā nātī adulēscentēs. Cum hīs praemium commūnicat, hortāturque ut sē līberōs et imperiō nātōs meminerint: 'Ūnam esse Haeduōrum cīvitātem quae certissimam Galliae victōriam distineat; ēius auctōritāte reliquās continērī; quā trāductā locum cōnsistendī Rōmānīs in Galliā nōn fore. Esse nōn nūllō sē Caesaris beneficiō adfectum, sīc tamen ut iūstissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plūs commūnī lībertātī tribuere. Cūr enim potius Haeduī dē suō iūre et dē lēgibus ad Caesarem disceptātōrem quam Rōmānī ad Haeduōs veniant?' Celeriter adulēscentibus et ōrātiōne magistrātūs et praemiō dēductīs, cum sē vel prīncipēs ēius cōnsilī fore profitērentur, ratiō perficiendī quaerēbātur, quod cīvitātem temere ad suscipiendum bellum addūcī posse nōn cōnfīdēbant. Placuit ut Litaviccus decem illīs mīlibus quae Caesarī ad bellum mitterentur praeficerētur atque ea dūcenda cūrāret, frātrēsque ēius ad Caesarem praecurrerent. Reliqua quā ratiōne agī placeat cōnstituunt.

XXXVIII. Litaviccus acceptō exercitū, cum mīlia passuum circiter XXX ā Gergoviā abesset, convocātīs subitō mīlitibus lacrimāns, "Quō proficīscimur," inquit, "mīlitēs? Omnis noster equitātus, omnis nōbilitās interiit; prīncipēs cīvitātis, Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus, īnsimulātī prōditiōnis ab Rōmānīs indictā causā interfectī sunt. Haec ab hīs cognōscite, quī ex ipsā caede effūgērunt; nam ego frātribus atque omnibus meīs propinquīs interfectīs dolōre prohibeor quae gesta sunt prōnūntiāre." Prōdūcuntur ī quōs ille ēdocuerat quae dīcī vellet, atque eadem quae Litaviccus prōnūntiāverat multitūdinī expōnunt: 'Omnīs equitēs Haeduōrum interfectōs, quod conlocūtī cum Arvernīs dīcerentur; ipsōs sē inter multitūdinem mīlitum occultāsse atque ex mediā caede effūgisse.' Con-

6. **distineat**: *hinders.* 9. **obtinuerit**: *maintained.* 11. **disceptatorem**: *umpire.* 25. **indicta causa**: *without a hearing.*

clāmant Haeduī et Litaviccum obsecrant ut sibi cōnsulat. "Quasi vērō," inquit ille, "cōnsilī sit rēs ac nōn necesse sit nōbīs Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernīs nōsmet coniungere. An dubitāmus quīn nefāriō facinore admissō Rōmānī iam ad nōs interficiendōs concurrant? Proinde, sī quid in nōbīs animī est, persequāmur eōrum mortem quī indīgnissimē interiērunt, atque hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus." Ostendit cīvīs Rōmānōs quī ēius praesidī fīdūciā ūnā erant. Continuō magnum numerum frūmentī commeātūsque dīripit, ipsōs crūdēliter excruciātōs interficit. Nūntiōs tōtā cīvitāte Haeduōrum dīmittit, eōdem mendāciō dē caede equitum et prīncipum permovet; hortātur ut similī ratiōne atque ipse fēcerit suās iniūriās persequantur.

Caesar prevents the contingent of the Haedui from going over to the Arverni.

XXXIX. Eporēdorīx Haeduus, summō locō nātus adulēscēns et summae domī potentiae, et ūnā Viridomārus, parī aetāte et grātiā, sed genere disparī, quem Caesar ab Dīviciācō sibi trāditum ex humilī locō ad summam dignitātem perdūxerat, in equitum numerō convēnerant nōminātim ab eō ēvocātī. Hīs erat inter sē dē prīncipātū contentiō, et in illā magistrātuum contrōversiā alter prō Convictolitave, alter prō Cotō summīs opibus pugnāverant. Ex hīs Eporēdorīx cognitō Litaviccī cōnsiliō mediā ferē nocte rem ad Caesarem dēfert; ōrat nē patiātur cīvitātem prāvīs adulēscentium cōnsiliīs ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēficere, quod futūrum prōvideat, sī sē tot hominum mīlia cum hostibus coniūnxerint, quōrum salūtem neque propinquī neglegere neque cīvitās levī mōmentō aestimāre possit.

XL. Magnā adfectus sollicitūdine hōc nūntiō Caesar, quod semper Haeduōrum cīvitātī praecipuē indulserat, nūllā inter-

2. **Quasi vero**: *just as if, indeed.* 3. **nosmet**: *ourselves, nos* + *-met.* 4. **nefario**: *heinous.* 5. **Proinde**: *so.* 8. **fiducia**: *through confidence.* 11. **mendacio**: *falsehood.* 23. **pravis**: *wicked.* 25. **propinqui neglegere**: sc. *possint.*

positā dubitātiōne legiōnēs expedītās quattuor equitātumque omnem ex castrīs ēdūcit; nec fuit spatium tālī tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod rēs posita in celeritāte vidēbātur. C. Fabium lēgātum cum legiōnibus duābus castrīs praesidiō relinquit. Frātrēs Litaviccī cum comprehendī iussisset, paulō ante reperit ad hostis profūgisse. Adhortātus mīlitēs nē necessāriō tempore itineris labōre permoveantur, cupidissimīs omnibus prōgressus mīlia passuum xxv agmen Haeduōrum cōnspicātur; immissō equitātū iter eōrum morātur atque impedit, interdīcitque omnibus nē quemquam interficiant. Eporēdorīgem et Viridomārum, quōs illī interfectōs exīstimābant, inter equitēs versārī suōsque appellāre iubet. Hīs cognitīs et Litaviccī fraude perspectā Haeduī manūs tendere et dēditiōnem sīgnificāre et prōiectīs armīs mortem dēprecārī incipiunt. Litaviccus cum suīs clientibus, quibus mōre Gallōrum nefās est etiam in extrēmā fortūnā dēserere patrōnōs, Gergoviam profugit.

XLI. Caesar nūntiīs ad cīvitātem Haeduōrum missīs, quī suō beneficiō cōnservātōs docērent quōs iūre bellī interficere potuisset, tribusque hōrīs exercituī ad quiētem datīs castra ad Gergoviam movet. Mediō ferē itinere equitēs ā Fabiō missī quantō rēs in perīculō fuerit expōnunt. Summīs cōpiīs castra oppugnāta dēmōnstrant, cum crēbrō integrī dēfessīs succēderent nostrōsque adsiduō labōre dēfatīgārent, quibus propter magnitūdinem castrōrum perpetuō esset īsdem in vāllō permanendum; multitūdine sagittārum atque omnī genere tēlōrum multōs vulnerātōs; ad haec sustinenda magnō ūsuī fuisse tormenta; Fabium discessū eōrum duābus relictīs portīs obstruere cēterās pluteōsque vāllō addere et sē in posterum diem similemque cāsum apparāre. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar summō studiō mīlitum ante ortum sōlis in castra pervēnit.

2. **ad contrahenda castra**: that it might be defended more easily by the soldiers who remained. 16. **patronos**: *protectors*. 22. **crebro**: *repeatedly*. 23. **quibus isdem**: dative with *permanendum*. 28. **pluteos**: *parapets*. 30. **in castra pervenit**: the army had marched about fifty miles in less than thirty hours.

Further acts of unfaithfulness among the Haedui.

XLII. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Haeduī prīmīs nūntiīs ab Litaviccō acceptīs nūllum sibi ad cognōscendum spatium relinquunt. Impellit aliōs avāritia, aliōs īrācundia et temeritās, quae maximē illī hominum generī est innāta, ut levem audītiōnem habeant prō rē compertā. Bona cīvium Rōmānō- 5
rum dīripiunt, caedīs faciunt, in servitūtem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem prōclīnātam Convictolitavis plēbemque ad furōrem impellit, ut facinore admissō ad sānitātem revertī pudeat. M. Aristium, tribūnum mīlitum, iter ad legiōnēs facientem fidē datā ex oppidō Cavillōnō ēdūcunt; idem facere cōgunt eōs quī negōti- 10
andī causā ibi cōnstiterant. Hōs continuō in itinere adortī omnibus impedīmentīs exuunt; repugnantīs diem noctemque obsident; multīs utrimque interfectīs māiōrem multitūdinem ad arma concitant.

XLIII. Interim nūntiō adlātō omnīs eōrum mīlitēs in po- 15
testāte Caesaris tenērī concurrunt ad Aristium, nihil pūblicō factum cōnsiliō dēmōnstrant; quaestiōnem dē bonīs dīreptīs dēcernunt, Litaviccī frātrumque bona pūblicant, lēgātōs ad Caesarem pūrgandī suī grātiā mittunt. Haec faciunt recuperandōrum suōrum causā; sed contāminātī facinore et captī compendiō 20
ex dīreptīs bonīs, quod ea rēs ad multōs pertinēbat, et timōre poenae exterritī cōnsilia clam dē bellō inīre incipiunt cīvitātēsque reliquās lēgātiōnibus sollicitant. Quae tametsī Caesar intellegēbat, tamen quam mītissimē potest lēgātōs appellat: 'Nihil sē propter īnscientiam levitātemque vulgī gravius dē cīvi- 25
tāte iūdicāre neque dē suā in Haeduōs benevolentiā dēminuere.' Ipse māiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns, nē ab omnibus cīvitātibus circumsisterētur, cōnsilia inībat, quem ad modum ā Ger-

3. **iracundia**: *quickness of temper.* 7. **proclinatam**: *already started.* 8. **pudeat**: impersonal verb, *it may shame* (*them*), i.e. *they may be ashamed.* 11. **continuo**: *at once.* 17. **quaestionem**: *investigation.* 18. **publicant**: *confiscate.* 19. **gratia**: equivalent to *causā.* 20. **contaminati**: *corrupted.* — **compendio**: *gain.* 24. **mitissime**: *most gently.*

goviā discēderet ac rūrsus omnem exercitum contraheret, nē profectiō nāta ab timōre dēfectiōnis similisque fugae vidērētur.

Caesar perceives a chance of gaining some advantage at Gergovia.

XLIV. Haec cōgitantī accidere vīsa est facultās bene gerendae reī. Nam cum in minōra castra operis perspiciendī causā vēnisset, animadvertit collem, quī ab hostibus tenēbātur, nūdātum hominibus, quī superiōribus diēbus vix prae multitūdine cernī poterat. Admīrātus quaerit ex perfugīs causam, quōrum magnus ad eum cottīdiē numerus cōnfluēbat. Cōnstābat inter omnīs, quod iam ipse Caesar per explōrātōrēs cognōverat, dorsum esse ēius iugī prope aequum, sed silvestre et angustum, quā esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidī; vehementer huic illōs locō timēre nec iam aliter sentīre, ūnō colle ab Rōmānīs occupātō, sī alterum āmīsissent, quīn paene circumvāllātī atque omnī exitū et pābulātiōne interclūsī vidērentur; ad hunc mūnīendum locum omnīs ā Vercingetorīge ēvocātōs.

XLV. Hāc rē cognitā Caesar mittit complūrīs equitum turmās eō dē mediā nocte; imperat ut paulō tumultuōsius omnibus locīs pervagentur. Prīmā lūce magnum numerum impedīmentōrum ex castrīs mūlōrumque prōdūcī dēque hīs strāmenta dētrahī, mūliōnēsque cum cassidibus equitum speciē ac simulātiōne collibus circumvehī iubet. Hīs paucōs addit equitēs, quī lātius ostentātiōnis causā vagentur. Longō circuitū eāsdem omnīs iubet petere regiōnēs. Haec procul ex oppidō vidēbantur, ut erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus in castra, neque tantō spatiō certī quid esset explōrārī poterat. Legiōnem decimam eōdem lūce mittit et paulum prōgressam īnferiōre cōnstituit locō silvīsque occultat. Augētur Gallīs suspīciō, atque omnēs illō ad mūnītiōnem cōpiae trādūcuntur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar cōnspicātus tēctīs īnsignibus suōrum occultātīsque signīs mīli-

8. **confluebat**: *flocked.* 9. **dorsum**: *ridge.* 18. **impedimentorum**: *beasts of burden.* 19. **mulorum**: *mules.* — **stramenta**: *pack-saddles.* 20. **muliones**: *mule-drivers.* — **cassidibus**: *helmets.* 21. **circumvehi**: *to ride around.*

tāribus rārōs mīlitēs, nē ex oppidō animadverterentur, ex māiōribus castrīs in minōra trādūcit, lēgātīsque, quōs singulīs legiōnibus praefēcerat, quid fierī velit ostendit; in prīmīs monet ut contineant mīlitēs, nē studiō pugnandī aut spē praedae longius prōgrediantur; quid inīquitās locī habeat incommodī prōpōnit: 'Hōc ūnā celeritāte posse vītārī; occāsiōnis esse rem, nōn proelī.' Hīs rēbus expositīs sīgnum dat et ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū eōdem tempore Haeduōs mittit.

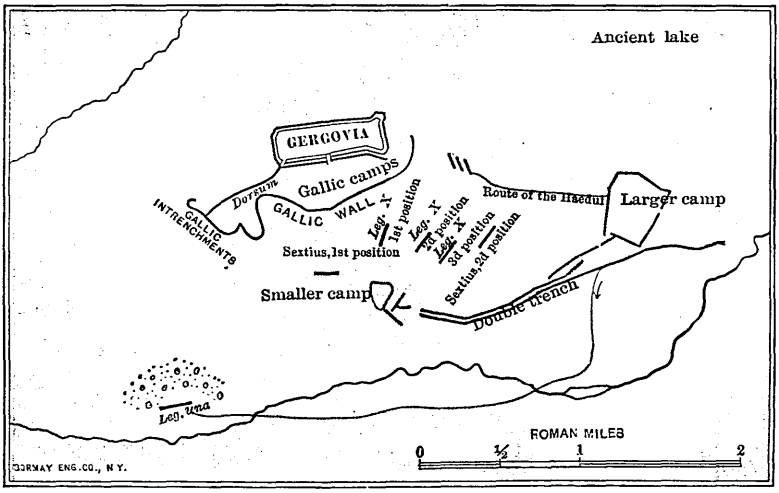
XLVI. Mūrus oppidī ā plānitiē atque initiō ascēnsūs rēctā regiōne, sī nūllus ānfrāctus intercēderet, MCC passūs aberat; quicquid hūc circuitūs ad molliendum clīvum accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. Ā mediō ferē colle in longitūdinem, ut nātūra montis ferēbat, ex grandibus saxīs sex pedum mūrum, quī nostrōrum impetum tardāret, praedūxerant Gallī, atque īnferiōre omnī spatiō vacuō relictō superiōrem partem collis ūsque ad mūrum oppidī dēnsissimīs castrīs complēverant. Mīlitēs datō sīgnō celeriter ad mūnītiōnem perveniunt eamque trānsgressī trīnīs castrīs potiuntur; ac tanta fuit in castrīs capiendīs celeritās ut Teutomatus, rēx Nitiobrogum, subitō in tabernāculō oppressus, ut merīdiē conquiēverat, superiōre parte corporis nūdā, vulnerātō equō vix sē ex manibus praedantium mīlitum ēriperet.

After a slight success he sounds the retreat, but the soldiers continue to push forward.

XLVII. Cōnsecūtus id quod animō prōposuerat Caesar receptuī canī iussit, legiōnisque decimae, quācum erat, continuō sīgna cōnstitērunt. At reliquārum legiōnum mīlitēs nōn audītō sonō tubae, quod satis magna vallēs intercēdēbat, tamen ā tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātīsque, ut erat ā Caesare praeceptum, retinēbantur. Sed ēlātī spē celeris victōriae et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundīs proeliīs nihil adeō arduum sibi

9. **recta regione**: *in a straight line.* 10. **anfractus**: *turn.* 11. **ad molliendum clivum**: *to ease the ascent.* 18. **trinis**: distributive, used instead of *tria* because *castra* here is plural in meaning. 23. **cani**: *to be sounded,* i.e. *the signal to be given.*

exīstimābant quod nōn virtūte cōnsequī possent, neque fīnem prius sequendī fēcērunt quam mūrō oppidī portīsque appropinquārunt. Tum vērō ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clāmōre, quī longius aberant repentīnō tumultū perterritī, cum hostem intrā portās esse exīstimārent, sē ex oppidō ēiēcērunt. Mātrēs familiae dē mūrō vestem argentumque iactābant, et pectore nūdō prōminentēs passīs manibus obtestābantur Rōmānōs ut



THE BATTLE AT GERGOVIA

sibi parcerent, neu, sīcut Avaricī fēcissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque īnfantibus abstinērent; nōn nūllae dē mūrō per manūs dēmissae sēsē mīlitibus trādēbant. L. Fabius, centuriō legiōnis octāvae, quem inter suōs eō diē dīxisse cōnstābat excitārī sē Avaricēnsibus praemiīs neque commissūrum ut prius quisquam mūrum ascenderet, trīs suōs nactus manipulārīs atque ab iīs sublevātus mūrum ascendit; hōs ipse rūrsus singulōs exceptāns in mūrum extulit.

6. **vestem**: *clothing.* — **argentum**: *silver.* — **pectore**: *breast.* 7. **prominentes**: *leaning forward.* 13. **manipularis**: *comrades* (in a maniple). 15. **exceptans**: *helping up.*

XLVIII. Interim iī quī ad alteram partem oppidī, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, mūnītiōnis causā convēnerant, prīmō exaudītō clāmōre, inde etiam crēbrīs nūntiīs incitātī oppidum ā Rōmānīs tenērī, praemissīs equitibus magnō cursū eō contendērunt. Eōrum ut quisque prīmus vēnerat, sub mūrō cōnsistēbat suōrumque pugnantium numerum augēbat. Quōrum cum magna multitūdō convēnisset, mātrēs familiae, quae paulō ante Rōmānīs dē mūrō manūs tendēbant, suōs obtestārī et more Gallicō passum capillum ostentāre līberōsque in cōnspectum prōferre coepērunt. Erat Rōmānīs nec locō nec numerō aequa contentiō; simul et cursū et spatiō pugnae dēfatīgātī nōn facile recentīs atque integrōs sustinēbant.

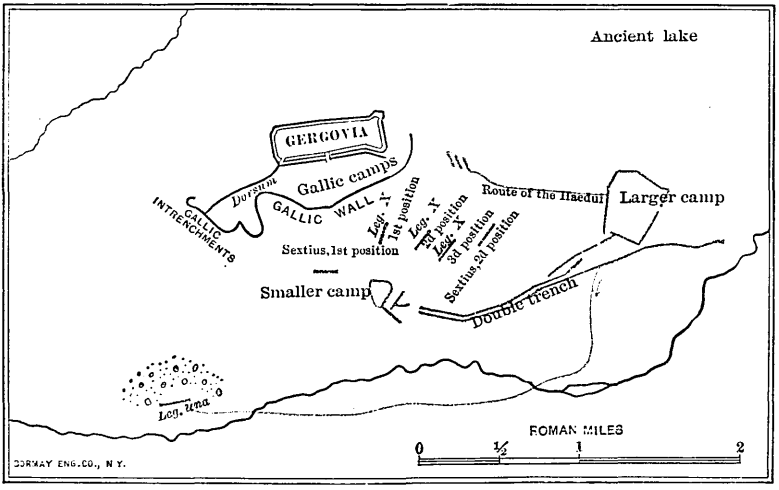
The Romans are driven back with considerable loss.

XLIX. Caesar cum inīquō locō pugnārī hostiumque cōpiās augērī vidēret, praemetuēns suīs ad T. Sextium lēgātum, quem minōribus castrīs praesidiō relīquerat, mīsit ut cohortīs ex castrīs celeriter ēdūceret et sub īnfimō colle ab dextrō latere hostium cōnstitueret, ut, sī nostrōs locō dēpulsōs vīdisset, quōminus līberē hostēs īnsequerentur terrēret. Ipse paulum ex eō locō cum legiōne prōgressus ubi cōnstiterat ēventum pugnae exspectābat.

L. Cum ācerrimē comminus pugnārētur, hostēs locō et numerō, nostrī virtūte cōnfīderent, subitō sunt Haeduī vīsī ab latere nostrīs apertō, quōs Caesar ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū manūs distinendae causā mīserat. Hī similitūdine armōrum vehementer nostrōs perterruērunt, ac tametsī dextrīs umerīs exsertīs animadvertēbantur, quod īnsīgne pactum esse cōnsuērat, tamen id ipsum suī fallendī causā mīlitēs ab hostibus factum exīstimābant. Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quīque ūnā mūrum ascenderant circumventī atque interfectī dē mūrō praecipitābantur. M. Petrōnius, ēiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās

25. **dextris umeris exsertis**: *to have their right shoulders bare.*
26. **pactum**: *agreed upon.*

exīstimābant quod nōn virtūte cōnsequī possent, neque fīnem prius sequendī fēcērunt quam mūrō oppidī portīsque appropinquārunt. Tum vērō ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clāmōre, quī longius aberant repentīnō tumultū perterritī, cum hostem intrā portās esse exīstimārent, sē ex oppidō ēiēcērunt. Mātrēs familiae dē mūrō vestem argentumque iactābant, et pectore nūdō prōminentēs passīs manibus obtestābantur Rōmānōs ut



THE BATTLE AT GERGOVIA

sibi parcerent, neu, sīcut Avaricī fēcissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque īnfantibus abstinērent; nōn nūllae dē mūrō per manūs dēmissae sēsē mīlitibus trādēbant. L. Fabius, centuriō legiōnis octāvae, quem inter suōs eō diē dīxisse cōnstābat excitārī sē Avaricēnsibus praemiīs neque commissūrum ut prius quisquam mūrum ascenderet, trīs suōs nactus manipulārīs atque ab iīs sublevātus mūrum ascendit; hōs ipse rūrsus singulōs exceptāns in mūrum extulit.

6. **vestem**: *clothing.* — **argentum**: *silver.* — **pectore**: *breast.* 7. **prominentes**: *leaning forward.* 13. **manipularis**: *comrades* (in a maniple). 15. **exceptans**: *helping up.*

XLVIII. Interim iī quī ad alteram partem oppidī, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, mūnītiōnis causā convēnerant, prīmō exaudītō clāmōre, inde etiam crēbrīs nūntiīs incitātī oppidum ā Rōmānīs tenērī, praemissīs equitibus magnō cursū eō contendērunt. Eōrum ut quisque prīmus vēnerat, sub mūrō cōnsistēbat suōrumque pugnantium numerum augēbat. Quōrum cum magna multitūdō convēnisset, mātrēs familiae, quae paulō ante Rōmānīs dē mūrō manūs tendēbant, suōs obtestārī et mōre Gallicō passum capillum ostentāre līberōsque in cōnspectum prōferre coepērunt. Erat Rōmānīs nec locō nec numerō aequa contentiō; simul et cursū et spatiō pugnae dēfatīgātī nōn facile recentīs atque integrōs sustinēbant.

The Romans are driven back with considerable loss.

XLIX. Caesar cum inīquō locō pugnārī hostiumque cōpiās augērī vidēret, praemetuēns suīs ad T. Sextium lēgātum, quem minōribus castrīs praesidiō relīquerat, mīsit ut cohortīs ex castrīs celeriter ēdūceret et sub īnfimō colle ab dextrō latere hostium cōnstitueret, ut, sī nostrōs locō dēpulsōs vīdisset, quōminus līberē hostēs īnsequerentur terrēret. Ipse paulum ex eō locō cum legiōne prōgressus ubi cōnstiterat ēventum pugnae exspectābat.

L. Cum ācerrimē comminus pugnārētur, hostēs locō et numerō, nostrī virtūte cōnfīderent, subitō sunt Haeduī vīsī ab latere nostrīs apertō, quōs Caesar ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū manūs distinendae causā mīserat. Hī similitūdine armōrum vehementer nostrōs perterruērunt, ac tametsī dextrīs umerīs exsertīs animadvertēbantur, quod īnsīgne pactum esse cōnsuērat, tamen id ipsum suī fallendī causā mīlitēs ab hostibus factum exīstimābant. Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quīque ūnā mūrum ascenderant circumventī atque interfectī dē mūrō praecipitābantur. M. Petrōnius, ēiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās

25. **dextris umeris exsertis**: *to have their right shoulders bare.*
26. **pactum**: *agreed upon.*

excīdere cōnātus esset, ā multitūdine oppressus ac sibi dēspērāns multīs iam vulneribus acceptīs, manipulāribus suīs, quī illum secūtī erant, "Quoniam," inquit, "mē ūnā vōbīscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vītae prōspiciam, quōs cupiditāte glōriae adductus in perīculum dēdūxī. Vōs datā facultāte vōbīs cōnsulite." Simul in mediōs hostīs inrūpit duōbusque interfectīs reliquōs ā portā paulum submōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliārī suīs, "Frūstrā," inquit, "meae vītae subvenīre cōnāminī, quem iam sanguis vīrēsque dēficiunt. Proinde abīte, dum est facultās, vōsque ad legiōnem recipite." Ita pugnāns post paulum concidit ac suīs salūtī fuit.

LI. Nostrī cum undique premerentur, XLVI centuriōnibus āmissīs dēiectī sunt locō. Sed intolerantius Gallōs īnsequentīs legiō decima tardāvit, quae prō subsidiō paulō aequiōre locō cōnstiterat. Hanc rūrsus tertiae decimae legiōnis cohortēs excēpērunt, quae ex castrīs minōribus ēductae cum T. Sextiō lēgātō cēperant locum superiōrem. Legiōnēs ubi prīmum plānitiem attigērunt, īnfestīs contrā hostem sīgnīs cōnstitērunt. Vercingetorīx ab rādīcibus collis suōs intrā mūnītiōnēs redūxit. Eō diē mīlitēs sunt paulō minus DCC dēsīderātī.

Caesar raises the siege and sets out to join Labienus.

LII. Posterō diē Caesar cōntiōne advocātā temeritātem cupiditātemque mīlitum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsī iūdicāvissent quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum vidērētur, neque sīgnō recipiendī datō cōnstitissent, neque ā tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātīsque retinērī potuissent. Exposuit quid inīquitās locī posset, quod ipse ad Avaricum sēnsisset, cum sine duce et sine equitātū dēprehēnsīs hostibus explōrātam victōriam dīmīsisset, nē parvum modo dētrīmentum in contentiōne propter inīquitātem locī accideret. 'Quantopere eōrum animī magnitūdinem admīrārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum mūnītiōnēs, nōn altitūdō montis, nōn

13. **intolerantius**: *too impatiently.* 18. **infestis**: *hostile;* **infestis signis**, *in battle array.*

mūrus oppidī tardāre potuisset, tantopere licentiam adrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plūs sē quam imperātōrem dē victōriā atque exitū rērum sentīre exīstimārent; nec minus sē ā mīlite modestiam et continentiam quam virtūtem atque animī magnitūdinem dēsīderāre.'

LIII. Hāc habitā cōntiōne et ad extrēmum cōnfīrmātīs mīlitibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permovērentur, neu quod inīquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī hostium tribuerent, eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae ante sēnserat legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūxit aciemque idōneō locō cōnstituit. Cum Vercingetorīx nihilō magis in aequum locum dēscenderet, levī factō equestrī proeliō, atque eō secundō, in castra exercitum redūxit. Cum hōc idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem minuendam mīlitumque animōs cōnfīrmandōs factum exīstimāns in Haeduōs mōvit castra. Nē tum quidem īnsecūtīs hostibus tertiō diē ad flūmen Elaver vēnit; pontem refēcit exercitumque trādūxit.

The Haedui burn Noviodunum and destroy the Roman stores there.

LIV. Ibi ā Viridomārō atque Eporēdorīge Haeduīs appellātus discit cum omnī equitātū Litaviccum ad sollicitandōs Haeduōs profectum: 'Opus esse ipsōs antecēdere ad cōnfīrmandam cīvitātem.' Etsī multīs iam rēbus perfidiam Haeduōrum perspectam habēbat atque hōrum discessū mātūrārī dēfectiōnem cīvitātis exīstimābat, tamen eōs retinendōs nōn cēnsuit, nē aut īnferre iniūriam vidērētur aut daret timōris aliquam suspīciōnem. Discēdentibus iīs breviter sua in Haeduōs merita exposuit, — quōs et quam humilīs accēpisset, compulsōs in oppida, multātōs agrīs, omnibus ēreptīs sociīs, impositō stīpendiō, obsidibus summā cum contumēliā extortīs, et quam in fortūnam quamque in amplitūdinem dūxisset, ut nōn sōlum in prīstinum statum redīssent, sed omnium temporum dīgnitātem et grātiam antecessisse vidērentur. Hīs datīs mandātīs eōs ab sē dīmīsit.

27. **multatos**: *deprived* (*mulcted*).

LV. Noviodūnum erat oppidum Haeduōrum ad rīpās Ligeris opportūnō locō positum. Hūc Caesar omnīs obsidēs Galliae, frūmentum, pecūniam pūblicam, suōrum atque exercitūs impedīmentōrum magnam partem contulerat; hūc magnum numerum equōrum hūius bellī causā in Italiā atque Hispāniā coēmptum mīserat. Eō cum Eporēdorīx Viridomārusque vēnissent et dē statū cīvitātis cognōvissent,—Litaviccum Bibracte ab Haeduīs receptum, quod est oppidum apud eōs maximae auctōritātis, Convictolitavem magistrātum magnamque partem senātūs ad eum convēnisse, lēgātōs ad Vercingetorīgem dē pāce et amīcitiā conciliandā pūblicē missōs,—nōn praetermittendum tantum commodum exīstimāvērunt. Itaque interfectīs Noviodūnī cūstōdibus quīque eō negōtiandī causā convēnerant pecūniam atque equōs inter sē partītī sunt, obsidēs cīvitātum Bibracte ad magistrātum dēdūcendōs cūrāvērunt, oppidum, quod ā sē tenērī nōn posse iūdicābant, nē cui esset ūsuī Rōmānīs, incendērunt, frūmentī quod subitō potuērunt nāvibus āvexērunt, reliquum flūmine atque incendiō corrūpērunt; ipsī ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus cōpiās cōgere, praesidia cūstōdiāsque ad rīpās Ligeris dispōnere, equitātumque omnibus locīs iniciendī timōris causā ostentāre coepērunt, sī ab rē frūmentāriā Rōmānōs exclūdere aut adductōs inopiā in prōvinciam expellere possent. Quam ad spem multum eōs adiuvābat quod Liger ex nivibus crēverat, ut omnīnō vadō nōn posse trānsīrī vidērētur.

Caesar crosses the Liger and continues his march northward.

LVI. Quibus rēbus cognitīs Caesar mātūrandum sibi cēnsuit, sī esset in perficiendīs pontibus periclitandum, ut priusquam essent māiōrēs eō coāctae cōpiae dīmicāret. Nam nē commūtātō cōnsiliō iter in prōvinciam converteret, ut nōn nēmō tum quidem necessāriō faciendum exīstimābat, cum īnfāmia atque indignitās reī et oppositus mōns Cebenna viārumque difficultās

24. **nivibus**: *snows.* 27. **si . . . periclitandum**: *in case he had to risk a battle while building bridges.*

impediēbat, tum maximē quod abiūnctō Labiēnō atque iīs legiōnibus quās ūnā mīserat vehementer timēbat. Itaque admodum magnīs diurnīs nocturnīsque itineribus cōnfectīs contrā omnium opīniōnem ad Ligerim vēnit, vadōque per equitēs inventō prō reī necessitāte opportūnō, ut bracchia modo atque umerī ad sustinenda arma līberī ab aquā esse possent, dispositō equitātū, quī vim flūminis refringeret, atque hostibus prīmō aspectū perturbātīs incolumem exercitum trādūxit; frūmentumque in agrīs et pecoris cōpiam nactus replētō hīs rēbus exercitū iter in Senonēs facere īnstituit.

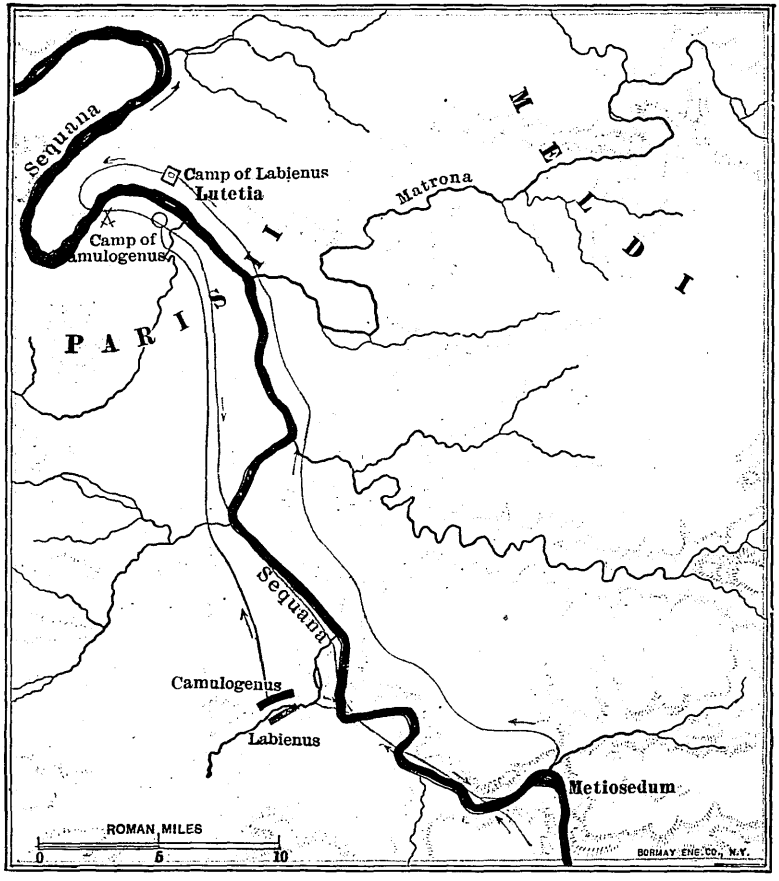
Meanwhile Labienus, after some opposition, reaches Lutetia.

LVII. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labiēnus eō supplēmentō quod nūper ex Italiā vēnerat relictō Agēdincī, ut esset impedīmentīs praesidiō, cum quattuor legiōnibus Lutetiam proficīscitur. Id est oppidum Parīsiōrum positum in īnsulā flūminis Sēquanae. Cūius adventū ab hostibus cognitō magnae ex fīnitimīs cīvitātibus cōpiae convēnērunt. Summa imperī trāditur Camulogenō Aulercō, quī prope cōnfectus aetāte tamen propter singulārem scientiam reī mīlitāris ad eum est honōrem ēvocātus. Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse palūdem quae īnflueret in Sēquanam atque illum omnem locum magnopere impedīret, hīc cōnsēdit nostrōsque trānsitū prohibēre īnstituit.

LVIII. Labiēnus prīmō vīneās agere, crātibus atque aggere palūdem explēre atque iter mūnīre cōnābātur. Postquam id difficilius fierī animadvertit, silentiō ē castrīs tertiā vigiliā ēgressus eōdem quō vēnerat itinere Metiosēdum pervenit. Id est oppidum Senonum in īnsulā Sēquanae positum, ut paulō ante dē Lutetiā dīximus. Dēprehēnsīs nāvibus circiter L celeriterque coniūnctīs atque eō mīlitibus impositīs et reī novitāte perterritīs oppidānīs, quōrum magna pars erat ad bellum ēvocāta, sine contentiōne oppidō potītur. Refectō ponte, quem superi-

9. **repleto**: cf. Eng. 'replete.' 19. **perpetuam**: *continuous*. 23. **aggere**: *earth*. 24. **munire**: *build*.

ōribus diēbus hostēs resciderant, exercitum trādūcit et secundō flūmine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. Hostēs rē cognitā ab iīs quī Metiosēdō profūgerant Lutetiam incendī pontīsque ēius



THE EXPEDITION OF LABIENUS

oppidī rescindī iubent; ipsī profectī ā palūde in rīpā Sēquanae ē regiōne Lutetiae contrā Labiēnī castra cōnsīdunt.

1. **secundo flumine**: *down-stream.*

Hearing of Caesar's failure at Gergovia, he returns to Agedincum and rejoins Caesar.

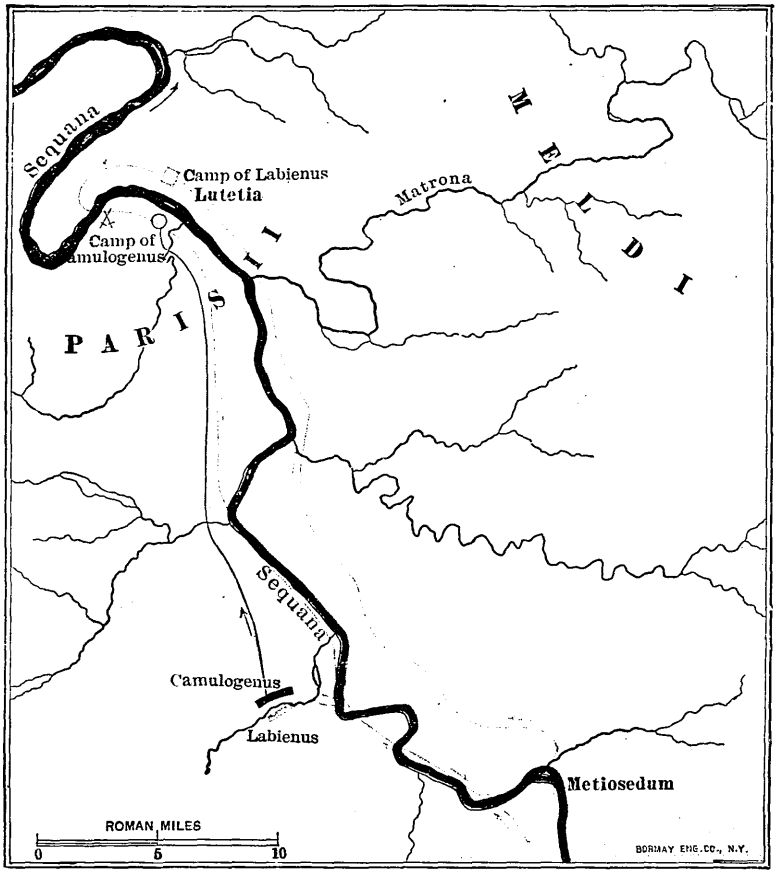
LIX. Iam Caesar ā Gergoviā discessisse audiēbātur, iam dē Haeduōrum dēfectiōne et secundō Galliae mōtū rūmōrēs adferēbantur, Gallīque in conloquiīs interclūsum itinere et Ligerī Caesarem inopiā frūmentī coāctum in prōvinciam contendisse cōnfīrmābant. Bellovacī autem dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cognitā, quī iam ante erant per sē īnfidēlēs, manūs cōgere atque apertē bellum parāre coepērunt. Tum Labiēnus tantā rērum commūtātiōne longē aliud sibi capiendum cōnsilium atque anteā sēnserat intellegēbat, neque iam ut aliquid adquīreret proeliōque hostīs lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum Agēdincum redūceret cōgitābat. Namque alterā ex parte Bellovacī, quae cīvitās in Galliā maximam habet opīniōnem virtūtis, īnstābant, alteram Camulogenus parātō atque īnstrūctō exercitū tenēbat; tum legiōnēs ā praesidiō atque impedīmentīs interclūsās maximum flūmen distinēbat. Tantīs subitō difficultātibus obiectīs ab animī virtūte auxilium petendum vidēbat.

LX. Itaque sub vesperum cōnsiliō convocātō cohortātus ut ea quae imperāsset dīligenter industriēque administrārent, nāvīs quās Metiosēdō dēdūxerat singulās equitibus Rōmānīs attribuit, et prīmā cōnfectā vigiliā quattuor mīlia passuum secundō flūmine silentiō prōgredī ibique sē exspectāre iubet. Quīnque cohortīs quās minimē fīrmās ad dīmicandum esse exīstimābat castrīs praesidiō relinquit; quīnque ēiusdem legiōnis reliquās dē mediā nocte cum omnibus impedīmentīs adversō flūmine magnō tumultū proficīscī imperat. Conquīrit etiam lintrīs; hās magnō sonitū rēmōrum incitātās in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulō silentiō ēgressus cum tribus legiōnibus eum locum petit quō nāvīs appellī iusserat.

LXI. Eō cum esset ventum, explōrātōrēs hostium, ut omnī flūminis parte erant dispositī, inopīnantēs, quod magna subitō

25. **adverso flumine**: the opposite of *secundo flumine*. 27. **sonitu**: *noise*.

ōribus diēbus hostēs resciderant, exercitum trādūcit et secundō flūmine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. Hostēs rē cognitā ab iīs quī Metiosēdō profūgerant Lutetiam incendī pontīsque ēius



THE EXPEDITION OF LABIENUS

oppidī rescindī iubent; ipsī profectī ā palūde in rīpā Sēquanae ē regiōne Lutetiae contrā Labiēnī castra cōnsīdunt.

1. **secundo flumine**: *down-stream.*

Hearing of Caesar's failure at Gergovia, he returns to Agedincum and rejoins Caesar.

LIX. Iam Caesar ā Gergoviā discessisse audiēbātur, iam dē Haeduōrum dēfectiōne et secundō Galliae mōtū rūmōrēs adferēbantur, Gallīque in conloquiīs interclūsum itinere et Ligerī Caesarem inopiā frūmentī coāctum in prōvinciam contendisse cōnfīrmābant. Bellovacī autem dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cognitā, quī iam ante erant per sē īnfidēlēs, manūs cōgere atque apertē bellum parāre coepērunt. Tum Labiēnus tantā rērum commūtātiōne longē aliud sibi capiendum cōnsilium atque anteā sēnserat intellegēbat, neque iam ut aliquid adquīreret proeliōque hostīs lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum Agēdincum redūceret cōgitābat. Namque alterā ex parte Bellovacī, quae cīvitās in Galliā maximam habet opīniōnem virtūtis, īnstābant, alteram Camulogenus parātō atque īnstrūctō exercitū tenēbat; tum legiōnēs ā praesidiō atque impedīmentīs interclūsās maximum flūmen distinēbat. Tantīs subitō difficultātibus obiectīs ab animī virtūte auxilium petendum vidēbat.

LX. Itaque sub vesperum cōnsiliō convocātō cohortātus ut ea quae imperāsset dīligenter industriēque administrārent, nāvīs quās Metiosēdō dēdūxerat singulās equitibus Rōmānīs attribuit, et prīmā cōnfectā vigiliā quattuor mīlia passuum secundō flūmine silentiō prōgredī ibique sē exspectāre iubet. Quīnque cohortīs quās minimē fīrmās ad dīmicandum esse exīstimābat castrīs praesidiō relinquit; quīnque ēiusdem legiōnis reliquās dē mediā nocte cum omnibus impedīmentīs adversō flūmine magnō tumultū proficīscī imperat. Conquīrit etiam lintrīs; hās magnō sonitū rēmōrum incitātās in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulō silentiō ēgressus cum tribus legiōnibus eum locum petit quō nāvīs appellī iusserat.

LXI. Eō cum esset ventum, explōrātōrēs hostium, ut omnī flūminis parte erant dispositī, inopīnantēs, quod magna subitō

25. **adverso flumine**: the opposite of *secundo flumine*. 27. **sonitu**: *noise*.

erat coorta tempestās, ā nostrīs opprimuntur; exercitus equitātusque equitibus Rōmānīs administrantibus quōs eī negōtiō praefēcerat celeriter trānsmittitur. Ūnō ferē tempore sub lūcem hostibus nūntiātur in castrīs Rōmānōrum praeter cōnsuētūdinem tumultuārī, et magnum īre agmen adversō flūmine, sonitumque rēmōrum in eādem parte exaudīrī, et paulō īnfrā mīlitēs nāvibus trānsportārī. Quibus rēbus audītīs, quod exīstimābant tribus locīs trānsīre legiōnēs atque omnīs perturbātōs dēfectiōne Haeduōrum fugam parāre, suās quoque cōpiās in trīs partīs distribuērunt. Nam praesidiō ē regiōne castrōrum relictō et parvā manū Metiosēdum versus missā, quae tantum prōgrederētur quantum nāvēs prōcessissent, reliquās cōpiās contrā Labiēnum dūxērunt.

LXII. Prīmā lūce et nostrī omnēs erant trānsportātī et hostium aciēs cernēbātur. Labiēnus mīlitēs cohortātus ut suae prīstinae virtūtis et tot secundissimōrum proeliōrum retinērent memoriam, atque ipsum Caesarem, cūius ductū saepenumerō hostīs superāssent, praesentem adesse exīstimārent, dat sīgnum proelī. Prīmō concursū ab dextrō cornū, ubi septima legiō cōnstiterat, hostēs pelluntur atque in fugam coniciuntur; ab sinistrō, quem locum duodecima legiō tenēbat, cum prīmī ōrdinēs hostium trānsfīxī pīlīs concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant, nec dabat suspīciōnem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suīs aderat atque eōs cohortābātur. At incertō etiam nunc exitū victōriae, cum septimae legiōnis tribūnīs esset nūntiātum quae in sinistrō cornū gererentur, post tergum hostium legiōnem ostendērunt sīgnaque intulērunt. Nē eō quidem tempore quisquam locō cessit, sed circumventī omnēs interfectīque sunt. Eandem fortūnam tulit Camulogenus. At iī quī in praesidiō contrā castra Labiēnī erant relictī, cum proelium commissum audīssent, subsidiō suīs iērunt collemque cēpērunt, neque nostrōrum mīlitum victōrum impetum sustinēre potuērunt. Sīc cum suīs fugientibus permixtī quōs nōn silvae montēsque tēxērunt ab equitātū sunt interfectī. Hōc negōtiō cōnfectō Labiēnus revertitur Agēdincum,

ubi impedīmenta tōtīus exercitūs relīcta erant; inde cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Caesarem pervenit.

The insurrection now becomes general. Vercingetorix is chosen commander-in-chief. He adopts energetic measures.

LXIII. Dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cognitā bellum augētur. Lēgātiōnēs in omnīs partīs circummittuntur; quantum grātiā, auctōritāte, pecūniā valent ad sollicitandās cīvitātēs ūtuntur; nactī obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat hōrum suppliciō dubitantīs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorīge Haeduī ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque bellī gerendī commūnicet. Rē impetrātā contendunt ut ipsīs summa imperī trādātur, et rē in contrōversiam dēductā tōtīus Galliae concilium Bibracte indīcitur. Conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitūdinis suffrāgiīs rēs permittitur; ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorīgem probant imperātōrem. Ab hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingonēs, Trēverī āfuērunt,—illī, quod amīcitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit causa quārē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mitterent. Magnō dolōre Haeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs prīncipātū, queruntur fortūnae commūtātiōnem et Caesaris in sē indulgentiam requīrunt, neque tamen susceptō bellō suum cōnsilium ab reliquīs sēparāre audent. Invītī summae spei adulēscentēs Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus Vercingetorīgī pārent.

LXIV. Ille imperat reliquīs cīvitātibus obsidēs diemque eī reī cōnstituit. Omnīs equitēs, XV mīlia numerō, celeriter convenīre iubet. Peditātū quem ante habuerit sē fore contentum dīcit neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut aciē dīmicātūrum; sed quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus pābulātiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre, aequō modo animō sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant, quā reī familiāris iactūrā perpetuum imperium lībertātemque sē cōnsequī videant. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus Haeduīs Segusiāvīsque, quī sunt fīnitimī prōvinciae, decem mīlia

11. **suffragiis**: *to the decision (votes)*. 18. **requirunt**: *miss.*

peditum imperat; hūc addit equitēs DCCC. Hīs praeficit frātrem Eporēdorīgis bellumque īnferre Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs, item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad fīnīs Volcārum Arecomicōrum dēpopulandōs mittit. Nihilō minus clandēstīnīs nūntiīs lēgātiōnibusque Allobrogēs sollicitat, quōrum mentīs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum prīncipibus pecūniās, cīvitātī autem imperium tōtius prōvinciae pollicētur.

Caesar secures cavalry from Germany.

LXV. Ad hōs omnīs cāsūs prōvīsa erant praesidia cohortium duārum et XX, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvinciā ab L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnīs partīs oppōnēbantur. Helviī suā sponte cum fīnitimīs proeliō congressī pelluntur, et C. Valeriō Domnotaurō, Caburī fīliō, prīncipe cīvitātis, complūribusque aliīs interfectīs intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbrīs ad Rhodanum dispositīs praesidiīs magnā cum cūrā et dīligentiā suōs fīnīs tuentur. Caesar quod hostīs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat, et interclūsīs omnibus itineribus nūllā rē ex prōvinciā atque Italiā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās cīvitātēs quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat, equitēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs quī inter eōs proeliārī consuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneīs equīs ūtēbantur, ā tribūnīs mīlitum reliquīsque equitibus Rōmānīs atque ēvocātīs equōs sūmit Germānīsque distribuit.

The cavalry of the Gauls attacks him, but is defeated.

LXVI. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī conveniunt. Magnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum fīnīs iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium

7. **resedisse**: *had become calm.* 24. **evocatis**: *veterans*, who having served their time had reënlisted on invitation of the general.

prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter mīlia passuum decem ab Rōmānīs trīnīs castrīs Vercingetorīx cōnsēdit, convocātīsque ad cōnsilium praefectīs equitum vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: 'Fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam lībertātem satis esse; ad reliquī temporis pācem atque ōtium parum prōficī, māiōribus enim coāctīs cōpiīs reversūrōs neque fīnem bellandī factūrōs. Proinde in agmine impedītōs adoriantur. Sī peditēs suīs auxilium ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magis futūrum cōnfīdat, relictīs impedīmentīs suae salūtī cōnsulant, et ūsū rērum necessāriārum et dignitāte spoliātum īrī. Nam dē equitibus hostium, quīn nēmō eōrum prōgredī modo extrā agmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem dēbēre dubitāre. Id quō māiōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnīs prō castrīs habitūrum et terrōrī hostibus futūrum.' Conclāmant equitēs sānctissimō iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmārī oportēre nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad līberōs, nē ad parentīs, nē ad uxōrem aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per agmen hostium perequitārit.

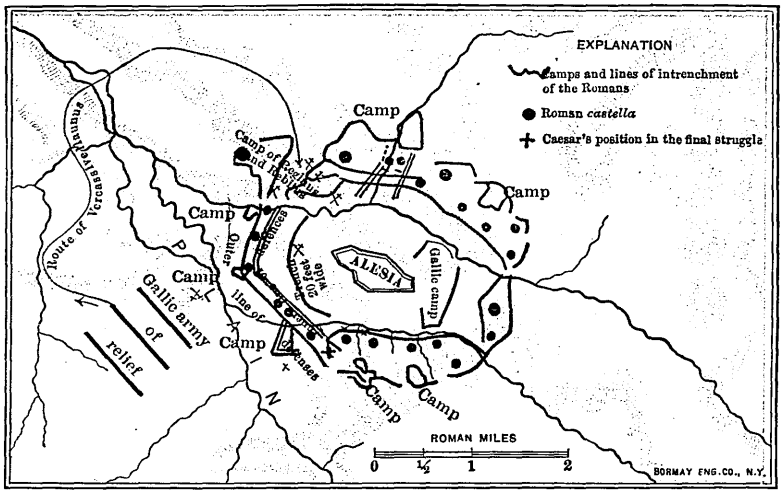
LXVII. Probātā rē atque omnibus ad iūs iūrandum adāctīs, posterō diē in trīs partīs distribūtō equitātū duae sē aciēs ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā prīmō agmine iter impedīre coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar suum quoque equitātum tripartītō dīvīsum contrā hostem īre iubet. Pugnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōnsistit agmen; impedīmenta inter legiōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō sīgna īnferrī Caesar aciemque convertī iubēbat; quae rēs et hostīs ad īnsequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxilī cōnfīrmābat. Tandem Germānī ab dextrō latere summum iugum nactī hostīs locō dēpellunt; fugientīs ūsque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorīx cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōnsēderat, persequuntur complūrīsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā reliquī, nē circumvenīrentur veritī, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs. Trēs nōbilissimī Haeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur, — Cotus, praefectus equitum, quī contrōversiam cum

6. **otium**: *quiet.* — **profici**: *advantage was gained.*

Convictolitave proximīs comitiīs habuerat, et Cavarillus, quī post dēfectiōnem Litaviccī pedestribus cōpiīs praefuerat, et Eporēdorīx, quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Haeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

Vercingetorix withdraws into Alesia. Caesar follows him to the town.

LXVIII. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cōpiās suās, ut prō castrīs conlocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit, celeriterque impedī-



THE INVESTMENT OF ALESIA

menta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar impedīmentīs in proximum collem ductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictīs secūtus hostīs quantum diēī tempus est passum, circiter tribus mīlibus ex novissimō agmine interfectīs alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritīsque hostibus, quod equitātū, quā maximē parte exercitūs cōnfīdēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem mīlitēs Alesiam circumvāllāre īnstituit.

1. **comitiis**: *election.*

LXIX. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō, admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn posse vidērētur; cūius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter mīlia passuum tria in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs mediocrī interiectō spatiō parī altitūdinis fastīgiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam in altitūdinem sex pedum praedūxerant. Ēius mūnītiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs īnstituēbātur circuitus XI mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita octō castellaque XXIII facta, quibus in castellīs interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac fīrmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

A cavalry battle is fought, in which the Gauls are again defeated. Vercingetorix sends away his cavalry to seek aid.

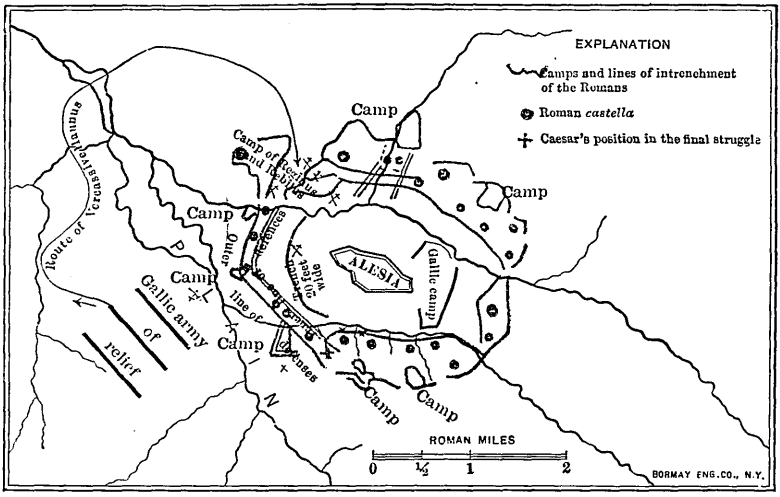
LXX. Opere īnstitūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē quam intermissam collibus tria mīlia passuum in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōnstituit, nē qua subitō inruptiō ab hostium peditātū fīat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt atque angustiōribus portīs relictīs coartantur. Germānī ācrius ūsque ad mūnītiōnēs sequuntur. Fit magna caedēs; nōn nūllī relictīs equīs fossam trānsīre et māceriam trānscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō cōnstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn minus quī intrā mūnītiōnēs erant Gallī perturbantur, venīrī ad sē cōnfestim exīstimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūllī perterritī in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

6. **pari altitudinis fastigio**: *with summits of equal height.* 8. **maceriam**: *wall.* 13: **excubitoribus**: *pickets.*

Convictolitave proximīs comitiīs habuerat, et Cavarillus, quī post dēfectiōnem Litaviccī pedestribus cōpiīs praefuerat, et Eporēdorīx, quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Haeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

Vercingetorix withdraws into Alesia. Caesar follows him to the town.

LXVIII. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cōpiās suās, ut prō castrīs conlocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit, celeriterque impedī-



THE INVESTMENT OF ALESIA

menta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar impedīmentīs in proximum collem ductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictīs secūtus hostīs quantum diēī tempus est passum, circiter tribus mīlibus ex novissimō agmine interfectīs alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritīsque hostibus, quod equitātū, quā maximē parte exercitūs cōnfīdēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem mīlitēs Alesiam circumvāllāre īnstituit.

1. **comitiis**: *election.*

LXIX. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō, admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn posse vidērētur; cūius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter mīlia passuum tria in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs mediocrī interiectō spatiō parī altitūdinis fastīgiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam in altitūdinem sex pedum praedūxerant. Ēius mūnītiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs īnstituēbātur circuitus XI mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita octō castellaque XXIII facta, quibus in castellīs interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac fīrmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

A cavalry battle is fought, in which the Gauls are again defeated. Vercingetorix sends away his cavalry to seek aid.

LXX. Opere īnstitūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē quam intermissam collibus tria mīlia passuum in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōnstituit, nē qua subitō inruptiō ab hostium peditātū fiat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt atque angustiōribus portīs relictīs coartantur. Germānī ācrius ūsque ad mūnītiōnēs sequuntur. Fit magna caedēs; nōn nūllī relictīs equīs fossam trānsīre et māceriam trānscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō cōnstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn minus quī intrā mūnītiōnēs erant Gallī perturbantur, venīrī ad sē cōnfestim exīstimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūllī perterritī in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

6. **pari altitudinis fastigio**: *with summits of equal height.* 8. **maceriam**: *wall.* 13: **excubitoribus**: *pickets.*

LXXI. Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnītiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnīsque quī per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant; sua in illōs merita prōpōnit obtestāturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē optimē dē commūnī lībertāte meritum hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indīligentiōrēs fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. 'Ratiōne initā frūmentum sē exiguē diērum XXX habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī posse parcendō.' Hīs datīs mandātīs quā erat nostrum opus intermissum secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referrī iubet; capitis poenam iīs quī nōn pāruerint cōnstituit; pecus, cūius magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētīrī īnstituit; cōpiās omnīs quās prō oppidō conlocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

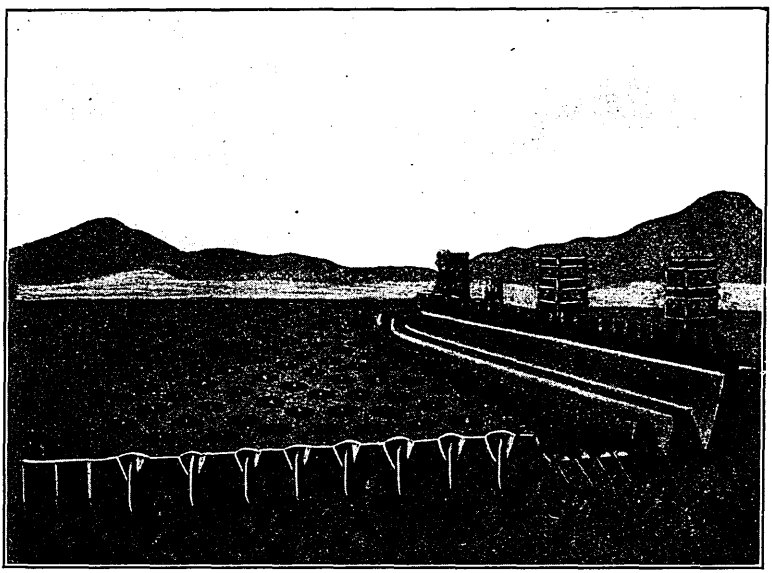
Description of Caesar's works.

LXXII. Quibus rēbus cognitīs ex perfugīs et captīvīs Caesar haec genera mūnītiōnis īnstituit. Fossam pedum XX dērēctīs lateribus dūxit, ut ēius fossae solum tantundem patēret quantum summa labra distārent; reliquās omnīs mūnītiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs CCCC redūxit hōc cōnsiliō, quoniam tantum esset necessāriō spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā mīlitum cingerētur, nē dē improvīsō aut noctū ad mūnītiōnēs multitūdō hostium advolāret aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operī dēstinātōs conicere possent. Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās XV pedēs lātās eādem altitūdine perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus ac dēmissīs locīs aquā ex flūmine dērīvātā complēvit. Post

13. **capitis**: i.e. *capital*. 20. **derectis**: *perpendicular*. 21. **solum**: *bottom*. — **tantundem**: *just as much*, i.e. the trench was as wide at the bottom as at the top. 22. **labra**: *edges* (*lips*). 24. **corona**: *by a ring* (*crown*). 26. **destinatos**: *detailed*.

eās aggerem ac vāllum XII pedum exstrūxit; huic lōrīcam pinnāsque adiēcit grandibus cervīs ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, quī ascēnsum hostium tardārent, et turrīs tōtō opere circumdedit, quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent.

LXXIII. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī et tantās mūnītiōnēs fierī necesse dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiīs, quae



THE ROMAN WORKS AT ALESIA

longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; ac nōn numquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quārē ad haec rūrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō mīlitum mūnītiōnēs dēfendī possent. Itaque truncīs arborum aut admodum fīrmīs rāmīs abscīsīs atque hōrum dēlibrātīs ac praeacūtīs cacūmini-

1. **loricam pinnasque**: *a parapet and battlements.* 2. **cervis**: *forked branches* or *tops of trees* (lit. *stags*, from the resemblance to their antlers). — **pluteorum**: *i.e.* the shields, or squares, of wattlework forming the *lorica*. 12. **delibratis**: *stripped of bark.* — **cacuminibus**: *tops.*

LXXI. Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnītiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnīsque quī per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant; sua in illōs merita prōpōnit obtestāturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē optimē dē commūnī lībertāte meritum hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indīligentiōrēs fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. 'Ratiōne initā frūmentum sē exiguē diērum XXX habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī posse parcendō.' Hīs datīs mandātīs quā erat nostrum opus intermissum secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referrī iubet; capitis poenam iīs quī nōn pāruerint cōnstituit; pecus, cūius magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētīrī īnstituit; cōpiās omnīs quās prō oppidō conlocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

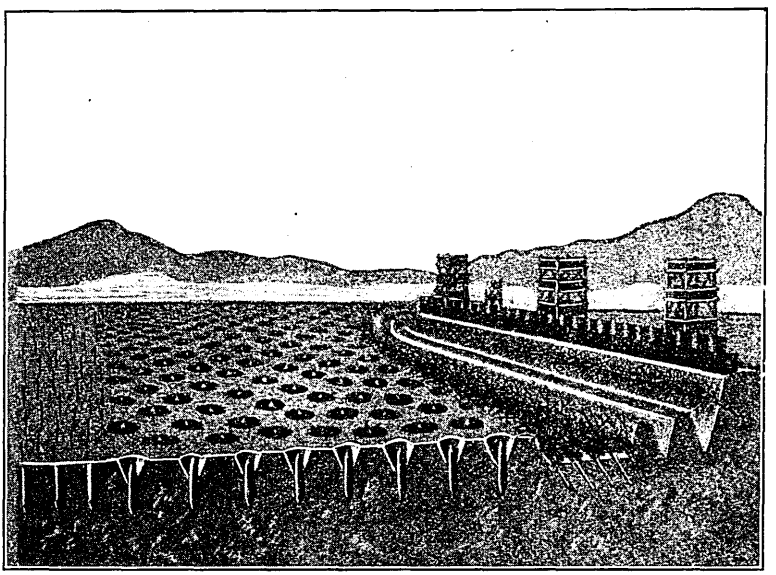
Description of Caesar's works.

LXXII. Quibus rēbus cognitīs ex perfugīs et captīvīs Caesar haec genera mūnītiōnis īnstituit. Fossam pedum XX dērēctīs lateribus dūxit, ut ēius fossae solum tantundem patēret quantum summa labra distārent; reliquās omnīs mūnītiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs CCCC redūxit hōc cōnsiliō, quoniam tantum esset necessāriō spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā mīlitum cingerētur, nē dē improvīsō aut noctū ad mūnītiōnēs multitūdō hostium advolāret aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operī dēstinātōs conicere possent. Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās XV pedēs lātās eādem altitūdine perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus ac dēmissīs locīs aquā ex flūmine dērīvātā complēvit. Post

13. **capitis**: i.e. *capital*. 20. **derectis**: *perpendicular*. 21. **solum**: *bottom*. — **tantundem**: *just as much*, i.e. the trench was as wide at the bottom as at the top. 22. **labra**: *edges* (*lips*). 24. **corona**: *by a ring* (*crown*). 26. **destinatos**: *detailed*.

eās aggerem ac vāllum XII pedum exstrūxit; huic lōrīcam pinnāsque adiēcit grandibus cervīs ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, quī ascēnsum hostium tardārent, et turrīs tōtō opere circumdedit, quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent.

LXXIII. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī et tantās mūnitiōnēs fierī necesse dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiīs, quae



THE ROMAN WORKS AT ALESIA

longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; ac nōn numquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quārē ad haec rūrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō mīlitum mūnītiōnēs dēfendī possent. Itaque truncīs arborum aut admodum fīrmīs rāmīs abscīsīs atque hōrum dēlibrātīs ac praeacūtīs cacūmini-

1. **loricam pinnasque**: *a parapet and battlements.* 2. **cervis**: *forked branches* or *tops of trees* (lit. *stags*, from the resemblance to their antlers). — **pluteorum**: *i.e.* the shields, or squares, of wattlework forming the *lorica*. 12. **delibratis**: *stripped of bark.* — **cacuminibus**: *tops.*

bus perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illī stīpitēs dēmissī et ab īnfimō revinctī, nē revellī possent, ab rāmīs ēminēbant. Quīnī erant ōrdinēs, coniūnctī inter sē atque implicātī; quō quī intrāverant sē ipsī acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellābant. Ante hōs oblīquīs ōrdinibus in quīncūncem dispositīs scrobēs in altitūdinem trium pedum fodiēbantur paulātim angustiōre ad īnfimum fastīgiō. Hūc teretēs stīpitēs feminis crassitūdine ab summō praeacūtī et praeūstī dēmittēbantur, ita ut nōn amplius digitīs quattuor ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōnfīrmandī et stabiliendī causā singulī ab īnfimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur, reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās īnsidiās vīminibus ac virgultīs integēbātur. Hūius generis octōnī ōrdinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine flōris līlium appellābant. Ante haec tāleae pedem longae ferreīs hāmīs īnfīxīs tōtae in terram īnfodiēbantur mediocribusque intermissīs spatiīs omnibus locīs disserēbantur; quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

LXXIV. Hīs rēbus perfectīs regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās prō locī nātūrā, XIIII mīlia passuum complexus parīs ēiusdem generis mūnītiōnēs, dīversās ab hīs, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē magnā quidem multitūdine mūnītiōnum praesidia circumfundī possent; nē autem cum perīculō ex castrīs ēgredī cōgātur, diērum XXX pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnīs convectum iubet.

2. **stipites**: *tree-trunks.* — **ab ramis**: *with their branches* (only). 4. **vallis**: *stakes.* — **induebant**: *impaled.* 5. **cippos**: *gravestones*, or perhaps *boundary-posts.* — **quincuncem**: the *quincunx* is an arrangement like that of the *five* of cards or dice. 6. **scrobes**: *pits.* 7. **fastigio**: *slope.* The sides were sloping, so that the bottom of the pits was smaller than the top. — **teretes**: *round.* 8. **feminis**: *of a thigh.* — **praeusti**: *charred at the end.* 10. **singuli . . . exculcabantur**: *at the bottom of each pit a foot was filled in with earth trampled solid* (around the stake). 12. **octoni**: *eight in each place* (where needed). 14. **floris**: *of the flower.* — **lilium**: *a lily.* — **taleae**: *blocks.* 15. **hamis**: *hooks*, or barbed spikes. 16. **disserebantur**: *were scattered* (*sown*) *here and there.* — **stimulos**: *goads.* 20. **diversas**: *facing in the opposite direction.*

A Gallic army starts to the relief of Alesia.

LXXV. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō prīncipum indictō nōn omnīs quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorīx, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique cīvitātī imperandum, nē tantā multitūdine cōnfūsā nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habēre possent. Imperant Haeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvīs, Ambivaretīs, Aulercīs Brannovīcibus, mīlia XXXV; parem numerum Arvernīs, adiūnctīs Eleutetīs, Cadūrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellāviīs, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnutibus duodēna mīlia; Bellovacīs X; totidem Lemovīcibus; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parīsiīs et Helvētiīs; sēna Andibus, Ambiānīs, Mediomatricīs, Petrocoriīs, Nerviīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrogibus; V mīlia Aulercīs Cēnomanīs; totidem Atrebātibus; IIII Veliocassīs; Aulercīs Eburovīcibus III; Rauracīs et Bōiīs bīna; X ūniversīs cīvitātibus quae Ōceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōnsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō Coriosolitēs, Rēdonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs, Ōsismī, Venetī, Lexoviī, Venellī. Ex hīs Bellovacī suum numerum nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dīcerent neque cūiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs; rogātī tamen ā Commiō prō ēius hospitiō duo mīlia mīsērunt.

LXXVI. Hūius operā Commī, ut anteā dēmōnstrāvimus, fidēlī atque ūtilī superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britanniā Caesar; prō quibus meritīs cīvitātem ēius immūnem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat, atque ipsī Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō fuit lībertātis vindicandae et prīstinae bellī laudis recuperandae ut neque beneficiīs neque amīcitiae memoriā movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent. Coāctīs equitum mīlibus octō et peditum circiter CCL, haec in Haeduōrum fīnibus recēnsēbantur

5. **discernere**: *distinguish.* 21. **obtemperaturos**: *would obey.* 25. **immunem**: *free from tribute.* 31. **recensebantur**: *were reviewed.*

numerusque inībātur, praefectī cōnstituēbantur; Commiō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Haeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsōbrīnō Vercingetorīgis, summa imperī trāditur. Hīs dēlēctī ex cīvitātibus attribuuntur, quōrum cōnsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fīdūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficīscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam quī aspectum modo tantae multitūdinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipitī proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pugnārētur, forīs tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

A council of war is held in Alesia. The cruel proposal of Critognatus.

LXXVII. At iī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omnī frūmentō īnsciī quid in Haeduīs gererētur conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant. Ac variīs dictīs sententiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum vīrēs suppeterent, ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda ōrātiō Critognātī vidētur propter ēius singulārem et nefāriam crūdēlitātem. Hīc summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et magnae habitus auctōritātis, "Nihil," inquit, "dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi rēs est quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū prīstinae residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī offerant facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tantum apud mē dignitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam vītae nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid hominum mīlibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectīs propinquīs cōnsanguineīsque nostrīs animī fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs

3. **consobrino**: *cousin.* 8. **foris**: *outside.* 22. **residere**: *to linger.* 26. **praeterquam**: *except.*

cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, quī vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritāte vestrā aut animī imbēcillitāte omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An quod ad diem nōn vēnērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōnstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illīs ulteriōribus mūnītiōnibus animīne causā cottīdiē exercērī putātis? Sī illōrum nūntiīs cōnfīrmārī nōn potestis omnī aditū praesaeptō, hīs ūtiminī testibus appropinquāre eōrum adventum; cūius reī timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid ergō meī cōnsilī est? Facere quod nostrī māiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsī ac similī inopiā subāctī eōrum corporibus quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vītam tolerāvērunt neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cūius reī sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen lībertātis causā īnstituī et posterīs prōdī pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī magnāque inlātā calamitāte fīnibus quidem nostrīs aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt, iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, lībertātem nōbīs relīquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilīs potentīsque bellō cognōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitātibusque cōnsīdere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquīs nātiōnibus geruntur ignōrātis, respicite fīnitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātīs, secūribus subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte."

LXXVIII. Sententiīs dictīs cōnstituunt ut ī quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant; illō tamen potius ūtendum cōnsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condi-

7. **animi causa**: *for amusement.* 8. **praesaepto**: *blocked up.* 27. **securibus**: *to the axes* (of the lictors, symbols of Roman power). 31. **utendum**: sc. *esse;* translate as if *oportere uti.*

ciōnem. Mandubiī, quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum līberīs atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnītiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositīs in vāllō cūstōdiīs recipī prohibēbat.

Arrival of the army of relief. Caesar repulses an attack upon his works.

LXXIX. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs quibus summa imperī permissa erat cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt, et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mīlle passibus ā nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsīdunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plānitiem quam in longitūdinem mīlia passuum tria patēre dēmōnstrāvimus complent, pedestrīsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locīs superiōribus cōnstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs, atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque prōductīs cōpiīs ante oppidum cōnsistunt, et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent, sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnīs cāsūs comparant.

LXXX. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnītiōnum dispositō, ut sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus, atque omnēs mīlitēs intentī pugnae prōventum exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expedītōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant, quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē improvīsō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōnfīderent et nostrōs multitūdine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et ī quī mūnītiōnibus continēbantur et ī quī ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōnfīrmābant. Quod in cōnspectū om-

31. **ululatu**: *yell.*

nium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē aut turpiter factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat. Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pugnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs in hostīs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectīs sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentīs ūsque ad castra īnsecūtī suī conligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At iī quī Alesiā prōcesserant, maestī prope victōriā dēspērātā sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

A second attack also is repulsed.

LXXXI. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō magnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestrīs mūnītiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā significātiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cognōscere possent, crātīs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre, reliqua que quae ad oppugnātiōnem pertinent parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā sīgnum suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnītiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs lībrilibus sudibusque, quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebrīs adēmptō multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur; complūra tormentīs tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

LXXXII. Dum longius ā mūnītiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius successē-

9. **maesti**: *sorrowful.* 11. **scalarum**: *ladders.* — **harpagonum**: *hooks*, like grappling-irons, for tearing down walls. 20. **fundis librilibus sudibusque**: *with slings throwing stones of a pound weight and with stakes.* 21. **glandibus**: *leaden slugs* (also thrown with slings). — **tenebris**: *by darkness.*

runt, aut sē stimulīs inopīnantēs induēbant aut in scrobīs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī pīlīs mūrālibus interībant. Multīs undique vulneribus acceptīs, nūllā mūnītiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret, veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs dum ea quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent, diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī prius suōs discessisse cognōvērunt quam mūnītiōnibus appropinquārent. Ita rē īnfectā in oppidum revertērunt.

Once more an attempt is made to break through Caesar's lines.

LXXXIII. Bis magnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Gallī quid agant cōnsulunt; locōrum perītōs adhibent, ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnītiōnēsque cognōscunt. Erat ā septemtriōnibus collis quem propter magnitūdinem circuitūs opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī, necessāriōque paene inīquō locō et lēniter dēclīvī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cognitīs per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium LX mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt, eārum cīvitātum quae maximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pactō agī placeat occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfīniunt cum merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs prīmā vigiliā ēgressus prope cōnfectō sub lūcem itinere post montem sē occultāvit mīlitēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrīs mūnītiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

LXXXIV. Vercingetorīx ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus ex

2. **pilis muralibus**: *wall-javelins*. These were heavy, made to be hurled from a wall. 20. **quo pacto**: *in what way*.

oppidō ēgreditur; crātīs, longuriōs, mūrālīs falcīs, reliquaque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert. Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars fīrma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnītiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor quī post tergum pugnantibus exsistit, quod suum perīculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius hominum mentīs perturbant.

Both sides fight desperately, and the Romans are in great danger.

LXXXV. Caesar idōneum locum nactus quid quāque in parte gerātur cognōscit, labōrantibus subsidium submittit. Utrīsque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō maximē contendī conveniat: Gallī nisi perfrēgerint mūnītiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī sī rem obtinuerint, fīnem labōrum omnium exspectant. Maximē ad superiōrēs mūnītiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum locī ad dēclīvitātem fastīgium magnum habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla coniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs invicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversīs in mūnītiōnem coniectus et ascēnsum dat Gallīs et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.

LXXXVI. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit. Imperat sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pugnet; id nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs, cohortātur nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmicātiōnum frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōnsistere. Interiōrēs dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter magnitūdinem mūnītiōnum loca praerupta ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōnferunt. Multitūdine

1. **muralis falcis**: perhaps the same as the *harpagones* mentioned in Chap. LXXXI. 17. **momentum**: *importance;* the Gauls were higher on the hill than the Romans.

tēlōrum ex turribus prōpugnantīs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōrīcam rescindunt.

LXXXVII. Mittit prīmum Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidio addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsīs hostibus eō quō Labiēnum mīserat contendit; cohortīs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnītiōnēs et ā tergō hostīs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs XI cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum exīstimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proeliō intersit.

Finally the Gauls are utterly defeated, and Vercingetorix surrenders himself to Caesar.

LXXXVIII. Ēius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cognitō, quō īnsīgnī in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērat, turmīsque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnītiōnibus clāmor. Nostrī ēmissīs pīlīs gladiīs rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae appropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit magna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et prīnceps Lemovīcum, occīditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā comprehenditur; sīgna mīlitāria LXXIIII ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum dēspērātā salūte cōpiās ā mūnītiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē audītā ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs ac tōtīus diēī labōre mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī

14. **colore vestitus**: the purple color of his *paludamentum*. 16. **haec . . . devexa**: *this sloping hillside; devexus* means practically the same as *declivis*.

potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōnsequitur; magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur, reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātēs discēdunt.

LXXXIX. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum, sed commūnis lībertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnītiōne prō castrīs consīdit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorīx dēditur, arma prōiciuntur. Reservātīs Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitātēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtī exercituī capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

The troops are placed in winter quarters. A thanksgiving of twenty days is appointed at Rome.

XC. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in Haeduōs proficīscitur; cīvitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hīberna mittit. Captīvōrum circiter xx mīlia Haeduīs Arvernīsque reddit. T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficīscī iubet; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs conlocat, nē quam ā fīnitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulīs legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cavillōnī et Matiscōne in Haeduīs ad Ararim reī frūmentāriae causā conlocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōnstituit. Hīs rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cognitīs Rōmae diērum xx supplicātiō redditur.

28. **redditur**: sc. *dis*.

NOTES

The references are to the grammars of Allen and Greenough (A.), Bennett (B.), Gildersleeve and Lodge (G.), Harkness (H.), and Hale and Buck (HB.). References to the first edition of B. are added in parenthesis where it differs from the revised edition. Most of the abbreviations will be easily understood; but cf. (*confer*) = 'compare,' and sc. (*scilicet*) = 'understand,' 'supply.'

BOOK I

CHAP. **I.** Line 1. **Gallia omnis**: *Gaul in the wider sense.* Transalpine Gaul is meant, exclusive of the Roman province (*provincia*). See Introd., p. 23, and the map of Gaul. In a narrower sense *Gallia* meant the land of the *Celtae*, or *Galli*, of l. 3. — **est divisa**: illustrates the adjective use of a participle. We translate *is divided.* A. 495; B. 337; G. 250. R. 2; H. 640. 3; HB. 248. — **tris**: for declension see the grammar. The student should be sure that he knows the inflection of every inflected word which he meets, and should early accustom himself to the use of the index in his Latin grammar. — **unam**: sc. *partem.* PAGE 55

2. **incolunt**: the passive would be more in conformity with English idiom (*one of which is inhabited by the Belgae*). — **aliam**: the regular succession is *alter* (*second*), *tertius* (*third*). What are the usual meanings of *alius* and *alter?* — **qui**: rel. pron., implying its own antecedent; *the third* (*part those inhabit*) *who are called.* — **ipsorum**: the reflexive *sua* might have been expected, but Caesar is speaking from the Roman point of view; *ipsorum* is contrasted with *nostra*, as if Caesar had said, '*They themselves* use the name Celtae, *we* call them Galli.' — **lingua**: A. 409; B. 220. 3; G. 401; H. 476; HB. 436. b.

3. **lingua, institutis, legibus**: *in language, customs, (and) laws.* A. 418; B. 226; G. 397; H. 480; HB. 441.

4. **inter se**: *from one another.* A. 301. f; B. 245; G. 221; H. 502. 1; HB. 266.

5. **dividit**: the verb is singular because the two rivers form a single boundary-line from the upper course of the Marne to the mouth of the Seine. See the map of Gaul. A. 317. b; B. 255. 3; G. 285. EXC. 2; H. 392. 4; HB. 331. 3. Notice the order of

PAGE 55

words in this sentence. The emphatic word, as often, is placed first. See A. 596, 597, and the translation of this chapter there given; B. 348, 349; G. 672. 2. a, 674. RULE I; H. 664, 665. 1; HB. 623, 625. — **Horum omnium**: partitive gen., or gen. of the whole. A. 346. 2; B. 201. 1; G. 372; H. 442; HB. 346. These words, referring back to the previous sentence, are placed in a prominent position.

6. **a cultu**: A. 402; B. 214; G. 390. 1. 2. N. 1; H. 461, 462. 1; HB. 408. — **cultu . . . provinciae**: *civilization and refinement of the province, i.e.* the province, in which are civilization and refinement. See Introd., p. 23. The name *provincia* gives the modern *Provence*.

7. **minime saepe**: *least often*, i.e. *very seldom*. The force of *minime saepe* extends to *important*. We should be likely to say, 'Traders very seldom come, bringing in those things.'

8. **mercatores**: these were traveling traders, or peddlers, chiefly from the province. Starting from seaports, as Massilia, they would naturally trade mostly in southern and central Gaul, though they went as far as Germany and Britain. — **ad effeminandos animos**: *to character being weakened, to weaken character; effeminandos* is a gerundive agreeing with *animos*, which is used with *ad*. Distinguish carefully between the gerundive, a participle, and the gerund, a noun. A. 503, 506; B. 338. 3, 339. 1. 2; G. 427, 432; H. 623, 628; HB. 609, 612. III.

9. **proximi**: how is this compared? — **Germanis**: dat. with *proximi*. The accusative might have been used. A. 384, 432. a; B. 192. 1, 141. 3; G. 359. N. 1; H. 434. 2, 435. 2; HB. 362. III, 380. b.

10. **trans Rhenum**: the Rhine was considered the boundary between Gaul and Germany, yet migrations across the river were frequent. — **quibuscum**: for *cum* as enclitic see A. 150. d; B. 142. 4; G. 413. R. 1; H. 182. 2; HB. 418. a.

11. **Qua de causa**: *and for this (same) reason, i.e.* that of nearness to the Germans. A. 308. f; B. 251. 6; G. 610. R. 1; H. 510; HB. 284. 8. — **quoque**: *also, i.e.* as well as the Belgae. *Quoque* always follows the word which it emphasizes. — **reliquos**: *the rest of*. A. 293; B. 253. 5; G. 291. R. 2; H. 497. 4; HB. 279. 1. b. — **virtute**: *in valor;* abl. of specification, or respect. — **praecedunt**: not all verbs compounded with *prae* take the dative.

12. **proeliis**: abl. of means, but trans. *in battles*.

13. **cum . . . prohibent . . . gerunt**: temporal clauses, almost equivalent in meaning to participles (*either keeping them away . . .*

or themselves making war). Notice that *suis* and *ipsi* refer to the subject, *Helvetii*, while *eos* and *eorum* refer to the Germans. — **suis finibus**: abl. of separation.

14. **Eorum**: the inhabitants of *Gallia omnis*, the people being mentioned instead of the land; so *Belgae* is used for *Belgium* in l. 18 below. — **quam**: rel. pron., obj. of *obtinere*, of which *Gallos* is the subject. The three words form a clause in indirect discourse, and this clause is subject of *dictum est*. The direct form of the quotation would be *quam Galli obtinent*. A. 579, 580: B. 331. I; G. 508. 2, 343. 2; H. 641, 642; HB. 533, 534. 1. — **obtinere**: does not mean *obtain*, but *hold* (against opposition, active or potential). Latin words are often not to be translated by their English derivatives.

15. **initium capit a**: *begins at*.

16. **flumine, Oceano, finibus**: notice the asyndeton (absence of connectives), and cf. *lingua, institutis, legibus*, l. 3.

17. **ab Sequanis**: *i.e.* on the side where the Sequani live. A. 429. b; G. 390. 2. N. 6; H. 485. 4; HB. 406. 2. What prepositions are used with the ablative? — **septemtriones**: *north*. Notice the singular in l. 19. The word (lit. *seven plow-oxen*) designates the seven prominent stars of the constellation Ursa Major, the 'Great Bear,' 'Dipper,' or 'Charles's Wain.'

18. **ab finibus oriuntur**: cf. *a flumine Rhodano*, l. 15; *oriuntur* is equivalent to *initium capiunt*. What are its principal parts? What name is given to verbs which have mostly passive forms, but active meaning? — **extremis**: farthest from the province. — **Galliae**: the region inhabited by the Celtae. What rivers formed its northern boundary?

19. **inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni**: we usually say 'the lower Rhine.' — **spectant in septemtrionem et orientem solem**: *lie towards the north and east*, i.e. *northeast* (from the province).

21. **ad Hispaniam**: *near Spain*. What is this 'part of the ocean' now called?

This chapter serves to introduce us to the people with whom Caesar fought, and to their country. In Bk. VI Caesar gives a somewhat detailed account of the Gallic race. The student should now read Introd., pp. 21–29.

II. 23. **nobilissimus**: *of highest rank*. — **ditissimus**: sup. of *dives*.

24. **Orgetorix**: besides proper names, only a few words of the languages of ancient Gaul survive. The names are usually significant. The termination *-rix* is frequently found, and means 'king' (Latin *rex*). Orgetorix means 'king-of-the-killers.' — **M.**: read

PAGE 55 this *Marco*. — **M. Messala . . . consulibus**: *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso, i.e.* 61 B.C., three years before the outbreak of the Gallic War. A. 419. a, 424. g; B. 227. 1; G. 409; H. 489; HB. 421, 661. 1. The year was regularly expressed in this way. — **regni**: obj. gen., depending on *cupiditate*. A. 348; B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2; HB. 354.

56 1. **nobilitatis**: *of the nobles* (lit. *nobility*); abstract noun used in a collective sense, as often in English. In most of the states of Gaul the kings had been overthrown and the prerogatives of the old nobility curtailed. But to one who was able to put himself at the head of a mercenary force the field was open for an attempt to overthrow the elective magistrates and become king in fact, if not in name. Cf. Bk. II, Chap. I. — **civitati**: A. 367; B. 187. II. a; G. 346; H. 426. 2; HB. 362. I.

2. **ut . . . exirent**: A. 563; B. 295. 1; G. 546. 1; H. 565; HB. 502. 3. a. Notice how the English idiom differs from the Latin. In English we say, 'He persuades me to do this'; the Latin says, 'He persuades (makes acceptable) to me that I do this.' *Persuadeo* is from the root of *suavis, sweet*. Why is *exirent* plural? — **cum omnibus copiis**: *i.e.* 'bag and baggage.' This was to be a migration of the whole people, but yet, as Caesar represents it, it was for purposes of conquest. The Helvetii were to become masters of Gaul.

3. **perfacile**: what is the force of *per*? — **esse**: inf. in ind. disc., depending on the idea of saying in *persuasit*. A. 580. a; B. 314. 2; G. 652. R. 2; H. 642. 1; HB. 589. a. The subject of *esse* is the infinitive *potiri*. A. 452; B. 327. 1; G. 421; H. 609. 1; HB. 585. Since an infinitive used substantively is neuter, the predicate adjective *perfacile* is also neuter. Trans. *that it was very easy to get the sovereignty of the whole of Gaul*. — **omnibus**: A. 370; B. 187. III; G. 347; H. 429; HB. 376. — **praestarent**: A. 549; B. 286. 2; G. 586; H. 598; HB. 526. The tense is imperfect because the clause takes its time from *persuasit*, a secondary, or historical, tense. A. 482, 483; B. 258, 267. 1. 2; G. 225, 509; H. 198, 543; HB. 476. — **totius Galliae**: obj. gen.

4. **imperio**: A. 410; B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477. I; HB. 429. — **Id**: dir. obj. of *persuasit* (*he persuaded them of this*, lit. *made this acceptable to them*). — **hoc facilius**: *the more easily*, lit. *more easily by this; hoc* is abl. of degree, or measure, of difference, but hardly differs here from abl. of cause. A. 414. N.; B. 223; G. 403; H. 479. 1; HB. 424. a.

5. **loci natura**: *i.e.* by natural boundaries, or obstacles; ex-

plained by the ablatives *flumine Rheno*, *monte Iura*, etc. How does the plural of *locus* differ in gender from the singular? — **continentur**: *are shut in*, lit. *are held together*. — **una ex parte**: *on one side*. Notice the Latin idiom, and see note on *ab Sequanis*, p. 55, l. 17. For the order of the words (adj., prep., noun) see A. 599. d; B. 350. 7. b; G. 678. R. 2; H. 671. 5; HB. 627. 4.

6. **latissimo**: *very wide*, not *widest*. — **qui**: does this pronoun take its gender from *flumine* or from *Rheno*?

7. **altera**: see note on *aliam*, p. 55, l. 2.

9. **provinciam nostram**: the part which the Allobroges inhabited. See the map of Gaul. — **His rebus fiebat ut . . . possent**: *so* (lit. *because of these things*) *it was coming about that they both roamed less widely* (than they wished) *and could less easily wage war upon their neighbors*. Observe that *fiebat* is imperfect, and see the grammar for the difference in meaning between the perfect and the imperfect tense. The subject of *fiebat* is *ut . . . vagarentur . . . possent*. In Latin, as in other languages, a clause may be used as a noun. Such a clause is called a substantive clause. The subject of a verb is often obscured in English by the little word 'it.' In this sentence, to find the real subject of *fiebat* (*it was coming about*), ask yourself *what* was coming about. For the mood of *vagarentur* and *possent* see A. 569. 2; B. 297. 2; G. 553. 3; H. 571. 1; HB. 521. 3. a.

10. **finitimis**: for the case see note on *omnibus*, l. 3.

11. **qua ex parte**: *and in this respect*. Cf. *una ex parte*, l. 5. The Helvetii were distressed on their military side. — **homines**: not subject, but in predicate apposition with the subject (*being men fond of warring*). — **bellandi**: gerund; obj. gen., depending on *cupidi*. A. 504, 349. a; B. 338. 1. b, 204. 1; G. 428, 374; H. 626, 451. 1; HB. 612. I, 354.

12. **Pro multitudine hominum angustos**: (*too*) *narrow for the number of their people* (lit. *narrow in proportion to*). Their number is given as 263,000.

13. **gloria . . . fortitudinis**: *renown for bravery in war*, lit. *renown of war and bravery*. — **se habere**: ind. disc.; the direct form would be *nos habemus*.

14. **in longitudinem**: *in length*. Notice that in this idiom the accusative is used with *in*. What prepositions are used with both accusative and ablative? — **milia passuum**: *miles*, lit. *thousands of paces*. The *passus*, a double step, was five Roman feet. The mile, 5000 Roman feet, was equal to about 4854 feet, modern measure. For case of *milia* see A. 425; B. 181. 1; G. 335; H. 417; HB.

PAGE 56

387. I. Observe that it is a noun, and learn from the grammar the use of the singular, *mille*.

15. CCXL: read this *ducenta* (not *ducenti*, for it agrees with *milia*) *quadraginta*. The student should always carefully consult his grammar, whenever he is in doubt as to the Latin form of a numeral for which characters are used in the text. — CLXXX: to bring this more nearly into accord with the fact, it has been conjectured that Caesar wrote *in latitudinem LXXX* (instead of *CLXXX*). How do the dimensions given compare with those of modern Switzerland? The pressure of the Germans no doubt influenced the Helvetii in forming their decision to migrate. Read Introd., pp. 6–8.

III. 16. **His rebus**: the special meaning of *res* must be obtained from its context. Here it is *reason*, or *cause*.

17. **ea**: obj. of *comparare*. — **quae . . . pertinerent**: *which were necessary* (lit. *tended*) *to their departure*. The subjunctive is used because the sentence represents the thought of the Helvetii. A. 592. 3; B. 323; G. 628; H. 649. 1; HB. 535. 1. a. — **proficiscendum**: A. 506; B. 338. 3; G. 432; H. 628; HB. 612. III. — **comparare**: depends on *constituerunt*. A. 456; B. 328. 1; G. 423. 1. 2; H. 607; HB. 586. a.

18. **quam maximum**: *as great as possible*. A. 291. c; B. 240. 3; G. 303. R. 1; H. 159. 2; HB. 241. 4.

19. **ut . . . suppeteret**: a clause of purpose, or final clause, depending on *sementis facere; that a supply of grain might be on hand*. A. 530, 531. 1; B. 282. 1; G. 544, 545; H. 568; HB. 502. 2.

21. **Ad eas res conficiendas**: *for completing these preparations*. A. 506. N. 2; B. 339. 2; G. 427; H. 628; HB. 613. 1.

22. **in tertium annum**: *for the third year*.

23. **confirmant**: historical present, nearly equivalent to a historical perfect; not like the presents of Chap. I. Presents of this kind are much more common in Latin than in English, and should therefore usually be translated by the past tense. A. 469; B. 259. 3; G. 229; H. 532. 3; HB. 491. 1.

25. **multos annos**: A. 423; B. 181. 1; G. 336; H. 417; HB. 387. II.

26. **amicus**: this appellation, given by the Roman senate, was eagerly sought by foreign princes, and was (says Caesar in Chap. XLIII) generally given for great services.

27. **ut . . . occuparet**: depends on *persuadet*. See note on *ut . . . exirent*, l. 2. For tense see A. 485. e; B. 268. 3; G. 511. R. 1; H. 546; HB. 491. 2.

28. **Dumnorigi**: depends on *persuadet*, p. 57, l. 1. Dumnorix was bitterly hostile to Caesar and the Romans. His elder brother, the druid Diviciacus, was, on the other hand, an admirer of the Romans, a friend of Cicero, and an efficient helper of Caesar. See Introd., p. 7. For the fate of Dumnorix see Bk. V, Chaps. VI and VII. — **qui**: its antecedent is *Dumnorigi*. PAGE 56

29. **eo tempore**: A. 423. 1; B. 230; G. 393; H. 486; HB. 439. — **principatum**: *leadership*, not as a magistrate, but as a man of great personal influence. — **maxime**: *especially*. For the positive of this word *multum* or *magnopere* is used.

2. **Perfacile factu**: (*a*) *very easy* (*thing*) *to do*. A. 510; B. 340. 2; G. 436; H. 635. 1; HB. 619. 1. — **esse**: inf. in ind. disc.; its subject is *conata perficere*. — **conata**: a participle used as a noun, neut. pl. In the singular the masculine noun *conatus*, *-us*, is used. 57

3. **obtenturus esset**: subjunctive of the first, or active, periphrastic conjugation, representing a future of the direct discourse. A. 194. a, 580; B. 269. 3, 314. 1; G. 514, 515, 508. 2; H. 541. N. 1, 643; HB. 470. 4. a, 534. 2.

4. **quin plurimum Helvetii possent**: *that the Helvetii were the most powerful*. For *plurimum* see A. 390. c; B. 176. 2. b; G. 334; H. 409. 1; HB. 387. III. For the form of the clause see A. 558. a; B. 298; G. 555. 2; H. 594. II, 595. 1; HB. 521. 3. b. This whole passage in direct discourse would run as follows: *Perfacile factu est conata perficere, propter ea quod (ego) meae civitatis imperium obtinebo; non est dubium quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possint; (ego) meis copiis meoque exercitu vobis regna conciliabo.*

5. **copiis**: here *resources*, not *troops*.

6. **confirmat**: notice the three different meanings of *confirmo* in this chapter.

7. **regno occupato . . . sperant**: *they hope that having seized* (or *when they have seized*) *royal power they can, through the three very powerful and strong nations, get possession of the whole of Gaul.* The three nations are, of course, the Helvetii, Sequani, and Haedui. For *regno occupato* see A. 420; B. 227. 2; G. 410, 664; H. 489. 1; HB. 421.

8. **totius Galliae**: A. 410. a; B. 212. 2; G. 407. d; H. 477. I. 3; HB. 353. What case does *potior* usually take? — **posse**: *possum* has no future infinitive, but the present often has a future implication. A future infinitive is regularly used with *spero*.

Reread Chaps. I–III, observing tenses of the indicative. Notice that the story is told by perfects and historical presents. Details are filled in by imperfects, which describe rather than narrate.

PAGE 57

IV. 9. **per indicium**: *through informers* (lit. *information*). — **Moribus suis**: *according to their custom.* A. 418. a; B. 220. 3; G. 397; H. 475. 3; HB. 414.

10. **ex vinculis**: we should say *in chains*, but the pleading comes, so to speak, from within the chains. — **coegerunt**: the Helvetii were very willing to become masters of Gaul, but were not ready to give supreme power into the hands of Orgetorix. — **damnatum . . . oportebat**: *it must needs be that the punishment follow* (i.e. *be inflicted on*) *him* (*if*) *condemned.* What is the subject of *oportebat?*

11. **ut igni cremaretur**: a substantive clause in apposition with *poenam.* — **Die . . . dictionis**: *on the day set for the pleading of his cause*; *die* is abl. of time. For its gender see A. 97. a; B. 53; G. 64; H. 135; HB. 101. The genitive *dictionis* depends on *die*, and *causae* is obj. gen., depending on *dictionis*. See note on *regni*, p. 55, l. 24.

13. **familiam**: the usual meaning is *household*, particularly *slaves*. Perhaps here it means *clansmen*, though it is not certain that the clan system prevailed in Gaul at this time. — **ad . . . decem**: *to* (*the number of*) *10,000 men.*

14. **obaeratos**: many of the common people, either through poverty or through debt, gave themselves up to the service of a powerful lord, becoming nearly the same as slaves.

15. **eodem**: the adverb. — **per eos . . . eripuit**: *by means of these he escaped being tried.* What literally? What prepositions take the accusative only? The high-handed action of Orgetorix apparently led to rioting and almost to civil war. — **ne diceret**: A. 558. b; B. 295. 3; G. 548; H. 566; HB. 502. 3. b.

16. **ius . . . conaretur**: *was trying to enforce its right, i.e.* the right to bring criminals to account. For the mood of *conaretur* see A. 546; B. 288. 1; G. 585; H. 600. II. 1; HB. 524.

17. **multitudinem**: hasty levies. The power of the magistrates was military as well as civil.

19. **ut arbitrantur**: the beginner should notice that *ut* here is followed by the indicative, and cannot, therefore, mean *that, in order that*, or *so that*. With the indicative *ut* usually means either *as* or *when*. — **quin . . . consciverit**: *that he himself decreed death to himself*, i.e. *committed suicide.* A. 558; B. 298; G. 555. 2; H. 595. 1; HB. 521. 3. b. — **ipse**: A. 298. f; B. 249. 2; G. 311. 2; H. 509. 1; HB. 268.

V. 20. **nihilo minus**: *nevertheless* (*less by nothing*).

21. **ut . . . exeant**: a substantive clause explaining *id quod constituerant.* A. 563; B. 295. 4; G. 546; H. 565; HB. 502. 3. a.

The fact that the Helvetii persisted in their determination shows that there were real reasons for their migration. See note on p. 56, l. 15, at the end. — **Ubi**: *when*. A. 543; B. 287. 1; G. 561; H. 602; HB. 557. PAGE 57

22. **oppida, vicos, privata aedificia**: *fortified towns, villages* (not fortified), *isolated houses*.

23. **numero**: abl. of specification, or respect. — **reliqua**: *besides*, not here *the rest of*.

24. **secum**: A. 144. N. 1; B. 142. 4; G. 413. R. 1; H. 175. 7; HB. 418. a.

25. **portaturi erant**: *were going to carry*. — **ut . . . essent**: a clause of purpose. — **domum**: A. 427. 2; B. 182. 1. b; G. 337; H. 419. 1; HB. 450. b. — **reditionis**: the gerund *redeundi* might have stood in place of this. — **sublata**: see *tollo* in Vocab.

26. **subeunda**: see note on *ad eas res conficiendas*, p. 56, l. 21. — **trium mensium**: *for three months*. A. 345. b; B. 203. 2; G. 365. R. 2; H. 440. 3; HB. 355. The number of the Helvetii and their allies is given as 368,000. Estimating the supply of flour at only one pound per day for each person, we should have a sum total of more than 16,000 tons. An immense number of animals and wagons would be required to transport this great quantity of food, with the other baggage, and progress on the march would be necessarily slow.

27. **sibi**: A. 376; B. 188. 1; G. 350. 2; H. 425. 2; HB. 366. — **quemque**: from *quisque*. — **domo**: A. 93, 427. 1; B. 49. 4, 229. 1. b; G. 61. R. 2, 390. 2; H. 133. 1, 462. 4; HB. 97. 5, 451. a. — **efferre**: A. 563. a; B. 331. II; G. 423. N. 6; H. 565. 3; HB. 587. b.

28. **usi**: *having adopted*, from *utor*. But the idiomatic rendering is *persuade to adopt, burn, and set out*.

29. **cum iis**: *secum* might have been used as an indirect reflexive, but there would have been ambiguity, since *suis* refers to the subject of *proficiscantur*. A. 300. b; B. 244. II; G. 521. N. 3; H. 504. 3; HB. 262. 2.

30. **Boios**: the name of this tribe survives in the name Bohemia. They had probably been driven south by the advance of the Germans. There was a tribe of Boii in Cisalpine Gaul, probably kindred to these. See Introd., pp. 2, 3.

1. **Noreiam**: identified with the modern Neumarkt, in Styria. Near this town, in 113 B.C., the Cimbri defeated the Romans. See Introd., p. 5. — **oppugnarant**: for *oppugnaverant*. A. 181. a; B. 116. 1; G. 131. 1; H. 238; HB. 163. 1. — **receptos**: agrees with *Boios*, which is object of *asciscunt*. A. 496. N. 2; B. 337. 5 (336. 3); G. 664. R. 1; H. 639; HB. 604. 1. We may translate the sentence 58

PAGE 58

the Boii, who had, etc., *they receive to themselves and adopt* (lit. *join to themselves*) *as allies*. The dative *sibi* depends on *asciscunt*, while *ad se* depends on *receptos*.

VI. 3. **Erant**: *there were*. — **quibus itineribus**: A. 429. a; B. 218. 9; G. 389; H. 476; HB. 426. Notice the repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause, but do not imitate it in translation.

4. **possent**: subj. of characteristic. There may have been many roads, but there were only two so situated, or of such a kind, that they could use them. A. 535; B. 283. 2; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 5; HB. 521. 1. The Helvetii could, no doubt, have marched northward; but that would not have suited their purpose, and would have brought them into collision with the Germans. — **unum**: sc. *iter*. This ran westward along the right bank of the Rhone. The student while following the story should make constant use of the maps in this book.

5. **qua**: the adverb.

6. **ducerentur**: A. 537. 2; B. 284. 2; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 2; HB. 517. 2. The way was so narrow and difficult that only with great trouble could wagons be hauled over it one by one (in single file). A railway now follows this route from Geneva. The narrow part, where the Jura approaches the river, is called the Pas de l'Écluse. — **ut . . . possent**: a clause of result.

8. **alterum**: *the other*. The Helvetii wished to follow this route, crossing to the left bank of the Rhone and passing through the territory of the Allobroges, just south of the river.

9. **facilius**: the difficulty of reaching western Gaul through the Cévennes Mountains would, however, have been considerable.

12. **pacati erant**: by the Romans. See Introd., p. 6.

14. **non nullis**: A. 326. a; B. 347. 2; G. 449. 4; H. 656. 1; HB. 298. 2. — **locis**: A. 429. 1; B. 228. 1. b; G. 385. N. 1; H. 485. 2; HB. 436. — **vado**: in Caesar's time the Rhone seems to have been fordable in more places than now.

15. **Extremum**: how is this compared?

17. **persuasuros**: sc. *esse*, which is often omitted in the future active and perfect passive infinitives.

18. **bono animo**: *well-disposed, of good feeling*. A. 415; B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. 2; HB. 443. — **viderentur**: account for the mood and tense; notice that *existimabant* is the main verb of the sentence.

19. **eos**: cf. *cum iis*, p. 57, l. 29, and see the note. — **ire**: A. 563. c; B. 295. 2. N.; G. 553. 2. N.; H. 614; HB. 587. — **paterentur**: a substantive clause, object of both *persuasuros* and *coacturos*. The direct form of this sentence would be *Allobrogibus* (*nos*) *vel*

persuadebimus, quod nondum . . . videntur, vel vi cogemus ut per suos finis nos ire patiantur. PAGE 58

20. **Omnibus rebus comparatis**: may be translated by a clause beginning with *when* or *after*. A. 420. 1; B. 227. 2. a; G. 665; H. 489. 1; HB. 421. 3.

21. **qua die**: notice the gender, and cf. *is dies* below. See note on p. 57, l. 11. For the repetition of the antecedent cf. *quibus itineribus*, l. 3, and see A. 307. a; B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399. 1; HB. 284. 4. — **conveniant**: A. 531. 2; B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 590; HB. 502. 1.

22. **ante . . . Aprilis**: an idiomatic expression, equivalent here to *quintus dies ante Kalendas Aprilis*. The nominal date is March 28, 58 B.C. (found by counting backward 5 days, beginning with April 1); but, as the calendar was in a very confused state, authorities differ nearly a month in their estimates of the real date. The estimate of the famous astronomer Leverrier is March 24, the date of the spring equinox of that year. — **L. Pisone**: Caesar's father-in-law.

VII. 24. **Caesari**: emphatic position; depends on *nuntiatum esset*. — **id**: explained by the clause *eos . . . conari*.

25. **ab urbe**: *i.e.* from Rome. See Introd., p. 12. — **quam maximis**: see note on *quam maximum*, p. 56, l. 18; *potest* might have been omitted. Caesar is said to have made the journey from Rome to Geneva at the rate of about ninety miles a day.

26. **itineribus**: the plural refers to the successive stages of the journey.

27. **ad Genavam**: *before Geneva*. A. 428. a; B. 182. 3; G. 337. R. 4; H. 418. 4; HB. 453. 1. — **Provinciae . . . imperat**: *he levies upon the whole province as great a number of soldiers as possible.*

29. **legio una**: probably the tenth, Caesar's favorite legion. See Introd., pp. 31 and 36. — **ad Genavam**: *at Geneva*. A. 428. d; B. 182. 3; G. 386. R. 2; HB. 453. 1. — **Ubi . . . facti sunt**: *when the Helvetii were informed* (lit. *were made more certain*) *of his arrival.* For mood of *facti sunt* see note on *ubi*, p. 57, l. 21.

32. **qui dicerent**: *to say*. Why is *dicerent* subjunctive? — **sibi esse in animo**: *that they purposed* (*had it in mind*). What had they in mind? The answer, *iter facere*, gives the subject of *esse*. For *sibi* see A. 373; B. 190; G. 349; H. 430; HB. 374.

1. **ullo**: A. 311; B. 252. 4; G. 317. 1; H. 513; HB. 276. 7. 59

2. **propterea quod . . . nullum**: *because they had no other way*. There is strong emphasis on *nullum*, as is indicated by its unusual position. We might say in English *because other way they*

PAGE 59

had none. Why is *haberent* subjunctive? — **rogare**: sc. *se* as subject; in the direct form *rogamus*. The object of *rogare* is the substantive clause *ut . . . liceat*. — **eius voluntate**: *with his consent* (*willingness*).

3. **liceat**: for tense see A. 485. e; B. 268. 3; G. 509. a; H. 546; HB. 491. 2. Notice that the main verb of the sentence is *mittunt*, and that the subordinate verbs *dicerent* and *haberent* are in a secondary tense.

4. **occisum**: sc. *esse*. The killing of Cassius took place in 107 B.C. See Introd., p. 5.

5. **sub iugum**: cf. English 'subjugate.' Two spears were stuck into the ground and a third was fastened across their tops. Under this 'yoke' the captured soldiers, laying aside their arms and their outer garments, were compelled to pass in token of defeat and humiliation. — **concedendum**: sc. *esse;* impersonal use. Trans. *thought permission ought not to be granted*, lit. *thought it was not to be yielded*. Consult the grammar regarding the second (or passive) periphrastic conjugation of verbs.

6. **inimico animo**: cf. *bono animo*, p. 58, l. 18. — **data facultate**: abl. abs., expressing a condition, *if the opportunity were given*.

7. **faciendi**: gerundive, agreeing with *itineris*. A. 503, 504; B. 339. 1; G. 427, 428; H. 623, 626; HB. 612. I, 613.

8. **ut . . . posset**: gives the purpose of Caesar's temporizing reply. — **dum**: *until*. A. 553; B. 293. III. 2; G. 572; H. 603. II. 2; HB. 507. 5.

9. **diem**: not *a day*. See Vocab.

10. **quid**: *anything*. A. 310. a; B. 252. 1; G. 107. 1. R.; H. 186; HB. 276. 1. — **ad Idus Aprilis**: *on April 13;* but see note on p. 58, l. 22.

11. **reverterentur**: *let them return*. A. 588; B. 316; G. 652; H. 642; HB. 534. 2. Caesar's words in direct form would be: *Diem ad deliberandum sumam; si quid vultis, ad Idus Aprilis revertimini*.

VIII. 12. **militibus**: the new levies. Notice the construction. The soldiers are regarded as instruments in the hands of the general.

13. **lacu**: what is the ablative plural?

14. **influit**: the Rhone flows into the lake at one end and out at the other. — **ad montem Iuram**: Caesar's works were on the left, or southern, bank of the Rhone. They were constructed to the point where the Jura range, approaching the right bank, leaves the narrow pass mentioned in Chap. VI.

15. **Helvetiis**: i.e. *Helvetiorum finibus*. — **milia**: see note on *milia passuum*, p. 56, l. 14. The accusative depends on *perducit*, and denotes extent of space. PAGE 59

16. **pedum sedecim**: the height is regarded as a quality, or characteristic, of the wall. A. 425. a; B. 203. 2; G. 365. R. 2; H. 440. 3; HB. 355. Caesar's barricade was not continuous, but was built only where the nature of the ground rendered it necessary. For five sixths of the entire distance the bank of the river is so steep that no defenses were needed. Where the slope was gentler, the bank was cut down perpendicularly, or nearly so, to the distance of sixteen feet from the top. The earth was thrown out to the side towards the river; this produced the effect of a trench. See the plan, p. 59.

17. **castella**: *little fortresses*, or *redoubts*, serving as rallying-places for the soldiers. See the illustration on p. 107. — **quo facilius posset**: *in order that* (lit. *by which*) *more easily he might be able*. A. 531. a; B. 282. 1. a; G. 545. 2; H. 568. 7; HB. 502. 2. b. For tense of *posset* see note on *ut . . . occuparet*, p. 56, l. 27.

18. **conarentur**: A. 593; B. 324. 1; G. 663. 1; H. 652; HB. 539. — **ea dies**: the Ides of April; see l. 10.

19. **reverterunt**: in tenses from the present stem this verb is usually deponent, *revertor, reverti*.

20. **negat se posse**: *says that he cannot*. *Nego* is regularly used instead of *dico . . . non*. — **more**: see note on *moribus suis*, p. 57, l. 9. — **iter**: i.e. *permission to go*.

21. **ulli**: here equivalent to *cuiquam*. Notice that both *quisquam* and *ullus* are regularly used only in negative sentences, or sentences implying a negative. See note on *ullo*, l. 1. — **conentur**: subj. of ind. disc. Caesar probably said *Si vim facere conabimini, prohibebo*. A. 516. 1. a; B. 302. 1; G. 595; H. 574; HB. 579. a. — **prohibiturum**: i.e. *se prohibiturum esse*.

22. **ea spe deiecti**: *disappointed in this hope*, lit. *cast down from* (cf. English 'downcast') *this hope*. A. 402; B. 214; G. 390. 2. N. 1; H. 462. 1; HB. 408. 2. — **navibus iunctis**: abl. abs., expressing means.

1. **alii vadis**: we might have expected an *alii* before *navibus*; *i.e.* some tried to cross by bridges of boats and by rafts, others by fording at the shallow places. But the omission indicates that only a few tried to ford the river, while the main body tried to cross in the other ways. The word *alii* is in partitive apposition with *Helvetii*. A. 282. a; B. 169. 5; G. 322; H. 393. 4; HB. 319. I. a. — **qua**: the adverb. 60

PAGE 60

2. **noctu**: an adverb.

3. **si . . . conati**: *having tried (to see) whether they could force their way through.* A. 576. a, 574; B. 300. 3; G. 460. 1. b, 467; H. 649. II. 3; HB. 582. 2. a. b.

4. **conatu**: see notes on *ea spe deiecti*, p. 59, l. 22, and *conata*, p. 57, l. 2. — **destiterunt**: the subject is *Helvetii.*

IX. 5. **Relinquebatur una via**: observe the order of words; *there was left (only) the one road.* — **Sequanis invitis**: abl. abs., expressing a condition.

6. **angustias**: the Pas de l'Écluse, nineteen Roman miles from Geneva; see note on p. 58, l. 6. At this point the Sequani, if so disposed, could easily stop the progress of the Helvetii. — **His . . . possent**: *not being able to persuade these by their own influence.* The position of *his* emphasizes its connecting force. — **sponte**: see *spontis* in Vocab.

7. **possent**: cf. *ubi . . . arbitrati sunt*, p. 57, l. 21. Notice that the indicative in temporal clauses expresses merely time; the subjunctive time and something else, here cause. A. 546; B. 288. 1; G. 579; H. 600. I. II. 1; HB. 525. Reread a few chapters of the text, noticing the force of moods in the temporal clauses. — **Dumnorigem**: cf. p. 56, l. 28.

8. **deprecatore**: abl. abs. with *eo*. *Deprecator* is a noun denoting the agent. A. 236. a; B. 147. 1; G. 181. 1; H. 334; HB. 206. 1. The prefix *de* means *away*. The *deprecator* 'prays away,' or averts, something. In this case Dumnorix is to try to overcome the refusal of the Sequani to allow the Helvetii to pass. — **impetrarent**: the object is easily supplied.

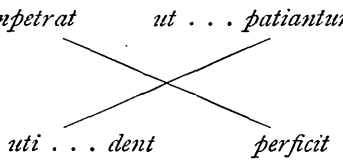
9. **gratia**: *on account of his personal popularity;* abl. of cause. — **plurimum**: A. 390. c; B. 176. 2. b; G. 334; H. 409. 1; HB. 387. III.

11. **in matrimonium duxerat**: *had married.* For the fact see p. 57, l. 1. *To marry*, said of the woman, is *nubere*. — **cupiditate**: for formation of the word *cupiditas* see A. 241; B. 149; G. 181. 2. b; H. 345; HB. 207. 2. — **novis rebus**: *a change of government.* For case see A. 367; B. 187. II. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1; HB. 362. The adjective *novus* lacks a comparative.

12. **quam plurimas . . . volebat**: *wished to have as many states as possible bound (to him) by his services. To have a thing bound* easily passes into the meaning *to have bound a thing.* Thus arose the form of the perfect tense in English and other modern languages.

14. **ut . . . patiantur**: obj. of *impetrat*, as is *obsides uti . . .*

dent of *perficit*. The arrangement of these clauses illustrates the chiastic order, named from the Greek letter χ (*chi*): — PAGE 60



15. **Sequani, Helvetii**: in partitive apposition with the implied subject of *dent*. He causes them to exchange hostages, the Sequani pledging themselves not to obstruct the Helvetii, the Helvetii undertaking to pass through without doing any damage. The clauses *ne . . . prohibeant* and *ut . . . transeant* depend on *obsides inter sese dent*, which practically means *agree*. A. 563. d; B. 295. 4; G. 546; H. 565; HB. 502. 3. a.

X. 17. **Helvetiis . . . animo**: see note on *sibi . . . animo*, p. 58, l. 32.

18. **Haeduorum**: across the Arar from the Sequani. See Introd., p. 6. — **Santonum**: on the western coast of Gaul. This word, like some other names of tribes, has forms of both the second and third declensions; cf. *Santonos*, p. 61, l. 17.

19. **non longe**: a glance at the map will show that the distance was fully 100 miles. In their old home the Helvetii were really nearer the province. They would be more dangerous, however, on the more exposed side of the province (*locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis*, l. 22). — **quae civitas**: *a tribe which*. A. 307. e; B. 251. 4. b; G. 616. 2; H. 399. 3; HB. 327. Tolosa (Toulouse) was the chief city of the Tolosates.

20. **Id si fieret**: protasis to *futurum (esse)*, which is in ind. disc., depending on *intellegebat*. The subject of *futurum* is *ut . . . haberet*. A. 569. a; B. 297. 2; G. 553. 3; H. 571. 1; HB. 521. 3. a. Trans. *he knew that if this happened* (*i.e.* if the Helvetii reached the territory of the Santones), *it would be very dangerous* (*with great danger*) *to the province to have* (lit. *that it would have*), etc. Direct: *Id si fiet, magno . . . erit* (or *futurum est*) *ut homines . . . habeat*.

21. **provinciae**: obj. gen., depending on *periculo*. — **bellicosos**: A. 245; B. 151. 3; G. 182. 10; H. 346; HB. 209. 2.

22. **locis**: dat., depending on *finitimos*. — **patentibus**: *exposed*, unprotected by natural barriers, as mountains. — **maxime frumentariis**: A. 128; B. 74. 2; G. 87. 6; H. 159; HB. 121.

PAGE 60

23. **munitioni**: A. 238. b; B. 147. 3; G. 181. 2. b; H. 333; HB. 206. 2. A few references for word-formation are given in these notes, and the student should look up other derivations for himself. The subject is treated in A. 227–267; B. 146–159; G. 176–200; H. 318–375; HB. 202–218. The student should also frequently consult the Word-Groups in this book. For case of *munitioni* see note on *omnibus*, p. 56, l. 3.

24. **legatum**: see Introd., p. 32. — **Italiam**: Cisalpine Gaul; see Introd., p. 21.

25. **legiones conscribit**: Caesar levied these legions on his own responsibility, without the authority of the senate. He now had six legions. See Introd., p. 36.

26. **Aquileiam**: Aquileia was an important city near the head of the Adriatic. It was strongly fortified, and served to protect Cisalpine Gaul against invaders from the eastward. In imperial times it was a city of great size and enormous wealth. — **proximum iter**: past Cremona and Turin and over the Cottian Alps.

28. **Ibi**: *i.e.* in the Alps.

30. **Compluribus**: A. 120; B. 70; G. 89. R. 3; H. 127. 4; HB. 116. b. Notice here the curious interlocked order; *compluribus* is to be taken with *proeliis*, *his* with *pulsis*. — **ab Ocelo**: what is the force of the preposition with the name of a town?

32. **Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciae**: *of the Vocontii* (*a people*) *of the farther province*, *i.e.* Transalpine Gaul.

61

1. **Segusiavos**: these were clients of the Haedui. Caesar seems to have crossed the Rhone a little to the east of its junction with the Arar (Saône).

2. **extra provinciam**: Caesar undoubtedly here overstepped his authority. Outside of the Roman province, the Gallic tribes were independent of Roman rule. But the alliance of the Helvetii with the Sequani, who were friendly to the Germans, was a real menace to Roman influence in Gaul. The historian Livy represents the Helvetii as ready to march upon Narbo itself. See Introd., pp. 6–8.

Notice the quick succession of events expressed by the historical presents, from *praeficit* to *ducit*.

XI. 3. **iam**: Caesar's journey to Italy and back must have taken nearly two months, so that the time would now be June.

4. **pervenerant, populabantur**: notice the change of tense.

5. **se suaque**: *themselves and their* (*possessions*).

6. **legatos**: carefully distinguish between the two meanings of *legatus*. — **rogatum**: *to ask*. A. 509; B. 340. 1; G. 435; H. 633; HB. 618.

PAGE 61

7. **Ita**: here begins a sentence in *oratio obliqua*, *i.e.* indirect discourse, depending on the idea of saying implied in *rogatum*. Cf. *esse*, p. 56, l. 3. The main verb of the sentence is *meritos esse*, which has *se* as its subject. For *ita . . . ut* see A. 537. N. 2; B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 570. 3; HB. 521. 2. a. foot-note 1.

8. **vastari debuerint**: for tenses see A. 485. c, 486. a; B. 268. 6, 270. 2; G. 254. R. 1, 513; H. 550, 618. 2; HB. 478, foot-note 2 on p. 311.

10. **Ambarri**: the name means 'dwellers around the Arar.' See the map of Gaul.

11. **depopulatis**: passive in meaning, though the verb is commonly deponent. A. 190. b; B. 112. b; G. 167. N. 2; H. 222. 2; HB. 291. d. — **non prohibere**: *could not* (lit. *did not*) *keep off; non prohibemus* in direct discourse.

13. **trans Rhodanum**: north of the Rhone and east of the Arar. — **vicos**: see note on p. 57, l. 22. — **possessiones**: *i.e.* lands.

14. **sibi . . . reliqui**: *that there was nothing left* (*nothing of a remainder*) *to them but the bare ground* (*soil of the land*). Notice the *ŏ* of *solum;* the adjective is *sōlus*. For *reliqui* see A. 346. a. 1; B. 201. 2. a; G. 369. R. 1; H. 440. 5. N.; HB. 346. a.

15. **non exspectandum sibi**: sc. *esse*. Trans. *that he ought not to wait*. See note on *concedendum*, p. 59, l. 5. For *sibi* see A. 374; B. 189. 1; G. 355; H. 431; HB. 373. 1.

16. **sociorum**: the Haedui and Ambarri, allies of the Roman people. — **consumptis**: we may translate as if an active participle agreeing with *Helvetii*.

17. **pervenirent**: for mood see note on *dum*, p. 59, l. 8.

XII. 18. **Flumen est Arar**: *there is a river, the Saône.* Most of the Haedui lived west of the river, and most of the Sequani east; but the words *per finis* show that the river was not absolutely a dividing line between the two tribes.

19. **lenitate**: abl. of manner. A. 412; B. 220. 1; G. 399; H. 473. 3; HB. 445. 3.

20. **in utram partem fluat**: *in which direction it flows.* A. 573, 574; B. 300. 1. a; G. 452. 2, 467; H. 649. II; HB. 537. b.

21. **transibant**: observe the tense. The Helvetii had proceeded about 100 miles from Lake Geneva. — **exploratores**: *scouts*, usually detachments of mounted soldiers sent to reconnoiter. Explain the formation of *explorator;* cf. *deprecatore*, p. 60, l. 8.

22. **tris partis**: *three fourths*. In such expressions as this (a cardinal number with *partes*) a denominator larger by one than the numerator is regularly understood.

PAGE 61

23. **id flumen**: A. 395; B. 179. 1; G. 331. R. 1; H. 413; HB. 386.

24. **Ararim**: with this accusative compare the ablative *Arari*, p. 62, l. 10. — **de tertia vigilia**: *during the third watch, i.e.* after the beginning of the third watch. The time from sunset to sunrise was divided into four equal watches, the length of which would of course vary with the season. In June the third watch, beginning at midnight, would extend to about two o'clock. — **cum legionibus tribus**: abl. of accompaniment. For formation of *legio* see note on *munitioni*, p. 60, l. 23.

25. **castris**: this camp was probably in the northern angle formed by the Rhone and Saône.

26. **impeditos**: *i.e.* unable to defend themselves on account of their burdens and because they were engaged in crossing.

27. **concīdit**: carefully distinguish the verbs *concīdo*, *concĭdo*, and *concēdo*, and notice the composition of each. Another account, probably incorrect, makes Labienus, not Caesar in person, the victor over the Tigurini. Labienus had been left in charge of the fortifications along the Rhone, but had probably rejoined Caesar before the battle. The place of this slaughter was probably a point about twelve miles above the junction of the Saône and Rhone. The rest of the Helvetii had crossed here, or a little farther north. — **mandarunt**: i.e. *mandaverunt*. Cf. *oppugnarant*, p. 58, l. 1.

28. **in proximas silvas abdiderunt**: notice the accusative *silvas*; they fled into the nearest woods and hid there. The *sese* of l. 27 is object of *abdiderunt* as well as of *mandarunt*. — **Is pagus**: the word *pagus*, *canton*, is used of local divisions of territory and also of the inhabitants of the divisions.

30. **patrum nostrorum memoria**: *in the time* (lit. *recollection*) *of our fathers*. The year was 107 B.C. See Chap. VII and Introd., p. 5.

62

2. **iugum**: notice the case, and look up in the grammar the uses of *sub*. See note on p. 59, l. 5, for the custom to which *sub iugum miserat* refers.

3. **quae pars, ea**: i.e. *ea pars quae*. Notice how much more forcible Caesar's order is. A. 307. b. N.; B. 251. 4. a; G. 616. 1, 620; H. 399. 3; HB. 284. 5. 6.

4. **princeps poenas persolvit**: *was the first to pay* (*paid first*) *the penalty*. *Persolvere* means *to pay to the uttermost*. For the use of *princeps* see A. 290; B. 239; G. 325. R. 6; H. 497. 3; HB. 243.

5. **Qua in re**: *and thereby*.

6. **eius soceri L. Pisonis avum**: *the grandfather of his* (Caesar's) *father-in-law, Lucius Piso*. See Introd., p. 11.

PAGE 62

7. **L. Pisonem . . . interfecerant**: *the Tigurini had killed Lucius Piso, the legate, in the same battle in which they had killed Cassius.*

XIII. 9. **reliquas copias Helvetiorum**: notice the position of these words before the conjunction *ut*.

10. **faciendum curat**: *caused to be built.* A. 500. 4; B. 337. 8. b. 2 (337. 7. b. 2); G. 430; H. 622; HB. 612. III.

11. **exercitum**: no doubt all six legions. The battle with the Tigurini had been fought with three.

12. **cum . . . intellegerent**: *when they comprehended that he had done in one day that which they had themselves accomplished only with the greatest difficulty in twenty days, namely the crossing of the river.* The clause *ut flumen transirent* explains *id quod confecerant*, and hence takes the usual form of a substantive clause depending on *conficio*. A. 568; B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 566; HB. 521. 3. a. The great numbers of the Helvetii and their allies, and the large amount of baggage which they must have carried, rendered the movements of the host very slow.

14. **cuius legationis**: equivalent to *quorum legatorum.*

15. **Cassiano**: Caesar names the war from the general on the Roman side; cf. l. 1. For the suffix *-anus* see A. 249. 2; B. 152. 1; G. 182. 5; H. 353; HB. 210. 5.

16. **egit**: *parleyed;* it is equivalent in this use to a verb of saying, and therefore introduces indirect discourse. Divico's speech extends to the end of the chapter. — **Si . . . Helvetios**: the direct form would be *si faciet, ibunt atque erunt Helvetii.* A. 589. 1. 2. a; B. 319. A. B; G. 656. 1. 2; H. 646; HB. 534. 1. b. 2. II.

18. **constituisset**: Divico said *constitueris*, fut. perf. This sentence may be translated *if the Roman people would make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii would go to that place and remain there, where Caesar (should have) settled them and (should have) wished them to be.* — **sin . . . reminisceretur**: *but if he persisted in pursuing them with war, he should remember;* for the direct *sin perseverabis, reminiscere* (imperative). *Sin* is regularly used to introduce the second of two conditions opposed to each other. Notice the doubled *per* in *persequi perseveraret.* For mood of *reminisceretur* see A. 588; B. 316; G. 652; H. 642; HB. 534. 2. IV.

19. **incommodi**: a mild word; cf. *insignem calamitatem*, l. 4. For case see A. 350. c; B. 206. 2; G. 376; H. 454. 1; HB. 350.

20. **Quod adortus esset**: *as to the fact that he had attacked.* A. 572. a; B. 299. 2; G. 525. 2; H. 588. 3. N.; HB. 552. 2. The subjunctive is due to indirect discourse.

21. **cum**: *at a time when. Cum* is a relative word (originally

PAGE 62

quom, cf. *qui*), and the subjunctive is closely akin to the subjunctive of characteristic. — **transissent**: this represents an indicative of direct discourse.

22. **ne magnopere tribueret**: *he should not give much credit*, or *let him not give much credit*. This is a prohibition expressed indirectly. A. 450, 588. N. 2; B. 276. b, 316. a; G. 270. R. 2, 652; H. 561. 1, 642. 4; HB. 501. a. 2, 534. 2. IV. Notice that *suae* is a direct reflexive, while *ipsos* refers to the Helvetii.

23. **Se . . . didicisse**: *they had been so taught by* (lit. *had so learned from*) *their fathers and forefathers*. What sort of clause may be expected after an *ita?*

25. **dolo**: A. 431; B. 218. 3; G. 401. N. 6; H. 476. 3; HB. 438. 1. — **ne committeret ut . . . caperet**: *he should not allow that place where they had taken their stand to receive a name from*, etc. Cf. *ne tribueret*, l. 22. — **ut . . . caperet . . . proderet**: substantive clause, object of *committeret*.

26. **internecione**: Divico uses a plain word to convey his threat, though he had used the mild word *incommodi* to refer to the old disaster.

27. **memoriam**: i.e. *calamitatis internecionisque*.

As this is the first long passage of connected indirect discourse which the student has had in this book, he should study it carefully. Changing the indirect to the direct form is a very useful exercise in syntax and composition. Consult A. 590 for a treatment of this passage.

XIV. 28. **His**: sc. *legatis*. — **Eo, quod**: *for this reason*, (*namely*) *because*. *Eo* is abl. of degree, or measure, of difference, with *minus*, but almost equivalent to an abl. of cause. See note on *hoc facilius*, p. 56, l. 4. What is the subject of *dari?*

30. **eo . . . quo . . . accidissent**: *that he was the more indignant, the less they had happened in accordance* (i.e. *in proportion as they had not happened in accordance*) *with the deserts of the Roman people*. In direct discourse this whole sentence would run: *Eo* (or *hoc*) *mihi minus dubitationis datur, quod eas* (or *has*) *res quas commemoravistis memoria teneo, atque eo* (or *hoc*) *gravius fero quo minus merito populi Romani acciderunt*. The Romans always considered their opponents the aggressors.

31. **qui si**: *for if they* (the Roman people). — **alicuius iniuriae**: *of some* (*act of*) *injustice*. A. 310. b; B. 252. 2; G. 315. N. 1; H. 512; HB. 276. 2. For the case of *iniuriae* see A. 349. a; B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. 2. N. 2; HB. 354.

32. **fuisset, fuisse**: *fuisset, fuit* in direct discourse. A. 517. c; B. 304. 1. 3. a; G. 597. R. 3; H. 579. 1, 583. 3; HB. 581, 582. 3. a. The meaning is that it was not difficult for them to be on their guard, and they would have been, if they had been conscious of having committed some act of injustice. — **deceptum**: sc. *eum* (i.e. *populum Romanum*) as subject. PAGE 62

33. **neque . . . timeret**: *they did not know that anything had been done by them on account of which they should fear.* For *timeret* see A. 535. a; B. 282. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 569; HB. 513. 2. The antecedent of *quare* is the implied subject of *commissum.*

1. **timendum**: sc. *sibi esse, that they ought to fear.* Cf. *concedendum*, p. 59, l. 5. — **Quod**: *but* (lit. *as to which*). A. 397. a; B. 185. 2; G. 610. R. 2; H. 510. 9. — **contumeliae**: for case cf. *incommodi*, p. 62, l. 19. 63

2. **vellet**: probably for *vellem* of direct discourse, the sense being, 'If I were willing to forget the old outrage, can I put aside the memory of the recent wrongs also?' — **num**: A. 332. b; B. 162. 2. b; G. 456; H. 378; HB. 231. 1. d. — **iniuriarum**: explained by the following *quod*-clauses. — **eo**: *i.e.* Caesar.

5. **posse**: A. 586; B. 315. 2; G. 651. R. 1; H. 642. 2; HB. 591. a. — **Quod gloriarentur**: *the fact that they boasted.* This and the following *quod*-clause are the subject of *pertinere.* A. 572. N.; B. 299. 1; G. 525. 2; H. 588. II. 3; HB. 552. 2. Why are the verbs subjunctive?

6. **se intulisse**: *that they had inflicted.*

7. **eodem pertinere**: *pointed in the same direction, i.e.* to their ruin. — **Consuesse**: for *consuevisse*; a perfect with present meaning. A. 205. N. 2; B. 262. A; G. 175. 5; H. 299. 2; HB. 487. — **enim**: note that the conjunctions meaning 'for,' *enim* (always postpositive), *etenim, nam, namque*, introduce independent sentences. — **deos**: how is this word declined?

8. **doleant**: for mood cf. *posset*, p. 59, l. 18. Notice that the tense is present, though this speech depends on *respondit*, a secondary, or historical, tense. — **quos**: the antecedent is *his*, l. 9.

1. **concedere**: depends on *consuesse.* — **Cum**: *though.* A. 549; B. 309. 3; G. 587; H. 598; HB. 526. 64

2. **si . . . dentur**: protasis to *sese . . . facturum.* In direct discourse this sentence would run: *Si obsides a vobis mihi dabuntur, uti ea quae pollicemini (vos) facturos (esse) intellegam, et si . . . intulistis, . . . satisfacietis, (ego) vobiscum pacem faciam.*

3. **Haeduis**: dat. with *satisfaciant.* A. 368. 2; B. 187; G. 344; H. 426. 1. N. 2; HB. 362. I.

PAGE 64

In a part of Caesar's speech it is difficult to tell from the indirect form whether he spoke in the first person or not; *vellet* and *eo*, p. 63, l. 2, and *posse*, p. 63, l. 5, might refer to the Roman people rather than to Caesar. If the sentence is so understood, the use of *eo* is regular; but if it refers to Caesar, we should expect *se*. Caesar's speech may be found given in direct discourse in G. 661; H. 653.

6. **institutos esse**: cf. *didicisse*, p. 62, l. 24.

7. **testem**: why is this singular?

XV. 10. **equitatum**: see Introd., p. 37.

11. **coactum**: see note on p. 60, l. 12. It agrees with *quem*, the object of *habebat*.

12. **qui videant**: a relative clause of purpose; *qui* is plural because its antecedent, *equitatum*, is equivalent to *equites*.

13. **Qui**: *but they*. A. 308. f; B. 251. 6; G. 610. R. 1; H. 510; HB. 566. — **alieno**: *unfavorable*. What literally? What would *suo* mean?

14. **pauci cadunt**: the rest ran away. See Chap. XVIII, end.

15. **sublati**: see *tollo* in Vocab.

16. **multitudinem**: A. 241; B. 149; G. 181. 2. b; H. 345; HB. 207. 2.

17. **novissimo agmine**: *with the rear of their column*, abl. of means.

19. **satis habebat**: *held (considered) it sufficient*; the object of *habebat* is the infinitive *prohibere*. — **in praesentia**: *for the present*.

20. **Ita**: refers forward to *uti*. — **dies**: acc., expressing duration of time.

21. **agmen**: A. 239; B. 147. 4; G. 181. 2. a; H. 336; HB. 206. 3. — **nostrum primum**: sc. *agmen*; *our van*. — **non . . . passuum**: *not more than five or six miles* (each day).

22. **quinis**: A. 136, 137. a; B. 79, 81. 4. a; G. 97; H. 163, 164. 1; HB. 133. — **milibus**: A. 406; B. 217. 1; G. 398; H. 471; HB. 416. Caesar was waiting until a favorable opportunity for attacking should present itself.

XVI. 23. **Haeduos frumentum**: A. 396; B. 178. 1. a; G. 339. a; H. 411; HB. 393.

24. **essent polliciti**: subj. of ind. disc. In making his demand Caesar reminded them of their promise. A. 592. 3; B. 323; G. 508. 3; H. 649. I; HB. 535. 1. a. — **flagitare**: A. 463; B. 335; G. 647; H. 610; HB. 595. — **frigora**: *the cold climate* (times of cold). The singular, *frigus*, means *the cold*. Gaul seems to have been colder in Caesar's time than France is now.

26. **frumenta**: *grain*, or *crops*. The singular usually denotes the harvested grain. — **ne . . . quidem**: these words always inclose the word or words to be emphasized. PAGE 64

28. **quod . . . subvexerat**: *which he had brought up the river Saône in* (lit. *by*) *boats*. For the construction of *flumine Arari* cf. *quibus itineribus*, p. 58, l. 3. — **uti**: from *utor*; notice how it differs from *uti*, l. 20. — **minus poterat**: *could not very well*. *Minus* is often a weaker *non*.

29. **iter averterant**: to the valley of the Liger (Loire). See the map of Gaul.

30. **Diem . . . Haedui**: *the Haedui kept putting him off day after day*. *Diem* is accusative of duration of time. — **conferri . . . dicere**: *they kept saying that it* (the grain) *was being collected, was being transported, was close by*. By the omission of connectives (asyndeton) the climax is heightened.

31. **diutius**: *longer* (than was right), i.e. *too long*.

1. **metiri**: see Introd., p. 36. The infinitive depends on *oporteret*. A. 454; B. 330; G. 535; H. 615; HB. 585. 65

3. **Diviciaco et Lisco**: partitive apposition to *principibus*. Diviciacus was a druid. See Introd., p. 27, and note on *Dumnorigi*, p. 56, l. 28.

4. **quem**: its antecedent is *magistratui*. There is in this sentence a slight confusion between the two meanings of *magistratus, magistracy* and *magistrate*. — **vergobretum**: the word means 'judge.' "Down to the time of the French Revolution, the magistrate of Autun was called Verg or Vierg." Autun is near the site of the Haeduan town Bibracte.

5. **annuus**: pred. adj., where English idiom would require an adverb.

7. **propinquis**: (*being*) *near*, with *hostibus*.

8. **sublevetur**: A. 540; B. 286. 1; G. 541; H. 588. II; HB. 535. 2. a. — **magna ex parte**: *to a great extent*.

9. **multo gravius**: Caesar accused the Haedui of ingratitude in not helping him, when he was acting in response to their prayers; but he complained much more bitterly because they had played him false.

XVII. 12. **quod**: the rel. pron., *what, that which* (sc. *id*, obj. of *proponit*). — **Esse non nullos**: direct *sunt non nulli*. Nearly all the speeches in Caesar are in indirect discourse.

13. **privatim . . . possint**: *have more power, though in private station*. Compare the case of Orgetorix (Chap. IV) with his numerous dependents.

PAGE 65

15. **ne . . . conferant**: trans. *from furnishing.* A. 558. b; B. 295. 3; G. 548; H. 596. 2; HB. 502. 3. b. For the plural *conferant* after the collective noun *multitudinem* cf. *exirent*, p. 56, l. 2.

16. **Praestare**: here begins the *seditiosa atque improba* (*reckless*) *oratio*, which extends through *erepturi.* (*They say that*) *it is better, if they* (the Haedui) *cannot longer hold the first place in Gaul, to endure the dominion of Gauls than that of Romans, and that they* (the multitude) *ought not to doubt*, etc.

19. **Haeduis**: A. 381; B. 188. 2. d; G. 345. R. 1; H. 427; HB. 371. — **sint erepturi**: *are intending to take away*, or *will take away.* For the form of the clause cf. *quin . . . possent*, p. 57, l. 4.

20. **nostra**: i.e. *Romanorum.*

21. **se**: the indirect reflexive, referring to the main subject, *Liscus.* — **Quin etiam**: *why, even.* — **quod**: see note on *quod adortus esset*, p. 62, l. 20.

23. **id**: notice its emphatic position before *cum periculo.* It is the object of *fecerit*, and refers to the clause *quod . . . enuntiarit.* Notice that all subjunctives in this speech are either present or perfect, and that the speech is introduced by *proponit*, a historical present All the subjunctives might have been changed to secondary tenses.

XVIII. 26. **pluribus praesentibus**: *with too many present*, abl. abs.

27. **iactari**: *to be openly discussed.* A. 263. 2; B. 155. 2; G. 191. 1; H. 364; HB. 212. 1.

28. **ex solo**: i.e. *ex eo solo.* — **Dicit**: sc. *Liscus.*

29. **reperit esse vera**: *he found that the facts were* (*truth was*) *as follows.*

30. **Ipsum esse Dumnorigem**: *that Dumnorix was the man.* — **summa audacia**: equivalent to *audacissimum.* For the case cf. *bono animo*, p. 58, l. 18.

32. **rerum novarum**: cf. *novis rebus*, p. 60, l. 11. For the case see A. 349. a; B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. 1; HB. 354. — **portoria**: *duties* on goods carried into, out of, or through a country. Cf. *porto, carry.*

33. **vectigalia**: *revenues*, as from public pastures or monopolies. — **parvo pretio**: *at a low price.* A. 416; B. 225; G. 404; H. 478; HB. 427. 1. — **redempta habere**: *had bought in.* See note on p. 60, l. 12. — **propterea . . . nemo**: *because when he bid, no one dared to bid against him.* Dumnorix bought for a lump sum the right to collect the taxes, expecting to recoup himself and make a profit.

PAGE 66

2. **ad largiendum**: *for bribing.* See note on *proficiscendum*, p. 56, l. 17.

3. **suo sumptu**: *at his own expense.*

4. **domi**: *i.e.* among his own people. A. 427; B. 232. 2; G. 411. R. 2; H. 484. 2; HB. 449. a.

5. **largiter posse**: equivalent to *multum posse.* — **huius . . . conlocasse**: *to confirm (for the sake of) this power he had given (placed) his mother* (in marriage) *to a man among the Bituriges, most noble and powerful there.*

7. **uxorem**: the daughter of Orgetorix; cf. p. 57, l. 1.

8. **sororem ex matre**: *half-sister, on the mother's side.* — **nuptum conlocasse**: *had placed to marry*, i.e. *had given in marriage.* A. 509; B. 340. 1. b; G. 435; H. 633. 1; HB. 618.

9. **Helvetiis**: A. 367; B. 187. II. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1; HB. 362.

10. **suo nomine**: *in his own name, i.e.* on private grounds.

13. **Si quid accidat**: *if anything should happen*, a euphemistic expression for *if any disaster should come.* — **in spem venire**: *he conceived (came into) the hope.* — **regni**: obj. gen., depending on *spem.* The gerundive *obtinendi* agrees with it.

14. **imperio populi Romani**: *under the government of the Roman people.*

15. **Reperiebat**: notice the tense. Caesar kept asking questions, and kept learning something new.

16. **quaerendo**: A. 507; B. 338. 4. b; G. 433; H. 631; HB. 612. IV. — **quod . . . adversum**: this expression is nearly equivalent to *quae fuga equitum*, and has *fugae* of l. 17 for its virtual antecedent. We may translate freely *the beginning of the flight in the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish which had taken place . . . had been made*, etc.

17. **ante**: A. 433. 1, 424. f; B. 144. 1, 223; G. 415, 403. N. 4; H. 420. 4, 488. 1; HB. 303. c, 424.

18. **auxilio Caesari**: A. 382. 1; B. 191. 2. b; G. 356; H. 433; HB. 360. b.

XIX. 22. **res**: *facts*, given in the four *quod*-clauses which follow. These clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive, on the principle of indirect discourse, as they represent Caesar's thought at the time of the action of the main verb. — **quod**: (*namely*) *that.*

23. **obsides . . . curasset**: *had caused hostages to be exchanged between them.* See note on *faciendum curat*, p. 62, l. 10.

24. **iniussu suo**: *without his* (Caesar's) *orders.* A. 103. b. 5; B. 57. 1; G. 70; H. 143. 1; HB. 106. 1.

PAGE 66

25. **magistratu**: the vergobret Liscus. — **satis**: used as a noun, subject of *esse*.

26. **quare in eum animadverteret**: *wherefore he should proceed against (turn his attention toward) him.* See note on *timeret*, p. 62, l. 33.

27. **rebus**: A. 367; B. 187. II. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1; HB. 362.

29. **studium**: *attachment.*

30. **cognoverat**: see note on *consuesse*, p. 63, l. 7. What is the meaning of *cognosco?* Of *cognovi?*

31. **animum offenderet**: *he might wound the feelings.* For the form of the clause see A. 564; B. 296. 2; G. 550. 1. 2; H. 567. 1; HB. 502. 4. — **priusquam . . . conaretur**: *before he should make any attempt.* A. 551. b; B. 292. 1. b; G. 577; H. 605. II; HB. 507. 4. b. What is the negative idea in this clause which makes it necessary to use *quicquam* instead of *aliquid?*

33. **per . . . Troucillum**: connect this phrase with *conloquitur*. — **C.**: stands for *Gaium*. A. 1. a, 108. c; B. 373; G. 1. R. 1, and p. 493; H. 5. 3, 354. 6; HB. 1. a, 678. 3.

34. **cui**: *fidem habebat* is equivalent to a verb meaning 'trusted.'

35. **omnium rerum**: *in all respects.*

67

1. **ipso**: Diviciacus.

2. **sint dicta**: subj. in an ind. quest. — **quisque**: *each one*, giving his individual information or opinion; *omnes* would mean *all*, giving the same information or expressing the same opinion.

3. **sine eius offensione animi**: *without wounding his feelings.*

4. **ipse**: Caesar. — **causa cognita**: *after investigating the case.* — **statuat**: a somewhat milder word than *animadverteret*, p. 66, l. 26.

XX. 6. **ne quid gravius statueret**: obj. of *obsecrare; that he would not take any too severe measures.* When is *quis, quid*, an indefinite pronoun? — **Scire se**: ind. disc., depending on the idea of saying in the verb *obsecrare;* direct (*ego*) *scio.*

7. **quemquam**: subject of *capere*. Just as *nec* or *neque* is regularly used instead of *et non*, so *nec quisquam* replaces *et nemo*. — **ex eo**: *from that (fact).*

8. **ipse**: the speaker, Diviciacus, while *ille* refers to Dumnorix. — **plurimum**: sc. *posset* from *minimum posset* below, and cf. p. 57, l. 4.

10. **quibus opibus ac nervis**: *i.e.* the influence and strength gained through Diviciacus.

11. **gratiam**: sc. *suam*, referring, as all the reflexives in this passage, to the speaker. Notice the gerundive construction used to

express purpose. — **uteretur**: the subject is Dumnorix, as of *crevisset* above. PAGE 67

12. **amore fraterno**: *love for his brother.* The adj. is used for an obj. gen. — **vulgi**: subjective gen.

13. **Quod si**: *now, if.* — **a Caesare**: like abl. of agent, because *accidisset* is nearly equivalent to a passive, *should have been done.*

14. **neminem non**: *everybody.* In direct form this sentence would run: *Quod si quid ei a te gravius acciderit* (fut. perf.), *cum ego hunc locum amicitiae apud te teneam, nemo existimabit non mea voluntate factum (esse).*

15. **futurum**: sc. *esse; it would come to pass.* Its subject is the substantive clause *uti . . . averterentur.* Cf. p. 60, l. 21. The form *futurum uti animi averterentur* is periphrastic for *animos aversum iri.* A. 569. a; B. 270. 3. a; G. 248; H. 619. 2; HB. 472. c.

16. **cum**: is this the preposition? Notice *peteret.*

18. **faciat**: A. 565. a; B. 295. 8; G. 546. R. 2; H. 565. 4; HB. 530. 2. — **tanti**: *of so great weight.* A. 417; B. 203. 3; G. 379, 380. 1; H. 448. 1; HB. 356. 1. In indirect discourse this sentence would run: *Tanti tua apud me gratia est uti . . . meum dolorem tuae voluntati . . . condonem.*

19. **rei publicae**: *to the state*, obj. gen. — **eius voluntati**: *out of deference to his wish; voluntati* is ind. obj. of *condonet.* What is the literal translation?

22. **in reliquum tempus**: *for the future.*

23. **praeterita**: *bygones.*

24. **Dumnorigi**: A. 362; B. 187. 1; G. 345; H. 425. 1; HB. 365.

Caesar yielded to policy as well as to the entreaties of Diviciacus. The punishment of Dumnorix at this time would have alienated the Haedui, on whom Caesar's army depended for food.

XXI. 26. **exploratoribus**: see note on p. 61, l. 21.

27. **qualis esset**: an indirect question.

28. **qui cognoscerent**: (*men*) *to learn*, a relative clause of purpose.

29. **esse**: sc. *ascensum* as subject. — **De tertia vigilia**: see note on p. 61, l. 24.

30. **legatum pro praetore**: the *legatus* ordinarily had no independent military authority, but was the assistant of his general. The title *legatus pro praetore* applied to Labienus probably indicates that he had received by special enactment the power and rank of propraetor, empowering him to act as Caesar's substitute when necessary. See *legati* in Introd., p. 32.

PAGE 67

31. **iis . . . cognoverant**: *those* (*men as*) *guides who knew the way*; cf. l. 28.

PAGE 68

1. **quid . . . sit**: *what his plan was.* For case of *consili* see A. 343. b; B. 198. 3; G. 366; H. 447; HB. 346. Labienus from the summit was to attack the enemy in the rear, while Caesar attacked them in front. — **de quarta vigilia**: what time was this?

3. **rei**: A. 349. a; B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. 1; HB. 354.

4. **L. Sullae**: as Sulla died in 78 B.C., Considius's military experience had extended over a long period of years. — **M. Crassi**: sc. *exercitu.* Crassus was one of the triumvirs; see Introd., p. 11. He defeated the gladiators and slaves under Spartacus in 71 B.C.

XXII. 6. **summus**: A. 293; B. 241. 1; G. 291. R. 2; H. 497. 4; HB. 244.

7. **passibus**: abl. with the comparative *longius.*

8. **neque . . . aut . . . aut**: trans. *and . . . neither . . . nor.*

9. **Labieni**: sc. *adventus.* — **cognitus esset**: goes with *cum*, l. 6. — **equo admisso**: *with his horse at full speed*, abl. abs. *Equum admittere* means *to let a horse go*, give him free rein.

10. **accurrit, dicit**: notice the asyndeton. — **voluerit**: sc. *Caesar* as subject.

12. **in collem subducit**: *led* (from below) *up on the hill.* The numerous instances of asyndeton in this chapter add life to the narrative.

13. **aciem instruit**: Caesar awaited the coming of the Helvetii, thinking that they had already destroyed Labienus. — **erat praeceptum**: *the order had been given.* What literally? What is the subject of the verb?

15. **ut . . . fieret**: a clause of purpose.

17. **Multo die**: *when day was well advanced.*

18. **timore perterritum**: *terror-stricken.*

19. **quod . . . renuntiavisse**: *had reported to him as* (*a thing*) *seen what he had not seen.* The participle *viso* is used substantively.

20. **quo consuerat intervallo**: *at what interval he was accustomed*, i.e. *at his accustomed interval.* This was five or six miles. For attraction of antecedent into relative clause see A. 307. b; B. 251. 4; G. 616. 1; H. 399. 3; HB. 284. 6. For case of *intervallo* see A. 412; B. 221; G. 399; H. 473. 3; HB. 422. I.

XXIII. 22. **Postridie eius diei**: lit. *on the morrow* (*next day*) *of that day. Postridie* is equivalent to *postero die.* For the genitive see A. 359. b; B. 201. 3. a; H. 446. 5; HB. 380. c. — **biduum supererat cum oporteret**: *two days remained* (*before the time*) *when it would be necessary.*

23. **a Bibracte**: why is a preposition used? Most neuter names of towns ending in *e*, though *i*-stems, have the ablative in *e*. Bibracte was on Mont Beuvray, not far from the site of the modern Autun. The Gallic fortifications may still be traced. PAGE 68

25. **rei**: why dative? — **prospiciendum**: sc. *esse*; *that he ought to make provision for*.

26. **Bibracte**: acc. Why? From a course almost due west Caesar now turned more nearly northward.

27. **decurionis**: see Introd., p. 38.

29. **existimarent**: A. 540. N. 2; B. 286. 1. a; G. 541. N. 3; H. 588. II. 1; HB. 535. 2. b. N. — **eo magis**: *all the more* (*more by this*).

30. **superioribus locis occupatis**: *though they had seized the heights*; abl. abs., used concessively. — **commisissent**: subj. because the thought of the Helvetii.

31. **eo**: *for this reason*, abl. of cause. — **posse**: sc. *Romanos* as subject.

32. **a novissimo agmine**: sc. *nostro*, *at our rear*. The Helvetii by turning back put themselves in Caesar's power.

XXIV. 1. **id**: A. 395; B. 179. 2; G. 342; HB. 391. 3. — **animum advertit**: *turned his attention toward*, i.e. *noticed*. Usually *animadvertere* is used. For mood and tense of verb see A. 543; B. 287. 1. a; G. 561; H. 602; HB. 554, 557. 69

2. **qui sustineret**: *to check*.

3. **in colle medio**: *half-way up the hill*. — **triplicem aciem**: see Introd., p. 44.

4. **legionum quattuor**: numbered VII–X. See Introd., p. 36.

5. **conscripserat**: cf. p. 60, l. 25.

6. **auxilia**: see Introd., p. 37.

7. **sarcinas**: the packs carried by the soldiers, often very heavy. See Introd., p. 40. — **iis**: the two raw legions and the *auxilia*, who were on the top of the hill.

8. **muniri**: the remains of this intrenchment have been discovered.

9. **impedimenta**: see Introd., p. 40.

10. **confertissima acie**: *by the great density of their line*, lit. *by their very dense line*; abl. of means with *reiecto*. — **phalange**: an unbroken mass, with the shields of those in front overlapping.

11. **sub**: *up towards*. The student should refer constantly to the plan on p. 70 in reading the following account of the battle between the Romans and the Helvetii.

XXV. 12. **omnium equis**: *i.e.* those of his officers and personal staff.

PAGE 69

15. **pilis**: see Introd., pp. 35, 45.

16. **Gallis impedimento**: A. 382. 1. N. 1; B. 191. 2; G. 356; H. 433; HB. 360. b.

17. **quod . . . poterant**: this clause is subject of *erat*. Subordinate to *poterant* are, first, an abl. abs.; second, a *cum*-clause; third, two infinitives, closely connected with the second of which is another abl. abs.

18. **conligatis**: *pinned together*. — **ferrum**: the soft iron shank connecting the head with the shaft.

19. **evellere**: sc. *id*, i.e. *ferrum*. — **sinistra impedita**: abl. abs., causal. Shields were carried of course on the left arm.

20. **multi . . . praeoptarent**: a clause of result. Notice the emphatic position of *multi*.

21. **manu**: abl. of separation. — **nudo**: *unprotected*, not *naked*.

22. **et . . . et**: *both . . . and*. — **pedem referre**: *to fall back* (facing the foe); *terga vertere* means *to run away*. — **circiter**: an adverb.

23. **mille**: A. 134. d; B. 80. 5; G. 95. R. 3; H. 168; HB. 131. 3. — **Capto**: sc. *ab iis*.

24. **Boii et Tulingi**: cf. Chap. V. — **milibus**: abl. of means.

25. **novissimis**: i.e. *novissimo agmini*. For case see note on *Gallis impedimento*, l. 16.

26. **latere aperto**: *i.e.* the right side, which was unprotected by shields. The Boii and Tulingi, who had just reached the battle-ground, seem to have tried to pass round in the rear of the Romans, to attack them on the right flank. The manœuver was frustrated when the third line faced about, as described at the end of the chapter. — **circumvenire**: depends on *adgressi* (*sunt*).

28. **conversa . . . intulerunt**: *turned about and charged in two divisions*. What literally? The first two lines charged forward upon the Helvetii, who had been already once driven before them; the third line faced about to receive the attack of the Boii and Tulingi. See the plan, p. 70.

XXVI. 31. **ancipiti**: *twofold*, explained by the last sentence of Chap. XXV.

32. **alteri, alteri**: *i.e.* the Helvetii, the Boii and Tulingi.

70 1. **hoc toto proelio**: abl. of time within which.

2. **hora septima**: as the time from sunrise to sunset was divided into twelve equal hours, the seventh hour in the latter part of June would extend from noon to about fifteen minutes past one. — **aversum hostem**: *the back of an enemy*. This was not a flight, but an orderly retreat.

PAGE 70

3. **Ad multam noctem**: cf. *multo die*, p. 68, l. 17. — **ad impedimenta**: *at the baggage.* Here, according to Plutarch, were the women and children, who were probably massacred when the Roman soldiers burst in.

4. **pro vallo**: *as a wall.*

5. **coniciebant**: notice the force of this and the following imperfects.

8. **impedimentis**: why ablative?

9. **e filiis**: A. 346. c; B. 201. 1. a; G. 372. R. 2; H. 444. 1; HB. 346. e. — **captus est**: agrees with the nearer of the two subjects.

10. **nocte**: A. 424. b; B. 231. 1; G. 393. R. 2; H. 417. 2; HB. 440. — **continenter**: *without stopping.* The words *nullam . . . intermisso* which follow are an explanation of *continenter.*

PAGE 71

1. **in finis Lingonum**: see the map of Gaul. It is almost certain that the battle took place near Montmort, a village about three miles from Toulon-sur-Arroux. Excavations have disclosed the form of the intrenchment on the hill, and have yielded calcined bones, fragments of helmets and javelins, and other relics. The time was probably the last of June (June 29, according to one authority).

2. **quarto**: the third according to modern reckoning. The Romans counted the day from which the reckoning was made.

3. **sepulturam**: A. 238. b. N. 1; B. 147. 3. a; G. 181. 9; H. 328. 4; HB. 206. 2.

4. **ne . . . iuvarent**: depends on *litteras nuntiosque misit*, which implies the idea of commanding.

5. **Qui . . . habiturum**: in direct discourse (*vos*) *si iuveritis*, (*ego vos*) *eodem loco quo Helvetios habebo.* This means that Caesar would treat the Lingones as enemies.

XXVII. 11. **eos**: the Helvetii, not the *legati.*

12. **essent**: subj. because dependent on *exspectare*, and forming a part of Caesar's command. — **iussisset**: introduced by *cum*, l. 9.

14. **perfugissent**: subj. of informal ind. disc. — **ea**: i.e. *obsides, arma, servi.* — **conquiruntur**: A. 556; B. 293. 1; G. 229. R., 570; H. 533. 4; HB. 559.

15. **Verbigenus**: the Helvetii consisted of four divisions, or cantons. The Tigurini have been already mentioned, in Chap. XII. See Introd., p. 5.

16. **perterriti**: masc. because *hominum milia sex* means *six thousand persons.* — **ne supplicio adficerentur**: *that they would be visited with punishment, i.e.* put to death. The clause depends on the expression *timore perterriti*, which is nearly equivalent in meaning to *timentes.*

PAGE 71

18. **occultari . . . ignorari**: *be concealed* (for a time, until they had a sufficient start) *or remain altogether unknown.*

19. **existimarent**: see note on p. 68, l. 29.

20. **Germanorum**: if the fugitives had reached the Germans, they might have secured sympathy and active help against the Romans.

XXVIII. 21. **Quod**: the rel. pron. How is it to be translated? — **quorum . . . imperavit**: *he ordered those through whose territory they had gone to collect them and bring them back, if they wished to be blameless in his sight.* For *sibi* see A. 378. 1; B. 188. 2. c; G. 352; H. 425. 4; HB. 370.

23. **in . . . habuit**: a mild way of saying that he massacred them or sold them into slavery.

26. **frugibus amissis**: cf. p. 57, l. 24.

27. **quo famem tolerarent**: *with which they could relieve their starvation.* A. 531. 2; B. 282. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 1; HB. 517. 2.

28. **facerent**: *furnish.* Observe the construction used with *imperavit*, and that in l. 29 with *iussit.* — **ipsos**: contrasted with *Allobrogibus.*

29. **ea ratione**: *for this reason.*

30. **discesserant**: A. 267. b; B. 159. 3. e. N.; G. 200. 2. a; H. 375. 3; HB. 218. 1. b. — **vacare**: A. 563. b; B. 331. IV; G. 532; H. 565. 2; HB. 587. — **ne**: does this particle introduce clauses of purpose or of result?

32. **finitimi**: Caesar wished to have the Helvetii between the province and the Germans. See the location of the Helvetii on the map of Gaul.

72

1. **Boios**: obj. of *conlocarent.* — **Haeduis**: ind. obj. of *concessit*, of which the clause *ut . . . conlocarent* is dir. obj. — **quod . . . cogniti**: *because they were known (to be men) of extraordinary bravery.* The Haedui held the headship of one of the two parties in Gaul, and wished to strengthen their power.

3. **postea**: perhaps after the close of the Gallic War.

4. **parem atque ipsi erant**: *equal to that in which they themselves were*, or *the same as they themselves enjoyed.* A. 384. N. 2; B. 341. 1. c; G. 643; H. 657. 1. N.; HB. 307. 2. a. Before the migration of the Helvetii the Boii were not settled in a definite home. Cf. p. 57, l. 30.

XXIX. 6. **tabulae**: the tablets used by the Romans were of wood covered with wax. The *stilus*, a pointed piece of metal, was used to scratch the characters in the wax. — **litteris Graecis**: *in*

Greek characters. The Gauls had learned these from the Greek colony of Massilia; they seem not to have had a native alphabet. PAGE 72

7. **et**: connects *repertae sunt* and *relatae (sunt)*.

8. **ratio confecta erat**: *an account had been made up.* — **qui**: the interrogative adjective, introducing an indirect question.

9. **possent**: subj. of characteristic. — **quot . . . mulieresque**: sc. *domo exissent.*

10. **Quarum rerum, capitum**: the idea of personality disappears. Cf. English 'five hundred head' (used of cattle).

11. **milium**: pred. gen. Trans. *the total of all these items was 263,000 souls of the Helvetii.*

13. **ad**: *up to, about.*

14. **fuerunt**: notice that this does not agree with *summa*, but takes its plural form from *milia CCCLXVIII.*

16. **c et x**: it is uncertain whether this number includes the Boii or not. Even if it does not, the number of killed, captured, and missing during the campaign would be not far below 250,000. No doubt some escaped singly to other tribes, but still the slaughter must have been frightful. Some later writers make the numbers smaller than here given.

XXX. 17. **totius Galliae**: *i.e.* Celtic Gaul. See Introd., p. 23.

18. **gratulatum**: A. 509; B. 340. 1; G. 435; H. 633; HB. 618.

19. **Intellegere sese**: direct, *(nos) intellegimus.* The rest of the sentence depends on *intellegere.* — **veteribus**: learn to compare and decline *vetus.* — **Helvetiorum . . . Romani**: *injuries inflicted by the Helvetii* (subj. gen.) *on the Roman people* (obj. gen.). These injuries are given in Chap. XII.

20. **ab his poenas repetisset**: *had inflicted punishment on them*, more literally *had claimed the penalty from them.* Cf. *poenas persolvit*, p. 62, l. 5.

21. **ex usu**: *to the advantage.*

22. **florentissimis rebus**: *though their affairs were in a most prosperous condition.*

24. **domicilio**: A. 382. 2; B. 191. 1; G. 356; H. 433. 3; HB. 361.

26. **haberent**: in the same construction as *inferrent, potirentur, deligerent.*

27. **in . . . indicere**: *appoint for a fixed time.*

28. **Sese habere**: this is the reason for their request. — **quasdam**: A. 310; B. 252. 3; G. 313; H. 512; HB. 276. 5.

1. **iure iurando . . . sanxerunt**: *made a compact with one another under oath that no one should disclose (the results of their* 73

PAGE 73 *deliberation*) *except* (*those*) *to whom it* (the duty of so doing) *had been assigned by general agreement.*

XXXI. 5. **ante fuerant**: cf. p. 72, l. 18.

7. **Caesari ad pedes**: *at Caesar's feet.* For the dat. see A. 377; B. 188. 1. N.; G. 350. 1; H. 425. 4. N.; HB. 368.

8. **se id contendere**: (saying that) *they strove for this*, explained by the substantive clause *ne . . . enuntiarentur.*

9. **quam**: *than*, with *minus.*

10. **si enuntiatum esset**: *if disclosures should be* (*should have been*) *made.* The verb is impersonal. — **in cruciatum venturos**: *should come into torture*, i.e. *should suffer torture.*

11. **Galliae**: the speech which begins here is long, but not difficult as a whole. Try to get the direct form of each sentence.

12. **factiones**: *parties.* See Introd., p. 6.

14. **multos annos contenderent**: *had been striving for many years* (and were still striving). A. 471. b; B. 260. 4; G. 234; H. 535. 1; HB. 485. — **factum esse**: *it came about.*

15. **Sequanis**: the Sequani lived across the Saône from the Haedui, and both tribes claimed control of the river.

16. **posteaquam**: this word regularly takes the indicative, like *postquam.* Why is *adamassent* (for *adamavissent*) subjunctive?

17. **copias**: *riches.*

18. **esse**: sc. *eos*, i.e. *Germanos*, as subject.

19. **clientis**: *dependents*, weaker tribes under their dominion.

22. **qui**: the antecedent is *eos* (*they*) understood, subject of *coactos esse.*

23. **hospitio**: *hospitium* was a relation between two independent states in consequence of which mutual favors of honor and hospitality were granted. The word was used also of a similar relation between individuals of different nations.

26. **sese . . . essent**: the substance of the oath.

27. **recusaturos quominus essent**: *refuse to be.* A. 558. b; B. 295. 3; G. 549; H. 568. 8; HB. 502. 3. b.

28. **se**: the speaker, Diviciacus.

29. **potuerit**: subj. of characteristic.

31. **Romam ad senatum**: A. 428. j; B. 182. 2. b; G. 337. R. 6; H. 418. 1; HB. 450. c. See Introd., p. 7.

33. **peius**: (*a*) *worse* (*thing*), subject of *accidisse.*

74 1. **Ariovistus**: some see in this name the German word *Heerfürst*, 'army-leader.'

2. **optimus**: this region still maintains its supremacy.

3. **occupavisset, iuberet**: be careful to observe the tenses here.

4. **paucis mensibus**: abl. of degree, or measure, of difference, as *ante* has the force of a comparative.

5. **quibus . . . pararentur**: *for whom a place and habitations were to be provided.* For the subj. see A. 531. 2; B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 590; HB. 502. 2.

6. **Futurum esse uti omnes pellerentur**: equivalent to *omnis pulsum iri, all would be driven.* See note on p. 67, l. 15.

8. **Gallicum**: sc. *agrum*, subject of *conferendum esse.*

9. **hanc**: i.e. *Gallicam.*

10. **ut semel**: *as soon as* (*when once*).

11. **ad Magetobrigam**: *at Magetobriga.* The situation of this town as given on the map is conjectural. The battle is thought to have taken place in 60 B.C. See Introd., p. 7.

12. **nobilissimi cuiusque**: A. 313. b; B. 252. 5. c; G. 318. 2; H. 515. 2; HB. 278. 2. b.

13. **exempla**: *warning examples;* defined more closely by *cruciatus, tortures.*

15. **iracundum**: A. 253. b; B. 150. 1; G. 182. 2; H. 328. 5; HB. 208. 3.

16. **Nisi quid auxili**: *unless something of help*, i.e. *some help.*

17. **Gallis**: dat. of agent with *esse faciendum.*

18. **ut . . . emigrent**: in apposition with *idem.*

20. **quaecumque**: A. 151. a; B. 91. 8; G. 111. 2; H. 182. 3; HB. 140. d.

21. **non dubitare quin . . . sumat**: *he* (the speaker, Divitiacus) *did not doubt that he* (Ariovistus) *would inflict.* For the *quin*-clause cf. p. 57, l. 4. — **de obsidibus supplicium sumat**: cf. *ab his poenas repetisset*, p. 72, l. 20.

24. **ne . . . traducatur**: for the construction cf. *ne . . . conferant*, p. 65, l. 15.

Observe the tenses of the subjunctive in this speech. In the earlier part we have imperfects and pluperfects, except *potuerit*, p. 73, l. 29. In the latter part all are presents or perfects.

XXXII. 27. **Hac oratione habita**: *after this speech had been delivered.* An ablative absolute should seldom be translated literally.

29. **Animadvertit Caesar**: notice the inversion of subject and predicate. The effect is about like, 'It was very noticeable to Caesar.' — **unos**: *alone.* A. 134. a; G. 95. R. 1; H. 166. 1.

30. **tristis**: translate by an adverb.

32. **respondere**: cf. *flagitare*, p. 64, l. 24.

33. **neque . . . posset**: *and could not get a single word out of them.*

PAGE 75

2. **Hoc**: cf. *eo*, p. 62, l. 28.

5. **adesset**: A. 524; B. 307. 1. 2; G. 602; H. 584; HB. 504. 3. a. The imperfect here is accounted for by the sequence of tenses.

6. **reliquis, Sequanis**: these words are emphatic, and contrasted with each other. Notice that each stands first in its clause. *Sequanis* is dat. of agent, modifying *essent perferendi*.

XXXIII. 10. **sibi . . . futuram**: *that he would attend to this matter*. What literally?

11. **Magnam**: emphatic by position. — **beneficio**: during Caesar's consulship, apparently at his recommendation, Ariovistus had been officially recognized by the Roman senate as *rex atque amicus*. It was already known that the Helvetian migration was preparing, and Caesar probably wished to secure the neutrality of Ariovistus in the coming Gallic campaign. See Introd., p. 7.

12. **iniuriis**: *acts of injustice*. A. 100. c; B. 55. 4. c; G. 204. N. 5; H. 138. 2; HB. 240. 5. b.

13. **secundum**: a preposition.

14. **quare**: equivalent to *quibus rebus*, abl. of cause. The singular shows that *quare* was felt as an adverb, *wherefore*.

15. **putaret**: subj. of characteristic. — **quod . . . videbat . . . intellegebat**: these clauses give two of the *multae res*. — **fratres appellatos**: *who had been called brothers*.

17. **apud**: *in the hands of*.

18. **quod**: *a condition which*, subject of *esse*.

20. **Germanos . . . videbat**: *that the Germans should get the habit of crossing the Rhine and that a great number of them should come into Gaul he saw was perilous to the Roman people*.

22. **periculosum**: what is the meaning of the suffix *-osus*? — **sibi**: with *temperaturos*. A. 367; B. 187. II. a; G. 346; H. 426. 2; HB. 362.

23. **quin exirent**: *from issuing forth*. A. 558; B. 298; G. 555. 1; H. 595. 2; HB. 502. 3. b.

24. **Cimbri Teutonique**: see Introd., p. 5.

26. **Rhodanus**: *only the Rhone*. — **quibus rebus**: dat., depending on *occurrendum*.

27. **quam maturrime**: cf. *quam maximum*, p. 56, l. 18. — **occurrendum**: sc. *esse*; *that he ought to meet* or *forestall*.

29. **ferendus**: used adjectively, *bearable*.

By making the danger from Ariovistus appear as great as that which had threatened Rome from the Cimbri and Teutoni, Caesar sought to explain and justify his actions against the Germans.

PAGE 75

XXXIV. 31. **medium utriusque**: *between the two.* The genitive with *medius* is rare in prose.

33. **utriusque** : *of both.* — **Ei legationi**: i.e. *iis legatis.*

PAGE 76

1. **Si . . . fuisse**: direct, *Si quid mihi a Caesare opus esset, ego ad eum venissem.* A. 589. b. 1. 2; B. 321. A. B; G. 656. 1. 2; H. 647; HB. 581. b. 1. Trans. *if he wanted anything*, etc. What is the literal meaning? Be sure that you find the right *opus* in the Vocabulary.

2. **quid, se**: both accusatives are governed by *velit.* Trans. *wanted anything of him.* Observe carefully the use of pronouns in this and the previous sentence.

6. **quid . . . esset**: ind. quest., subject of *videri.* — **sua Gallia**: notice the emphasis on *sua.*

7. **Caesari**: dat. of possession. — **negoti**: depends on *quid.* A. 346. a. 3; B. 201. 2; G. 369; H. 441; HB. 346.

XXXV. 9. **Quoniam**: this conjunction cannot introduce *appellatus esset*, because another conjunction, *cum*, comes between. It must, therefore, introduce *referret.*

10. **beneficio**: cf. p. 75, l. 11. It is explained by the clause *cum . . . appellatus esset.*

11. **hanc gratiam referret**: *made this return*, explained by the substantive clause *ut . . . gravaretur . . . putaret.*

13. **discendum sibi**: *that he was under obligation to learn.*

14. **haec esse quae**: *these were* (*the things*) *which.* This is the principal clause of the sentence. — **primum, ne . . . traduceret**: this and the following clauses are in apposition with *haec.* They have the form, therefore, which clauses depending on *postulo* regularly take. We may supply *ut* to introduce *redderet* and *permitteret.* A. 563; B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 565; HB. 502. 3. a.

17. **ut . . . liceret**: *that they might return* (lit. *it might be allowed to them to return*) *with his consent those which they had.* Notice the redundancy of words; *permitteret*, *voluntate*, and *liceret* contain about the same idea.

18. **neve**: regularly used for *et ne.* It introduces Caesar's third demand, which, like the second, is in two parts. — **neve**: *nor.*

19. **Si fecisset**: *si feceris, if you do* (*shall have done*), in the direct form. — **sibi**: refers to Caesar.

21. **si non impetraret**: *if he should not obtain his request.* — **sese**: subject of *neglecturum.* It is repeated by the *se* of l. 24. — **M. Messala . . . consulibus**: 61 B.C.

23. **obtineret**: *should hold*, not *obtain.* — **quod . . . posset**: *so far as he could do it with benefit to the state.* A. 535. d; B.

PAGE 76

283. 5; G. 627. R. 1; H. 591. 3; HB. 521. 1. f. — **rei publicae**: gen.

XXXVI. 26. **ut . . . imperarent**: a substantive clause, subject of *esse*, the predicate being *ius*. Ariovistus said, 'It is a law of war that those who have conquered rule as they wish those whom they have conquered.'

28. **victis**: *the conquered*; dat. of the participle, masc., used as a noun. — **ad alterius praescriptum**: *according to the dictation of another*.

29. **consuesse**: see note on p. 63, l. 7.

31. **se impediri**: subject of *oportere*. A. 565. N. 3; B. 330; G. 535; H. 615; HB. 585. Trans. *he ought not to be hindered.* What would be a literal rendering? — **Haeduos**: subject of *esse factos*.

32. **temptassent**: why subjunctive? What mood does *quoniam* regularly take?

33. **Magnam**: observe the emphasis of its position (*it was a great injustice that Caesar was committing*).

77

1. **qui . . . faceret**: a causal relative clause. A. 535. e; B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 592; HB. 523. — **suo, sibi**: the former of these words is a direct reflexive, referring to Caesar; the latter is an indirect reflexive, referring to Ariovistus. Ariovistus feared that Caesar's coming might make the Haedui refuse to pay the tribute.

2. **neque . . . neque**: *but neither . . . nor*.

3. **si . . . convenisset**: *if they stood by that which had been agreed upon*.

5. **longe . . . afuturum**: *the name 'brothers of the Roman people' would be far away from them, i.e.* would not help them.

6. **Quod . . . denuntiaret**: *as for Caesar's threatening him.* The subjunctive is due to indirect discourse.

7. **secum, sua**: indirect and direct respectively. — **Cum vellet, congrederetur**: in direct discourse *cum volet, congrediatur* (*let him join battle*, subj. expressing a command in the third person); or perhaps addressed directly to Caesar, *cum voles, congredere* (imperative).

9. **tectum non subissent**: perhaps not to be taken literally, but meaning that they had no fixed abiding-place.

XXXVII. 11. **Haec**: put first for emphasis.

12. **ab, a**: two prepositions are necessary, because there were two embassies. — **Treveris**: on the Moselle. The name survives in the modern Trèves. — **Haedui**: sc. *veniebant*.

13. **questum**: supine from *queror*, expressing purpose. — **Haru-**

des: cf. p. 74, l. 5. — **transportati essent, popularentur**: why subjunctive? PAG 77

14. **eorum**: i.e. *Haeduorum.* — **obsidibus datis**: abl. abs, expressing means; *not even by giving hostages.*

15. **Ariovisti**: *i.e.* on the part of Ariovistus. — **pagos . . . consedisse**: depends on *questum* understood, while above we have a *quod*-clause. Caesar represents this as a migration, not merely a military movement. A description of the Suebi is given in Bk. IV, Chaps. I–III. The name survives in the modern *Swabia.*

16. **ripas**: the plural denotes various places along the right bank.

20. **Quibus rebus**: abl. of cause.

25. **minus . . . posset**: *resistance could be made less easily.* For the impersonal use of *resisti*, see A. 372; B. 187. II. b; G. 217; H. 302. 6; HB. 364. 2. We may supply the dative *iis*, and translate *they could be resisted.*

27. **quam celerrime potuit**: *as quickly as he could.*

28. **magnis itineribus**: *by forced marches.* See Introd., p. 40.

29. **contendit**: apparently from the country of the Lingones; see p. 71, ll. 1 and 11–13. The time was probably about the middle of August.

XXXVIII. 30. **tridui**: gen. of quality, or descriptive gen.; the adjective required by the rule is contained in the compound word, which is equivalent to *trium dierum.* — **viam**: A. 390; B. 176. 4. a; G. 333. 2; H. 409; HB. 396. 1. — **nuntiatum est**: what is its subject?

32. **quod**: its antecedent is *Vesontionem*, which is masculine. For gender of *quod* see A. 306; B. 250. 3; G. 614. R. 3. b; H. 396. 2; HB. 326. 1. — **est**: this clause is not a part of the quotation. On the site of Vesontio is built the modern city of Besançon.

33. **suis finibus**: the land which he had taken from the Sequani, in the modern Alsace. — **Id**: the capture of Vesontio.

2. **usui**: *useful*, lit. *for use.* 78

3. **facultas**: *abundance.* Cf. the meaning of the same word in the next line. — **natura loci**: *i.e.* natural defenses. The town was situated in a bend, or loop, of the river.

4. **ad ducendum bellum**: *for prolonging a war.*

5. **ut**: *as if.* See the plan of Vesontio, p. 77.

6. **spatium**: obj. of *continet.* — **amplius pedum sescentorum**: A. 407. c; B. 217. 3; G. 296. R. 4; H. 471. 4; HB. 416. d. — **pedum**: gen. of quality, or descriptive gen., used as predicate of *quod.* The present distance across this 'neck of land' is consider-

PAGE 78

ably more than that given. The distance across the plateau which forms the top of the hill is about 600 feet.

8. **ripae**: nom. pl.

9. **circumdatus**: *put around, i.e.* built around. In compounds *do* often means 'put.'

XXXIX. 13. **moratur**: A. 556; B. 293. 1; G. 229. R.; H. 533. 4; HB. 559. — **ex**: *in consequence of.*

14. **magnitudine**: abl. of quality, or description, used predicatively. The Romans were rather small of stature. Cf. Bk. II, Chap. XXX.

15. **exercitatione**: *skill*, the result of practice.

17. **aciem**: *fierceness*, or *glare.*

18. **timor**: *a panic.* A. 238. a; B. 147. 2; G. 181. 2. b; H. 333; HB. 206. 4.

19. **non mediocriter**: these words illustrate the figure called litotes, for which the grammar may be consulted. Use the index. — **mentis animosque**: *minds and spirits.* The Germans were less familiar, therefore more terrible, than the Gauls.

20. **tribunis, praefectis**: see Introd., pp. 33, 34. Many of these men, no doubt, belonged to families to which Caesar was in debt, pecuniarily or politically. Those who owed their appointment to this were naturally of small use from a military point of view. — **reliquis**: young men who accompanied Caesar in order to gain some military experience under an able general, or to see what life in the field was. They were called *contubernales* ('tent-companions') of the general.

22. **quorum . . . inlata**: *of these one giving one reason, another another.* For *alius alia* see A. 315. c; B. 253. 2; G. 221. R. 1; H. 516. 1; HB. 279. 3. — **quam . . . diceret**: *which he said made it necessary for him to set out.* What is the literal translation? For mood of *diceret* cf. *existimarent*, p. 68, l. 29.

24. **pudore**: *a sense of shame.* — **ut . . . vitarent**: a clause of purpose, depending on *remanebant.*

25. **vultum fingere**: *i.e.* so as to conceal their fear.

26. **tabernaculis**: see Introd., pp. 41, 43.

27. **suum**: emphatic, contrasted with *commune.*

28. **totis castris**: *throughout the camp.* A. 429. 2; B. 228. 1. b; G. 388; H. 485. 2; HB. 436. a. — **testamenta**: not verbal wills, which, when made just before a battle, had binding force, but regularly attested documents.

30. **centuriones**: see Introd., p. 33. — **quique**: *and those who.*

PAGE 78

31. **perturbabantur**: *were getting frightened;* observe the tense. — **ex his**: equivalent to a genitive.

33. **ipsos**: could *se* have been used here?

PAGE 79

1. **rem frumentariam**: obj. of *timere*. We should expect a nominative, subject of *posset*. — **ut . . . posset**: A. 564; B. 296. 2; G. 550. 2; H. 567. 1; HB. 502. 4. Trans. *ut* by *that . . . not*.

3. **castra . . . ferri**: the expression *castra movere* means *to break camp; signa ferre, to bear on the standards*, i.e. *to march*. During a halt the standards were set up in the earth. — **dicto**: dat. with *audientis*, which here means *obedient*. A. 367; B. 187. II. a; G. 346. N. 5; H. 426. 1; HB. 362.

4. **laturos**: this sentence in the direct form would run, *Cum . . . iusseris, non erunt dicto audientes milites neque . . . ferent.* This description of the panic and the speech given in the next chapter, by which Caesar checked it, are admirable examples of Caesar's literary skill.

XL. 5. **omnium ordinum**: *of all the centuries*. See Introd., p. 31. To a council of war only the centurions *primorum ordinum* (see Introd., p. 34) were usually summoned. Caesar now wishes, through the centurions, to reach the whole army as effectively as possible.

7. **incusavit**: *blamed*, or *reproached*.

8. **sibi . . . putarent**: *they thought it incumbent on themselves to ask or consider*. What literally?

9. **putarent**: subj. because it gives the reason of Caesar the speaker as reported by Caesar the writer. — **Ariovistum**: subject of *appetisse*. See note on *beneficio*, p. 75, l. 11.

10. **cur quisquam iudicaret**: *why should any one think?* A negative answer is implied. For the subjunctive, which was subjunctive in the direct form as well, see A. 444, 587; B. 277, 315. 3; G. 259, 651. R. 2; H. 557, 642. 3; HB. 513. 1.

11. **Sibi quidem persuaderi**: *for his part, he was becoming convinced*, more literally *to him at least it was being proved*. Notice the impersonal use of a verb which takes the dative. 'I am becoming convinced' is *mihi persuadetur*. See note on *minus . . . posset*, p. 77, l. 25.

12. **eum**: Ariovistus. The clause *eum . . . repudiaturum* is subject of *persuaderi*.

14. **intulisset**: *intulerit* in the direct form. — **quid tandem vererentur**: *what in the world should they be afraid of?* See note on l. 10.

15. **sua**: *vestra* in the direct form. It refers to the army, which

PAGE 76

283. 5; G. 627. R. 1; H. 591. 3; HB. 521. 1. f. — **rei publicae**: gen.

XXXVI. 26. **ut . . . imperarent**: a substantive clause, subject of *esse*, the predicate being *ius*. Ariovistus said, 'It is a law of war that those who have conquered rule as they wish those whom they have conquered.'

28. **victis**: *the conquered;* dat. of the participle, masc., used as a noun. — **ad alterius praescriptum**: *according to the dictation of another*.

29. **consuesse**: see note on p. 63, l. 7.

31. **se impediri**: subject of *oportere*. A. 565. N. 3; B. 330; G. 535; H. 615; HB. 585. Trans. *he ought not to be hindered.* What would be a literal rendering? — **Haeduos**: subject of *esse factos*.

32. **temptassent**: why subjunctive? What mood does *quoniam* regularly take?

33. **Maguam**: observe the emphasis of its position (*it was a great injustice that Caesar was committing*).

77

1. **qui . . . faceret**: a causal relative clause. A. 535. e; B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 592; HB. 523. — **suo, sibi**: the former of these words is a direct reflexive, referring to Caesar; the latter is an indirect reflexive, referring to Ariovistus. Ariovistus feared that Caesar's coming might make the Haedui refuse to pay the tribute.

2. **neque . . . neque**: *but neither . . . nor*.

3. **si . . . convenisset**: *if they stood by that which had been agreed upon*.

5. **longe . . . afuturum**: *the name 'brothers of the Roman people' would be far away from them, i.e.* would not help them.

6. **Quod . . . denuntiaret**: *as for Caesar's threatening him.* The subjunctive is due to indirect discourse.

7. **secum, sua**: indirect and direct respectively. — **Cum vellet, congrederetur**: in direct discourse *cum volet, congrediatur* (*let him join battle*, subj. expressing a command in the third person); or perhaps addressed directly to Caesar, *cum voles, congredere* (imperative).

9. **tectum non subissent**: perhaps not to be taken literally, but meaning that they had no fixed abiding-place.

XXXVII. 11. **Haec**: put first for emphasis.

12. **ab, a**: two prepositions are necessary, because there were two embassies. — **Treveris**: on the Moselle. The name survives in the modern Trèves. — **Haedui**: sc. *veniebant*.

13. **questum**: supine from *queror*, expressing purpose. — **Haru-**

PAGE 77

des: cf. p. 74, l. 5. — **transportati essent, popularentur**: why subjunctive?

14. **eorum**: i.e. *Haeduorum.* — **obsidibus datis**: abl. abs, expressing means; *not even by giving hostages.*

15. **Ariovisti**: *i.e.* on the part of Ariovistus. — **pagos . . . consedisse**: depends on *questum* understood, while above we have a *quod*-clause. Caesar represents this as a migration, not merely a military movement. A description of the Suebi is given in Bk. IV, Chaps. I–III. The name survives in the modern *Swabia.*

16. **ripas**: the plural denotes various places along the right bank.

20. **Quibus rebus**: abl. of cause.

25. **minus . . . posset**: *resistance could be made less easily.* For the impersonal use of *resisti*, see A. 372; B. 187. II. b; G. 217; H. 302. 6; HB. 364. 2. We may supply the dative *iis*, and translate *they could be resisted.*

27. **quam celerrime potuit**: *as quickly as he could.*

28. **magnis itineribus**: *by forced marches.* See Introd., p. 40.

29. **contendit**: apparently from the country of the Lingones; see p. 71, ll. 1 and 11–13. The time was probably about the middle of August.

XXXVIII. 30. **tridui**: gen. of quality, or descriptive gen.; the adjective required by the rule is contained in the compound word, which is equivalent to *trium dierum.* — **viam**: A. 390; B. 176. 4. a; G. 333. 2; H. 409; HB. 396. 1. — **nuntiatum est**: what is its subject?

32. **quod**: its antecedent is *Vesontionem*, which is masculine. For gender of *quod* see A. 306; B. 250. 3; G. 614. R. 3. b; H. 396. 2; HB. 326. 1. — **est**: this clause is not a part of the quotation. On the site of Vesontio is built the modern city of Besançon.

33. **suis finibus**: the land which he had taken from the Sequani, in the modern Alsace. — **Id**: the capture of Vesontio.

78

2. **usui**: *useful*, lit. *for use.*

3. **facultas**: *abundance.* Cf. the meaning of the same word in the next line. — **natura loci**: *i.e.* natural defenses. The town was situated in a bend, or loop, of the river.

4. **ad ducendum bellum**: *for prolonging a war.*

5. **ut**: *as if.* See the plan of Vesontio, p. 77.

6. **spatium**: obj. of *continet.* — **amplius pedum sescentorum**: A. 407. c; B. 217. 3; G. 296. R. 4; H. 471. 4; HB. 416. d. — **pedum**: gen. of quality, or descriptive gen., used as predicate of *quod.* The present distance across this 'neck of land' is consider-

PAGE 78

ably more than that given. The distance across the plateau which forms the top of the hill is about 600 feet.

8. **ripae**: nom. pl.

9. **circumdatus**: *put around, i.e.* built around. In compounds *do* often means 'put.'

XXXIX. 13. **moratur**: A. 556; B. 293. 1; G. 229. R.; H. 533. 4; HB. 559. — **ex**: *in consequence of.*

14. **magnitudine**: abl. of quality, or description, used predicatively. The Romans were rather small of stature. Cf. Bk. II, Chap. XXX.

15. **exercitatione**: *skill*, the result of practice.

17. **aciem**: *fierceness*, or *glare.*

18. **timor**: *a panic.* A. 238. a; B. 147. 2; G. 181. 2. b; H. 333; HB. 206. 4.

19. **non mediocriter**: these words illustrate the figure called litotes, for which the grammar may be consulted. Use the index. — **mentis animosque**: *minds and spirits.* The Germans were less familiar, therefore more terrible, than the Gauls.

20. **tribunis, praefectis**: see Introd., pp. 33, 34. Many of these men, no doubt, belonged to families to which Caesar was in debt, pecuniarily or politically. Those who owed their appointment to this were naturally of small use from a military point of view. — **reliquis**: young men who accompanied Caesar in order to gain some military experience under an able general, or to see what life in the field was. They were called *contubernales* ('tent-companions') of the general.

22. **quorum . . . inlata**: *of these one giving one reason, another another.* For *alius alia* see A. 315. c; B. 253. 2; G. 221. R. 1; H. 516. 1; HB. 279. 3. — **quam . . . diceret**: *which he said made it necessary for him to set out.* What is the literal translation? For mood of *diceret* cf. *existimarent*, p. 68, l. 29.

24. **pudore**: *a sense of shame.* — **ut . . . vitarent**: a clause of purpose, depending on *remanebant.*

25. **vultum fingere**: *i.e.* so as to conceal their fear.

26. **tabernaculis**: see Introd., pp. 41, 43.

27. **suum**: emphatic, contrasted with *commune.*

28. **totis castris**: *throughout the camp.* A. 429. 2; B. 228. 1. b; G. 388; H. 485. 2; HB. 436. a. — **testamenta**: not verbal wills, which, when made just before a battle, had binding force, but regularly attested documents.

30. **centuriones**: see Introd., p. 33. — **quique**: *and those who.*

PAGE

31. **perturbabantur**: *were getting frightened;* observe the tense. — **ex his**: equivalent to a genitive. 78

33. **ipsos**: could *se* have been used here?

1. **rem frumentariam**: obj. of *timere*. We should expect a nominative, subject of *posset*. — **ut . . . posset**: A. 564; B. 296. 2; G. 550. 2; H. 567. 1; HB. 502. 4. Trans. *ut* by *that . . . not*. 79

3. **castra . . . ferri**: the expression *castra movere* means *to break camp; signa ferre, to bear on the standards*, i.e. *to march*. During a halt the standards were set up in the earth. — **dicto**: dat. with *audientis*, which here means *obedient*. A. 367; B. 187. II. a; G. 346. N. 5; H. 426. 1; HB. 362.

4. **laturos**: this sentence in the direct form would run, *Cum . . . iusseris, non erunt dicto audientes milites neque . . . ferent.* This description of the panic and the speech given in the next chapter, by which Caesar checked it, are admirable examples of Caesar's literary skill.

XL. 5. **omnium ordinum**: *of all the centuries*. See Introd., p. 31. To a council of war only the centurions *primorum ordinum* (see Introd., p. 34) were usually summoned. Caesar now wishes, through the centurions, to reach the whole army as effectively as possible.

7. **incusavit**: *blamed*, or *reproached*.

8. **sibi . . . putarent**: *they thought it incumbent on themselves to ask or consider*. What literally?

9. **putarent**: subj. because it gives the reason of Caesar the speaker as reported by Caesar the writer. — **Ariovistum**: subject of *appetisse*. See note on *beneficio*, p. 75, l. 11.

10. **cur quisquam iudicaret**: *why should any one think?* A negative answer is implied. For the subjunctive, which was subjunctive in the direct form as well, see A. 444, 587; B. 277, 315. 3; G. 259, 651. R. 2; H. 557, 642. 3; HB. 513. 1.

11. **Sibi quidem persuaderi**: *for his part, he was becoming convinced*, more literally *to him at least it was being proved*. Notice the impersonal use of a verb which takes the dative. 'I am becoming convinced' is *mihi persuadetur*. See note on *minus . . . posset*, p. 77, l. 25.

12. **eum**: Ariovistus. The clause *eum . . . repudiaturum* is subject of *persuaderi*.

14. **intulisset**: *intulerit* in the direct form. — **quid tandem vererentur**: *what in the world should they be afraid of?* See note on l. 10.

15. **sua**: *vestra* in the direct form. It refers to the army, which

PAGE 79

Caesar is addressing through its representatives. — **ipsius**: refers to Caesar himself. A. 300. b; B. 249. 3; G. 660. 5; H. 509. 6; HB. 263. 2.

16. **Factum**: sc. *esse*. Notice the emphatic position of the word. — **periculum**: *trial*. The root is the same that appears in the verb *experior*.

17. **Cimbris**: cf. Chap. XXXIII, and see Introd., pp. 4–6.

18. **meritus videbatur**: *was seen to have earned*. We should expect here the subjunctive of indirect discourse, but the indicative is used to emphasize the statement as a fact. The statement seems artfully thrown in as a hint to the army to be equally deserving of praise. For Caesar's relation to Marius see Introd., p. 8.

19. **nuper**: *more recently*. — **servili tumultu**: abl. of time. The Servile War against Spartacus and his gladiators was in 73–71 B.C. These gladiators were largely German slaves. *Tumultus* was the word applied to any uprising in Italy or Cisalpine Gaul. — **quos**: the antecedent is *servorum*, implied in *servili*. A. 306. b; B. 250. 4; G. 614. R. 3. a; H. 399. 4; HB. 325. — **tamen**: *i.e.* though they were defeated, yet they were helped somewhat by the training which they had received at our hands.

20. **usus ac disciplina**: *experience* (from practice) *and training* (from a teacher).

21. **Ex quo**: *from this*. Though introduced by a relative, this is practically an independent sentence; hence *posse*, not *posset*, in indirect discourse. A. 583. b; B. 314. 4; G. 635; H. 643. 1; HB. 535. 1. b. — **quantum boni**: *how much (of) value*. — **haberet**: trans. *has*, not *had*. In Latin such expressions of a general, or permanent, truth usually conform to the law of sequence of tenses.

22. **inermis**: at the outbreak of the insurrection the arms of the slaves were of the most primitive kind.

24. **quibuscum congressi superarint**: *quibuscum* goes with *congressi*, and the object of *superarint* is to be supplied; but we may translate *whom the Helvetii had often met and vanquished*. Observe the tense of *superarint* (*superaverint*) and *potuerint*. In the next sentence Caesar returns to the regular sequence.

26. **exercitui**: A. 384; B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2; HB. 362. The Helvetii had defeated the Germans, the Romans had overcome the Helvetii. The inference is obvious.

27. **adversum proelium**: the battle at Magetobriga; see p. 74, l. 11, and Introd., p. 7. — **hos . . . posse**: in the direct form *hi, si quaerent, reperire possunt*.

28. **defatigatis Gallis**: abl. abs., expressing time and cause. PAGE

29. **cum se tenuisset . . . fecisset**: *after keeping himself and giving them no chance at him.* — **castris**: abl. of place. The preposition is not used, because the ablative is one of means as well as place. 79

30. **sui**: for gen. see A. 348; B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2; HB. 354. — **desperantis . . . vicisse**: *having attacked them suddenly, when they were now despairing of a battle and scattered, had overcome them more by ruse and strategy than by valor.*

32. **Cui rationi, hac**: equivalent to *hac ratione cui.* The antecedent is attracted into the relative clause. Translate the sentence, *Not even Ariovistus himself hoped that our armies could be caught by this ruse, for which there had been a place in fighting against unskilled barbarians.*

1. **Qui . . . conferrent**: *those who ascribed their fear to a pretended anxiety regarding supplies*, etc. The antecedent of *qui* is the subject of *facere, eos* understood. 80

3. **officio**: *discharge of his duty.*

5. **frumenta**: how does this differ in meaning from *frumentum?*

6. **Quod . . . dicantur**: *as to the fact that it was said they would not be obedient to command or move forward.* See note on p. 62, l. 20. See also A. 582; B. 332. c; G. 528; H. 611; HB. 590. 1. Notice here again the primary tense.

7. **nihil**: *not at all.* A. 390. c. N. 2; B. 176. 3. a; G. 334. R. 1; H. 416. 2; HB. 387. III.

8. **scire**: sc. *se.* — **quibuscumque . . . defuisse**: *whomever an army had not obeyed, either fortune had failed (these) because the campaign had been badly conducted.*

10. **avaritiam esse convictam**: *greed had been proved (against them).* The meaning of the sentence is, if any generals have found their armies disobedient, the reason is that the generals have been unlucky in war or have been proved guilty of dishonesty. — **innocentiam**: *integrity.*

11. **perpetua vita**: *throughout his whole life.* — **felicitatem**: *good fortune, luck,* as a personal quality.

12. **quod . . . fuisset**: *what he had intended to postpone to a later day.*

13. **de quarta vigilia**: see note on p. 61, l. 24.

14. **quam primum**: *as soon as possible.* — **utrum . . . valeret**: A. 334, 335; B. 162. 4; G. 458, 460; H. 380; HB. 234.

15. **officium**: *sense of duty.* — **Quod si . . . iturum**: in the direct discourse *quod si . . . sequetur, tamen ego . . . ibo.*

PAGE 80

17. **praetoriam cohortem**: *body guard*, composed of the best soldiers, and receiving many marks of favor from the general.

This speech deserves to be carefully studied as a specimen of oratory. Caesar was ranked by the Romans second only to Cicero among their orators. As a general he relied much on his power of persuasion. This speech produced an instantaneous effect, as is seen in the next chapter.

XLI. 20. **conversae sunt**: *were transformed.*

22. **inlata est**: *was inspired.* — **princeps gratias egit**: *was foremost in expressing thanks.* A. 290; B. 239; G. 325. R. 6; H. 497. 3; HB. 243.

23. **quod . . . fecisset**: *because he had expressed a most favorable opinion about it.*

25. **cum tribunis egerunt**: *i.e.* begged the tribunes. — **primorum ordinum**: see Introd., p. 34.

26. **uti Caesari satisfacerent**: obj. of *egerunt.*

27. **summa belli**: *the conduct of the war.* — **suum**: predicate of *iudicium*, which is subject of *esse.*

29. **itinere exquisito per Diviciacum**: *having sought out a route through the help of Diviciacus.* — **quod . . . habebat**: *because of the Gauls he had most faith in him.* For the dative *ei* see note on *cui*, p. 66, l. 34.

30. **ut . . . duceret**: *that he might lead his army through open country, by a detour of more than fifty miles.* Thus Caesar avoided the *angustiae itineris* of which the soldiers were afraid. The case of *milium* is not affected by the comparative *amplius.* A. 407. c; B. 217. 3; G. 296. R. 4; H. 471. 4; HB. 416. d. Instead of marching northeasterly from Besançon directly up the valley of the Doubs, Caesar made a detour to the north and east. Then he entered the valley of the Rhine through the pass between the Jura and the Vosges mountains. He thus avoided the difficulties of the Doubs valley and the Jura range.

33. **milia**: acc. of extent of space. Probably Caesar had reached the Fecht, between Ostheim and Gemar.

81 **XLII.** 2. **Quod**: the rel. pron., obj. of *postulasset.* Its antecedent is *id*, subject of *fieri.* What is the subject of *licere?* — **per se**: *so far as he was concerned.*

4. **condicionem**: *proposal.*

7. **denegasset**: *had utterly refused.*

9. **pro**: *in gratitude for.*

12. **fore uti desisteret**: *he would cease*, more literally *it would come to pass that he would cease.* A. 569. a; B. 270. 3. a; G. 248; H. 619. 2; HB. 472. c.

PAGE

13. **conloquio**: *for a conference.*

17. **postulavit**: notice the form of the two demands following this verb, each expressed by the subjunctive, and each having an explanatory clause with the accusative and infinitive appended to it. 81

22. **veniret**: this may be taken as a substantive clause, like *ne . . . adduceret.* But it is better to regard it as simply the indirect form of *uterque veniat, let each come.* — **alia ratione**: *on any other terms.*

26. **tolli**: *to be prevented.*

27. **Gallorum equitatui**: see Introd., p. 37.

30. **Gallis equitibus**: dat., though translated with *from.* A. 381; B. 188. 2. d; G. 345; H. 427; HB. 371. Caesar had about 4000 horsemen.

31. **eo**: *thereon*, i.e. *on them.* — **legionarios**: A. 250. a; B. 151. 2; G. 189. 45; H. 348; HB. 210. 1. The word is contrasted with *equitibus.* See Introd., p. 34.

32. **imponere**: subject of *esse*, l. 29. — **si . . . esset**: *if there should be any need of action.* For the construction with *opus* see A. 411. a; B. 218. 2. c; G. 406; H. 477. III; HB. 430. 1. 2. b.

33. **non inridicule**: *not without wit*, a case of litotes.

1. **pollicitum . . . rescribere**: *having promised* (merely) *that he would have the tenth legion as his body-guard, he was* (actually) *enrolling them among the equites.* The joke lies in the double meaning of the word *equites*, which was the name of an order of nobility at Rome, below the senatorial rank. Perhaps the double meaning of *ad equum rescribere* may be expressed by the English 'to invest with spurs.' 82

XLIII. 5. **Eo**: i.e. *ad tumulum.*

6. **equis**: abl. of means, but translates *on horseback.* — **passibus**: A. 425. b; B. 223; G. 403; H. 417. 3, 479. 3; HB. 424. The ablative is connected with *ab*, i.e. *away by two hundred paces.*

8. **ex equis**: *on horseback.* Cf. *ex vinculis*, p. 57, l. 10.

9. **denos**: *ten apiece*, a distributive numeral.

12. **munera**: probably such things as the Romans once sent to another foreign king, — a curule chair, a golden crown, costly clothing, etc. — **quam rem**: *a thing which*, subject of *contigisse* and *consuesse.*

13. **officiis**: *services.*

14. **cum**: *though.* — **aditum**: *right of approach.*

15. **haberet**: A. 549; B. 309. 3; G. 587; H. 598; HB. 525.

16. **Docebat etiam**: *he tried to make clear to him, furthermore.* On *docebat* depend three indirect questions, *quam . . . intercederent, quae . . . facta essent*, and *ut* (*how*) . . . *tenuissent.*

17. **necessitudinis**: *friendship*, or *alliance*. — **ipsis . . . intercederent**: *existed between themselves* (the Romans) *and the Haedui.*

18. **quae . . . essent**: *what decrees of the senate had been made in their favor, how often, and how flattering.* — **honorifica**: how are adjectives in *-ficus* compared?

20. **appetissent**: subj. of ind. disc.

21. **ut . . . esse**: *to wish its allies and friends not only to lose nothing of their own, but even to be increased in influence, dignity, and honor.* The clause explains *consuetudinem.*

23. **quod . . . posset**: *and indeed who could suffer that to be taken away from them which they had brought to the friendship of the Roman people?* Caesar refers to the independence of the Haedui and their influence among the Gauls. The direct form of the question was *quis possit?*

25. **ne bellum inferret**: *that he should not make war.* In the direct form this clause would be a prohibition. How are prohibitions expressed?

28. **quos transire pateretur**: *allow any to cross.* A. 563. c; B. 331. III; G. 553. 2. N.; H. 614; HB. 587.

XLIV. 30. **sese**: subject of *transisse* and three other infinitives. This passage is given in the direct form in G. 661. 1; H. 653.

1. **rogatum**: cf. p. 73, l. 15.

3. **obsides**: obj. of *habere.*

5. **victis imponere**: *to impose on the vanquished.* — **sese Gallis, Gallos sibi**: the chiastic order. See note on p. 60, l. 14.

6. **ad se oppugnandum**: *to attack him;* the gerundive construction, expressing purpose.

8. **uno proelio**: the battle *ad Magetobrigam.* Cf. p. 74, l. 11. — **Si . . . decertare**: *if they wished to try again, he was ready to fight it out again.* In the direct form, *Si iterum experiri volunt, ego iterum paratus sum decertare.*

10. **de stipendio recusare**: *to make excuses about paying tribute, i.e.* refuse to pay. — **quod**: the relative.

11. **pependerint**: from *pendo*, not *pendeo.*

12. **Amicitiam esse oportere**: *friendship ought to be;* but remember that *oportere* is impersonal, and hence *amicitiam* is subject of *esse*, not of *oportere.* — **sibi ornamento**: A. 382. 1; B. 191. 2; G. 356; H. 433; HB. 360. b.

14. **remittatur**: *should be remitted.* The power of exacting tribute would be lost if the Haeduan hostages were returned, as Caesar demanded.

PAGE

16. **appetierit**: *appetii* in the direct discourse. — **Quod**: see note on p. 62, l. 20. **83**

17. **id**: refers to the preceding clause. — **sui muniendi causa**: *to protect himself.*

18. **quod . . . venerit**: *that he did not come without being asked.* The clause is subject of *esse*, *testimonium* being predicate.

19. **defenderit**: *repelled.*

22. **Galliae provinciae**: see Introd., p. 23.

23. **Quid sibi vellet**: direct, *Quid tibi vis? What are your intentions?* A. 586; B. 315. 1; G. 651; H. 642; HB. 534. 2. III, 537.

24. **Provinciam . . . nostram**: *this (part of) Gaul was his province, just as that was ours.*

25. **Ut . . . interpellaremus**: direct, *Ut mihi concedi non oportet, si in vestros finis impetum faciam, sic item vos estis iniqui, quod in meo iure me interpellatis*, i.e. *as no concession ought to be made to me*, etc. Up to this point dependent subjunctives in this speech have been either present or perfect; we now have also imperfects and pluperfects.

28. **tam imperitum rerum**: *so ignorant of the course of events.* A. 349. a; B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. 1; HB. 354.

29. **ut non sciret**: *as not to know*, a clause of result. — **bello proximo**: abl. of time.

30. **ipsos**: i.e. *Haeduos.*

31. **auxilio**: abl. with *usos esse.*

32. **Debere . . . habere**: *he had good reason to suspect that although Caesar pretended friendship, he had the army which he had in Gaul for the purpose of crushing him.* The subject of *habere* is *Caesarem.*

34. **Qui nisi**: *so unless he.*

1. **Quod**: *and as to that*, referring to the previous sentence. **84**

2. **gratum esse facturum**: *he would confer a favor*, lit. *do a pleasing thing.* Caesar had many enemies in Rome, and these were no idle words.

3. **compertum**: agrees with *id*, and the expression *id compertum habere* means nearly the same that *id comperisse* would mean. A. 497. b; B. 337. 7 (337. 6); G. 238; H. 431. 3; HB. 605. 5. a. — **quorum**: its antecedent is *nobilibus principibusque.*

4. **morte**: abl. of price. — **redimere**: *buy back.* Ariovistus had been in favor before.

5. **Quod**: *but.* — **decessisset**: fut. perf. in the direct discourse.

PAGE 84

6. **quaecumque bella**: subject of *geri*. In the direct discourse, *quaecumque bella geri voles sine ullo tuo labore et periculo conficiam*.

XLV. 9. **in eam sententiam, quare**: *to this effect* (*namely to show*), *why*.

11. **pati**: its subject is *consuetudinem*, its object *uti . . . desereret*. We had *pati* followed by acc. and inf. on p. 82, l. 24. — **optime meritos**: *most deserving*.

12. **neque . . . Romani**: *and he thought Gaul did not belong to Ariovistus more than to the Roman people*.

13. **superatos esse**: in 121 B.C.

14. **quibus . . . ignovisset**: *but the Roman people had pardoned them*. Why is *quibus* dative? — **in provinciam redegisset**: *reduced into a province*, under a Roman governor. The Cévennes lay between these tribes and the Roman province, so that it would have been hard to incorporate them with the latter.

15. **si . . . oporteret**: *if priority of time* (*each most ancient time*) *ought to be considered*.

17. **iustissimum**: *most valid*. — **imperium**: *right of rule*.

18. **quam**: subject of *uti*.

19. **victam**: *though conquered*. — **suis legibus uti**: *i.e.* to be independent.

XLVI. 20. **geruntur**: *were going on*. Account for the tense.

21. **tumulum**: A. 432. a; B. 141. 3; G. 416. 22; H. 420. 5; HB. 380. b.

22. **loquendi**: on p. 75, l. 12, *finem facere* is used with a dative.

23. **ne quod telum reicerent**: *not to throw back any weapon*. The form *quod* is adjective, *quid* generally substantive.

26. **ut . . . posset . . . circumventos**: subject of *committendum*. Trans. *that, after the enemy were defeated, it could be alleged that they had been deceived by him in the conference through their* (misplaced) *confidence*. As Caesar takes victory for granted, it is better not to regard *pulsis hostibus* as conditional.

28. **qua adrogantia . . . interdixisset**: *with what arrogance* (lit. *having used what arrogance*) *in the conference Ariovistus had ordered the Romans out of* (*forbidden the Romans from*) *all Gaul*.

29. **Gallia**: abl. of separation. — **Romanis**: dat., depending on *interdixisset*. — **interdixisset**: subj. in an ind. quest. — **ut**: *how*.

30. **diremisset**: *had broken off*. Caesar labors earnestly to make his acts appear justifiable, and in a certain sense they were so. Gaul had to be either Romanized or Germanized, and there can be no doubt which was the better for the country at that time.

XLVII. 1. **Biduo post**: *next day*, lit. *two days after*. Cf. *pridie eius diei*, l. 6. The Romans counted the day from which, as well as the day to which, they reckoned. — **legatos misit**: this expression implies both 'to say' and 'to ask.' On the former idea depends the following clause with the acc. and inf., on the latter idea the clause beginning with *uti*.

2. **coeptae**: for the voice see A. 205. a; B. 133. 1; G. 423. N. 3; H. 299. 1; HB. 199. 2.

3. **agere cum eo**: *to treat with him*.

4. **si id minus vellet**: *if he hardly wished* (to do) *that*. — **ex suis legatis**: *of his legates*. A. 346. c; B. 201. 1. a; G. 372. R. 2; H. 444; HB. 346. e.

5. **eo magis**: *all the more*.

6. **pridie eius diei**: see note on *postridie eius diei*, p. 68, l. 22. — **quin conicerent**: *from hurling*. A. 558; B. 295. 3. a; G. 555. 1; H. 595. 2; HB. 502. 3. b.

7. **Legatum**: obj. of *missurum* and *obiecturum*.

9. **Commodissimum visum est**: *it seemed most fitting*. The subject of *visum est* is *mittere*.

10. **humanitate**: *culture*.

11. **Flacco**: Valerius Flaccus was governor of Gaul in 83 B.C. Notice that Procillus took the *nomen* and *praenomen* of the man from whom he received the honor of citizenship. For Roman names see A. 108; B. 373; G. page 493; H. 354; HB. 678. — **civitate donatus erat**: *had been presented with* (Roman) *citizenship*. A. 364; B. 187. 1. a; G. 348; H. 426. 6; HB. 365. b. — **propter fidem**: this phrase, *propter . . . scientiam*, and the clause *quod . . . esset* give the reasons why it seemed best to send Procillus.

12. **multa**: agrees with *qua*, but is nearly equivalent to an adverb with *utebatur*, i.e. *spoke freely*.

13. **longinqua consuetudine**: abl. of cause. — **quod . . . esset**: *because in his case the Germans* (*Germanis* is dat. of poss.) *had no reason for doing wrong*. Procillus was a Gaul, not a Roman. Why is *esset* subjunctive? Remember that Caesar is describing his own previous acts as if those of another person.

14. **una**: sc. *cum eo*, *along with him*.

15. **hospitio Ariovisti utebatur**: *enjoyed guest-friendship with Ariovistus*. *Hospitium* was a very sacred relationship, and might be hereditary. See note on p. 73, l. 23. — **quae diceret Ariovistus**: ind. quest.

18. **Quid**: *why?* A. 390. c. N. 2; B. 176. 3. a; G. 333. 1. R. 2; H. 416. 2; HB. 388. a. N. — **An speculandi causa**: *or* (*was it*) *for*

PAGE 85 *the purpose of spying?* A. 335. b; B. 162. 4. a; G. 457. 1; H. 380. 3; HB. 237. — **Conantis**: sc. *eos*. Ariovistus wished his army to regard Procillus and Metius not as envoys, but as spies. Therefore he prevented them from speaking.

XLVIII. 20. **milibus**: see note on *passibus*, p. 82, l. 6.

23. **ultra eum**: *i.e.* in the direction from which Caesar had come. This was apparently an excellent manœuver. See the plan, p. 87.

24. **qui**: agrees with its nearest antecedent.

25. **continuos**: *in succession.*

26. **aciem instructam habuit**: *kept his army drawn up in line of battle.* — **ut . . . deesset**: *that, if Ariovistus had a desire to fight a battle, he might have the chance.* We have *ut non* instead of *ne*, because the negative is closely connected with the verb.

28. **castris**: see note on p. 79, l. 29.

29. **se exercuerant**: *had trained themselves, i.e.* had become expert.

31. **quos . . . delegerant**: *whom the horsemen had selected for their own protection from the whole number* (of foot-soldiers), *one apiece.* Each 'knight' had his 'squire.'

(86) 2. **si quid erat durius**: *if there was any unusual difficulty.*

3. **si qui**: the indefinite pronoun, of which *quis* is the regular substantive form in the masculine nominative singular.

4. **si . . . prodeundum**: *if it was necessary to go forward rather far to any place. Si quo* is the adverb of *si quis*, just as *quo* of *quis* or *qui*.

6. **equorum**: to be taken with both *iubis* and *cursum*. Running along by the horses and holding on by their manes, they could keep up with them. Caesar afterwards used these cavalry tactics.

XLIX. 7. **eum**: subject of *tenere*, and refers to Ariovistus. — **ne . . . prohiberetur**: a clause of purpose, depending on *delegit* and *venit*. Cf. p. 85, l. 23.

8. **loco**: Caesar uses the word *locus* five times in the first six lines of this chapter. In the previous chapter he uses *castra* four times in four lines. It is said that Macaulay never hesitated to repeat a noun, if by so doing he could express his meaning more clearly than by using a pronoun.

9. **castris**: *for a camp.* — **idoneum**: for its comparison see A. 128; B. 74. 2; G. 87. 6; H. 159; HB. 121.

10. **acie triplici**: see Introd., p. 44.

13. **expedita**: agrees grammatically with *milia*, but logically with *hominum*. The word means *unencumbered*, hence *ready to fight*. See Introd., p. 40.

PAGE

14. **quae . . . prohiberent**: a rel. clause of purpose.

15. **Nihilo**: abl. of degree, or measure, of difference. **86**

16. **opus**: i.e. *munitionem castrorum.*

18. **quattuor reliquas**: there were, then, six in all. See Introd., p. 36, and cf. Chap. X. — **castra maiora**: Caesar's main camp, where he had been for nearly two weeks. The two camps were about two and one-half miles apart, with the camp of Ariovistus between them. See the plan, p. 87. What was the obvious purpose of Caesar's smaller camp ?

L. 19. **instituto suo**: *in accordance with his plan.* See note on *moribus suis*, p. 57, l. 9.

21. **pugnandi potestatem fecit**: *offered battle.*

26. **inlatis**: *inflicted.*

28. **proelio decertaret**: *fight it out in a (pitched) battle.* — **quod . . . esset**: a substantive clause explaining *hanc.*

29. **ut . . . declararent**: a substantive clause explaining *consuetudo.* A. 570; B. 297. 3; G. 557; H. 571. 4; HB. 521. 3. a.

30. **sortibus**: Tacitus describes the *sortes* of the Germans. Twigs with certain marks made upon them, scattered over a white cloth, were drawn by him who consulted the lots. The marks were then interpreted. — **vaticinationibus**: perhaps prophecies uttered by women thought to be inspired.

31. **necne**: A. 335. N.; B. 300. 4. a; G. 459; H. 650. 1: HB. 234. a. — **fas**: *divine will.*

32. **novam lunam**: this new moon fell on Sept. 18. Days of new and full moon were of good omen. The Spartans would not send aid to the Athenians at Marathon before the full moon.

LI. 2. **alarios**: *auxiliaries.* See Introd., p. 37. The word **88** *alarius* means *belonging to the wings*, where the auxiliaries were usually stationed in battle.

4. **pro**: *in proportion to, in comparison with.* — **ad speciem**: *for show.* Caesar wished Ariovistus to think that these auxiliaries were legionaries.

7. **geueratim**: *by tribes.*

10. **Eo**: i.e. *in raedas et carros.* These were probably set in a great semicircle, inclosing the rear and flanks.

11. **passis**: from *pando.*

LII. 14. **legatos et quaestorem**: Caesar had six legions, so probably he had only five *legati.* Later he had ten. See Introd., p. 32.

15. **suae quisque virtutis**: notice the order of words, which is regular.

PAGE 88

18. **signo dato**: *i.e.* by a trumpet. See Introd., p. 39.

19. **ut**: correlative with *ita*. — **pila**: obj. of the gerund *coniciendi*. What other construction might have been used? A. 503; B. 339. 1; G. 427; H. 626. 1; HB. 613.

21. **phalange facta**: see note on *phalange*, p. 69, l. 10.

23. **insilirent**: subj. of characteristic. — **desuper**: *i.e.* over the rim. The usual practice of the Roman soldier was to push the enemy's shield upward with his own, and thrust underneath.

24. **sinistro cornu**: the left wing of the German army.

27. **adulescens**: perhaps Crassus was distinguished by this word from his elder brother, mentioned in Bk. V as Caesar's legate and in Bk. VI as quaestor; or from his father, M. Crassus, the triumvir. — **expeditior**: *freer*. The cavalry was chiefly for pursuit after the battle.

28. **tertiam aciem**: this had been kept in reserve until now.

LIII. 30. **proelium restitutum est**: *the tide of battle was turned.*

31. **prius quam pervenerunt**: cf. *priusquam conaretur*, p. 66, l. 31, and the note. For the mood of *pervenerunt* see A. 551. a; B. 291. 2; G. 574; H. 605. 1; HB. 561. — **fugere**: A. 456; B. 328. 1; G. 423. 2; H. 607. 1; HB. 586. a.

32. **milia passuum quinque**: if this battle was fought between Ostheim and Gemar, on the left bank of the Fecht, the distance to the Rhine at its nearest point was twelve or fifteen miles, and *quinque* must be an error. Some authorities think that Caesar mistook the Ill for the Rhine. The date of the battle was about Sept. 14.

33. **viribus**: A. 431; B. 219. 1; G. 401. N. 6; H. 476. 3; HB. 437.

89

2. **naviculam**: a diminutive. — **profugit**: he seems to have died not long after. His death is mentioned in Bk. V, Chap. XXIX. — **reliquos omnis**: 80,000 are said to have perished.

4. **duxerat**: *had brought.*

5. **duxerat**: sc. *in matrimonium, had married.*

7. **altera, altera**: *one, the other*. Cf. *una, altera* above.

8. **triuis catenis**: *with triple chains*, i.e. *three sets of chains.* A. 137. b; B. 81. 4. b; G. 97. R. 3; H. 164. 3; HB. 247. 1. Caesar uses *catenae* as a plural only.

11. **honestissimum**: notice that *honestus* means *honorable*, not *honest* in the narrower sense.

13. **neque . . . deminuerat**: *and (because) fortune had not deducted anything from so great pleasure and rejoicing by harm to him.*

15. **sortibus**: abl. of means. — **consultum**: sc. *esse, consultation had been held,* or *the gods had been consulted.* — **utrum**: *as to whether.* PAGE 89

16. **sortium beneficio**: the lots had decided that he should be reserved.

This defeat of the Germans on what was practically their own ground insured the Roman supremacy in Gaul.

LIV. 18. **Suebi**: cf. Chap. XXXVII. Perhaps the Suebi mentioned in Chap. LI were a detachment only, the advance-guard of the migration.

19. **coeperunt**: *started.* — **quos**: how is this to be translated?

20. **Rhenum**: A. 432. a; B. 141. 3; G. 359. N. 1; H. 435. 2; HB. 380. b. Cf. *tumulum*, p. 84, l. 21.

22. **maximis bellis**: a powerful blow had been struck at free Gaul in the victory over the Helvetii, and the onward march of the Germans had been checked by the victory over Ariovistus. These victories had been won by a man of middle age, whose previous military experience had been comparatively slight.

23. **hiberna**: sc. *castra, winter quarters.* See Introd., p. 43. — **in Sequanos**: *among the Sequani.* Notice that both *hiberna* and *Sequanos* take the construction of end, or limit, of motion.

24. **hibernis**: dat. — **Labienum**: see Introd., p. 32. — **citeriorem Galliam**: see Introd., p. 21.

25. **conventus**: the courts of justice presided over by the governor of a province. Caesar wished to be nearer Rome, the better to look after his political interests there.

BOOK II

I. 1. **Cum esset Caesar**: *while Caesar was.* The use of the subjunctive with *cum* in temporal clauses emphasizes the circumstances rather than the time. In this case the point of importance is that Caesar was not in Transalpine Gaul at the time when he received the reports. A. 545, 546; B. 288. 1; G. 579, 585; H. 600. II. 1; HB. 524, 550. a. — **citeriore Gallia**: see Introd., p. 21. Here Caesar usually spent his winters while governor of Gaul. See note at end of Bk. I. For comparison of *citerior* see A. 130. a; B. 73. 1; G. 87. 2. 7; H. 155. 1; HB. 123. For declension of comparatives see A. 120; B. 69; G. 89; H. 127; HB. 116. — **supra**: at the end of Bk. I. See Introd., p. 12, for a brief summary of Bk. I. 90

PAGE 90

2. **adferebantur**: notice the tense; *kept coming*, lit. *were* (continually) *being brought*. A. 470; B. 260. 2; G. 231; H. 534. 3; HB. 484. — **litteris**: *by despatches;* see Vocab. For case see A. 409; B. 218; G. 401; H. 476; HB. 423.

3. **Labieni**: see Introd., p. 32. — **certior**: see *certus* in Vocab. — **fiebat**: A. 204; B. 131; G. 173; H. 296; HB. 195. — **Belgas**: subject of *coniurare* and *dare*. A. 397. e; B. 184; G. 343. 2; H. 415; HB. 398. — **quam**: subject of *esse*. Its antecedent is *Belgas*, but it agrees in number and gender with *partem*. A. 306; B. 250. 3; G. 614. R. 3. b; H. 396. 2; HB. 326. 1. — **tertiam Galliae partem**: see Bk. I, Chap. I, and Introd., p. 23. These words, with *esse*, form the predicate of *quam*.

4. **dixeramus**: *i.e.* before we began to write the present narrative about them. — **coniurare, dare**: these are the verbs of a sentence in indirect discourse depending on *rumores adferebantur* and *certior fiebat*. Trans. *that all the Belgae were conspiring . . . and giving*. To express the same thought in the direct discourse, change the accusative to a nominative and the infinitive to an indicative, i.e. *omnes Belgae coniurant . . . dant*. Similarly *quam . . . partem* above becomes *quae tertia est Galliae pars*. A. 578, 579, 580; B. 313, 331. 1; G. 508. 2, 527; H. 613, 641, 642; HB. 589, 591.

5. **inter se**: *to one another*. A. 301. f; B. 245. 1; G. 221; H. 502. 1; HB. 266. — **Coniurandi**: gen. of gerund, depending on *causas*. A. 504; B. 338. 1; G. 428; H. 626; HB. 612. 1. Any movement against the Roman power was, in Caesar's eyes, a conspiracy. — **has esse causas**: *that these were the reasons;* in the direct form, *hae sunt causae*.

6. **quod vererentur**: if this were Caesar's statement, we should have *verebantur*. The subjunctive shows that it is part of the information he received. A. 580; B. 314. 1; G. 508. 2; H. 643; HB. 534. 2. — **ne . . . adduceretur**: after expressions denoting fear we find *ne* with the subjunctive if it is wished that a thing may not happen, *ut* or *ne non* if it is wished that a thing may happen. A. 564; B. 296. 2; G. 550; H. 567; HB. 502. 4. The rule for sequence determines the tense. A. 483; B. 267. 2; G. 509; H. 543; HB. 476. — **Gallia**: by this is meant the division inhabited by the Celtae, or Galli. See Introd., p. 23. Trans. *after all Gaul had been subdued (rendered peaceful)*. Since the ablative absolute is used much more frequently in Latin than the nominative absolute in English, the nominative absolute should seldom be used in translating it. A. 420. N.; B. 227. 2; G. 410; H. 489. 1; HB. 421.

PAGE 90

7. **non nullis**: *some.* — **sollicitarentur**: see note on *quod vererentur*, l. 6.

8. **partim . . . ferebant**: *partly those* (i.e. *by some*) *who, (just) as they had been unwilling that the Germans should continue longer in Gaul, so were indignant that an army*, etc. — **diutius**: A. 218. a; B. 77. 1; G. 93; H. 311. 4; HB. 129. — **versari**: A. 563. b; B. 331. IV; G. 532; H. 614; HB. 587. The reference is to the hordes of Germans under Ariovistus whom Caesar had driven from Gaul the previous year. — **noluerant**: this and the following indicatives show that Caesar is not now quoting the information given by Labienus.

9. **exercitum . . . inveterascere**: this depends on *moleste ferebant*. A. 572. b; B. 331. V; G. 533; H. 614; HB. 594.

10. **partim qui**: these make a second division of the *Gallis* of l. 7. The *non nullis* of l. 11 form a third division. — **mobilitate . . . animi**: *on account of changeableness and fickleness of purpose*. A. 404; B. 219; G. 408; H. 475; HB. 444. The restlessness of the Gauls (often mentioned by Caesar) rendered them particularly susceptible to the influence of party leaders, some of whom no doubt were actuated by motives purely patriotic. — **novis imperiis**: *a revolution*. What literally? For case see A. 367; B. 187. II. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1; HB. 362.

11. **a potentioribus**: abl. of agent, depending on *occupabantur*. A. 405; B. 216; G. 401; H. 468; HB. 406. 1. Find other instances of the construction in this chapter.

12. **conducendos**: a gerundive agreeing with *homines*. Trans. the phrase *for hiring men*. A. 503; B. 339. 2; G. 427; H. 628; HB. 613. 1.

13. **regna occupabantur**: *royal power was seized* (*usurped*). The plural helps to show that there were many instances. — **qui**: *and these men.* — **minus**: A. 218. a; B. 77. 1; G. 93; H. 311. 2; HB. 129. — **rem**: *thing* is usually inadequate as a translation of *res*. Since the reference is to *regna occupabantur*, we may here say *usurpation*.

14. **imperio nostro**: *under our government.*

II. 15. **commotus**: *because he was disturbed.* The participle is widely used in Latin, and English participles must be employed less frequently in translating. Notice the agreement of every Latin participle you meet, and consider its meaning carefully before trying to render it. — **duas**: A. 134. b; B. 80. 2; G. 95; H. 166; HB. 131. 2.

16. **conscripsit**: Caesar already had six legions. See Introd.,

PAGE 90

pp. 31, 36. — **inita aestate**: *in the beginning of summer*, lit. *summer having been entered.* — **in ulteriorem Galliam**: see Introd., p. 23. Connect the phrase with *deduceret*.

17. **qui deduceret**: A. 531. 2; B. 282. 2; G. 545; H. 590; HB. 502. 2. Here, as often, the infinitive gives the best English rendering of the clause of purpose. — **cum . . . inciperet**: *as soon as there began to be a supply of fodder.* See note on *cum esset*, l. 1. Notice that there is in the original no equivalent of the word 'there,' sometimes used in English to introduce a verb. What is the subject of *inciperet?*

18. **Dat**: historical present, very common in Latin. A. 469; B. 259. 3; G. 229; H. 532. 3; HB. 491. 1.

19. **Senonibus**: where situated? The maps in this book should be regularly consulted. The word is in the dative case, indirect object of *dat.* — **reliquis Gallis**: we say *the rest of the Gauls*, but observe that *reliquis* is an adjective. A. 293; B. 253. 5; G. 291. R. 2; H. 497. 4; HB. 279. 1. b. — **Belgis**: A. 384; B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2; HB. 362.

20. **uti . . . cognoscant**: A. 563; B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 564. I; HB. 502. 3. a. The phrase *negotium dare* is equivalent to a verb of commanding. We may translate *he charges the Senones to learn*, lit. *he gives the task to the Senones that they learn.* — **gerantur**: A. 593; B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 652; HB. 539.

21. **certiorem faciant**: cf. *certior fiebat*, l. 3. — **constanter**: *consistently*; their stories 'stood together.' — **manus . . . conduci**: indirect discourse; direct, *manus coguntur, exercitus . . . conducitur.*

22. **dubitandum**: gerundive; sc. *esse*, the two words together making the infinitive of the so-called passive periphrastic conjugation. It is here used impersonally in indirect discourse depending on *existimavit*. Trans. *thought he ought not to hesitate*, lit. *thought that it was not to be hesitated* (by himself). A. 196, 208. d; B. 115, 138. IV; G. 251. 1. 2; H. 237, 302. 7; HB. 162, 201. c.

23. **quin proficisceretur**: *to set out*. It depends on *dubitandum*. *Non dubito* regularly takes *quin* and the subjunctive when it means *I do not doubt*; when it means *I do not hesitate*, it regularly takes the infinitive.

24. **castra movet**: the army had been wintering among the Sequani, probably at Vesontio. — **XV**: read it *quindecim*. Caesar's eight legions, with auxiliaries and cavalry, may have amounted to from 40,000 to 50,000 men.

91

III. 1. Eo: the adverb. — **celerius**: how is this compared? — **omnium opinione**: *than any one expected.* A. 406. a; B. 217. 4;

G. 398. N. 1; H. 471. 8; HB. 416. e. Notice the order of words in this phrase. Adjectives and genitives normally follow the noun they modify, but may be made emphatic by being put before it. So on p. 90, l. 3, *omnis Belgas*, '*all* the Belgae'; p. 90, l. 10, *novis imperiis*, '*new* governments.' The student should notice instances of the application of this principle as he reads.

2. **Remi**: their chief town was Durocortorum, the modern Rheims. — **Galliae**: see note on *Gallia*, p. 90, l. 6. For case cf. *Belgis*, p. 90, l. 19. — **ex Belgis**: takes the place of a partitive genitive, or genitive of the whole. A. 346. c; B. 201. 1. a; G. 372. R. 2; H. 444; HB. 346. e.

3. **qui dicerent**: see note on *qui deduceret*, p. 90, l. 17.

4. **se suaque**: the *-que* shows that *se* as well as *sua* is object of *permittere*. The subject of an infinitive in indirect discourse is usually expressed, but it would be awkward to have another *se* as the subject of *permittere*. The indirect discourse extends to the end of the chapter.

6. **coniurasse**: for *coniuravisse*. A. 181. a; B. 116. 1; G. 131. 1; H. 43. 1; HB. 163. 1.

7. **dare**: the first of four infinitives limiting *paratos*. — **facere**: *to obey*, lit. *to do*, or *execute*. — **oppidis**: the omission of the preposition is due to the fact that the ablative expresses means as well as place.

9. **incolant**: this might have been *incolerent*, since *miserunt*, the main verb of the sentence introducing the indirect discourse, is in a secondary, or historical, tense. A. 585. b. N.; B. 318; G. 654. N.; H. 644. 1; HB. 478.

10. **tantum**: the predicate of *furorem; so great was the infatuation*. It is correlative to *ut*, which introduces the verb *potuerint*, subjunctive of result. A. 537. N. 2; B. 284. 1; G. 552 (under 3); H. 570; HB. 521. 2. a. — **ne quidem**: that which is emphasized by these two words always stands between them, here *Suessiones*, which is the object of *deterrere*. The name of the Suessiones survives in the modern *Soissons*.

11. **fratres consanguineosque**: the second word defines more accurately the first, which is sometimes used in the figurative sense of allies. — **suos**: refers to the subject of *potuerint*, *i.e.* the Remi. — **eodem . . . legibus**: *the same constitution* (legal system) *and the same laws* (special enactments). A. 410; B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477. 1; HB. 429.

13. **ipsis**: here practically an indirect reflexive. A. 300. b; B. 249. 3; G. 521. N. 4; H. 509. 6; HB. 263. — **quin consentirent**:

PAGE 91

from uniting. A. 558; B. 295. 3. a; G. 555. 1; H. 595. 2; HB. 502. 3. b.

Try to put this speech into the direct form. Change the main infinitives to indicatives of the same tense; five infinitives will remain unchanged. Two verbs, *potuerint* and *consentirent*, must remain subjunctive; the others must be changed to the indicative. Be careful about pronouns. The first sentence will run as follows: *Nos nostraque omnia . . . populi Romani permittimus.* The last four lines will be: *Tantusque est . . . furor ut . . . consanguineosque nostros, qui . . . legibus utuntur . . . magistratum nobiscum habent, deterrere potuerimus quin . . . consentiant.*

IV. 15. **essent**: A. 573, 574; B. 300. 1; G. 467; H. 649. II; HB. 534. 2. III. This question in the direct form would be, *Quae civitates quantaeque in armis sunt?* — **quid possent**: *how strong they were.* A. 390. c; B. 176. 2; G. 334; H. 409. 1; HB. 387. III. — **Belgas**: subject of the four following infinitives. Nearly all the remainder of this chapter is in indirect discourse.

16. **a Germanis**: see Introd., pp. 23, 24. — **Rhenum**: depends on *traductos.* A. 395. N. 2; B. 179. 1. 3; G. 331. R. 1; H. 413; HB. 386. a.

18. **solos**: pred. adj., (the Belgae) *were the only ones.* — **memoria**: A. 423; B. 231; G. 393; H. 486; HB. 436. b. — **omni Gallia vexata**: trans. by a *when*-clause. See Introd., p. 5.

19. **ingredi**: *from entering.* An infinitive is very common with *prohibeo.* A. 558. b. N.; B. 295. 3. N.; G. 549. N. 1; H. 566. 2; HB. 502. 3. b, 587. — **prohibuerint**: A. 535. b; B. 283. 2; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 5; HB. 521. 1. a.

20. **fieri**: inf. in ind. disc.; trans. *it was coming to pass.* What was coming to pass? The answer gives the subject of *fieri.* It is, of course, the clause that follows. — **uti sibi sumerent**: *that they took upon themselves.* A. 569. 2; B. 297. 2; G. 553. 3; H. 571. 1; HB. 521. 3. a. In the direct form it would be *qua ex re fit uti . . . sumant.* — **memoria**: abl. of cause; cf. *mobilitate*, p. 90, l. 10.

22. **omnia . . . explorata**: *that they had everything ascertained.* This expression emphasizes the result of action, whereas *omnia se exploravisse, that they had ascertained everything*, would emphasize the action itself. A. 497. b; B. 337. 7 (337. 6); G. 238; H. 431. 3; HB. 605. 5. In expressions like this we see the origin of the perfect tense in English, French, and other modern languages.

23. **propinquitatibus**: the Remi were Belgae.

24. **quantam . . . pollicitus sit**: *how great a number each*

(chief) *had promised*, ind. quest. A favorite position of *quisque* is immediately after a reflexive, relative, or interrogative. PAGE 91

25. **Plurimum**: see note on *quid possent*, l. 15.

26. **virtute**: abl. of cause or abl. of specification. A. 418; B. 226; G. 397; H. 480; HB. 441.

27. **armata milia centum**: *a hundred armed thousands*, i e. *a hundred thousand armed men*. So *electa milia LX*, *sixty thousand picked men*.

28. **totius**: for declension see the grammar. — **sibi**: *for themselves*. A. 376; B. 188. 1; G. 344; H. 425. 2; HB. 366.

29. **Suessiones . . . finitimos**: in the direct form, *Suessiones nostri sunt finitimi; suos* must refer to the speakers, the Remi. If the reference were to the Bellovaci, *horum* would be used.

31. **Diviciacum**: not, of course, Diviciacus the Haeduan, a prominent character in Bk. I, who is mentioned in the next chapter. — **qui . . . obtinuerit**: *who had held control not only of a great part of these regions but also even of Britain*. The correlatives *cum . . . tum* are nearly equal to *et . . . et*.

32. **partis**: depends on *imperium*. A. 348; B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2; HB. 354. — **regionum**: A. 346; B. 201; G. 367; H. 440. 5; HB. 346. — **obtinuerit**: for tense cf. *incolant*, l. 9.

1. **summam**: *the management*, subject of *deferri*. — **omnium voluntate**: *according to the wish of all*, *i.e.* unanimously. A. 412. b; B. 220. 3; G. 399. N. 1; H. 475. 3; HB. 414. a. 92

2. **habere**: sc. as subject *Suessiones*, or a pronoun referring to them. — **numero**: abl. of specification; cf. *virtute*, p. 91, l. 26.

3. **Nervios**: sc. *polliceri*. — **maxime feri**: sup. of *ferus*. A. 128; B. 74; HB. 121. — **ipsos**: the Belgae. — **habeantur**: why is this subjunctive?

6. **Condrusos**: with this and the following accusatives supply *polliceri*, or *conficere posse* (from p. 91, l. 27), and make the clause depend on *arbitrari*, l. 8.

7. **Germani**: A. 393. a; B. 177. 3; G. 205, 206; H. 393; HB. 392. b.

8. **appellantur**: is this a part of the indirect discourse? See note on *noluerant*, p. 90, l. 8. — **arbitrari**: sc. as subject *se*, referring to the Remi; direct, *arbitramur*, *we think*. Perhaps these tribes had not sent delegates to the meeting. — **ad**: *about* (*up to*).

The location of some of the tribes mentioned in this chapter is fixed by modern names of places, e.g. *Bellovaci*, Beauvais; *Ambiani*, Amiens.

PAGE 92

V. 9. **Caesar . . . iussit**: *Caesar encouraged the Remi, dismissed them with gracious words, and directed that all their senate*, etc. Participles may often best be translated by finite verbs.

10. **convenire**: A. 563. a; B. 331. II; G. 423. N. 6; H. 565. 3; HB. 587.

11. **obsides**: *as hostages*. Perhaps the graciousness of Caesar's speech was not fully appreciated by the Remi, when they heard the orders which followed. — **ad diem**: *promptly*, '*on time*.'

13. **rei publicae . . . intersit**: *it concerned the state* (Rome) *and the common safety* (of Romans and Haedui). For *rei publicae* see A. 355; B. 210, 211. 1; G. 381; H. 449. 1; HB. 345. What is the subject of *intersit?* Why is *intersit* subjunctive? Cf. *essent*, p. 91, l. 15.

14. **manus hostium distineri**: *that the forces of the enemy be kept from uniting* (*be held apart*). The inseparable prefix *dis-* means *apart*. — **ne confligendum sit**: *that they might not be obliged to fight*. For the impersonal use of the passive periphrastic conjugation cf. *dubitandum*, p. 90, l. 22. For mood of *confligendum sit* see A. 531. 1; B. 282. 1; G. 545. 3; H. 568; HB. 502. 2. The clause is to be closely connected with *distineri*.

15. **Id**: refers to *manus distineri*, and is subject of *posse*. The sentence is in indirect discourse depending on *docet*, l. 13. — **si Haedui introduxerint**: *if the Haedui led* (lit. *should have led*). The powerful Bellovaci would thus be kept busy defending their own territory, and away from the rest of the Belgae. What mood is *introduxerint?* Why? It was future perfect in the direct form.

17. **mandatis**: here a noun.

18. **in unum locum**: *in one place*, but, as *coactas* implies motion, we have the accusative with *in*.

19. **vidit**: A. 543; B. 287. 1; G. 561; H. 602; HB. 554, 557. — **neque**: *and not*, connects *vidit* and *cognovit*, but the negative belongs to *longe*. — **ab iis exploratoribus, ab Remis**: connect both phrases with *cognovit*.

20. **cognovit**: *learned*. — **flumen, exercitum**: two accusatives with *traducere*, one the object of *ducere*, the other depending on the preposition. Cf. *Rhenum traductos*, p. 91, l. 16. — **extremis**: how is this compared? For use of word see A. 293; B. 241. 1; G. 291. R. 2; H. 497. 4; HB. 244.

21. **traducere**: A. 456; B. 328. 1; G. 423. 2; H. 607; HB. 586. — **ibi**: north of the Aisne, near the little village of Berry-au-Bac. Thus he was between the Aisne and a small, marshy stream (the Miette). See the plan, p. 95.

PAGE 92

22. **Quae res**: *this manoeuver*. — **et**: notice that the conjunction is used three times to connect the three predicates of *quae res*, but the first *et* may be omitted in translation. — **latus unum**: the side next the river and nearly parallel with it. — **ripis**: abl. of means.

23. **muniebat**: see note at the end of Bk. I, Chap. III. Reread from the beginning of this book, noticing the force of each tense of the indicative. — **post . . . reddebat**; *rendered his rear* (lit. *those things which were behind him*) *safe from the enemy*. Notice the strong emphasis of position of *post eum*, as also *commeatus*, l. 24.

24. **commeatus ut portari possent efficiebat**: *made it possible for supplies to be brought*, lit. *accomplished that supplies could be brought*.

25. **possent**: for mood see A. 568; B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 3; HB. 521. 3. a. — **In eo flumine**: *over that river*; at Berry-au-Bac; Caesar had probably crossed by this bridge.

26. **in altera parte**: *i.e.* on the south, or left, bank. The river here flows almost due west. By guarding the bridge Caesar secured his retreat in case of disaster.

27. **in altitudinem**: *in height*. Notice that in this idiom the accusative is used with *in*. What prepositions are used with both accusative and ablative?

28. **pedum duodecim**: depends on *vallo*. A. 345. b; B. 203. 2; G. 365. R. 2; H. 440. 3; HB. 355. — **duodeviginti pedum**: width is meant. This is given as the more important dimension. Perhaps a definite relation was regularly observed between depth and width. See Introd., p. 43. The site of this camp has been excavated, and it appears that the depth of the trench was about nine or ten feet.

VI. 30. **milia passuum octo**: *eight miles*. See note on *milia passuum*, p. 56, l. 14. — **Id**: notice its emphatic position. The word serves to connect this sentence with the preceding. — **ex itinere**: the Belgae did not stop to organize a regular siege, but attacked the town as soon as they arrived. See Introd., p. 46. — **magno impetu**: abl. of manner. A. 412; B. 220. 1; G. 399; H. 473. 3; HB. 445. 3.

93

2. **sustentatum est**: impersonal; trans. *the attack was sustained* or *the town held out*.

3. **Gallorum . . . haec**: *the method of attack of the Gauls, as well as* (lit. *the same as*) *of the Belgae, is as follows*. By *Gallorum* Caesar means the Celtae. See Introd., p. 23. For *atque* see A. 384. N. 2; B. 341. 1. c; G. 643; H. 508. 5; HB. 307. 2. a.

5. **ubi**: *when*, introduces *coepti sunt* and *nudatus est*.

PAGE 93

7. **moenibus**: depends on *circumiecta*. A. 370; B. 187. III. 2; G. 348; H. 429. 2; HB. 376.

9. **coepti sunt**: this verb is usually passive when the dependent infinitive is passive. A. 205. a; B. 133. 1; G. 423. N. 3; H. 299. 1; HB. 199. 2.

10. **defensoribus**: abl. of separation. A. 401; B. 214. 1. b; G. 390. 1. 2; H. 462; HB. 408. 3.

11. **testudine facta**: *making a testudo* (*tortoise*). See Introd., p. 46, and the illustration on p. 93.

12. **murum**: observe that not all verbs compounded with prepositions given in the rule take the dative.

13. **Quod**: *this*. A relative at the beginning of a sentence is usually best translated by a demonstrative or personal pronoun, often with a connective, e.g. *and* or *but*. A. 308. f; B. 251. 6; G. 610. R. 1; H. 510; HB. 284. 8.

16. **conicerent**: its subject is *multitudo*. A. 317. d; B. 254. 4. a; G. 211. R. 1. a; H. 389. 1; HB. 331. a. — **consistendi**: cf. *coniurandi*, p. 90, l. 5.

17. **erat nulli**: A. 373; B. 190; G. 349; H. 430; HB. 374. The subject of *erat* is *potestas*. Trans. *no one was able to maintain his position*. What literally?

18. **finem oppugnandi fecisset**: *had put an end to the assault* (*made an end of assaulting*).

20. **summa nobilitate**: (*a man*) *of the highest rank*. A. 415; B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. 2; HB. 443. Caesar might have written *summae nobilitatis*.

22. **oppido**: A. 370; B. 187. III; G. 347; H. 429; HB. 376.

23. **ex iis**: this equivalent for the partitive genitive, or genitive of the whole, is especially common with numerals. See note on *ex Belgis*, p. 91, l. 2. — **legati**: *as envoys*. Cf. p. 91, l. 3.

24. **nisi . . . posse**: a sentence in indirect discourse, depending on *nuntios mittit*, which may be translated *sent messengers to say that*. In the direct form, *nisi subsidium mihi submittetur, diutius sustinere non possum*. — **sibi**: as *submittatur* implies motion, Caesar might have written *ad se*, but the dative makes the idea of helping more prominent than that of sending.

VII. 26. **de media nocte**: *shortly after midnight*, or *about midnight*. See note on *de tertia vigilia*, p. 61, l. 24. — **ducibus**: *as guides*, predicate apposition to *isdem*.

27. **usus**: *employing*. A. 491; B. 336. 5; G. 282. N.; H. 640. 1; HB. 601. 1.

28. **subsidio oppidanis**: A. 382. 1. N. 1; B. 191. 2; G. 356; H. 433; HB. 360. b. PAGE 93

29. **adventu**: abl. of time and cause. — **Remis accessit**: *was aroused in the Remi*. What literally? *Remis* is dative depending on *accessit*, a compound of *ad*. See note on *oppido*, l. 22.

30. **propugnandi**: notice the force of *pro*; they were eager to sally forth.

31. **hostibus**: dat., but trans. *from the enemy*. — **potiundi**: gerundive, or future passive participle, agreeing with *oppidi*, which limits *spes*. Trans. *hope of taking the town*, lit. *hope of the town to be taken*. Since the gerundive is a passive participle, it is regularly used in agreement with a noun only when the verb is transitive. See A. 503. N. 2; B. 339. 4; G. 427. N. 4. 5; H. 623. 1; HB. 613. 2. b. N. The learner should carefully distinguish between the gerund, a verbal noun, and the gerundive. For the form *potiundi* (instead of *potiendi*) see A. p. 89, foot-note 1; B. 116. 2; G. 130. 8; H. 243; HB. 184. N.

32. **oppidum, vicis, aedificiis**: see note on p. 57, l. 22.

34. **quo**: an adverb, equivalent to *ad quae*. — **incensis**: this participle is parallel to the deponent participles *morati* and *depopulati*, and may be translated *having set on fire*.

35. **omnibus copiis**: *cum* might have been used. A. 413. a; B. 222. 1; G. 392. R. 1; H. 474. 2. N. 1; HB. 420.

1. **a . . . duobus**: *less than two miles away*. Perhaps the best explanation of this phrase is that which regards *a* as an adverb, and the ablative as one of degree, or measure, of difference. A. 414; B. 223; G. 403; H. 479; HB. 424. For *minus* see A. 407. c; B. 217. 3; G. 296. R. 4; H. 471. 4; HB. 416. d. 94

2. **milibus**: not to be explained as in l. 1, but as an ablative following the comparative. A. 406; B. 217. 1; G. 398; H. 471; HB. 416, 417.

VIII. 4. **et, et**: *both, and*.

5. **opinionem virtutis**: *opinion of their valor, their reputation for valor*; for the case cf. *partis*, p. 91, l. 32. See Introd., p. 25. — **proelio**: *i.e.* a pitched battle; abl. of separation.

6. **quid posset**: see note on *quid possent*, p. 91, l. 15.

7. **auderent**: a semi-deponent verb.

8. **inferiores**: how is this word compared? — **loco**: abl. abs. with the adjectives *opportuno* and *idoneo*. A. 419. a; B. 227. 1; G. 409; H. 489; HB. 421. — **pro castris**: the front of a camp should be the side towards the enemy. A glance at the plan shows that here no side exactly fronted the Belgian lines, but it seems pretty cer-

PAGE 94

tain that Caesar meant by the front the part facing westward. — **ad aciem instruendam**: *for drawing up a line of battle*, a gerundive phrase depending on *opportuno* and *idoneo*. A. 385. a; B. 192. 2. N.; G. 359. R. 3; H. 435. 1; HB. 384. 2.

10. **editus**: *rising*, lit. *having been put forth*. — **tantum**: sc. *loci*, and connect with *patebat* as acc. of extent; *extended over as much space as a battle-line*, etc. This refers to the portion of the hill west of the camp. See the plan. — **adversus**: *fronting* (*the enemy*), an adj. agreeing with *collis*.

11. **quantum**: obj. of *occupare* and correlative to *tantum*. — **loci**: A. 346. a. 3; B. 201. 2; G. 369; H. 442; HB. 346.

12. **ex utraque parte**: *on both sides*. *Ex* and *ab* are frequently used in expressions denoting position, contrary to the English idiom. A. 429. b; G. 390. 2. N. 6; H. 485. 4; HB. 406. 2. — **lateris deiectus**: i.e. *steep lateral slopes*, whereas the front sloped gradually. — **in fronte**: cf. *pro castris*, l. 8.

13. **paulatim**: do not confuse this word with *paululum* or *paulisper*. — **redibat**: as the upward slope of a hill may be said to leave the level of the plain, so the downward slope may be said to 'return.'

14. **transversam**: *crosswise*, *i.e.* at right angles to the axis of the hill. See the plan. — **obduxit**: notice the force of *ob;* the purpose was to oppose or obstruct an attacking party. This is the main verb of the sentence. — **passuum quadringentorum**: limits *fossam*. A. 425. a; B. 203. 2; G. 365. R. 2; H. 440. 3; HB. 355.

15. **ad extremas fossas**: *at the ends of the trenches*. A. 293; B. 241. 1; G. 291. R. 2; H. 497. 4; HB. 244.

16. **tormenta**: see Introd., p. 50. — **instruxisset**: A. 593; B. 324. 1; G. 663. 1; H. 652; HB. 508, 509.

17. **poterant**: indicative because it is the writer's statement of the reason. The use of *possent* would have indicated that the reason was present in Caesar's mind at the time of digging the trenches. — **ab lateribus**: if the trenches had not been dug, the enemy could have reached the right of the Roman line by crossing the Miette at their own left and then following the stream, and the Roman left by passing behind the camp and along between the hill and the Aisne. See the plan.

18. **duabus legionibus**: what were their numbers? See Introd., p. 36. Raw legions were commonly assigned to camp duty, or stationed as a reserve.

19. **ut . . . possent**: a clause of purpose. — **si . . . esset**: *wherever* (*if to any place*) *it might be necessary*. The subjunctive

may be explained on the same principle as *instruxisset*, l. 16. — **subsidio**: *as a reinforcement*, lit. *for help*. Why dative? PAGE 94

21. **eductas instruxerunt**: we may translate *led out and drew up*.

IX. 22. **Palus**: the Miette flowed through this marsh. — **nostrum**: from *noster*; sc. *exercitum*.

23. **Hanc**: see note on *id*, p. 92, l. 30. — **si . . . exspectabant**: *the enemy were waiting (to see) if our men would cross*. A. 576. a; B. 300. 3; G. 460. 1. b; H. 649. II. 3; HB. 582. 2. a.

24. **si . . . fieret**: depends on *adgrederentur*. Cf. *si . . . esset*, l. 19. — **ut . . . adgrederentur**: *that they might attack them at a disadvantage*. — **impeditos**: *i.e.* as they were struggling through the marsh.

26. **contendebatur**: impersonal; cf. *sustentatum est*, p. 93, l. 2. — **faciunt**: A. 543; B. 287. 1. a; G. 561; H. 602; HB. 557.

27. **equitum proelio**: equivalent to *equestri proelio*. — **proelio**: abl. abs. with *secundiore*. — **nostris**: *to our men*; it depends on *secundiore*. A. 384; B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2; HB. 362. I.

28. **ad flumen**: to the west of Caesar's camp. Apparently the Belgae did not cross the Miette.

29. **quod**: the antecedent is *flumen*.

31. **eo consilio**: *with this design*. — **ut . . . prohiberent**: this explains *eo consilio*. Four of the subjunctives are verbs of the *ut*-clause. On these the clauses *si possent* and *si minus potuissent* depend. The two relative clauses do not help to express the plan of the Belgae, but are added by Caesar, and their verbs are therefore indicative. — **castellum**: cf. p. 92, l. 26. This *castellum* was south of the Aisne.

1. **minus**: when a protasis is repeated in a negative form, *minus* is often used instead of *non*. 95

2. **magno nobis usui**: *of great use* (or *very useful*) *to us*. See note on *subsidio oppidanis*, p. 93, l. 28. The Remi were traitors to the Belgae, and were furnishing supplies to Caesar. Cf. Chap. III.

3. **ad bellum gerendum**: *in (for) carrying on the war*.

X. 4. **certior factus**: cf. *certior fiebat*, p. 90, l. 3. The nature of the ground no doubt concealed the movements of the Belgae from Caesar.

5. **levis armaturae**: *of light equipment*, i.e. *light-armed*. The expression is equivalent to an adjective. A. 345; B. 203; G. 365; H. 440. 3; HB. 355. — **ponte**: *by way of the bridge*. A. 429. a; B. 218. 9; G. 389; H. 476; HB. 426. a. — **traducit**: sc. *flumen*.

6. **in eo loco**: see the plan.

7. **Hostis**: obj. of *adgressi*.

PAGE 95

8. **per . . . reppulerunt**: we should be likely to say *over their bodies the rest attempted to cross, but were driven back*. This expedient of changing the voice of a verb in translation is often a very convenient means of preserving emphasis.

10. **primos . . . interfecerunt**: we may say *the foremost were surrounded and killed*, or, keeping the voice of *interfecerunt*, *they surrounded and killed the foremost*. Is *equitatu* abl. of means, or of agent?

11. **expugnando**: is this a gerund, or a gerundive? — **oppido**: Bibrax; cf. Chaps. VI and VII.

12. **se**: the indirect reflexive. A. 300. 2; B. 244. 1. II. a; G. 521; H. 504; HB. 262. 2. — **neque**: connects *intellexerunt* and *viderunt*, both of which are introduced by *ubi*, as is also *coepit*; but the negative should be put with *progredi*.

13. **pugnandi causa**: one of the ways of expressing purpose. Consult the grammar. The student should accustom himself to finding things in his grammar with the help of the index. Either the word 'purpose' or the word 'gerund' should put him on the track of this construction. — **ipsos**: a more distinctive word than *eos*, marking a contrast with *nostros*.

14. **constituerunt**: the principal verb of the sentence. Depending on it we have a clause in indirect discourse representing a decision as to a fact, *optimum esse* standing for *optimum est*, and a clause with the subjunctive representing a decision as to a course of action. It is not uncommon for a verb to have object-clauses of different forms.

15. **domum suam**: *to his home*. A. 427. 2; B. 182. 1. b; G. 337; H. 419. 1; HB. 450. b. — **reverti**: subject of *esse*, and has *quemque* for its subject. Learn its principal parts from the Vocabulary. It is semi-deponent, having active forms in the perfect, passive in the present. How does it differ, then, from *audeo*? — **quorum**: its antecedent is *eos*, l. 16. A relative clause very often precedes the clause containing the antecedent of the relative.

17. **convenirent**: *to come together*. A subjunctive depending on *constituo* is regularly introduced by *ut*. See A. 565. a. N.; B. 295. 8; G. 546; H. 565; HB. 502. 3. a. — **ut . . . decertarent . . . uterentur**: a clause of purpose. On what does it depend? In studying syntax always consider this question. It is the only way to understand a sentence fully.

96

1. **sententiam**: *decision*.

2. **ratio**: *consideration*. It is explained by the appositive clause *quod . . . cognoverant*. A. 572; B. 299. 1; G. 525. 2; H. 588. 3;

HB. 549, 552. 1. — **finibus appropinquare**: *were drawing near to the territory*. The dative is the usual construction with this verb.

3. **His . . . poterat**: trans. freely *these could not be persuaded to wait longer and not aid their people*. *His* depends on *persuaderi*, which is used impersonally, as all intransitive verbs must be when passive. 'I am persuaded' is not *persuadeor*, but *mihi persuadetur*, lit. *it is persuaded* (*made acceptable*) *to me*. A. 372; B. 187. II. b; G. 208. 2; H. 426. 3; HB. 364. 2. By *his* is meant the Bellovaci in the Belgian army. Caesar's scheme had worked well; cf. p. 92, ll. 13–17. — **ut . . . morarentur . . . ferrent**: subject of *persuaderi poterat*.

XI. 5. **secunda vigilia**: abl. of time. See note on *de tertia vigilia*, p. 61, l. 24.

6. **castris**: *e castris* might have been used. — **nullo . . . imperio**: *in no definite order and under no definite direction*. No one superintended the movement. A. 412; B. 221; G. 399; H. 473. 3; HB. 422. — **cum . . . peteret**: A. 549; B. 286. 2; G. 586; H. 598; HB. 526. We might translate *every one trying to get for himself*.

7. **sibi**: A. 376; B. 188. 1; G. 345; H. 425. 2; HB. 366. Notice its emphatic position, with *quisque* just after it, and see note on p. 91, l. 24.

8. **fecerunt ut . . . videretur**: *caused the departure to seem like flight*. See note on *possent*, p. 92, l. 25. — **fugae**: see note on *Belgis*, p. 90, l. 19.

9. **Caesar**: the common subject of *perspexerat* and *continuit*. Trans. *having learned . . . and fearing . . . because he . . . Caesar kept*. — **speculatores**: *spies*, sent secretly to obtain information. — **veritus**: see note on *usus*, p. 93, l. 27.

11. **castris**: the idea of means is present in this ablative as well as that of place. — **confirmata . . . exploratoribus**: *since the fact had been corroborated by the scouts*. For the *exploratores* see note on p. 61, l. 21.

12. **qui . . . moraretur**: see note on *qui deduceret*, p. 90, l. 17.

13. **His**: dat. with the compound verb; see note on *oppido*, p. 93, l. 22. Why is it plural?

15. **novissimos**: *those in the rear*.

16. **eorum fugientium**: *of them as they fled*. Do not say 'of those fleeing.'

17. **cum**: causal, introducing three verbs, *consisterent*, *sustinerent*, and *ponerent*. Though these verbs are grammatically coördinate, logically the first two are somewhat subordinated to the third. Notice that the first two are connected by *-que*, while the

PAGE 96 third, which has a new subject, stands without a connective. It is as if Caesar had said 'because, while (it is true) those at the end of the line stood their ground bravely, those farther forward were thrown into a panic and fled.' — **ab extremo agmine**: see note on *ex utraque parte*, p. 94, l. 12. — **ventum erat**: trans. personally, *those to whom they* (the pursuers) *had come, those whom they had overtaken.*

20. **imperio**: cf. l. 6. — **perturbatis ordinibus**: *broke ranks and*, etc.

22. **tantam multitudinem quantum fuit**: lit. *a number as great as was the length of the day*, i.e. *as great a number as there was time for*. See Introd., p. 45, for the usual treatment of a defeated army.

23. **sequi**: A. 456; B. 328. 1; G. 423. 2; H. 607; HB. 586.

24. **erat imperatum**: *they had been ordered*, lit. *it had been commanded*. Why is the verb used impersonally?

XII. 25. **Postridie eius diei**: *the next day*, lit. *on the morrow* (*next day*) *of that day*. The genitive *diei* requires no special explanation, but the student may consult A. 359. b; B. 201. 3. a; H. 446. 5; HB. 380. c. — **se reciperent**: *could recover*. A. 551. b; B. 292. 1. b; G. 577; H. 605. II; HB. 507. 4. b. Caesar's plan was to deal with the tribes of the Belgae one at a time.

27. **magno itinere**: *by a forced march*. — **Noviodunum**: this has been identified with the modern Soissons, named from the Suessiones. Probably it was near the site of Soissons, at all events.

28. **ex itinere**: see note on p. 92, l. 30.

29. **ab defensoribus**: abl. of separation. The preposition might have been omitted.

30. **paucis defendentibus**: abl. abs., to be translated by a clause beginning with *though*. — **expugnare**: *to carry by storm*, whereas *oppugnare* means *to assault*.

31. **Castris munitis**: the building of camps is constantly referred to by Caesar. See Introd., p. 41. — **vineas**: see Introd., p. 47. — **quaeque**: *-que* is the enclitic, *and*. The antecedent of *quae* is not expressed. — **ad oppugnandum**: for *assaulting, for the assault*.

32. **ex fuga**: belongs grammatically with *convenit*, but its position unites it closely with *multitudo*, about as if it were *fugientium*, agreeing with *Suessionum*. Those are meant who had escaped the slaughter told of in the previous chapter.

97 1. **aggere, turribus**: see Introd., pp. 47, 48. — **magnitudine**: goes with *permoti*.

PAGE

4. **petentibus . . . conservarentur**: *inasmuch as the Remi begged that they should be spared.* The Remi were, it will be remembered, kinsmen of the Suessiones. Cf. p. 91, l. 11. 97

XIII. 6. **primis**: *the leading men.*

7. **Galbae**: cf. p. 91, l. 33.

8. **in . . . accipit**: in English idiom *accepted the surrender of the Suessiones.* — **in Bellovacos**: after the battle on the Aisne Caesar marched westward, reaching first the Suessiones, then the powerful tribe of the Bellovaci. See the map facing p. 91.

9. **Qui cum**: A. 308. f; B. 251. 6; G. 610. R. 1; H. 510; HB. 284. 8. — **sua omnia**: *all their possessions* (*their all*).

11. **maiores natu**: *older men;* A. 131. c. N.; B. 226. 1; G. 397; H. 480. 1; HB. 441.

12. **voce significare**: do you see any reason why Caesar did not write *dicere?* What is the object of *significare?*

13. **fidem ac potestatem**: *protection and power.*

15. **accessisset, poneret**: observe carefully the change of tense. — **pueri**: *children.*

16. **passis**: from *pando.* — **suo more**: *according to their custom;* A. 418. a; B. 220. 3; G. 397; H. 475. 3; HB. 414. a.

XIV. 18. **Haeduorum copiis**: the forces with which Diviciacus had threatened the Bellovaci. Cf. p. 96, l. 2. — **facit verba**: *made a plea.*

19. **omni tempore . . . amicitia**: *i.e.* they had always been faithful friends.

20. **impulsos . . . intulisse**: this sentence will not be troublesome, if one sees plainly that *defecisse* and *intulisse* belong with *impulsos* (*Bellovacos*), while *perferre* has *Haeduos* for its subject, and depends on *dicerent*. Notice the tenses of the infinitives. The *principes* said *Haedui perferunt*, while Diviciacus said *impulsi et defecerunt et intulerunt.* Why is *dicerent* subjunctive?

4. **civitati intulissent**: *had brought upon the state.* 98

5. **profugisse**: sc. *eos*, the implied antecedent of *qui.* — **Petere**: *Bellovacos* and *Haeduos* form its subject.

6. **sua clementia**: *his customary clemency. Clementia* is the mildness of one in authority; *mansuetudo*, gentleness of disposition. — **utatur**: the previous subjunctives of this passage have been imperfect or pluperfect, from here on they are present or perfect. Such a change is common, especially in long passages of indirect discourse. The ruling verb is *facit* (p. 97, l. 18), a historical present. A. 485. e; B. 268. 3; G. 654. N.; H. 546; HB. 491. 1. 2.

7. **Quod . . . amplificaturum**: in the direct discourse, *quod si*

AGE
98

feceris (fut. perf.), *amplificabis*. — **auctoritatem**: Caesar might be expected to wish to increase the prestige of the Haedui, because they were allies of Rome.

8. **quorum**: its antecedent is *Belgas*. — **si . . . consuerint**: direct, *si inciderunt, sustentare consuevimus*. Remember that Diviciacus, a Haeduan, is speaking.

9. **consuerint**: for *consueverint*, a perfect with present meaning. See *consuesco* in Vocab.

XV. 10. **honoris . . . causa**: i.e. *to show honor to Diviciacus and the Haedui*. A. 404. c; B. 198. 1; G. 373. R. 1; H. 475. 2; HB. 339. d.

11. **eos in fidem recepturum**: *would take them under his protection, i.e.* would accept their allegiance; cf. p. 97, l. 13.

12. **magna auctoritate**: *of great influence*; abl. of quality, or description. — **multitudine**: abl. of specification, or respect.

13. DC: *sescentos*. This was a very large number.

16. **Nervii**: three tribes, the Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani, had submitted with scarcely a show of resistance. We shall read that the Nervii acted differently. — **Quorum**: poss. gen., limiting *natura* and *moribus*.

17. **Nullum . . . mercatoribus**: *that traders had no access to them*. For case of *mercatoribus* see A. 373; B. 190; G. 349; H. 430; HB. 374. Regarding the *mercatores* see note on p. 55, l. 8.

18. **nihil vini**: *no wine*, lit. *nothing of wine*; A. 346. a. 1; B. 201. 1; G. 369; H. 440. 5; HB. 346. — **pati**: sc. *eos*, i.e. *Nervios*.

19. **rerum . . . pertinentium**: *i.e.* luxuries. — **inferri**: A. 563. c; B. 331. III; G. 553. 2. N.; H. 614; HB. 587.

21. **feros**: how is this compared? Cf. *maxime feri*, p. 92, l. 3. — **magnae virtutis**: gen. of quality, or descriptive gen. Notice that it limits *homines*, and is equivalent to an adjective.

22. **dedidissent**: it would be subjunctive in the direct form also, since it stands in a relative clause expressing cause. A. 535. e; B. 283. 3. a; G. 633; H. 592; HB. 523. — **patriam**: *of their fathers, ancestral*.

23. **sese**: not subject of *confirmare*, but of *missuros* and *accepturos* (*esse*).

XVI. 25. **triduum**: why accusative? — **iter fecisset**: *had marched*. Trace Caesar's route on the map.

26. **Sabim**: for the form see A. 75. a. 1; B. 38. 1; G. 57. 1; H. 102. 2; HB. 88. 1. — **amplius**: cf. *minus*, p. 94, l. 1.

27. **trans id flumen**: emphatic, *on the other side of this river, i.e.* on the southern bank.

29. **his utrisque**: *both of these (tribes)*; but notice that the genitive is not used. How is *utrisque* declined? PAG 98

30. **uti experirentur**: *to try*, lit. *that they should try*, obj. of *persuaserant*. — **exspectari**: its subject is *copias*. The Atuatuci did not come in time.

31. **mulieres**: this word and the omitted antecedent of *qui* are objects of *coniecisse*, the subject of which is understood.

1. **per aetatem**: *i.e.* the old men and the children. — **in eum locum quo**: almost equivalent to *in talem locum ut eo*. 99

2. **exercitui**: *an* (not *the*) *army*. For the case cf. *mercatoribus*, p. 98, l. 18.

XVII. 3. **centuriones**: see Introd., p. 33.

4. **castris**: *for a camp*. This may be taken with either *idoneum* or *deligant*. — **deligant**: subj. of purpose. — **ex Belgis**: equivalent to a genitive.

5. **una**: the adverb; cf. p. 98, l. 28.

7. **eorum . . . perspecta**: *having carefully observed our army's usual order of march of (during) those days*. Notice how the genitives are heaped up. The translation given above will indicate the connection.

8. **demonstrarunt**: A. 181. a; B. 116. 1; G. 131. 1; H. 238; HB. 163. 1. — **inter singulas legiones**: *between every two legions*; for the meaning of *singuli* see Vocab. A passage in indirect discourse begins here and extends to the end of the sentence. For the formation of the word *legio* see A. 238. b; G. 181. 2. b; H. 333; HB. 206. 2.

9. **numerum**: *amount*, since we translate *impedimentorum* by a singular noun.

10. **quicquam**: lit. *anything at all*. The masculine is *quisquam*. Decline it without a feminine, and only in the singular. Note that *and nothing* is not *et nihil*, but *neque quicquam*. See A. 311, 312; B. 252. 4; G. 317. 1; H. 513; HB. 276. 7. — **negoti**: cf. *vini*, p. 98, l. 18. What was no trouble? The answer to this question will give the subject of *esse*. — **prima legio**: *i.e.* the legion at the head of the column. See Introd., pp. 31, 40.

11. **venisset, abessent**: represent future perfect and future in the direct discourse.

12. **sarcinis**: *i.e.* the *packs* carried by the soldiers, while *impedimenta* signifies the *heavy baggage*. See Introd., p. 40. The attack was to be made before the soldiers had laid down their packs. — **qua pulsa**: translate by a clause with *when*. — **futurum ut . . . aude-**

PAGE 99

rent: equivalent to *reliquas . . . non ausuras (esse)*. A. 569. a; B. 270. 3. a, 297. 2; G. 248, 553. 3; H. 619. 2, 571. 1; HB. 472. c, 521. 3. a.

13. **Adiuvabat**: the emphasis may be brought out by a change of voice, e.g. *the advice was supported by the fact that the Nervii*, etc. The subject of *adiuvabat* is the *quod*-clause.

14. **eorum**: the *quidam* of l. 6.

15. **cum . . . possent**: causal, *being weak in cavalry*. For *nihil* see note on *quid possent*, p. 91, l. 15. — **neque enim**: *and in fact . . . not*; the negative goes with *student*.

16. **ei rei**: *i.e.* cavalry. For the case see note on *novis imperiis*, p. 90, l. 10. — **possunt, valent**: practically synonyms. Translate freely, *all their strength lies in infantry*. What literally?

17. **quo**: *in order that*, lit. *by which*; used sometimes instead of *ut* in clauses of purpose, regularly when there is a comparative in the clause. A. 531. a; B. 282. 1. a; G. 545. 2; H. 568. 7; HB. 502. 2. b. — **si venissent**: *if they came* (lit. *should have come*).

18. **teneris . . . interiectis**: young trees were cut into not far from the ground and bent over. The branches then grew out sideways (*in latitudinem*). Thus a hedge was formed, with brambles and thorns filling the interstices. These hedges served as boundaries of districts or towns, or possibly of individual farms. Such hedges are said still to be found in this region.

100

2. **ut . . . praeberent**: obj. of *effecerant*; see note on *possent*, p. 92, l. 25. — **instar muri**: *like a wall*. See *instar* in Vocab., and A. 359. b; B. 198. 2; G. 373; H. 446. 4; HB. 339. d.

3. **quo . . . posset**: *through which (whither) one could not only not enter, but not even see*, or *which could not even be seen through, much less entered*. The clause is one of characteristic.

4. **cum . . . impediretur**: causal. — **non omittendum consilium**: *that the plan (suggestion) should not be neglected*.

5. **sibi**: A. 374; B. 189. 1; G. 355; H. 431; HB. 373. 1.

XVIII. 6. **quem locum**: A. 307. a; B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399. 1; HB. 284. 4. Omit *locum* in translation.

7. **ab . . . declivis**: *sloping downward evenly from the top*.

8. **Ab eo flumine**: *on the other side of this river*.

9. **acclivitate**: *upward slope*; cf. *declivis* above. — **nascebatur**: *rose*. What literally? This hill was on the right, or southern, bank of the Sambre, while Caesar's camp was north of the river. See the plan, p. 102. — **adversus . . . contrarius**: *fronting this and opposite*.

10. **passus**: acc. pl. — **infimus apertus**: *open* (*i.e.* not wooded)

at the bottom. A. 293; B. 241. 1; G. 291. R. 2; H. 497. 4; HB. 244. Both words agree with *collis.* How is *infimus* compared? — **ab superiore parte**: *in the upper part.*

11. **ut . . . posset**: a clause of result.

12. **secundum flumen**: *along the river*, lit. *following the river. Secundum* is derived from *sequor.*

14. **altitudo**: A. 241; B. 149; G. 181. 2. b; H. 345; HB. 207. 2. — **pedum trium**: pred. gen. of measure.

XIX. 15. **subsequebatur**: *was following close behind.* — **omnibus copiis**: A. 413. a; B. 222. 1; G. 392. R. 1; H. 474. 2. N. 1; HB. 420.

16. **ratio ordoque**: the two words express one idea, and therefore take a singular verb. — **aliter . . . ac**: *was different from what*, lit. *had itself otherwise than.* See A. 407. d; B. 341. 1. c; G. 643; H. 516. 3; HB. 307. 2. a. Notice the derivation of *aliter* (from *alius*).

17. **appropinquabat**: *was getting near.*

18. **consuetudine**: see note on *suo more*, p. 97, l. 16. — **expeditas**: *without encumbrances, i.e.* in fighting order. See Introd., p. 40.

19. **conlocarat**: for *conlocaverat.* — **duae legiones**: numbered XIII and XIV. Cf. p. 90, ll. 15, 16. Caesar usually placed the inexperienced soldiers in the position of least danger.

20. **totum agmen claudebant**: *brought up the rear.*

21. **Equites**: these, with the archers and slingers, preceded the main body.

23. **silvas**: those at the top of the hill. Cf. l. 11.

25. **longius . . . pertinebant**: *farther than* (*to the limit to which*) *the open tracts extending before them* (lit. *stretched forward*) *reached.* The Romans dared follow only as far as the edge of the woods. — **quem ad finem**: i.e. *ad finem ad quem.* A. 307. b; B. 251. 4; G. 616. 1; H. 399. 3; HB. 284. 6.

26. **cedentis**: sc. *eos*, obj. of *insequi.*

27. **dimenso**: passive in sense. A. 190. b; B. 112. b; G. 167. N. 2; H. 222. 2; HB. 291. d.

29. **quod tempus**: *the time which.* — **committendi proeli**: *for beginning the battle*, gen. limiting *tempus.* In what case would *proeli* stand, if *committendi* were the gerund? — **convenerat**: *had been agreed upon.* Compare the use of the English word 'convention' in the sense of agreement.

30. **ut**: *just as.* Having arranged their line of battle under cover of the woods and strengthened their courage, they charged.

PAGE 101

1. **incredibili**: A. 252; B. 150. 4; G. 187. 4; H. 329; HB. 208. 2. — **incredibili celeritate**: this phrase limits *decucurrerunt*. Be careful to notice who were routed and who ran down to the river.

2. **in manibus nostris**: *upon us, within reach.*

3. **adverso colle**: *up the hill*, lit. *by way of the hill fronting them*, an abl. of the route, or way by which. A. 429. a; B. 218. 9; G. 389; H. 476; HB. 426. a. These words are, however, explained by some as ablative absolute. The hill was the one where the Roman camp was building. The camp was more than a half mile from the river.

4. **opere**: *i.e.* the work of building the fortifications of the camp. The Romans were completely surprised.

XX. 5. **Caesari**: cf. *sibi*, p. 100, l. 5. — **vexillum**: a red flag displayed at the general's tent. See Introd., p. 39.

6. **proponendum**: with this and the following gerundives of this sentence, except *petendi*, sc. *erat* or *erant*. — **cum oporteret**: *when (ever) it was necessary*. A. 542, 514. D. 2. b; B. 288. 3. a; G. 584. R.; H. 601. 4; HB. 540. — **concurri**: the impersonal use of the passive.

7. **signum**: the signal for the soldiers to take their places in the ranks. — **tuba**: see Introd., p. 39. — **qui**: the omitted antecedent of *qui* is subject of *arcessendi (erant)*.

8. **aggeris**: by this is meant material (timber, sods, stones) used to strengthen the rampart. See Introd., p. 43.

9. **cohortandi**: A. 190. d; B. 112. b; G. 128; H. 222. 2; HB. 291. a. — **signum**: i.e. *proeli committendi*. The signal given by the *tuba* was probably taken up and repeated by horn-blowers with their *cornua*. See Introd., p. 39. There was, perhaps, one horn-blower for each maniple.

10. **brevitas**: A. 241; B. 149; G. 186. 7; H. 345; HB. 207. 2. — **impediebat**: see note on *ratio ordoque*, p. 100, l. 16.

11. **duae res**: (1) *scientia atque usus*; (2) *quod ab opere . . . vetuerat, the fact that Caesar had forbidden*, etc.

12. **superioribus proeliis**: abl. of means. — **quid . . . poterant**: *they could themselves not less advantageously decide for themselves (direct themselves) what ought to be done than be shown by others*. Observe the collocation of intensive and reflexive pronoun, *ipsi* and *sibi*, a favorite one in Latin.

14. **singulis legionibus singulos legatos**: *the several legates*, and *their respective legions*. Caesar often assigned to his *legati* the command of legions. See Introd., p. 32.

15. **vetuerat**: what verb of commanding takes the accusative

and infinitive? What is the usual construction with other verbs of commanding?

16. **nihil iam**: *no longer.*

17. **per se . . . administrabant**: *did of themselves what seemed best.*

XXI. 18. **cohortandos**: the speech of encouragement before a battle was regarded by Caesar as necessary.

19. **quam . . . obtulit**: sc. *militum; whatever part (of them) chance brought in his way.* A. 307. e; B. 251. 4. b; G. 616 2; H. 399. 3; HB. 327. — **ad legionem decimam**: posted on the left wing. See the plan, p. 102.

20. **non longiore quam uti . . . retinerent**: *not longer than* (simply to urge) *that they should hold fast*, etc. Cf. *uti . . . cognoscant*, p. 90, l. 20.

21. **neu**: equivalent to *et ne*, as *neque* (*nec*) is equivalent to *et non.*

22. **animo**: abl. of specification or, as explained by some, a locative abl.

23. **quod . . . aberant**: with what is this causal clause to be connected? — **non longius quam . . . posset**: *not farther than* (*whither*) *a spear could be thrown, i.e.* not too far for spears to reach them. A. 535. c; B. 283. 2. a; G. 298, 631. 3; H. 570. 1; HB. 521. 2. c. *Quo* is here equivalent to *ut eo.*

24. **signum**: cf. l. 9. — **in alteram partem**: *i.e.* to the right wing.

25. **pugnantibus occurrit**: sc. *militibus; he found the soldiers already fighting.* — **Temporis, hostium**: emphatic by position; the *time* was so short, the *enemy* so ready.

27. **ad insignia accommodanda**: *for adjusting their ornaments*, crests of helmets, perhaps also other devices by which soldiers of different divisions of the army could be distinguished.

28. **galeas**: not worn on the head during the march, or while the soldier was at work. See Introd., p. 35. — **scutis**: abl. of separation. See Introd., p. 35, and the picture, p. 81. — **tegimenta**: leather coverings, to prevent the shields from becoming scratched or tarnished. For the formation of the word see A. 239; B. 147. 4; G. 189. 20; H. 336; HB. 206. 3. — **defuerit**: for mood see A. 537. 1; B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 570; HB. 521. 2. For tense see A. 485. c; B. 268. 6; G. 513; H. 550; HB. 478.

29. **Quam . . . constitit, ne . . . dimitteret**: *i.e.* every one took his place wherever he happened to come first, so as not to lose time, etc. — **Quam**: agrees with *partem.* For the order of the words *quam quisque* see note on p. 91, l. 24. — **quaeque . . .**

PAGE 101 **conspexit**: *and what(ever) standards he saw first.* The standards of maniples are meant. See Introd., p. 38.

30. **ad haec**: we might expect *hac in parte et ad haec.* — **suis**: sc. *signis.* Is *quaerendis* a gerund or a gerundive? Which is *pugnandi?*

31. **dimitteret**: *lose* (voluntarily), *let slip.*

XXII. 32. **loci natura deiectusque collis**: for the order of these words see note on p. 60, l. 14.

33. **rei . . . ordo**: *i.e.* the rules of military science; *ratio* means *theory* and *ordo arrangement.* For formation of the word *ratio* see A. 238. b; B. 147. 3; G. 181. 2. b; H. 333; HB. 206. 2.

102 1. **cum**: causal, introducing two subjunctives. The clause explains the preceding ablative absolute, while uniting with it to give the reasons for the statement of the main clause. — **diversae**: *being separated.* — **aliae alia in**: observe how much neater this is than the awkward English idiom *some in one, others in another.* See A. 315. c; B. 253. 2; G. 319; H. 516. 1; HB. 279. 3.

2. **saepibus interiectis**: cf. last part of Chapter XVII.

3. **conlocari**: sc. *poterant;* reserves could not be put in position to meet definite emergencies.

4. **esset**: its subject is *quid,* while *opus* is pred. nom. A. 411. b; B. 218. 2. a; G. 406; H. 477. III. N.; HB. 430. 2. a. — **provideri**: sc. *poterat;* the indirect question *quid . . . esset* is its subject.

5. **Itaque . . . sequebantur**: *i.e.* owing to the diversity of conditions, varied results necessarily followed.

6. **quoque**: A. 599. b; B. 347. 1; G. 479; H. 657. 3; HB. 302. 2. How may we know that this word is not the ablative of a pronoun?

XXIII. 7. **Legionis nonae et decimae**: these legions were commanded by Labienus, as we learn from Chap. XXVI. — **sinistra parte**: the Atrebates, then, were posted on the right wing of the enemy. See the plan.

8. **acie**: gen. case; see the fifth declension in the grammar. — **pilis emissis**: see Introd., pp. 35, 45. — **exanimatos**: *out of breath,* agrees with *Atrebatis,* the obj. of *compulerunt.*

9. **his**: most naturally referred to the Atrebates.

11. **conantis**: sc. *eos,* obj. of *insecuti.* — **impeditam**: *i.e.* struggling in the water.

12. **transire**: *dubito* usually takes an infinitive when it means *hesitate.*

13. **rursus resistentis hostis**: remember the hill with its wooded summit. After those of the enemy who were not killed got across the river, they rallied and renewed the battle, but were again put to flight.

PAGE

14. **diversae**: *separated* from the rest.

15. **quibuscum**: i.e. *cum quibus*. *Cum* is enclitic with personal and reflexive pronouns, and usually with relative and interrogative. 102

16. **ex loco superiore**: to be taken with *profligatis*. — **in ripis**: with *proeliabantur*.

1. **a fronte**: *in front*. 103

2. **nudatis**: since the ninth and tenth legions had crossed the river, while the eighth and eleventh, which had formed the center of the Roman line, were fighting on the bank.

4. **duce Boduognato**: abl. abs., *under the leadership of Boduognatus*. See A. 419. a; B. 227. 1; G. 409; H. 489; HB. 421. — **summam imperi**: *the sum of power*, i.e. *the chief command*.

5. **ab aperto latere**: *on the exposed flank*. As the shield was carried on the left arm, the right was the exposed side. *Apertum latus* regularly means the *right flank*.

6. **summum castrorum locum**: *i.e.* the height on which the camp stood. The genitive is possessive.

XXIV. 7. **levis armaturae**: see note on p. 95, l. 5. See Introd., p. 37.

8. **cum iis una**: *along with them, i.e.* the *equites*. — **quos**: refers to *equites* and *pedites*, not to *iis*.

9. **dixeram**: cf. p. 100, l. 32; for tense cf. *dixeramus*, p. 90, l. 4. — **adversis**: *face to face*.

11. **calones**: see Introd., p. 38. — **decumana porta**: *the rear gate*, away from the enemy. See Introd., p. 42. It was nearest the top of the hill.

12. **victores**: *as victors*. Cf. p. 102, l. 12. For formation of the word see A. 236. a; B. 147. 1; G. 186. 11; H. 334; HB. 206. 1.

13. **cum respexissent**: i.e. *looking back*, circumstance, not mere time. — **versari**: means hardly more than *esse*.

14. **eorum**: the drivers. Where were the thirteenth and fourteenth legions? Cf. Chap. XIX.

15. **oriebatur**: what suggests the blending of distant sounds into one confused uproar? What is the distinction between imperfect and perfect indicatives in narrative? — **alii aliam**: see note on *aliae alia in*, p. 102, l. 1.

16. **perterriti**: what is the force of *per-*? — **ferebantur**: *hurried*.

17. **virtutis opinio**: *reputation for courage*.

18. **auxili causa**: for Caesar's auxiliaries see Introd., p. 37.

19. **cum**: at first sight this seems to be a preposition, as an ablative follows. But as we read on we meet *compleri* (*was filling up*), which requires an ablative to complete its meaning. A. 409. a;

PAGE 103 B. 218. 8; G. 405; H. 477. II; HB. 425. Farther on, *vidissent* evidently needs a conjunction. — **legiones**: the seventh and twelfth. Cf. ll. 1–6.

21. **Numidas**: they were famous archers.

22. **desperatis nostris rebus**: *despairing of our success*, lit. *our things being despaired of*. In the active *desperare de re* is used by Caesar rather than *desperare rem*. — **contenderunt**: its subject is *equites Treveri*. This sentence may well be broken up in English into several short sentences.

23. **pulsos superatosque**: sc. *esse*. — **castris impedimentisque**: abl. with *potitos*.

24. **hostis**: subject of *potitos* (*esse*).

XXV. 25. **Caesar**: subject of *processit*, p. 104, l. 6. We last saw Caesar in Chap. XXI. This sentence, though long, is not difficult. In finding the meaning follow strictly the order of the Latin. In translating follow the hint given in the note on *contenderunt*, l. 22.

26. **ubi**: introduces *vidit*, l. 28; the *vidit* of p. 104, l. 4, is simply a repetition. — **signisque**: the *-que* connects the clauses *suos urgeri* and *signis . . . milites . . . esse*. A. 324. a; B. 341. 2. a; G. 476. N. 3; H. 677. 2; HB. 307. 1. b. — **conlatis**: the sudden rush of the Nervii described in Chap. XXIII had driven the component parts of the legion too closely together.

27. **confertos**: *being crowded together*. — **sibi impedimento**: the double-dative construction. Cf. *subsidio oppidanis*, p. 93, l. 28.

28. **cohortis**: see Introd., pp. 31, 44.

29. **signifero**: probably the bearer of the standard of the first maniple of the cohort. This might be regarded as, in a certain sense, the standard of the cohort. See Introd., p. 38. The loss of a *signum* was always regarded as a great disgrace. For formation of the word *signifer* see A. 264. a, 265. 3; B. 158. 1. 2. b; G. 193, 195. 1. a, 197. 2. b; H. 369. 4; HB. 214. 1, 215. 1, 216. 3.

31. **primipilo**: see Introd., p. 34. — **P. Sextio . . . viro**: *the brave Publius Sextius Baculus*. In Latin an attributive adjective seldom limits directly a proper name.

32. **ut . . . posset**: a clause of result. What particle introduces a negative clause of purpose? — **se sustinere**: i.e. *to stand*. Baculus, however, lived to fight again. See Bk. VI, Chap. XXXVIII.

104 1. **tardiores**: *rather spiritless*. — **deserto loco**: abl. abs., *deserting their posts*.

2. **hostis . . . instare**: *that the enemy did not cease coming up in front from the lower ground, and were pressing on from both*

sides. The participle *subeuntis* agrees with *hostis* and is closely connected in thought with *intermittere*, which, however, usually takes an infinitive in this sense. PAGE 104

4. **rem . . . angusto**: *that the situation was critical.* — **subsidium**: *reserve;* the six legions which had preceded the baggage-train were all engaged, the cavalry and auxiliaries were in flight, and the thirteenth and fourteenth legions had not yet come up.

5. **militi**: depends on *detracto.* A. 381; B. 188. 2. d; G. 345, 347. R. 5; H. 427; HB. 371.

6. **processit**: "The bare scheme of the sentence is as follows — *Caesar . . . ubi . . . rem esse in angusto vidit, . . . processit:* but strokes of detail are added as the picture grows, until the whole becomes a crowded battle-piece with Caesar advancing to the front as its central figure." See A. 600; B. 351. 5; G. 684, 685; H. 685; HB. 630.

7. **nominatim**: how many centurions did Caesar have to know *by name* in each legion? — **signa inferre**: see Introd., p. 39.

8. **manipulos laxare**: *to spread out the maniples, open their ranks.* — **quo**: *in order that.* — **ūtī**: the verb; the conjunction has *ŭ*.

9. **inlata**: *having been inspired in* (lit. *brought into*). — **militibus**: dat.

10. **cum . . . cuperet**: *since everybody for himself was eager to do his best in the sight of the commander-in-chief, even in his own utmost peril.*

12. **tardatus est**: an account of this episode in the battle is given in Longfellow's "Courtship of Miles Standish," II, "Love and Friendship."

XXVI. 13. **constiterat**: from *consisto.*

14. **tribunos militum**: see Introd., p. 33.

15. **conversa signa inferrent**: *wheel about and charge.* See A. 496. N. 2; B. 337. 5 (337); G. 664. R. 1; H. 639; HB. 604. 1. See also Introd., p. 39.

16. **aliis . . . ferrent**: *they assisted one another.*

17. **aversi**: *while turned away, in the rear.* As the enemy were attacking in two divisions *ab utroque latere*, each legion, *i.e.* the seventh and twelfth, could face a single division, knowing that the other legion was protecting it from the other division. — **circumvenirentur**: see note on *ne . . . adduceretur*, p. 90, l. 6.

18. **legionum duarum**: cf. p. 100, ll. 19–21.

20. **proelio nuntiato**: *getting word that a battle was on.*

21. **T. Labienus**: he had crossed the river with the ninth and tenth legions. See Chap. XXIII, and note on p. 102, l. 7.

PAGE 104

22. **quae . . . gererentur**: an ind. quest.

23. **nostris**: what different shade of meaning would *ad nostros* give?

24. **Qui**: i.e. *milites decimae legionis*. — **quo . . . esset**: *in what condition the battle was.*

25. **versaretur**: *were involved.* We might have had *versarentur*. A. 317. c; B. 255. 1. 2; G. 285. EXC. 1; H. 392; HB. 329. 2.

26. **nihil . . . fecerunt**: *made all possible haste*, lit. *made nothing of remainder for themselves towards speed.*

XXVII. 28. **ut**: introduces three verbs, *redintegrarent, occurrerent*, and *praeferrent*. — **etiam qui procubuissent**: *even those who had sunk to the ground.* The subjunctive is due to attraction. See A. 593; B. 324. 1; G. 663. 1; H. 652; HB. 539. — **scutis innixi**: *leaning on their shields.* A. 431; B. 218. 3; G. 401. N. 6; H. 476. 3; HB. 438. 2. a.

30. **inermes**: agrees with *calones*, subject of *occurrerent*. — **armatis**: sc. *hostibus*; dat. depending on *occurrerent.*

31. **fugae**: cf. p. 100, l. 32. — **pugnando**: abl. of the gerund; nearly the same idea would have been expressed by the present participle *pugnantes* agreeing with the subject.

32. **praeferrent**: to be understood, perhaps, in a literal as well as a figurative sense. The hilly ground was unfavorable for cavalry.

33. **praestiterunt**: *manifested.* — **ut**: introduces *insisterent, pugnarent, conicerent, remitterent.* — **cum . . . insisterent**: *when the foremost of them had fallen, those nearest stepped up on their fallen comrades.*

105

1. **iacentibus**: from *iaceo*. The present participle of *iacio* is, of course, *iaciens.*

3. **qui . . . tumulo**: *those who survived, as if from a mound.* For *superessent* see *supersum* in Vocab.

4. **intercepta remitterent**: *caught up and hurled back.* What literally? Cf. *conversa signa inferrent*, p. 104, l. 15. — **ut . . . esse**: *therefore* (lit. *so that*) *one must admit that not in vain* (*i.e.* not without performing worthy exploits, or not without ground for confidence) *did men of so great bravery dare.* This cause of result depends logically on the whole preceding account, from *at hostes*, p. 104, l. 32. What is the subject of *deberet?* Notice the emphatic position of *non nequiquam*, which limits *ausos esse*, and look up the word 'litotes' in the Latin grammar or English dictionary.

6. **subire iniquissimum locum**: *to come up into a very unfavorable place.* A. 388. b; B. 175. 2. a. 2; G. 331; H. 406; HB. 391. 2.

PAGE 105

7. **quae . . . redegerat**: (*deeds*) *which the greatness of their spirit had rendered easy from most difficult, i.e.* though actually extremely difficult. — **redegerat**: A. 267. b; B. 159. 3. N.; G. 200. 2. a; H. 375; HB. 218. 1. b.

So ended one of the fiercest battles which Caesar fought in Gaul, one in which the Roman army only narrowly escaped defeat, perhaps annihilation. Caesar gives full credit to the Nervii for their bravery.

XXVIII. 9. **redacto**: agrees in gender with *nomine*, but is to be taken also with *gente*.

10. **aestuaria ac paludes**: *i.e.* the marshy country along the coast, where inlets, filled with water at high tide, cut them off from the mainland.

11. **dixeramus**: *i.e.* before describing the battle. Cf. the end of Chap. XVI. — **cum . . . arbitrarentur**: *since they thought there was no obstacle in the way of the victors* (lit. *nothing was hindered for the victors*), *no chance of safety* (lit. *nothing was safe*) *for the vanquished.*

13. **miserunt**: its subject is *maiores natu*.

14. **DC**: sc. *senatoribus*. Caesar is applying the Roman word *senator* to the councilors of the Nervii. See Introd., p. 27.

15. **vix ad D**: i.e. *ad vix quingentos* (*homines*). Yet three years later they took part in an uprising, and two years later still could furnish 6000 men. — **qui . . . possent**: a clause of characteristic, to be taken with both numerals.

16. **ut usus videretur**: sc. *esse, that he might be seen* (not *might seem*) *to have displayed.*

18. **finitimis**: *i.e.* the neighboring tribes.

19. **ut . . . prohiberent**: *to keep themselves and their dependents from* (doing) *injury and mischief* (to the Nervii). Let the student rewrite this sentence, transposing *iussit* and *imperavit*.

XXIX. 20. **Atuatuci**: cf. Chap. XVI. — **cum**: is this a preposition or a conjunction? If a preposition, why is *venirent* subjunctive?

21. **ex itinere**: *i.e.* from the place which they had reached when the news of the battle came to them.

22. **reverterunt**: see note on *reverti*, p. 95, l. 15. — **castellis**: small fortified places.

23. **oppidum**: the site of this town is uncertain. It has been identified with the citadel of Namur, but Mont Falhize on the Meuse agrees better with Caesar's description. — **egregie**: *e, grex, -ius*. Applying principles previously learned, explain completely the form *egregie*. Consult the grammar, if necessary.

PAGE 105

24. **Quod cum**: *now while this.* — **in circuitu**: the position of this phrase gives it almost the force of an adjective limiting *partibus.* — **rupis deiectusque**: *i.e.* the town was on a hill, steep and difficult of access on all sides but one.

26. **amplius**: A. 407. c; B. 217. 3; G. 296. R. 4; H. 471. 4; HB. 416. d. — **pedum**: gen. of measure.

28. **conlocabant**: notice the tense, and cf. *munierant* above. — **ex Cimbris**: abl. of source, or origin, sometimes used without a preposition. A. 403. a. N. 1; B. 215. 1; G. 395; H. 467; HB. 413. b. See Introd., pp. 4, 5, and cf. Chap. IV and Bk. I, Chap. XXXIII.

31. **agere ac portare**: the *impedimenta* included cattle as well as goods. — **citra**: *i.e.* on the Gallic side.

32. **sex milia**: obj. of *reliquerant.* In predicate apposition with it are *custodiam* (a guard for the *impedimenta*) and *praesidium* (a military garrison). — **una**: sc. *cum impedimentis.*

33. **Hi**: the *sex milia hominum.* — **eorum**: the main body of Cimbri and Teutoni. See Introd., p. 6.

106

1. **alias**: an adverb. — **bellum inferrent**: this refers to offensive warfare. — **inlatum**: sc. *bellum.* — **defenderent**: *warded off*, acting on the defensive.

2. **eorum omnium**: *i.e.* the *finitimi.* — **hunc locum**: the region west and north of the Meuse, perhaps extending across the river to the eastward.

XXX. 6. **pedum**: to be taken with both *vallo* and *milium.* The wall was twelve feet high and 15,000 feet in extent.

7. **castellis**: these served as rallying-points for the soldiers, and were used also for the storage of arms. — **circummuniti**: *when they had been hemmed in.*

8. **vineis**: see Introd., pp. 46–49, for an account of siege-operations. — **turrim**: subject of *constitui.*

9. **inridere**: *began to jeer*; a more lively form of expression than the indicative. A. 463; B. 335; G. 647; H. 610; HB. 595. It is nearly equivalent to the imperfect indicative.

10. **a tanto spatio**: *so far away*, lit. *away by so much space*; see note on *a . . . duobus*, p. 94, l. 1. — **institueretur**: the mood shows that this is part of the taunt. See note on *quod vererentur*, p. 90, l. 6. — **Quibusnam**: A. 333. a; B. 90. 2. d; G. 106; H. 184. 5; HB. 141. b.

11. **homines tantulae staturae**: *being men of so very small stature.* — **tantulae**: a diminutive. See the diminutive endings in the grammar. — **nam . . . est**: *for our shortness of stature, in*

comparison with the huge size of their own bodies, is generally a subject of contempt to all the Gauls. PAGE 106

13. **in muro**: verbs of placing, unless active motion is emphasized, regularly take the ablative with *in*. A. 430; G. 385. R. 1; H. 418. 3; HB. 433. c. Cf. the construction with *coniectos*, p. 105, l. 10. — **sese . . . confiderent**: *trust that they could place.* The Atuatuci were acquainted with towers placed along a line of wall, but probably not with movable towers. Hence they affected to assume that this tower must be picked up and placed on the wall — an idea which struck them as very ridiculous. Why is *confiderent* subjunctive?

XXXI. 15. **moveri**: *that it was moving.*

17. **ad hunc modum**: *after this fashion, as follows.*

18. **qui . . . possent**: probably subjunctive in the direct form, a causal relative clause. A. 535. e; B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 592; HB. 523.

19. **tanta celeritate**: abl. of manner.

20. **Unum deprecari**: in the direct form *unum petimus ac deprecamur. Petere* means *to ask; deprecari, to pray that something may not happen.*

21. **clementia**: see note on *sua clementia*, p. 98, l. 6.

22. **audirent**: *kept hearing about.* — **statuisset**: fut. perf. ind. in the direct form. — **esse conservandos**: *that he ought to spare.* What literally?

23. **ne . . . despoliaret**: explains *unum*, and is therefore virtually the object of *petere* and *deprecari.* — **Sibi**: notice the emphatic position of this word. The reflexive refers of course to the Atuatuci.

24. **virtuti**: A. 367; B. 187. II. a; G. 346; H. 426. 2; HB. 362. II. — **traditis armis**: equivalent to *si arma tradita essent.*

25. **Sibi . . . deducerentur**: in the direct form *nobis praestat (it is better for us), si . . . deducemur.* The subject of *praestare* is *pati.*

26. **quamvis**: *any whatever*, from *quivis.* — **quam**: *than*, after the comparative force in *praestare.* — **ab his**: the *finitimi* of l. 23.

27. **consuessent**: for *consuevissent. Consuesco* is an inchoative (or inceptive) verb. A. 263. 1; B. 155. 1; G. 133. V, 191. 2; H. 365; HB. 212. 2. Notice that this verb has virtually a present meaning in the perfect tense, and cf. *cognosco.*

XXXII. 29. **priusquam . . . attigisset**: *before the battering-ram touched the wall.* Only so could the surrender be considered voluntary. See Introd., p. 49.

31. **armis traditis**: abl. abs. — **in Nerviis**: *in the case of the Nervii.*

PAGE 106 32. **ne . . . inferrent**: *not to do any injury to those who had surrendered to* (lit. *to the captives of*) *the Roman people.* When is *quis* (*qui*) indefinite?

107 1. **ad suos**: why not dative? — **quae imperarentur**: *the things which were commanded.* The clause is the object of *facere*.

2. **facere**: sc. *se* as subject. The future infinitive might have been used, but the envoys say, in effect, 'We are already obeying your commands.'

This is a good time to review the principles of indirect discourse and the sequence of tenses. In changing a sentence from the indirect to the direct form, observe these rules: (1) Change the main infinitive to an indicative, except in the case of the conclusion of a conditional sentence which requires the subjunctive; use imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect for the perfect infinitive, as the meaning demands. (2) Put dependent clauses in the indicative, unless you know of some reason why the subjunctive should be used; if a tense of completed action is used in the indirect form, use a similar tense in the direct form. (3) Let sense determine the choice of pronouns and the person of verbs.

3. **sic ut . . . adaequarent**: *so that the piles of arms almost equaled in height* (lit. *equaled the greatest height of*) *the wall and agger.* The *agger* had been carried forward almost to the edge of the moat. The verb *aequo* is derived from the adjective *aequus*.

5. **circiter**: is this a preposition or an adverb?

6. **portis . . . usi**: *they threw open their gates and that day enjoyed peace.* What compounds of *facio* have *fio* in the passive? A. 204. a. b; B. 122. III; G. 173. N. 2; H. 274; HB. 195. a.

XXXIII. 8. **ne quam**: *that . . . no.* — **noctu**: an adverb.

9. **ante**: here an adverb. — **ut intellectum est**: *as became clear.* — **consilio**: abl. abs. with *inito*.

10. **indiligentius servaturos**: *would keep less careful watch.*

11. **partim, partim**: nearly equivalent to *alii, alii, some, others.* — **quae . . . celaverant**: limits *iis armis*.

12. **scutis . . . factis . . . intextis**: abl. abs., yet in effect parallel with *cum iis armis*. Trans. *with shields made of bark or woven of* (*by means of*) *osiers.*

13. **postulabat**: *rendered necessary.* — **pellibus**: abl. of means, or possibly dat. with the compound verb.

14. **tertia vigilia**: see note on *de tertia vigilia*, p. 61, l. 24. — **qua**: *where.*

15. **ascensus**: evidently the Roman works were on ground higher than that which lay between them and the town.

16. **fecerunt**: has the subject of this verb been expressed? PAGE

17. **ignibus . . . est**: *the news being spread by fires, there was* 107
a rush to that place from the nearest redoubts. The signals in this case were probably bonfires. One kind of signal consisted of a torch displayed from a wooden or stone tower, the torch being thrust forth in the direction from which danger threatened. See the picture, p. 107.

18. **pugnatum . . . debuit**: *i.e.* the enemy fought as fiercely as brave men ought to have fought, etc. As the English verb 'ought' is defective, we have to translate the present infinitive *pugnari* by a perfect. A. 486. a; B. 270. 2; G. 254. R. 1; H. 618. 2; HB. footnote 2 on p. 311.

19. **eos qui iacerent**: *men who were throwing;* a rel. clause of characteristic.

20. **vallo turribusque**: cf. p. 106, l. 6. Towers were erected at intervals along the line of the *vallum.* — **cum . . . consisteret**: *at a time when all hope rested in valor alone. Cum* is a relative word, from the same root as the relative pronoun, and the subjunctive is subjunctive of characteristic.

21. **ad**: *about*, used as an adverb.

22. **Postridie eius diei**: see note on p. 96, l. 25.

23. **iam nemo**: *no one any longer.*

24. **sectionem**: including both goods and people. — **vendidit**: see its derivation in Vocab., and note the quantity of its *e.* The purchasers were *mercatores.* See Introd., p. 38. Caesar's reputation for *clementia* must have suffered, but, after all, such action as the townspeople had been guilty of could not be left unpunished. The Atuatuci were not all destroyed, for we find them three years later storming a Roman camp.

Caesar's policy of dealing with the tribes of the Belgae one at a time had been very successful. He had met with little resistance except from the Nervii.

XXXIV. 1. **a P. Crasso**: abl. of agent with *certior factus est.* 108
This was the Crassus who had commanded the Roman cavalry in the battle with Ariovistus. See Bk. I, Chap. LII. — **legione una**: the seventh, as we see from Bk. III, Chap. VII.

3. **quae**: agrees in gender with *civitates.* A. 306; B. 250. 3; G. 614. R. 3. b; H. 396. 2; HB. 326. 1.

5. **esse redactas**: evidently these tribes were not all thoroughly subdued, for several of them were in arms the following year. Some of these names of tribes survive in modern names, e.g. *Veneti,* Vannes; *Coriosolites,* Corseult; *Redones,* Rennes.

PAGE 108

XXXV. 6. **pacata**: *having been rendered peaceful*, i.e. *having been subdued.* — **huius belli**: the war with the Belgae.

8. **incolerent**: subj. by attraction. — **qui pollicerentur**: *to promise.* — **se**: indirect reflexive, referring not to *qui*, but to the logical subject of the sentence; as if Caesar had written, 'The states across the Rhine sent ambassadors to promise that they.'

10. **Italiam**: Gallia Citerior was beginning to be called Italy. See Introd., p. 21. — **inita proxima aestate**: *at the beginning of the following summer*, abl. abs. expressing time.

11. **in . . . hiberna**: to be taken with *deductis*. From the name *Carnutes* comes the modern Chartres: from *Andes*, Anjou; from *Turoni*, Tours and Touraine.

12. **quaeque civitates**: *and the states which.*

15. **quod**: the antecedent is not, of course, *supplicatio*, but the sentence *dierum . . . est*; trans. *an honor which.* A *supplicatio* of twelve days was decreed to Pompey after his victory over Mithridates.

BOOK III

109

I. 1. **in Italiam**: see the last chapter of Bk. II.

5. **quod . . . volebat**: a substantive clause, subject of *fuit*, *causa* being predicate nominative. — **iter**: subject of *patefieri*. The route through the Great St. Bernard pass is probably meant. The growing importance of Gaul rendered an easy communication with the country beyond the Alps necessary to Rome. — **quo**: *by which*; its antecedent is *iter*.

6. **portoriis**: *tolls*, levied on goods transported through a country. — **patefieri**: see note on p. 107, l. 6.

7. **arbitraretur**: although this is not formal indirect discourse, yet it does represent indirectly Caesar's word, *arbitraberis*. — **uti . . . conlocaret**: obj. of *permisit*.

8. **secundis**: *favorable*, a common meaning of *secundus*.

11. **ipse**: agrees with the subject of *constituit*, but should be translated with *hiemare*. — **reliquis cohortibus**: how many were there?

13. **Octodurus**: probably on or near the site of the modern Martigny. — **non . . . planitie**: *with a small plain adjoining it*, an abl. abs.

15. **flumine**: no doubt the Dranse. — **alteram, alteram**: *one, the other.*

16. **cohortibus**: dat. with *attribuit*.

PAGE

II. 18. **dies complures**: no long time could have elapsed, for Galba's preparations for the winter were not complete. **109**

19. **exploratores**: see note on p. 61, l. 21.

20. **ex ea parte**: to be taken with *discessisse*. — **concesserat**: why not subjunctive?

22. **Id**: *it*, subject of *acciderat*, and explained by the clause *ut . . . caperent*.

24. **quod . . . despiciebant**: this clause and the clause *quod . . . existimabant* explain *causis*. Two more causes are given by *quod . . . habebant*, p. 110, ll. 5–9, which is made grammatically the subject of *accedebat*. — **legionem . . . plenissimam**: *a (mere) legion, and not a very full one at that*.

25. **compluribus**: abl. abs. with *absentibus*.

1. **commeatus petendi**: A. 503; B. 339. 1; G. 427; H. 626. 1; HB. 613. **110**

2. **paucitatem**: no doubt one reason for the smallness of the legion was that it had suffered severely in the battle with the Nervii. Cf. Bk. II, Chap. XXV.

3. **decurrerent**: this represents a future indicative, which would express the Gauls' thought as they made their plan.

5. **Accedebat quod**: *there was the additional reason that*, etc. — **suos liberos abstractos**: sc. *esse; that their children had been taken away*. A. 572. b; B. 331. V; G. 533; H. 614; HB. 594.

6. **obsidum nomine**: *as hostages*, lit. *under the name of hostages*. — **Romanos . . . habebant**: *had become convinced* (lit. *had it persuaded to themselves*) *that the Romans were trying to seize the heights of the Alps not merely for the sake of the passes, but also for the sake of a permanent occupation; and* (that they were trying) *to join this region to the neighboring province*. A clause used as a noun is always regarded as neuter; hence *persuasum*, which agrees with the clause *Romanos . . . conari*, object of *habebant*, is neuter.

8. **finitimae**: the Allobroges, recently subdued, were near this place. See Introd., p. 6, and cf. p. 109, l. 3.

III. 10. **opus hibernorum**: *the building of the winter camp*. See Introd., p. 43.

11. **munitiones**: the *fossa* and *vallum*.

12. **esset provisum**: impersonal; trans. by making an abstract noun from the meaning of the verb, *provision had been made*.

14. **consilio**: *a council of war*, probably of the tribunes and the centurions of the first rank (see Introd., p. 34), with perhaps the cavalry officers.

15. **cum**: *since*, introducing three subjunctives.

PAGE 110

16. **accidisset**: this word is used of an unexpected event, often, as here, of a misfortune. Compare the English word 'accident.' *Contingere* is more often used of a favorable event.

17. **completa conspicerentur**: *were seen* (to be) *covered.* — **neque subsidio veniri**: sc. *posset*, lit. *and it could not be come* (by any one to them) *for aid*; freely, *and no aid could come to them.*

19. **desperata salute**: this passive construction implies an active *desperare salutem*, a construction which is found in some authors. Caesar, however, says *desperare de*, or uses the dative. — **eius modi**: *of the following sort*, explained by the substantive clause *ut . . . contenderent.*

21. **Maiori . . . placuit**: *the majority, however, thought it best.* What is the subject of *placuit?*

IV. 25. **conlocandis, administrandis**: in agreement with *iis rebus.* Trans. *for arranging and executing those things.* We have here the gerundive construction in the dative. A. 505. N.; B. 339. 2; G. 429. 1; H. 627; HB. 613. 1.

26. **decurrere**: historical inf. — **gaesa**: heavy javelins. They seem to have been used especially by Alpine tribes; Vergil speaks of *Alpina gaesa.* See Vocab.

27. **propugnare**: observe the force of *pro.*

28. **ex loco superiore**: *i.e.* from the rampart of the camp.

29. **defensoribus**: abl. of separation, with *nudata.*

30. **eo**: i.e. *ad eam partem castrorum.* — **hoc superari, quod**: *they were at a disadvantage in this, that; hoc* is abl. of cause; or perhaps abl. of specification, or respect. The subject of this historical infinitive, as of the four preceding, is *nostri.*

31. **pugnae**: *the fighting.* — **proelio**: *the battle.* — **integris viribus**: abl. of quality, or description.

32. **quarum . . . poterat**: *while nothing of this sort could be done by our men, by reason of their small numbers.*

33. **non modo . . . sed ne . . . quidem**: A. 217. e; B. 343. 2. a; G. 482. R. 1; H. 656. 3; HB. 299. The *ne* really belongs with *dabatur*, and hence its force supplies the extra negative which English idiom requires. Trans. *not only was opportunity not given to one who was tired, but not even to a wounded man*, etc.

111

1. **constiterat**: *had taken his stand*, nearly equivalent to *stabat, was standing.* — **relinquendi**: gerundive agreeing with *loci.*

2. **sui recipiendi**: *withdrawing*, lit. *taking himself back.* A. 504. c; B. 339. 5; G. 428. R. 1; H. 626. 3; HB. 614.

V. 3. **Cum pugnaretur**: *when the fight had been going on.* This use of the imperfect is more common in the indicative. See A.

471. b; B. 260. 4; G. 234; H. 535. 1; HB. 485. How many verbs depend on *cum?* PAGE 111

5. **languidioribus nostris**: abl. abs., causal. — **vallum scindere**: *i.e.* to tear down the palisades on the top of the rampart.

7. **P. Sextius Baculus**: cf. Bk. II, Chap. XXV. — **primi pili centurio**: i.e. *primipilus;* see Introd., p. 34.

9. **tribunus militum**: see Introd., p. 33. — **virtutis**: sc. *magnae.* Why? A. 345; B. 203; G. 365; H. 440. 3; HB. 355.

11. **extremum auxilium**: to abandon camp and attempt to force a way to safety was a resource to be tried only when the situation became desperate. — **experirentur**: subj. of ind. disc., standing for a fut. ind.; *una est spes salutis, si . . . experiemur.*

12. **certiores facit**: we have had this expression as one of saying; here it is equivalent to a verb of commanding, and is followed by five subjunctives without *ut*, each representing an imperative. The English verb 'tell' has a similar double meaning.

13. **tela missa exciperent**: *receive* (*i.e.* guard themselves against) *the enemy's missiles*, without throwing any.

14. **post**: an adverb here.

VI. 16. **Quod**: obj. of *facere* understood.

17. **sui conligendi**: see note on *sui recipiendi*, l. 2.

18. **qui . . . venerant**: *who had conceived* (*come into*) *the hope of capturing the camp.* Ordinarily only transitive verbs are used in the gerundive construction. Cf. *potiundi*, p. 93, l. 31.

21. **constabat**: *it was agreed;* its subject is the clause *quem numerum . . . venisse.* — **plus tertia parte**: *more than a third.*

1. **ne . . . quidem**: there is a strong temptation here to ignore the usual rule about *ne . . . quidem*, and to place the emphasis on *superioribus.* Probably the meaning is that the enemy were allowed no foothold whatever. 112

3. **armis**: abl. of separation with *exutis*, which is in the abl. abs. with *copiis.*

4. **saepius fortunam temptare**: observe the emphasis on this phrase, causing it to precede the subject, *Galba.*

5. **alio . . . consilio, aliis . . . rebus**: *i.e.* the design with which he had come had been one thing, the situation which he had met a quite different thing. The design is stated in Chap. I. Notice the absence of a connective (asyndeton) between the clauses.

8. **prohibente**: *trying to prevent him*, abl. abs. with *hoste.*

9. **in Nantuatis**: there were two cohorts here. Cf. p. 109, l. 11.

This campaign really belongs to the year 57 B.C., and the story

PAGE 112 should have formed a part of the previous book. But as it occurred after the close of the regular operations of 57, Caesar preferred to place the account of it at the beginning of a new book.

VII. 12. **Germanis**: the hordes of Ariovistus. See the latter half of Bk. I and Introd., p. 12.

13. **in Illyricum**: cf. Bk. II, Chap. XXXV. Caesar appears to have started before Galba's difficulties began.

16. **P. Crassus**: cf. p. 88, l. 26.

17. **mare Oceanum**: *i.e.* the Atlantic. The acc. depends on *proximus*. A. 432. a; B. 141. 3; G. 359. N. 1; H. 435. 2; HB. 380. b.

19. **praefectos** : see Introd., p. 34.

20. **quo in numero**: *among whom.* — **est missus**: to be taken together.

21. **Esuvios, Coriosolites**: look up these tribes on the map of Gaul.

22. **Venetos**: this and the adjoining tribes in northwestern Gaul were classed together as *civitates Aremoricae*. For the meaning of *Aremoricae* see Vocab. The region now is called Bretagne (Brittany).

VIII. 23. **omnis orae maritimae**: *i.e.* of all the maritime states.

24. **quod et, et**: *because, in the first place, and also.* The force of *quod* extends through *antecedunt*.

25. **quibus**: abl. of means, but trans. *in which.* — **in Britanniam**: it is said that the Veneti already knew or suspected Caesar's purpose (carried out the next year) to visit Britain, and that they wished to prevent him from interfering with their trade with that island. — **consuerunt**: *are accustomed.* Why should we not translate 'were accustomed'?

27. **maris vasti atque aperti**: it was a very different kind of sea from the land-inclosed Mediterranean. — **paucis portibus interiectis**: *i.e.* since there are only a few scattered harbors.

28. **vectigalis**: pred. to *omnis*, the obj. of *habent*. These people were obliged to pay tribute to the Veneti for the use of their harbors.

29. **Ab . . . Velani**: *i.e.* they began the detention of envoys by detaining Silius and Velanius.

30. **obsides**: cf. Bk. II, Chap. XXXIV.

113 1. **Horum**: observe the emphatic position of this pronoun, and notice the beginning of the two sentences before this.

2. **subita**: Caesar often speaks of the changeableness of the

Gauls, and the ease with which they were influenced to form new plans; *e.g.* Bk. II, Chap. I, Bk. IV, Chap. V.

4. **acturos**: sc. *se* and *esse*. The indirect discourse depends on *coniurant*.

5. **reliquasque**: *-que* here connects two verbs. What are they?

6. **ut . . . malint**: *to wish rather to remain in that liberty which*, etc., *than to endure slavery at the hands of the Romans*. — **acceperint**: why subjunctive?

9. **Si . . . remittat**: in the direct discourse, *si vis tuos recuperare, obsides nobis remitte*. By *suos* are meant the officers who had been seized.

IX. 12. **longius**: *i.e.* too far away to take action himself. He seems to have been in Illyricum. — **navis longas**: see Introd., p. 51. Ships of burden were wide in proportion to their length.

15. **cum primum**: followed by the indicative. A. 545; B. 287. 1; G. 561; H. 600. I; HB. 557. a. See Introd., p. 13, for an important event in the life of Caesar, which occurred just before this time.

17. **in se admisissent**: *had taken upon themselves*, i.e. *had committed*.

18. **legatos retentos . . . coniectos**: sc. *esse*. The clause explains *facinus*, but takes the form of indirect discourse, as if dependent on *intellegebant*. — **quod nomen**: *a name which*. Subordinate military officers sent to procure grain could hardly be properly called *legati, ambassadors;* but Caesar wishes to put the act of the Gauls in the worst possible light, to justify his own subsequent action.

21. **hoc maiore spe**: *with the greater hope* (*hope greater by this*).

22. **quod . . . confidebant**: explains *hoc*. — **natura**: *fido* and *confido* generally take the ablative of things and the dative of persons. Find the rules in the grammar.

23. **aestuariis**: see note on p. 105, l. 10.

26. **confidebant**: *confidently believed*. — **ac . . . acciderent**: *and even though everything should turn out contrary to their expectation*. A. 527. a; B. 308; G. 608; H. 586. II; HB. 532. 2. b.

28. **locorum**: limits *vada, portus, insulas*.

29. **gesturi essent**: the periphrastic conjugation is used because the subjunctive is required and the time to be expressed is distinctly future; *gererent* might mean *were waging*. — **longe aliam atque**: *far other than* (*different from*). A. 407. d; B. 341. 1. c; G. 643; H. 471. 6; HB. 307. 2. a.

PAGE 113

30. **concluso mari**: what sea is meant?

32. **frumenta**: see note on p. 64, l. 26.

33. **primum**: an adverb.

114

4. **posita est**: *is situated.*

X. 7. **iniuria retentorum equitum Romanorum**: *the injustice of Roman knights detained*, i.e. *of detaining Roman knights*; freely, *the unjust detention of Roman knights*. For use of participle see A. 497; B. 337. 6 (337. 5); G. 664. R. 2; H. 636. 4; HB. 608. 2. For the meaning of *equitum* see note on p. 82, l. 1.—**rebellio**: notice the derivation.

8. **in primis**: *especially*, lit. *among the first (chief) things.*

9. **ne . . . arbitrarentur**: this clause, like the nominatives which precede, is in apposition with *multa*. We may translate *the fear that the other nations might think*, etc.—**hac parte neglecta**: equivalent to a conditional clause.

11. **novis rebus studere**: *were eager for revolution.*

12. **natura**: abl. of cause.

13. **odisse**: *hate.* See A. 205. b; B. 133. 2; G. 175. 5; H. 299. 2; HB. 199. 1.—**priusquam . . . conspirarent**: *before more states conspired (should conspire)*. The verb was probably subjunctive in the direct form, implying a purpose on Caesar's part to get ahead of the *plures civitates*. A. 551. c; B. 292. 1. b; G. 577; H. 605. I; HB. 507. 4. b.

14. **partiendum**: sc. *esse*; the gerundive is passive, even in deponent verbs.

XI. 16. **in Treveros**: the Treveri had been friendly to the Romans. Cf. Bk. I, Chap. XXXVII, Bk. II, Chap. XXIV.

17. **mandat**: the three subjunctives depending on this verb may be explained in the same way as those on p. 111, ll. 13–15.

18. **Belgas**: the Belgae had been subdued only the year before, and were still uneasy. No doubt the Veneti and other Aremorican states expected help from them.—**adeat**: some compounds of *eo* may be used transitively.

19. **arcessiti**: sc. *esse*. A. 582; B. 332. c; G. 528. 1; H. 611. 1; HB. 590. 1.

20. **P. Crassum**: cf. p. 112, l. 16.

21. **equitatus**: cavalry would be useless in the operation against the sea-coast states.

22. **ne . . . coniungantur**: clauses of purpose. The second continues the thought of the first, otherwise *neve* or *neu* would be used instead of *ac*.—**in Galliam**: *i.e.* Celtic Gaul.

25. **qui . . . curet**: *to see that their forces were kept back.*

What literally? For the construction of *distinendam* see A. 500. 4; B. 337. 8. b. 2 (337. 7. b. 2); G. 430; H. 622; HB. 612. III. PAGE 114

26. **D. Brutum**: he afterwards became one of the conspirators against Caesar.

27. **Pictonibus**: the name survives in the modern Poitiers.

28. **praeficit**: observe the direct and indirect objects of this verb. — **cum possit**: this forms a part of Caesar's order, and hence the subjunctive is used.

29. **pedestribus copiis**: Caesar had eight legions. Read this chapter through carefully and see how many he retained with himself. Some soldiers appear to have been placed on board the fleet.

XII. 30. **ut . . . haberent**: a clause of result.

31. **pedibus**: *on foot*, i.e. *by land*, abl. of means.

32. **quod**: the rel. pron., referring to the clause *cum . . . incitavisset*. *Id quod* or *quae res* might have been used.

33. **navibus**: *by ship*. — **quod . . . adflictarentur**: *because, when the tide ran out again, the ships would be stranded on the shoals*, if they tried to approach.

1. **oppugnatio**: how does this word differ in meaning from *expugnatio?* 115

2. **superati**: agrees with the subject of *coeperant*.

3. **extruso mari, his adaequatis**: ablatives absolute explaining *magnitudine operis*. — **aggere ac molibus**: "The forts were situated at the ends of spits or promontories, connected with the mainland by shoals, which, at high tide, were completely submerged. Caesar constructed dykes across the shoals, along which the troops marched to attack the town. Before they could deliver the assault, however, the garrison took to their ships, and sailed away to the nearest fort." (Holmes, "Caesar's Conquest of Gaul.") Another theory is that Caesar built two parallel walls, or dikes, between which the soldiers marched. — **moenibus**: dat., depending on *adaequatis*.

4. **fortunis**: dat., depending on *desperare*. What other constructions have occurred with this verb?

5. **cuius rei**: equivalent to *quarum*, referring to *navium*.

6. **deportabant**: *would carry off*. This and the following imperfects denote repeated action.

7. **eo facilius**: *the more easily*, explained by the following *quod*-clause.

XIII. 12. **ipsorum**: *their own*.

13. **carinae aliquanto planiores**: *the hulls somewhat more flat-bottomed*. It is unnecessary to supply a verb with this nominative.

PAGE 115

14. **quo . . . possent**: see note on p. 99, l. 17. — **excipere**: *to take*. The ships did not sink so far into the water as did those of the Romans.

15. **admodum**: 'to the limit,' i.e. *very*.

16. **totae**: trans. by an adverb, *wholly*, or *throughout*.

17. **ad . . . perferendam**: how many different ways of expressing purpose can you recall? — **quamvis**: from *quivis, any whatever* (lit. *what you please*).

18. **transtra**: *the cross-beams* which upheld the deck. The word often means *rowers' benches*, but these ships did not employ rowers. — **pedalibus in altitudinem**: *a foot in thickness* (*height*).

19. **crassitudine**: abl. of quality, or description, limiting *clavis*. It is accompanied by a genitive, *digiti pollicis*, instead of the more usual adjective. — **pro funibus**: *for* (*instead of*) *ropes*.

20. **pelles alutaeque**: *untanned skins and* (pieces of) *leather*.

21. **eius usus**: *i.e.* of the use of flax in the making of sails.

22. **quod . . . simile**: *which is more probable*. — **veri**: A. 385. c. 2; B. 204. 3; G. 359. R. 1. N. 4; H. 435. 4; HB. 339. c. — **quod . . . arbitrabantur**: explains *eo*. The accusatives in this clause are subjects of *posse*.

23. **tanta onera navium**: for *tanti oneris navis, such heavy ships*.

24. **Cum . . . praestaret**: *the encounter of our fleet with these ships was such that it excelled in speed alone and* (the force given by) *the impulsion of oars*. The Gallic ships had no oars. For *classi* see A. 377; B. 188. 1; G. 350. 1; H. 425. 4; HB. 368.

26. **reliqua**: (*while*) *everything else*.

27. **illis**: i.e. *navibus Venetorum*.

28. **Neque . . . poterant**: *for our ships could not harm them with the beak*. See Introd., p. 51. Why is *iis* dative?

29. **altitudinem**: cf. *erectae*, l. 15.

30. **adigebatur**: *could be* (effectively) *hurled*.

31. **Accedebat ut**: *besides*, or *there was the additional fact that*, lit. *it was added that*. Cf. *accedebat quod*, p. 110, l. 5.

33. **consisterent tutius**: *more safely rode at anchor*. — **ab aestu**: abl. of agent, used instead of abl. of means by a sort of personification. — **relictae**: sc. *naves*. — **nihil**: *in no respect, not at all*.

34. **quarum rerum omnium casus**: i.e. *all these accidents*.

116 **XIV**. 3. **neque . . . posse**: *and that no harm could be done to them*. A. 372; B. 187. II. b; G. 217; H. 426. 3; HB. 364. 2.

4. **convenit**: from the Loire, where it had been built. See Chap. IX.

6. **armorum**: this word, like *armamentis* in l. 19, includes the entire equipment of the vessels, not merely weapons. — **ornatissimae**: *thoroughly fitted out.* — **profectae . . . constiterunt**: *sailed out of the harbor and came into position fronting our ships.* This battle was probably fought in Quiberon Bay, near the mouth of the Auray River; but arguments have been adduced to show that it took place farther south, between the mouths of the Loire and the Vilaine.

7. **tribunis centurionibus**: military officers commanded the ships of the fleet.

9. **quid agerent**: *what they were to do.* The direct form of this indirect question would be *quid agamus? what are we to do?* A. 444; B. 277; G. 265; H. 559. 4; HB. 503.

10. **noceri**: sc. *navibus* (dat.) *hostium.* — **turribus excitatis, has**: more regular would be *turris excitatas* as object of *superabat*, but this expression is clearer. See the illustration, p. 51.

11. **ex navibus**: *of the ships.*

12. **neque**: correlative to *et*, l. 13, *both . . . not . . . and;* but it is well to omit *both* in translating. — **inferiore loco**: *i.e.* the tops of the towers.

13. **erat magno usui**: *was of great use.*

14. **falces**: in apposition with *res.*

15. **longuriis**: dat., depending on *insertae* and *adfixae.* — **non . . . falcium**: *of a shape not unlike that of wall-hooks.* The abl. limits *falces.* For *murales falces* see Introd., p. 49. — **His**: sc. *falcibus*, abl. of means, or instrument. — **cum comprehensi adductique erant, praerumpebantur**: A. 542, 518. b; B. 288. 3; G. 567, 584; H. 539. 2; HB. 579.

16. **funes**: *halyards*, by which the yard was held in place or raised or lowered.

17. **navigio**: does this mean a Roman or a Gallic ship?

18. **cum**: causal. — **Gallicis navibus**: for the case cf. *classi*, p. 115, l. 25.

19. **his ereptis**: abl. abs., expressing time.

23. **nullum . . . factum**: *no deed a little braver* (than the ordinary), *no specially brave deed.*

24. **propinquus despectus in mare**: *a near view of* (lit. *downlook upon*) *the sea.*

XV. 26. **cum circumsteterant**: cf. *cum . . . comprehensi adductique erant*, l. 15. — **singulas**: sc. *navis hostium.* Notice the three distributive numerals.

27. **circumsteterant**: from *circumsisto.* — **transcendere in**:

PAGE 116 *to board.* The Roman soldiers were much more skilful in fighting than in naval manoeuvering. On board the ships of the enemy the conflict became a hand-to-hand fight.

28. **Quod**: *and . . . that this*, subject of *fieri*.

29. **compluribus**: very likely the ships of the Gauls outnumbered those of the Romans.

31. **in eam partem**: *in that direction.* — **quo**: i.e. *in quam (partem)*.

32. **malacia ac tranquillitas**: on the coast of Brittany the wind in summer often dies down about midday. — **se movere**: the English verb 'move' may be either transitive or intransitive.

117 1. **interventu**: abl. of time and cause.

2. **cum pugnaretur**: *the battle having lasted*, more literally *when the battle had been going on.* — **hora quarta**: about 9 A.M. Into how many hours did the Romans divide the day? The time of year of this battle was probably late August or early September.

XVI. 5. **cum, tum**: *not only, but also.* — **iuventus**: equivalent to *iuvenes*, *i.e.* all of military age.

6. **aliquid consili**: *something of wisdom*, i.e. *some wisdom.*

7. **navium quod fuerat**: *what(ever) of ships there had been*, i.e. *all the ships which they had had*; obj. of *coegerant*.

8. **quo . . . habebant**: *had no place to which they could betake themselves, nor any way of defending (how they might defend) their towns.* For the subjunctives see A. 531. 2; B. 282. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 1; HB. 517. 2.

11. **vindicandum**: sc. *esse, punishment must be inflicted.* — **quo diligentius**: why is *quo* used, instead of *ut?*

12. **ius legatorum**: see note on *quod nomen*, p. 113, l. 18.

13. **senatu**: Caesar applies the Roman name to the Gallic council of leaders. — **sub corona**: *into slavery.* Captives were crowned with chaplets when sold as slaves. The selling was in charge of the quaestor.

After this war no important naval power was left in Transalpine Gaul.

XVII. 14. **Sabinus**: cf. p. 114, l. 23.

18. **copias**: *troops*, not organized into a regular army. — **his paucis diebus**: *within a few days*, *i.e.* just before the arrival of Sabinus. — **Aulerci Eburovices**: there were several divisions of the Aulerci. See the map of Gaul.

19. **senatu interfecto**: the senates, it appears, were between two fires. We remember how Caesar treated the senate of the Veneti.

22. **perditorum hominum**: *scoundrels.* — **quos**: i.e. *ii convenerant quos.* PAGE 117

24. **omnibus rebus**: abl. of specification, or respect. — **loco castris**: both may be explained as locative ablatives.

25. **spatio**: abl. of degree, or measure, of difference with *contra.*

27. **ut . . . veniret**: this clause of result evidently cannot depend on *faceret.* On what does it depend? — **hostibus**: *in the eyes of the enemy,* a dat. of reference.

28. **nostrorum . . . carperetur**: *was criticized somewhat in our soldiers' talk (by the voices of our soldiers).*

29. **opinionem praebuit**: *produced an impression.*

31. **eo**: *the man, i.e.* Caesar.

1. **teneret**: subj. because subordinate in ind. disc. 118

2. **legato**: A. 374; B. 189. 1; G. 355; H. 431; HB. 373. 1.

XVIII. 4. **auxili causa**: *as auxiliaries.*

6. **uti . . . transeat**: *to go across.*

7. **quibus . . . prematur**: ind. quest., depending on *docet.*

8. **neque . . . educat**: lit. *and that it was not farther off, that on the next night Sabinus would lead,* etc., or, more shortly, *and that not later than the next night Sabinus would lead.* The *quin*-clause is subject of *abesse,* which is in ind. disc. depending on *docet.* A. 558; B. 298; G. 555; H. 595. 1; HB. 502. 3. b.

9. **proxima nocte**: abl. of time.

12. **iri**: observe the impersonal passive; it depends on *oportere,* which is also impersonal. Trans. *they ought to go.*

13. **Multae res**: five are named, the last being the clause *quod . . . credunt.*

15. **cui rei erat provisum**: *for which provision had been made.* — **spes Venetici belli**: *their hopes regarding the war with the Veneti.* Cf. especially ll. 7, 8.

16. **quod homines credunt**: *the fact that men believe.*

17. **non prius quam**: *not sooner than,* i.e. *not . . . until.*

18. **sit concessum**: *permission had been granted.* See A. 551. b. N. 2; B. 292; G. 577. 2. N. 2; H. 605. 1; HB. 507. 4. c.

19. **ut**: *as if.* The abl. abs. expresses a condition.

20. **quibus compleant**: *with which to fill up,* a rel. clause of purpose.

XIX. 22. **acclivis**: *rising,* or *sloping upward.*

23. **mille**: an adj. — **quam minimum**: *as little as possible.*

25. **cupientibus**: dat., sc. *iis* or *militibus.*

27. **Factum est**: what is its subject?

30. **ac**: *but.* When a negative clause is followed by an affirm-

PAGE 118 ative which carries on the thought of the negative clause, 'and' is often used in Latin where English idiom requires 'but.' — **Quos, eorum**: these refer to the same persons.

32. **equites**: nom. — **ex fuga**: *from the general rout.*

35. **Titurio**: who was Titurius? How many names did a Roman regularly have? A. 108; B. 373. 1; G. p. 493; H. 354. 3; HB. 678. — **Nam ut . . . est**: *for though* (lit. *as*) *the spirit of the Gauls is quick and ready*, etc., *yet* (lit. *so*) *their will is weak and very far from firm to endure disasters.*

119 **XX.** 3. **Aquitaniam**: see Introd., p. 23.

4. **tertia pars**: a glance at the map will show that this estimate was far from exact.

6. **L. Valerius Praeconinus**: nothing more is known of him than is stated here.

7. **proconsul**: *i.e.* governor. Manlius was defeated in 78 B.C. by an army commanded by a subordinate of Sertorius, a Roman general who fought in Spain against his country.

10. **comparato**: agrees with *equitatu*, but is to be taken with *auxiliis* as well. — **viris**: abl. abs. with *evocatis*. See Introd., p. 34. — **Tolosa**: Tolosa (modern Toulouse) was a town of Gallic origin.

11. **Narbone**: Narbo (modern Narbonne) was a Roman colony, founded in 118 B.C. It was an important commercial city. — **Galliae provinciae**: gen., limiting *civitates*.

18. **ostenderunt**: i.e. *brought into action.*

XXI. 20. **victoriis**: A. 431. a; B. 218. 3; G. 401. N. 6; H. 476. 1; HB. 432.

21. **nostri autem**: *while our men, on the other hand.* — **quid . . . possent**: an ind. quest., grammatically the subject of the inf. *perspici*.

22. **adulescentulo**: *a mere boy*, diminutive of *adulescens*. Observe in this sentence the important distinction between *imperator* and *dux*.

24. **ex itinere**: cf. p. 92, l. 30.

25. **Quibus**: *and since they, i.e.* the Sotiates in the town. The town is thought to have been the one now called Sos (from *Sotiates*).

26. **cuniculis**: these were to enable the Sotiates to destroy, by fire or otherwise, the *agger* and *vineae*. See Introd., pp. 47–50.

27. **cuius rei**: *in which, i.e.* the digging of mines or tunnels.

28. **aerariae secturaeque**: *copper-mines and quarries*, probably, though the meaning of *secturae* is not altogether certain.

29. **diligentia, rebus**: are these two ablatives of the same kind?

31. **faciunt**: i.e. *arma tradunt.*

PAGE 120

XXII. 2. **Adiatunnus cum sescentis devotis**: it will be necessary to look forward a long way to find anything with which to connect these words; so far, in fact, that they are repeated in *cum his Adiatunnus*, l. 9. What comes between is a long parenthesis describing the *devoti*. In idiomatic original English this description would probably come after the narrative part of the chapter. The narrative might run, perhaps, somewhat as follows: 'While the attention of all our men was fixed on this proceeding, Adiatunnus, who held supreme command, with six hundred devoted followers, whom they call *soldurii*, tried to make a sally from another part of the town. A shout was raised from that part of the fortifications. The soldiers ran to arms, and after a fierce contest Adiatunnus was driven back,' etc. Let the student complete the translation in this way, making two or three sentences of the description of the *soldurii*.

4. **condicio**: *position*. — **ut**: introduces three verbs, *fruantur*, *ferant*, *consciscant*. The clauses are substantive clauses explaining *condicio*. — **in vita**: the position of this phrase, between *omnibus* and *commodis*, gives it almost the force of an adjective. — **commodis**: why ablative?

5. **dediderint**: subj. by attraction. — **si quid**: *if anything*. — **his**: *i.e.* the men to whose friendship the *soldurii* have devoted themselves.

6. **una**: *together* (with them).

8. **qui . . . recusaret**: A. 535. a; B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 1; HB. 521. 1.

12. **uti . . . uteretur**: obj. of *impetravit*. Crassus dealt more leniently with Adiatunnus than Caesar had dealt with the Atuatuci. Cf. Bk. II, Chap. XXXIII.

XXIII. 16. **paucis diebus quibus**: *within the few days within which*. In force *quibus* nearly equals *postquam*, and may be translated *after*. A. 423; B. 231; G. 393; H. 488. 3; HB. 550. c.

17. **expugnatum**: sc. *esse*.

20. **citerioris Hispaniae**: Hither Spain comprised that part of Spain extending from the Pyrenees Mountains to the Hiberus (Ebro) River. — **finitimae**: nom. — **Aquitaniae**: dat.

21. **magna cum auctoritate**: abl. of manner, while *magna multitudine* is abl. of means. Both are to be connected with *bellum gerere*.

23. **Q. Sertorio**: see note on p. 119, l. 7.

24. **omnis annos**: the Sertorian War lasted for about ten years, ending with the assassination of Sertorius in 72 B.C.

PAGE 120

26. **castra munire**: until taught by Roman example, the Gauls did not intrench their temporary camps.

27. **Quod ubi**: *so when*, lit. *as to which thing when*. Cf. the common *quod si, but if*.

30. **in dies**: *from day to day*.

31. **non . . . decertaret**: *he thought he must not delay to fight a decisive battle*, lit. *fight it out with a battle*. For the *quin*-clause see note on p. 118, l. 8. It is subject of *cunctandum (esse)*.

32. **consilium**: *a council of war*.

121 **XXIV.** 1. **duplici acie**: thus his twelve cohorts would present a wider front than if drawn up in a *triplex acies*. See Introd., p. 44.

2. **auxiliis**: the *auxilia* were usually placed on the wings.

3. **caperent**: *would adopt*. — **veterem**: *old-time*.

4. **tuto**: an adverb. A. 214. e; B. 77. 2; G. 91. 2. c; H. 307. 2; HB. 126. 3.

5. **obsessis viis, commeatu intercluso**: ablatives absolute, expressing means.

7. **impeditos**: sc. *eos*, i.e. *Romanos*.

8. **animo**: *in spirit*, with *infirmiores*. — **adoriri**: though not strictly in indirect discourse, this verb expresses indirectly the thought of the enemy, and hence throws the dependent verb *coepissent* into the subjunctive.

11. **sua**: can this refer to Crassus? — **opinione timoris**: *i.e.* apparent fear. Their conduct led the Romans to believe that they were afraid.

13. **exspectari . . . iretur**: *that they ought not to delay longer about going against the camp*. The three verbs, *exspectari*, *oportere*, and *iretur*, are all impersonal. What is the subject of *exspectari*?

15. **contendit**: some troops were left in camp, as we see from Chap. XXVI.

XXV. 18. **quibus**: dat., see note on *natura*, p. 113, l. 22. — **lapidibus telisque subministrandis**: *by handing stones and weapons*; gerundive construction, abl. of means.

20. **opinionem pugnantium praeberent**: *produced the impression of fighting men*, not 'of fighting,' which would be expressed by *pugnandi*.

21. **non timide**: an example of the common rhetorical figure known as litotes. Cf. *non frustra* in the next line. — **ex loco superiore**: the rampart and the high ground of the camp.

22. **circumitis castris**: freely, *having ridden around the camp*.

PAGE 121

23. **eadem diligentia**: abl. of manner. — **ab decumana porta**: *i.e.* on the side where the decuman gate was. Where was the *decumana porta* situated?

XXVI. 27. **devectis**: *having been brought over* from the Roman camp.

28. **praesidio castris**: both are dative. — **relictae**: a participle expressing cause. — **intritae**: an adj.

29. **circumductis**: with *iis cohortibus*.

31. **munitiones**: *i.e.* the part near the decuman gate. — **prius**: do not translate this until *quam* is reached, then translate *prius quam* together *before*.

32. **videri**: sc. *possent*, from *posset* of the next line. The indicative here would simply state a fact. The subjunctive hints at the desire or purpose of the Romans to escape notice. Always try to see the meaning of a mood or a case. That is more important than a mere classification.

122

1. **quod**: *a thing which*, or *as*. The antecedent of *quod* is the idea contained in the words *redintegratis viribus*.

2. **consuevit**: *is wont*.

5. **apertissimis campis**: abl. of the way, or route, but with an implication of cause. Because the country was open, the cavalry could easily hunt down the fugitives. — **ex numero**: connect this with *quarta parte*.

6. **quae**: acc., subject of *convenisse*. Its antecedent is *milium*.

7. **multa nocte**: *late at night*.

XXVII. 11. **paucae ultimae nationes**: *a few very remote tribes*.

XXVIII. 14. **exacta erat**: *was ended*.

16. **essent, misissent**: subjunctives of characteristic.

18. **exercitum**: *i.e.* six legions and eight cohorts, if Sabinus with his three legions had rejoined Caesar. Cf. Chap. XI. — **qui**: the Morini, whom alone, it appears, Caesar actually attacked. — **alia ac**: *other than* (*different from*). See note on p. 113, l. 29.

19. **quod**: introduces two verbs.

20. **continentis**: *of wide extent*.

24. **opere**: *i.e.* the building and fortifying of the camp.

25. **evolaverunt**: sc. *hostes* as subject.

27. **longius**: *rather too far*, with *secuti*.

XXIX. 29. **deinceps**: an adverb, but its position makes it nearly equivalent to an adjective, *successive*.

30. **quis**: with *impetus*.

32. **conversam ad hostem**: the tops of the trees were outside,

PAGE 123 the butts inside. — **pro vallo**: *as a rampart* on either side, as he advanced into the forest.

2. **extrema impedimenta**: *the rear of the baggage-train.*

3. **eius modi**: *of such a sort, i.e.* so violent.

5. **sub pellibus**: winter was approaching, and a permanent camp, with warmer, drier quarters than skin-covered tents, was necessary for soldiers who came from Italy.

7. **exercitum reduxit**: *i.e.* from the Morini.

8. **reliquis civitatibus**: the Venelli and others.

BOOK IV

124 **I.** 1. **annus**: owing to the confusion of the calendar, the official beginning of the year, January 1, actually fell in November. Hence this entire winter was included in the year of the consulship of Pompey and Crassus. See Introd., pp. 11, 13.

3. **Rhenum transierunt**: German hordes from across the Rhine formed a constant menace to Roman power in Gaul.

4. **quo**: *into which.*

8. **centum pagos**: this probably refers to the separate communities, members of which were connected by ties of blood.

11. **anno post**: *a year later, the next year.* Why is *anno* ablative?

12. **ratio atque usus**: *system and practice.*

13. **privati agri**: the land was occupied and cultivated in common.

15. **maximam partem**: *mostly.* A. 397. a; B. 185. 1; G. 328. 1. b; H. 416. 2; HB. 387. III.

16. **quae res**: *and this manner of life.*

17. **a pueris**: *from childhood.* — **nullo officio**: A. 409; B. 222. A (218. 7); G. 401. N. 2; H. 476. 3; HB. 431.

19. **et . . . efficit**: *both feeds their strength and makes (them) men of gigantic size of body.*

20. **consuetudinem**: explained by the following substantive clause.

21. **neque**: correlative to *et.* — **haberent**: *have.* The present, or definite, perfect usually takes the secondary sequence.

23. **lavarentur**: *bathe;* passive used reflexively. Compare the middle voice in Greek. A. 156. a; B. 256. 1; G. 218; H. 517; HB. 288. 3.

II. 24. **Mercatoribus**: see note on p. 98, l. 17. — **ut . . . habeant**: a conjunction or relative regularly is to be taken with the

verb which comes next after it; but if another relative or conjunction intervenes, the verb of the latter will precede that of the former. Here, therefore, *ut* must introduce *habeant*, which is a subjunctive of purpose. PAGE 124

25. **quibus vendant**: (*those*) *to whom they may sell.* — **quam quo desiderent**: *than because they desire*, a reason introduced expressly to deny it. The comparative implies denial, *magis quam* being nearly equivalent to *non*. A. 540. 2. N. 3; B. 286. 1. b; G. 541. N. 2; H. 588. II. 2; HB. 535. 2. b.

1. **iumentis**: abl. with *utuntur*. — **quibus**: abl. with *delectantur*. 125

2. **pretio**: A. 416; B. 225; G. 404; H. 478; HB. 427. 1. — **importatis**: contrasted with *quae . . . nata*.

4. **haec ut sint efficiunt**: *these they make* (*to be*). — **laboris**: *capacity for work*, a pred. gen. of quality, or description.

5. **pedibus**: *on foot*, abl. of manner; cf. p. 114, l. 31.

8. **ephippiis**: the ancients did not use true saddles or stirrups.

9. **quemvis**: *whatever*, acc. of *quivis*. — **quamvis**: an adverb, limiting *pauci*.

10. **adire**: *i.e.* in a hostile encounter. — **Vinum**: compare a similar statement about the Nervii, Bk. II, Chap. XV. The drink of the Germans was a kind of beer.

III. 16. **Publice**: *i.e.* to them as a state.

18. **vacare agros**: *for the lands to lie waste*, subject of *esse*.

22. **una ex parte**: *in one direction*, but notice carefully the Latin idiom.

23. **succedunt Ubii**: the Ubii were a little south of Cologne.

24. **captus**: *capacity*, *i.e.* for dignity and prosperity (cf. *ampla atque florens*). — **paulo**: with *humaniores*.

26. **ventitant**: A. 263. 2. a; B. 155. 2. a; G. 191. A. 1; H. 364. 1; HB. 212. 1. N.

27. **Gallicis moribus adsuefacti**: *used to Gallic ways*. See note on *nullo officio*, p. 124, l. 17.

30. **humiliores redegerunt**: *reduced* (*so that they were*) *less important*, i.e. *rendered less important*.

For a further description of Germany and the Germans see Bk. VI, Chaps. XXI–XXVIII, and also the "Germania" of Tacitus.

IV. 32. **causa**: *case*, or *situation*.

2. **quas regiones**: *the district which*. 126

5. **trans flumen**: *i.e.* from the standpoint of Gaul.

6. **praesidiis**: this word is used especially of bodies of troops detailed to defend some point.

7. **vi contendere**: *force their way across*.

PAGE 126

9. **reverti se**: ind. disc., depending on *simulaverunt*.

11. **equitatu**: abl. of means. The foot-soldiers, women, and children of course returned more slowly.

15. **certior fieret**: *could be informed.*

17. **se . . . aluerunt**: *lived on their supplies.*

V. 20. **nihil his committendum**: *that nothing ought to be left to them.* Caesar's action is given in the next chapter.

21. **Est . . . consuetudinis**: *for there is this Gallic custom; consuetudinis* is pred. gen. — **uti**: introduces four verbs, *cogant, quaerant, circumsistat, cogat.*

22. **quaque**: abl. fem. of *quisque.*

26. **quorum . . . est**: *of which they must repent* (lit. *it must repent them*) *immediately.* A. 354. b; B. 209. 1; G. 377; H. 457; HB. 352. 1. Observe that *eos* is object of *paenitere*, not subject.

27. **rumoribus**: dat.

28. **ad . . . ficta**: *things made up to their wish.*

VI. 29. **ne . . . occurreret**: *that he might not have to meet a more dangerous war*, a war from Gauls and Germans united.

30. **ad exercitum**: apparently Caesar had spent the winter, as usual, in Cisalpine Gaul.

31. **ea . . . cognovit**: *he found that his suspicions had been realized*, lit. *he found that those things had been done which he had suspected would take place.*

32. **missas**: notice its emphatic position.

127 1. **ab Rheno discederent**: *i.e.* come farther into Gaul from the Rhine. — **Omnia . . . parata**: depends on *invitatos;* they had been invited with the promise that everything, etc.

2. **fore parata**: nearly equivalent to *paratum iri*, fut. pass. inf.

3. **Eburonum et Condrusorum**: these were so-called German tribes living among the Belgae. They may have been late immigrants from the eastern bank of the Rhine. The Eburones caused Caesar much trouble the next year.

4. **Principibus evocatis**: Caesar held such meetings of the leading men of Gaul from time to time.

6. **imperato**: *having been levied.* The number of Caesar's horsemen in this campaign is given in Chap. XII as 5000.

VII. 9. **audiebat**: notice the tense. News kept coming to him.

11. **neque priores**: *i.e.* they were not acting on the offensive. With this speech compare that of Ariovistus, Bk. I, Chap. XLIV.

12. **neque tamen**: *but yet . . . not.*

13. **quin contendant**: *to fight.*

14. **quicumque . . . deprecari**: *to resist those who* (lit. *who-*

ever) *made war upon them and not to try to beg off*. Why is *inferant* subjunctive? PAGE 127

15. **dicere**: sc. *se* as subject — **invitos**: do not confuse this word with *invitatos*.

17. **attribuant**: *let them assign*, probably imperative (*attribuite*) in the direct form, though possibly subjunctive.

18. **possederint**: from *possido*. — **unis Suebis**: *to the Suebi alone*.

19. **reliquum . . . possint**: in the direct form *reliquus quidem in terris est nemo quem non superare possimus*. The last verb is subjunctive of characteristic. The order of words shows the chief emphasis to be on *reliquum, there was no one else*.

VIII. 21. **visum est**: sc. *respondere* as subject. — **exitus**: *the conclusion*.

23. **verum**: *just*. — **suos . . . potuerint**: this alludes to the words *eiectos domo*, l. 15.

24. **alienos**: the possessive of *alius*. A. 113. d; B. 354. 4; G. 108; H. 93. 3; HB. 339. a. — **occupare**: its subject is the omitted antecedent of *qui*.

26. **Ubiorum finibus**: see note on p. 125, l. 23.

IX. 30. **post diem tertium**: *on the next day but one*. — **propius se**: the comparative *propius* takes an accusative, like the positive *prope*. Cf. *proximus mare*, p. 112, l. 17.

1. **trans Mosam**: they must have crossed to the west bank of the Meuse, but the exact location of the Ambivariti is unknown. 128

X. 5. **Vacalus**: now *the Waal*. It is larger in volume than the northern arm of the Rhine. — **insulam Batavorum**: the island is bounded on the north by the northern arm of the Rhine, on the south by the Waal and the Meuse, and on the west by what is now the North Sea. See the map. — **inde**: *i.e.* from the eastern end of the island.

7. **longo spatio**: *in a long course*.

8. **Nantuatium**: the Nantuates previously spoken of (Bk. III, Chap. I) dwelt near Lake Geneva and the Rhone. The tribe here meant may have been a branch or offshoot of the other.

9. **citatus**: trans. by an adverb, *swiftly*.

13. **multis capitibus**: *by many mouths*. Either end of a river might be called *caput*, but the word was more often applied to the source.

XI. 16. **congressi**: sc. *cum Caesare*.

19. **sibi potestatem faceret mittendi**: *give them an oppor-

PAGE 128 *tunity to send.* — **legatos mittendi**: what would this be if the gerundive were used instead of the gerund?

20. **fidem fecisset**: *gave (should have given) a pledge.*

21. **ferretur**: Caesar's proposal is given in the last three lines of Chap. VIII.

22. **daret**: this represents an imperative of the direct form.

23. **eodem illo**: *to that same point*, explained by the following *ut*-clause.

24. **qui**: the antecedent of this pronoun is not *eorum*.

26. **quam frequentissimi**: these words indicate that Caesar already had in mind the plan which he afterwards executed.

29. **qui nuntiarent**: (*men*) *to say.* — **et**: *but.*

31. **accessisset**: this is subordinate to *sustinerent*, which represents a command. In the direct form it was either a future perfect indicative or a perfect subjunctive denoting anticipation or expectancy.

129 **XII.** 3. **equites**: obj. of *haberent;* its case is not affected by the comparative *amplius*.

6. **indutiis**: *for a truce.* — **impetu facto**: this attack, which was probably made without the orders of the German leaders, gave Caesar an excuse for his act of treachery.

7. **rursus his resistentibus**: *when the latter rallied.*

8. **suffossis equis**: may be translated actively, *stabbing the horses from below*, or *in the belly.*

9. **ita perterritos**: *in such terror.* — **egerunt**: the German cavalry was very effective. Caesar afterwards made considerable use of German cavalry and tactics. Cf. Bk. I, Chap. XLVIII, and see Introd., p. 30.

12. **Piso Aquitanus**: a foreigner who received Roman citizenship usually took the name of the person from whom he received it. Probably that was the case with Piso. — **genere**: A. 403. a; B. 215; G. 395; H. 469. 2; HB. 413.

13. **regnum**: monarchy was disappearing in Gaul in Caesar's time.

16. **quoad**: *as long as*, not as on p. 128, l. 30. A. 555; B. 293. II; G. 569; H. 603. I; HB. 550.

18. **procul**: *from a distance.* — **incitato . . . est**: *spurring on his horse, he dashed upon the enemy and was slain.*

XIII. 22. **per dolum**: it is quite possible that the German cavalry had not heard of the truce. Caesar wishes to excuse and justify his action of the next day.

23. **dum . . . augerentur**: *until the enemy's forces should be*

increased. A. 553; B. 293. III. 2; G. 572; H. 603. II. 2; HB. 507. 5. PAGE 129

24. **summae dementiae**: *the height of madness*, lit. *of the highest madness*. A. 343. c; B. 203. 5; G. 366; H. 447; HB. 355.

26. **auctoritatis**: with *quantum*. — **quibus**: *i.e.* the Gauls.

28. **consilio**: *his purpose*, explained by the clause *ne . . . praetermitteret*.

30. **quod . . . venerunt**: explains *opportunissima res*.

33. **purgandi sui causa**: *to clear themselves*. A. 504. c; B. 339. 5; G. 428. R. 1; H. 626. 3; HB. 614. — **contra atque**: *contrary to what*. Cf. the use of *atque* with *alius*. The subjunctive is due to the fact that Caesar is giving the reason assigned by the ambassadors.

1. **ut . . . impetrarent**: *that, if they could (get) anything,* 130 *they might by deceiving get (something) in regard to a truce*. This translation will show the construction.

2. **Quos**: subject of *oblatos (esse)*. The clause depends on *gavisus*. A. 572. b; B. 331. V; G. 533; H. 614; HB. 594.

3. **retineri**: *to be detained*. This was treachery on Caesar's part, for the Germans came at his request. An enemy of Caesar, Cato, proposed in the Roman senate that Caesar should be given up to the Germans for this breach of faith.

XIV. 6. **Acie triplici**: see Introd., p. 44.

7. **quid ageretur**: ind. quest., obj. of *sentire*.

8. **omnibus rebus**: partially explained by the following ablatives.

9. **suorum**: *i.e.* those who had gone to Caesar's camp.

10. **consili habendi**: *for holding a council of war*. — **perturbantur, -ne . . . an**: *were in great perplexity as to whether . . . or*.

13. **pristini diei**: *of the day before*.

17. **domo excesserant**: *had emigrated*.

XV. 20. **clamore**: sc. *puerorum mulierumque*.

22. **confluentem Mosae et Rheni**: if this reading is right, the point meant is probably the junction of the Meuse and Waal. Cf. Chap. X. But there are rather strong reasons for thinking that this massacre of the Germans actually took place farther up the Rhine, in the neighborhood of Coblenz. If so, *Mosae* must be a mistake for *Mosellae*.

25. **ad unum omnes incolumes**: *without the loss of a man*. That *incolumes* does not here mean 'safe and sound' is shown by the words which follow it.

PAGE

26. **ex**: *after*.

130 27. **ccccxxx milium**: probably an excessive estimate.

31. **libertatem**: *permission to do so*.

The sacrifice of life in this campaign was enormous; the Germans were thoroughly cowed, and gave no further trouble. These two tribes were not annihilated, as we see from the next chapter. Besides the cavalry who escaped, there were also, no doubt, some survivors from the battle.

131 **XVI.** 2. **suis quoque rebus**: *for their own possessions, too*. — **cum intellegerent**: *when they should learn*. The use of the subjunctive is due to the fact that the clause represents Caesar's thought, 'They will fear when (if) they shall learn.'

4. **Accessit quod**: *there was the additional reason that*.

9. **eos . . . dederent**: *that they should give up to him those who*, etc.

11. **si se invito existimaret**: direct, *si te invito existimas*.

12. **cur . . . postularet**: *why should he ask that anything across the Rhine be subject to his authority or power*. The verb *postularet* is in the subjunctive because this is a question in indirect discourse. — **sui imperi**: pred. gen. of possession.

15. **legatos miserant**: cf. p. 127, l. 27.

18. **Id**: does this refer to *exercitum?*

21. **ad**: *among;* the reputation had spread to the remotest tribes.

22. **tuti esse**: *be protected*.

XVII. 27. **suae dignitatis**: *consistent with his dignity*, a pred. gen.

29. **proponebatur**: *presented itself*.

30. **id contendendum**: *that that effort* (*i.e.* to build a bridge) *must be made*.

32. **Tigna . . . iungebat**: *logs a foot and a half in thickness, sharpened a little at the bottom* (*and*) *of lengths corresponding to the varying depths of the river, he joined in pairs at a distance of two feet from each other*. — **bina**: *two by two*, i.e. *in pairs*. — **dimensa**: passive in meaning, though from a deponent. Cf. *dimenso*, p. 100, l. 27.

33. **intervallo**: for the case see A. 412; B. 221; G. 399; H. 473. 3; HB. 422. I.

132 1. **cum**: *whenever*, or *after*. See note on *cum*, etc., p. 116, l. 15. — **machinationibus**: the *machinatio* probably consisted of a pair of rafts fastened together, with an open space between. Over this open space and supported by both rafts would be erected a scaffolding with tackle for holding and letting down the logs, and ma-

chinery for driving them home. — **immissa defixerat**: *had let down and set.*

2. **modo**: not the adverb. — **derecte ad perpendiculum**: *straight to the plummet.*

3. **prone ac fastigate**: *leaning forward and sloping* like the rafters in a gable-roof. — **ut . . . procumberent**: a clause of result. — **secundum naturam**: *with the current.*

4. **duo**: sc. *tigna*, obj. of *statuebat*.

5. **intervallo**: connect this with *statuebat*. — **quadragenum**: A. 49. d; B. 63. 2 (25. 6); G. 97. R. 1; H. 169; HB. 71. 4. All things considered, it is most reasonable to believe that the forty feet were measured at the surface of the water. If so, the distance at the top, fixing the width of the bridge, would be less than this. — **ab inferiore parte**: sc. *fluminis*, *down-stream.*

6. **Haec utraque**: *these two pairs.*

7. **trabibus immissis**: abl. abs. — **quantum . . . distabat**: explains *immissis*, *i.e.* the beams were let in from above as far as the cross-tie (*iunctura*) was distant from the top of the pier made of the two logs. Some, perhaps rightly, connect the clause with *bipedalibus* and explain it to mean equal to the distance between the logs, lit. *as much as the joining of those logs stood apart.*

8. **binis . . . distinebantur**: *were held apart* (kept from falling towards each other) *at the top by a pair of fasteners on either side.* It is entirely uncertain what the *fibulae* were. The form shown in the picture would be effective, and this form seems to fit Caesar's description as well as any that has been proposed. Cross-pieces are placed in the acute angles formed by the pier and the two-foot beam on the up-stream side of the bridge, and these are fastened together by strong ropes or bands of iron. Others, similarly fastened together, are placed in the obtuse angles formed by the pier and the beam on the down-stream side of the bridge. A little reflection will show that the force of the current of the river, causing the up-stream pier to bend farther away from the perpendicular and the down-stream pier to become more nearly vertical, will tend to carry these cross-pieces farther apart and stretch and tighten the rope or metal fastenings. Cf. ll. 10–12.

9. **quibus . . . revinctis**: *and as these* (the opposite pairs of logs) *were thus kept apart and furthermore made fast in the opposite direction*, *i.e.* so that they would not pull apart.

10. **ea**: *such.*

11. **quo . . . hoc**: *the . . . the.*

12. **Haec**: the trestles, each consisting of two piers with the con-

PAGE 132 necting beam. The width of the river was probably about one fourth of a mile. If we assume that the trestles were twenty-five feet apart, fifty to sixty would be needed. The building of the successive trestles is indicated by the imperfects of the description. — **derecta . . . contexebantur**: *were connected* (*woven together*) *by joists laid on straight*, *i.e.* lengthwise of the bridge.

13. **cratibus**: these took the place of flooring. — **nihilo setius**: *i.e.* though the work was so strong, *yet*.

14. **oblique agebantur**: these words seem to mean that the *sublicae* were driven in so as to lean not directly against the current of the river, but diagonally athwart the current. — **pro ariete subiectae**: *placed underneath as a prop*, but where and how they were placed can only be conjectured. Certainly an effective arrangement would have been that shown in the picture. *Sublicae* placed this way would not only brace the bridge against lateral swaying caused by the current, but also counteract longitudinal movement of the bridge.

16. **aliae supra pontem**: these *sublicae* were probably vertical. There may have been a continuous line of them across the river, or, more likely, two or three in front of each trestle, perhaps as in the picture.

18. **neu**: regularly used for *et ne*.

This bridge was probably built near Neuwied, eight miles north of Coblenz, which is at the confluence of the Rhine and Moselle. Napoleon placed it at Bonn, and various other places have been fixed upon by others. In the dredging of the river near Neuwied remains of piles have been found, which are thought to have belonged to this bridge. Somewhat less than a mile up-stream other piles have been found, and excavations near the river reveal the remains of fortifications. These are thought to belong to the bridge and fortifications built by Caesar at the time of his second crossing of the river, two years after the first crossing. See Bk. VI, Chaps. IX and XXIX.

133 **XVIII.** 1. **quibus**: *after*, lit. *within which*; see note on p. 120, l. 16. — **materia**: do not translate this 'material.' — **coepta erat**: notice that this verb is regularly passive when the infinitive depending on it is passive.

3. **praesidio**: see note on p. 126, l. 6. A *castellum* was no doubt built at each end of the bridge.

7. **quo**: *when*.

8. **ex . . . Usipetibus**: the cavalry and the survivors from the battle described in Chaps. XIV and XV.

PAGE 134

XIX. 5. **auxilium suum pollicitus**: i.e. *se auxilium laturum pollicitus*; hence the subjunctive *premerentur*, which stands for a future indicative.

9. **omnes**: subject of *convenirent*.

11. **medium**: *in the center*, a pred. adj.

13. **constituisse**: sc. *Suebos* as subject. — **rebus**: explained by the following *ut*-clauses.

15. **ulcisceretur**: for their insolence. Cf. p. 131, ll. 8–14.

16. **obsidione**: *from oppression*.

18. **profectum**: from *proficio*; its subject is *satis*.

Not until many years later were the Germans conquered in their own country by the Romans. We shall meet with the Suebi and the Ubii again in Bk. VI.

XX. 21. **ad septemtriones vergit**: cf. Bk. I, Chap. I.

23. **subministrata auxilia**: for the fact see Bk. III, Chap. IX. Caesar's real reasons for invading Britain are not far to seek. His accounts of his two expeditions, given in this book and the next, are among the most interesting parts of his story. Before Caesar's time Britain was a land practically unknown to the civilized world. See Introd., pp. 29, 30.

25. **fore**: *that it would be*; the subject of *fore* is implied in the following conditional clause.

26. **adisset, perspexisset, cognovisset**: subj. of ind. disc.

28. **temere**: *easily*, a common rendering for *temere* when it is used with a negative.

30. **Gallias**: Gaul as a whole had several divisions. See Bk. I, Chap. I.

135

2. **usum belli**: *skill in war*.

4. **ad . . . multitudinem**: with *idonei*; A. 385. a; B. 192. 2. N.; G. 359. R. 3; H. 435. I; HB. 364. 6.

XXI. 6. **priusquam faceret**: *before making*. A. 551. b; B. 292. 1. a; G. 577; H. 605. II; HB. 507. 4. a.

7. **idoneum**: in agreement with *C. Volusenum*. — **navi longa**: *a war-ship*. In war-ships the ratio of length to breadth was about 7 or 8 to 1; in ships of burden, about 4 to 1. See Introd., p. 51.

9. **in Morinos**: cf. Bk. III, Chaps. XXVIII, XXIX.

11. **quam classem**: i.e. *eam classem quam*.

15. **polliceantur**: observe the mood. — **dare**: A. 580. c. N.; B. 328. 1; G. 531. N. 4; H. 619. 1; HB. 593. a. Verbs of promising generally take the future infinitive in indirect discourse.

17. **eos**: the *legati*.

PAGE 135

18. **ibi**: among the Atrebates. There was in Britain a tribe called Atrebates, probably kindred to those in Gaul. Hence Commius was a suitable person to send.

19. **consilium**: *shrewdness.*

21. **magni**: *of great value.* A. 417; B. 203. 3; G. 379; H. 448; HB. 356. 1. — **adeat**: depends on *imperat.* What construction is used after *iubeo?*

22. **fidem sequantur**: *place themselves under the protection.* — **se**: refers to Caesar.

23. **Volusenus . . . revertitur**: *Volusenus, having examined the country, so far as one could* (lit. *how much of opportunity could present itself to one*) *who did not dare*, etc., *returned; quantum* is the subject of *potuit.*

25. **auderet**: subj. of characteristic.

XXII. 27. **Dum**: *while.* Learn from the grammar (use the index) the different constructions used with *dum.* — **in his locis**: *i.e.* among the Morini.

29. **superioris temporis consilio**: their actions as given in Bk. III, Chap. XXVIII. — **homines barbari**: *being barbarians.*

30. **consuetudinis**: gen. with *imperiti.* What adjectives take the genitive? The custom is probably that of granting more favorable terms to those who submitted voluntarily. — **bellum fecissent**: this expresses from Caesar's point of view the statement of the *legati;* hence the word *barbari* and the subjunctive *fecissent.*

31. **se facturos**: cf. *dare*, l. 15.

34. **tantularum rerum**: *of so trifling matters.*

35. **Britanniae**: dat. with *anteponendas.* The meaning is, of course, 'the expedition to Britain.'

136

1. **Quibus**: the hostages. — **eos**: the Morini in general.

2. **quot . . . existimabat**: *a number which* (*how many*) *he thought was enough for*, etc. Each ship, then, would carry something like one hundred men. The two legions were the seventh and tenth. Where have we met these legions before?

3. **quod . . . habebat**: *all the war-ships which he had besides.*

4. **quaestori, legatis**: see Introd., p. 32. — **praefectis**: commanders of the *auxilia.* See Introd., p. 34.

5. **Huc accedebant**: *to these were added.* Notice this use of the adverb for a pronoun, a very common use.

6. **a . . . octo**: *eight miles away.* See note on p. 94, l. 1. — **quominus possent**: *so that they could not.* A. 558. b; B. 295. 3; G. 549; H. 568. 8; HB. 502. 3. b.

10. **ducendum**: *to be led.* A. 500. 4; B. 337. 8. b. 2 (337. 7. b. 2); G. 430; H. 622; HB. 612. III. PAGE 136

11. **quod . . . arbitrabatur**: How do you know that this clause is not a part of the order given to Rufus?

XXIII. 14. **tempestatem**: *weather*, which may be either good or bad. — **tertia fere vigilia**: this means 'about midnight.' Explain why. — **solvit**: *set sail;* sc. *navis.* The point of departure was probably Portus Itius, identified by some with Boulogne, by others with Wissant. The *ulterior portus* would then be Ambleteuse (somewhat less than eight miles from Boulogne) or Sangatte (nearly eight miles from Wissant).

2. **esset administratum**: *the order had been executed.* — **hora quarta**: not far from 9 A.M. It was towards the end of August. 137

3. **Britanniam attigit**: somewhere near Dover, it is thought.

4. **expositas**: *arrayed.*

5. **haec**: *such.* — **montibus**: *cliffs*, coming close to the water's edge.

7. **ad egrediendum**: sc. *ex navibus, for disembarking.*

8. **dum**: *until;* the best rendering would be *for the rest of the ships to arrive.*

10. **quae cognovisset et quae vellet**: objects of *ostendit.* — **monuit**: *advised*, instead of the stronger *imperavit.*

11. **ut . . . maxime ut . . . postularent**: *as . . . (and) especially as . . . demanded.* The clause depends on *ad nutum . . . administrarentur.*

12. **ut . . . haberent**: *being, as they are, things which* (lit. *as things which*) *involve quick and unsteady motion.* A. 535. e. N. 1; B. 283. 3. a; G. 626. R. N. 1; H. 592. 1; HB. 523. b. The tense of *haberent* follows the rule for sequence, but English idiom requires the present tense. — **ad nutum . . . administrarentur**: depends on *monuit.*

14. **secundum**: to be taken with *ventum* as well as with *aestum.* See Vocab. for derivation and meaning.

16. **aperto**: *i.e.* not shut in by cliffs. — **navis constituit**: various considerations make it probable that Caesar landed between Deal and Walmer. The tidal current, which had been running towards the southwest, turned between four and five o'clock in the afternoon.

XXIV. 18. **quo genere**: *the kind (of troops) which.* A description of the method of fighting from chariots is given in Chap. XXXIII.

19. **navibus egredi**: *from disembarking.*

PAGE 137

22. **militibus . . . pugnandum**: *i.e.* the soldiers, weighed down by their armor, were obliged, etc.

24. **consistendum**: i.e. *get a foothold.* — **erat**: to be taken with all three gerundives. — **cum illi**: *while the enemy.* Notice the phrases in this clause which balance phrases in the preceding clause.

26. **insuefactos**: *well-trained.* The word occurs only here.

28. **omnino**: *altogether.* — **generis**: gen. with *imperiti.*

XXV. 30. **navis longas**: subject of *removeri* and the two following infinitives.

31. **motus expeditior**: these ships were more easily handled than the transports, since they were propelled by oars. They were capable of great speed.

33. **latus apertum**: *the exposed flank, i.e.* the right side, which was not protected by shields.

138 1. **tormentis**: see Introd., pp. 50, 51. *Tormenta* were placed on Roman war-ships, as heavy guns on modern war-ships.

5. **pedem rettulerunt**: *fell back.* What would *terga verterunt* mean?

10. **aquilam**: see Introd., p. 38. — **obtestatus deos ut**: *beseeching the gods that.*

15. **rei publicae atque imperatori**: the position of these words, between *meum* and *officium*, shows that they are closely connected in thought with *officium.*

21. **inter se**: *one another*, practically the obj. of *cohortati.*

22. **tantum dedecus**: the loss of the eagle.

24. **ex proximis navibus**: an adverbial phrase connected with *conspexissent*, but we may say *those in the nearest ships.*

26. **hostibus**: dat. with *appropinquaverunt.*

XXVI. 31. **firmiter**: for formation of this word see A. 214. c; B. 77. 4; G. 92. 2; H. 309; HB. 126. 2.

32. **alius . . . adgregabat**: *one from one ship, another from another* (*i.e.* soldiers from different ships), *they joined whatever standards they came to.* Notice in this chapter several instances of the imperfect indicative in a principal clause with the pluperfect indicative in a subordinate clause, both denoting customary or repeated action.

33. **notis vadis**: abl. abs.

35. **impeditos**: *at a disadvantage.*

139 1. **in universos**: *at the main body.*

3. **speculatoria navigia**: small, swift vessels for reconnoitering and carrying despatches. They were often painted blue or green, so as the more easily to escape detection.

PAGE

5. **simul**: for *simul atque, as soon as.*

7. **neque**: *but . . . not.* — **equites**: they were detained at the 139
ulterior portus. See Chap. XXIII and the first part of Chap. XXVIII. Cavalry were necessary for the pursuit.

8. **capere**: *reach.*

9. **fortunam**: though he ultimately triumphed, fortune was not always with Caesar in his campaigns.

XXVII. 12. **quaeque**: equivalent to *et (ea) quae.*

13. **Commius**: see Chap. XXI.

14. **demonstraveram**: for tense cf. *dixeramus*, p. 90, l. 4.

15. **illi**: i.e. *Britanni.* — **oratoris modo**: *as (in the manner of) an ambassador.* Caesar chooses to regard him as an envoy, that his seizure may be treated as a violation of international law.

17. **eius rei culpam**: *the blame for that act.*

18. **propter . . . ignosceretur**: *that pardon might be granted on the ground of ignorance.* With *ignosceretur* sc. *sibi*, or perhaps *ei rei.* The verb is impersonal. A. 372; B. 187. II. b; G. 346. R. 1; H. 302. 6; HB. 364. 2.

19. **cum**: *although.*

20. **sine causa**: from Caesar's standpoint the attack of the Britons on the Romans was entirely unprovoked. Why is *intulissent* subjunctive?

21. **imprudentiae**: dat. with *ignoscere.*

23. **arcessitam**: the action denoted by this word must, of course, precede that denoted by *daturos.*

XXVIII. 26. **post diem quartum quam**: an idiomatic expression equivalent to *quarto die postquam.* Cf. *post diem tertium*, p. 127, l. 30. The time, according to our method of reckoning, would be three, not four, days after.

28. **sustulerant**: *had taken on board.* — **superiore portu**: called *ulterior portus* in Chap. XXIII.

30. **tempestas**: *storm;* cf. p. 136, l. 14.

31. **eodem**: *to the same place.*

1. **inferiorem partem**: southwest of where Caesar had landed. 140

2. **occasum**: acc. with *propius.* — **suo periculo**: *danger to themselves.* The possessive takes the place of an objective genitive.

3. **cum fluctibus complerentur**: is *cum* a preposition or a conjunction? See A. 409. a; B. 218. 8; G. 405; H. 477. II; HB. 425.

4. **adversa nocte**: *in the face of the night.*

XXIX. 5. **Eadem . . . plena**: on this passage rests the deter-

PAGE 140

mination of the chronology of the expedition to Britain. We know (cf. Chap. XXXVI) that the full moon here mentioned was the one next preceding the autumnal equinox. The calculations of astronomers show that this full moon occurred August 31, about 3 A.M. Hence this storm occurred August 30. As this was four days (three by our method of counting) after Caesar's arrival in Britain, the date of his arrival would be August 27. To get this date we must assume the absolute accuracy of Caesar's statements. But, as a matter of fact, the highest tides in these regions occur a day and a half after full moon. Here is a discrepancy, and all that can be said is that Caesar's arrival must have taken place within a day or two of August 27. — **dies**: used in the astronomical sense, to include also the night.

6. **in Oceano**: the Romans were most at home in the Mediterranean, where there are practically no tides. They must, however, have had experience with high tides in the war with the Veneti. Cf. p. 115, l. 10.

9. **in aridum subduxerat**: ships were beached out of the reach of ordinary waves and tides. — **complebat**: notice the tense.

10. **deligatae**: used adjectively. The transports were not drawn up on land like the galleys.

11. **administrandi aut auxiliandi**: those on board could not manage the vessels, and those on shore could not go to help.

12. **funibus . . . amissis**: the abl. abs. gives the reason why the rest of the ships were useless.

13. **id . . . accidere**: *as could not fail to happen*. Give the syntax of each word. Observe that *quod* is not the subject of *erat*.

15. **Neque**: correlative with *et*, *et* following. — **possent**: subj. of characteristic. The subject of the verb, *milites*, is to be supplied from *exercitus*.

16. **usui**: *for use*, i.e. *useful*.

17. **omnibus constabat**: *everybody agreed*. What literally? — **hiemari**: impersonal passive. It is the subject of *oportere*.

18. **in hiemem**: *against the winter*.

XXX. 21. **Romanis**: A. 373. b; B. 190; G. 349. R. 4; H. 429; HB. 362.

23. **hoc angustiora**: *smaller on this account*.

24. **factu**: A. 510; B. 340. 2; G. 436; H. 635. 1; HB. 619. 1.

25. **prohibere, producere**: subjects of *esse*.

26. **reditu**: *from returning*, abl. of separation.

28. **rursus**: *i.e.* changing from a state of peace to one of preparation for hostilities.

PAGE

XXXI. 31. **ex eventu navium suarum**: *from what had happened to his ships.* — **ex eo, quod**: *from the fact that.* 140

32. **fore . . . accidit**: *that the thing would come about which really did happen.* Notice the mood of *accidit*.

33. **casus**: *emergencies.* — **subsidia**: explained by the following sentence.

2. **aere**: less liable than iron to rust. 141

3. **quae**: sc. as antecedent *ea*, subject of *comparari*. Observe the mood of *erant*.

4. **cum**: causal.

5. **reliquis . . . effecit**: *he rendered it possible for a voyage to be made fairly well in the rest* (lit. *by means of the rest*).

XXXII. 8. **frumentatum**: a supine, expressing purpose. — **septima**: the numbers of legions, like names, were permanent. — **neque ulla**: equivalent to *nullaque*. Observe that the negative and the connective usually combine.

9. **interposita**: *having arisen.* — **hominum**: the Britons.

10. **ventitaret**: see note on *ventitant*, p. 125, l. 26.

12. **quam . . . ferret**: *than custom warranted* (*i.e.* than usual).

13. **id . . . aliquid**: *suspecting* (*as was the case*) *that some.*

15. **in stationem succedere**: *to replace them on guard.*

16. **armari**: *to arm themselves*; see note on *lavarentur*, p. 124, l. 23.

17. **paulo longius**: *some distance.* — **suos**: those who were out foraging.

21. **dispersos**: sc. *eos*, i.e. *nostros*, obj. of *adorti*.

23. **incertis ordinibus**: cf. *conferta legione* above.

XXXIII. 25. **ex essedis**: connect this with *pugnae*. The British war-chariot was open in front, and probably carried two men. Whether it was armed with scythes is uncertain. Caesar makes no mention of scythes. The Gauls did not use war-chariots in Caesar's time.

26. **terrore equorum**: *fear of the horses*; *equorum* is an obj. gen.

28. **equitum turmas**: this description was probably not written until after the campaign of the next year. In writing it Caesar appears to have forgotten that at this time his cavalry was not with him. Some refer the words to the cavalry of the Britons themselves, which would thus serve to protect the charioteers when dismounting, and there is much to be said in favor of this view.

PAGE 141

29. **pedibus**: *on foot*, abl. of manner. — **Aurigae**: *the drivers*.

30. **illi**: the fighters who have left the chariots.

142

1. **mobilitatem**: *mobility*. — **stabilitatem**: *steadiness*.

2. **declivi ac praecipiti**: *steep down-hill*.

3. **incitatos equos sustinere**: *to drive at breakneck speed*, lit. *to hold their horses urged to full speed*. — **brevi**: sc. *tempore*, *in an instant*. — **moderari**: *to rein in*.

4. **per . . . recipere**: *to run out along the pole, step on the yoke, and from there return very swiftly into the chariot*.

XXXIV. 6. **Quibus rebus**: abl. of means. — **nostris**: sc. *militibus*, dat. — **novitate**: abl. of cause.

13. **alienum**: *unfavorable*.

18. **occupatis**: *busy*. — **reliqui**: pred. adj. agreeing with *qui*. — **discesserunt**: the subject is the antecedent of *qui*. Cf. Chap. XXXII, near the beginning.

19. **quae continerent**: *i.e.* severe enough to keep.

22. **praedicaverunt**: *made much of*.

23. **sui liberandi**: see note on *sui recipiendi*, p. 111, l. 2.

24. **expulissent**: for fut. perf. of the direct form.

XXXV. 27. **idem**: subject of *fore*. The clause *ut . . . effugerent* is in apposition with it.

29. **equites**: what these horsemen had been doing in the meantime is not stated.

32. **ac**: *but*.

143

1. **tanto spatio**: we might expect here the accusative. — **quantum**: *i.e.* having pursued them as great a distance as their strength enabled them to run.

2. **occiderunt**: carefully distinguish compounds of *caedo* from those of *cado*.

XXXVI. 7. **propinqua die**: *since the day was near*. It has been calculated that the autumnal equinox of 55 B.C. fell on September 26. Caesar probably returned to Gaul a week or ten days earlier than this. — **hiemi subiciendam**: *ought to be exposed to bad weather* (*wintry weather*), *i.e.* the heavy storms which often accompany or follow the equinox.

9. **navis solvit**: cf. p. 136, l. 14.

11. **reliquae**: sc. *ceperunt*.

12. **paulo infra**: *i.e.* towards the south.

XXXVII. 14. **in castra**: the camp held by Rufus and the garrison of soldiers at Portus Itius. Cf. Chap. XXII, end.

16. **non ita magno**: *no very large*.

17. **sese**: subject of *interfici*, but it may be omitted in translation. — **orbe facto**: see Introd., p. 45. PAGE 143

21. **horis**: what other case might have been used?

XXXVIII. 28. **siccitates**: the plural is used to show that all the swamps were dry. A. 100. c; B. 55. 4. c; G. 204. N. 5; H. 138. 2; HB. 103. N.

29. **quo se reciperent**: see note on p. 117, l. 8. — **quo perfugio erant usi**: *the refuge which they had used.* For the fact cf. Bk. III, Chap. XXVIII.

7. **dierum XX supplicatio**: cf. Bk. II, end. Caesar by his passage of the Rhine had checked for a time the onward movement of the Germans; and, though he accomplished nothing in this expedition to Britain, he gained knowledge and experience which were useful to him in the expedition of the next year. 144

BOOK V

I. 1. **L. Domitio . . . consulibus**: 54 B.C. Asyndeton (omission of connective) is common in such formulas as this. 145

3. **quos legionibus praefecerat**: cf. Bk. I, Chap. LII, beginning. Caesar now had eight legions.

4. **navis aedificandas curent**: *have ships built.*

5. **modum formamque**: *fashion and shape.* — **subductionis**: see note on p. 140, l. 9.

6. **humiliores**: *i.e.* lower and shallower. — **quam quibus**: *than (those) which.* — **nostro mari**: the Mediterranean.

7. **atque id**: *and that too* (he did).

8. **minus magnos fluctus fieri**: shallowness of water, as well as the meeting of opposing tidal currents in the English Channel, brings this about.

9. **paulo latiores**: sc. *eas facit.*

11. **actuarias**: driven by oars and sails. — **imperat fieri**: *impero* usually takes the subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*. It allows the infinitive of passive or deponent verbs, very rarely an active infinitive.

12. **ex Hispania**: Spain furnished metals and ropes.

13. **conventibus**: see note on p. 89, l. 25.

15. **civitatibus**: *i.e.* of Illyricum.

19. **Percepta oratione**: *having heard their plea.*

21. **fecerint**: subj. of ind. disc.

23. **arbitros dat**: *he appoints referees.* — **litem**: *the damage* (value of property destroyed). — **poenam**: *the recompense*, includ-

PAGE
145 ing no doubt the value of the property and an additional sum as penalty.

146 **II.** 3. **circumitis**: *circumeo* is transitive, though *eo* is intransitive. — **singulari studio**: limits *instructas*.

4. **in**: *in spite of*.

5. **cuius**: sc. *generis*, descriptive gen. (gen. of quality) limiting *navis*, the omitted obj. of *demonstravimus*.

6. **neque . . . possint**: *and were not far from this point, that they could be launched in a few days*. The clause *quin . . . possint* is in loose apposition with *eo*, but has the form of a clause dependent on *non multum abesse*. Cf. *quin . . . educat*, p. 118, l. 9.

8. **portum Itium**: see note on *solvit*, p. 136, l. 14.

10. **milium passuum xxx**: limits *traiectum*.

11. **huic rei**: *i.e.* for finishing the preparations, bringing the ships round to *portus Itius*, and guarding them while there.

13. **concilia**: stated assemblies of Gallic leaders held under Caesar's auspices.

III. 16. **equitatu**: cf. p. 103, l. 17.

17. **supra**: cf. p. 114, l. 16.

18. **principatu**: not an official position, but leadership due to personal popularity and influence. By espousing the cause of one contestant, Caesar turned such quarrels as this to his own profit.

19. **Cingetorix**: he was son-in-law of Indutiomarus. — **alter**: to which does this refer? Cf. l. 23.

24. **iisque**: *-que* connects *cogere* and *parare*, *iis . . . pertinet* being parenthetical.

25. **silvam Arduennam**: the *Forest of Ardennes* still exists, but it is not as large as in ancient times.

29. **de privatis rebus petere**: contrasted with *civitati consulere*.

30. **quoniam . . . possent**: whose reason is this? Notice the mood of the verb.

31. **consulere**: this word may take, with a difference in meaning, either the dative or the accusative. A. 367. c; B. 175. 1, 187. II. a; G. 346. N. 2; H. 426. 4; HB. 367.

32. **idcirco**: explained by the clause of purpose *quo . . . contineret*.

147 1. **itaque**: *i.e.* because he had remained at home.

IV. 5. **instituto consilio**: cf. *bellum parare instituit*, p. 146, l. 27.

11. **principibus, hos**: these two words refer to the same persons.

12. **Cingetorigi conciliavit**: this looks very like double dealing

on Caesar's part. — **quod**: subject of *fieri*. — **cum, tum**: *not only, but also*. — **eius**: i.e. *Cingetorigis*. PAGE 147

13. **magni . . . perspexisset**: *he thought it of great consequence that that man's influence among his own people should be as strong as possible, whose friendliness toward himself* (*i.e.* Caesar), etc. What is the subject of *interesse?*

16. **qui . . . fuisset**: a clause of concession, or opposition. Trans. *qui, whereas he.*

17. **multo gravius exarsit**: one can hardly blame him.

V. 19. **Meldis**: there was a tribe of Meldi living inland near the Marne and Seine. Some think that there was a maritime tribe of this name, or that the Meldi here meant were a subdivision of the Morini.

24. **perpaucos**: what is the force of *per-?*

25. **obsidum loco**: *as hostages.*

26. **cum abesset**: *while he was* (*should be*) *away.*

VI. 28. **Dumnorix**: we have met with him before, in Bk. I, Chaps. IX, XVIII–XX.

30. **eum**: this word has four predicates, *cupidum, cupidum, magni animi, magnae auctoritatis*. — **magni animi**: *of a proud spirit.*

3. **regnum deferri**: a statement possibly true, though probably not. The Haedui were governed by an elective magistrate. Cf. p. 65, l. 4. 148

4. **neque**: *but yet . . . not.*

7. **insuetus navigandi**: *unaccustomed to sailing.*

8. **religionibus**: *by religious duties*. — **diceret**: sometimes in the statement of a quoted reason the verb of saying or thinking is put in the subjunctive by a kind of attraction. Cf. *existimarent*, p. 68, l. 29.

11. **territare**: historical inf.

12. **fieri**: inf. in ind. disc., depending on the idea of saying in *metu territare*. Its subject is *ut . . . spoliaretur.*

13. **quos**: its antecedent is *hos.*

14. **traductos necaret**: i.e. *take across and murder*. — **fidem . . . poscere**: *pledged his faith to the rest and demanded an oath from them.* In other words, Dumnorix began to form a 'conspiracy.'

15. **ex usu Galliae**: *to the advantage of Gaul.*

VII. 18. **quod . . . tribuebat**: Caesar treated the Haedui with so much honor that it would not do to have them set a bad example to the other states of Gaul.

19. **coërcendum atque deterrendum**: Caesar did not wish to

PAGE 148 adopt extreme measures, because harshness might alienate the friends of Dumnorix.

20. **quod**: (*and*) *because.*

21. **prospiciendum . . . posset**: *he must look out that he* (Dumnorix) *should not have the power to do any harm to him and the* (Roman) *state.*

23. **Corus ventus**: a wind blowing approximately from the northwest.

28. **impeditis**: the hampering effect of the work on their minds prevented them from noticing other things.

32. **retrahi**: see note on *imperat fieri*, p. 145, l. 11. — **neque pareat**: *and refuse to obey.*

33. **nihil pro sano**: *nothing as a man of rational mind*, i.e. *nothing rational.*

34. **praesentis**: not *se praesente* (cf. *se absente* above), because it limits *imperium.*

149 3. **interficiunt**: so Caesar had no more trouble from Dumnorix. He was guilty of no crime, so far as Caesar tells us, but that of being a patriotic Haeduan, anxious to save his country from a foreign yoke. That was crime enough, and his death served as a warning to others.

VIII. 8. **consilium . . . caperet**: *i.e.* meet any emergency which might arise.

9. **pari quem**: *equal* (*to that*) *which.*

10. **navis solvit**: with wind from the southwest and tidal current running in the opposite direction, the fleet sailed northwesterly. When the wind died away, the current, which had turned, bore the fleet towards the northeast. In early morning the current changed again, and following the change the Romans moved back to their landing-place of the previous year. This is the view usually held. There are, however, reasons for thinking that the landing was somewhat further north than in the previous year, somewhere between Deal and Sandwich.

11. **Africo**: why should the southwest wind be *Africus* to a Roman?

12. **sub sinistra relictam**: he had been carried too far northeast, and was drifting away from land.

15. **qua**: *where.*

16. **virtus**: *pluck.* — **vectoriis . . . adaequarunt**: *in their heavy transport-ships, not ceasing the labor of rowing, kept up with*, etc.

18. **Accessum est**: the date has been usually supposed to have been July 21; but there are strong arguments in favor of placing it two weeks earlier, or about July 7.

PAGE 149

22. **quae, amplius DCCC**: *more than eight hundred of which*, lit. *which, more than eight hundred*. For case of *quae* see A. 346. e; B. 201. 1. b; G. 370. R. 2; H. 442. 2; HB. 346. c. — **privatis**: those of wealthy officers accompanying the expedition, or of *mercatores*.

23. **sui quisque**: observe the order of these words, which is the regular one.

IX. 28. **cohortibus decem**: not a legion, but cohorts selected from different legions.

29. **de tertia vigilia**: *during the third watch, i.e.* not long after midnight. Into how many watches was the night divided?

30. **navibus**: dat.

150

2. **ad flumen**: according to Napoleon, the Little Stour; but Holmes thinks that the Great Stour is the river referred to. — **ex loco superiore**: the Britons had occupied the opposite bank of the river. Probably there were hills on this side, but *ex loco superiore* may refer to the advantage those standing on the bank would have over those crossing.

6. **arboribus succisis**: they had made barricades of trees.

7. **ex silvis rari propugnabant**: *kept sallying forth from the woods in small parties*.

8. **legionis septimae**: so the seventh legion got revenge for hard usage of the previous year. See Bk. IV, Chap. XXXII.

9. **testudine**: see Introd., p. 46. — **aggere . . . adiecto**: *carrying an agger up to the fortifications*. This must have been a very rough-and-ready piece of work.

11. **prosequi**: with *iubeo* and *veto* an infinitive is often used without an expressed subject, if the chief stress is on the action commanded or forbidden, or if the subject is obvious.

13. **castrorum**: plainly not the same as the camp mentioned at the beginning of the chapter, for that must have been on the seashore (cf. *navis cum castris coniungi*, l. 31), while this was a considerable distance inland.

X. 15. **expeditionem**: notice derivation and meaning.

16. **cum iam extremi**: *while still the rear, i.e.* of Caesar's columns.

17. **ad Caesarem**: Caesar evidently had not accompanied one of his flying columns.

19. **adflictas . . . esse**: *had been shattered and thrown up on shore*.

21. **concursu**: *bumping together*.

PAGE **XI.** 24. **resistere**: *i.e.* to act only on the defensive.

150 26. **sic ut**: *i.e.* he saw that the ships were in such a state that.

27. **magno negotio**: *though with great difficulty.* — **fabros**: in early times there were in the Roman army centuries of artisans (*fabri*). Caesar seems to have had no regularly organized body of workmen distinct from the legionary soldiers.

28. **ut . . . instituat**: *scribit* is here equivalent to a verb of ordering.

29. **legionibus**: abl. of means. How many legions had Labienus?

31. **cum castris**: this camp was no doubt partially fortified on the afternoon of the army's landing. Whatever further work was needed was probably done the next day by the ten cohorts left as a *praesidium*.

151 1. **ne . . . intermissis**: *not even the night-time being lost for (allowed to cause interruption to) the soldiers' work.*

2. **Subductis navibus**: if the ships were arranged in a double, or even in a triple row, the frontage on the beach must have been from one to two miles.

7. **Cassivellauno**: *Caswallon*, "first of the roll of English heroes."

8. **milia passuum LXXX**: this probably gives the distance from Caesar's landing-place to the point where he himself crossed the Thames into the territory of Caswallon. Too much stress should not be laid on distances given by Caesar, as they can be only rough estimates.

10. **continentia**: *i.e.* without any interval between them.

XII. Chapters XII–XIV contain an interesting description of Britain, in which, however, there are some statements demonstrably false, and others which we have no means of verifying.

12. **quos . . . dicunt**: *who they say it has been handed down by tradition were born* (i.e. *originated*) *in the island itself; quos* is subject of *natos* (*esse*), and this clause forms the subject of *proditum* (*esse*). We may translate more freely, *whom they say tradition declares to have originated in the island itself.*

14. **qui**: *and they.*

15. **quibus ex civitatibus**: with *orti*, which agrees with the subject of *pervenerunt*. There were Atrebates, for example, on both sides of the Channel.

18. **aedificia**: the houses of the Gauls were built of timber and wickerwork, round, with conical or dome-shaped roofs.

19. **taleis . . . examinatis**: *iron bars regulated* (*weighed*) *to a definite weight.*

PAGE 151

20. **Nascitur**: *is found.* — **plumbum album**: *tin.* Long before Caesar's time the Phoenicians went to Britain for tin; but Cornwall, the chief place of supply, is not 'mediterranean.'

22. **aere importato**: notice the position of each word; *the copper that they use is imported.*

23. **fagum, abietem**: the beech and fir are both said to be indigenous to Britain.

24. **fas non putant**: *they count it a sin.* — **haec**: Why neuter?

25. **animi voluptatisque causa**: *i.e.* as pets. — **Loca**: the Latin has no word for 'climate.'

26. **remissioribus frigoribus**: *the seasons of cold (the frosts) being less severe.* There are no great extremes of heat and cold in Britain, owing to the warm seas that surround it and the winds from the Atlantic.

XIII. 27. **natura**: the word seems superfluous, but may be translated *in shape.* — **unum latus**: Caesar regards this side as extending from northeast to southwest.

30. **inferior**: sc. *angulus*, now Land's End. — **tenet**: *embraces*, or *extends*.

31. **Alterum**: sc. *latus*, *the second side.* — **ad Hispaniam**: Spain is considered as being west of Britain, with Ireland lying between. Tacitus in the "Agricola" repeats this error.

32. **dimidio**: abl. of degree, or measure, of difference.

33. **pari . . . Britanniam**: *but it is at a distance* (from Britain) *equal to that from Gaul to Britain*; *spatio* is an abl. of quality, or description, and the gen. *transmissus* depends upon it. For *pari atque* see note on p. 72, l. 4.

152

2. **Mona**: *the Isle of Man.* — **minores insulae**: the islands west of Scotland.

3. **non nulli**: the *scriptores* were probably Greeks, who may have heard strange stories from voyagers to far-off northern lands.

5. **certis . . . mensuris**: *by means of accurate measurements with the clepsydra.* The clepsydra, or water-clock, measured time by the emptying of a vessel through a small orifice. Caesar must have found the summer nights in Britain more than an hour shorter than at Rome.

14. **vicies . . . passuum**: straight lines connecting Caesar's 'angles' would measure somewhat less than this distance; but if indentations be followed, the coast-line of Britain is more than 2000 miles.

XIV. 16. **humanissimi**: *most civilized.* Shakspere mentions

PAGE 152 this statement of Caesar's in the Second Part of "King Henry VI," Act 4, Scene 7.

21. **lacte et carne vivunt**: cf. Bk. IV, Chap. I, where Caesar is speaking of the Suebi. These people had not passed from the pastoral into the agricultural stage of civilization.

23. **capillo promisso**: abl. of quality, or description.

25. **Uxores communis**: this statement could have been true only of the more remote Britons, if it was not altogether a mistake.

27. **quo**: *to whom*, or *to whose home*.

28. **deducta est**: *was led* (as a bride), a regular meaning of this verb.

XV. 29. **Equites hostium**: the story is resumed from Chap. XI.

30. **ita tamen ut**: *yet in such a way that*, freely *but the result was that*.

31. **fuerint**: for tense see A. 485. c. N. 1; B. 268. 6; G. 513; H. 550; HB. 478.

153 1. **intermisso spatio**: a rendering of the ablatives absolute of this sentence may be found in A. 420. 5. N.

4. **duabusque**: *-que* connects *pugnaverunt* and *perruperunt*.

5. **primis**: the first cohort of a legion contained the best soldiers of the legion.

6. **loci spatio**: *loci* defines *spatio*, which often, as a few lines above, means *time*. The two cohorts probably attempted to get in the rear of the assailants, thus cutting off their retreat; but as they did not come sufficiently close together, the enemy slipped away through the interval. — **novo genere pugnae**: cf. Bk. IV, Chap. XXXIII.

9. **submissis**: notice the force of *sub*, *i.e.* as a support, or help. Cf. *subsidio* above.

XVI. 12. **nostros**: sc. *milites*, *foot-soldiers*, contrasted with *equites* in l. 15.

16. **illi**: the enemy. — **consulto cederent**: *gave way intentionally*.

17. **removissent, desilirent**: these verbs would be in the perfect and present indicative in direct discourse.

18. **dispari proelio**: the enemy were at a decided advantage, because supported by their chariots; while the Roman horsemen could not have the support of the legions.

19. **cedentibus**: *i.e.* the Roman cavalry were pursued, if they gave way, by the British cavalry.

20. **Accedebat huc ut**: *besides*.

21. **stationes**: *reserves*.

22. **alios . . . exciperent**: *i.e.* they relieved one another. PAGE

XVII. 25. **rari**: *here and there.* 153

27. **C. Trebonio**: it was Trebonius who, in 55 B.C., proposed the law by which Caesar's term as governor of Gaul was extended for five years.

29. **sic uti non absisterent**: *so* (furiously) *that they did not keep back from.*

31. **quoad**: *until*, introducing *egerunt*, *dederunt*. — **subsidio**: abl., or possibly dat. See note on *natura*, p. 113, l. 22.

32. **praecipitis**: *pell-mell*, a pred. adj.

1. **summis copiis**: *with their full force.* 154

XVIII. 4. **uno omnino loco**: of course not literally true. This was the only ford which Caesar found. Its location is unknown, but it was some distance above London, perhaps near Kingston or Brentford.

5. **hoc**: sc. *loco*.

8. **praefixis**: *driven in front* (of the bank). — **defixae**: *driven down*.

11. **eo impetu**: *with such a rush.* The stakes must have been removed in some way, but we are not told how. — **cum**: *though*. — **capite solo**: in modern times a river more than three feet deep is generally considered unfordable by an army.

13. **dimitterent**: *abandoned.*

XIX. 16. **milibus . . . essedariorum**: from these words some infer that Caswallon had 4000 war-chariots, others that the number was 2000, since each chariot carried two men, a driver and a fighter.

19. **atque**: connects the verb preceding it with *compellebat*.

24. **hoc metu**: i.e. *huius rei metu*. Notice the idiom carefully. — **Relinquebatur ut**: *the final result was that.*

25. **discedi**: impersonal, sc. *ab equitibus*.

26. **tantum hostibus noceretur**: (*only*) *so much damage was inflicted on the enemy;* but *noceretur* is impersonal, and *tantum* is acc., not nom.

27. **quantum**: obj. of *efficere*.

XX. 29. **Trinovantes**: in Essex.

30. **adulescens**: this word is regularly used to distinguish a younger from an older person of the same name, somewhat like our 'Junior.' Probably some older relative was named Mandubracius. — **Caesaris fidem secutus**: *seeking Caesar's protection.*

2. **sese**: obj. of *dedituros*. 155

3. **Cassivellauni**: subjective gen. — **mittat, qui praesit**: *send him, to govern.* Caswallon had met with reverses, and now his old

PAGE 155 enemies wished to revenge themselves upon him, even to the extent of handing Britain over to the Romans. Cf. p. 151, ll. 9–11. Caesar was very ready to accept the assistance of the Trinovantes, as he had that of the Haedui in Gaul.

5. **exercitui**: *for the army.*

XXI. 8. **militum**: *at the hands of the soldiers*, subjective gen.

9. **Bibroci**: some think that this name is preserved in the modern name Berkshire.

11. **oppidum Cassivellauni**: according to some authorities, located in the vicinity of St. Albans.

13. **Oppidum vocant**: *call it a town; oppidum* is a pred. acc. The Gauls, on the other hand, had real towns. Observe here the perfect indicative in the *cum*-clause with a present indicative in the main clause, generalizing the statement.

XXII. 25. **castra navalia**: cf. Chap. XI. — **adoriantur**: this word is often used of a secret or unexpected attack.

30. **civitatum**: those mentioned in the preceding chapter, who followed the lead of the Trinovantes.

33. **id . . . posse**: *this* (the little remaining) *could easily be frittered away.* The death of Julia, Caesar's daughter, wife of Pompey, had just occurred, and even before this bond was broken Pompey had begun to be jealous of Caesar. Caesar had reason to fear the effect upon his political fortunes of a prolonged absence in distant Britain.

34. **quid vectigalis**: *what* (*of*) *tribute.* No measures were taken to collect this tribute, which was probably never paid.

35. **penderet**: *should pay.* — **interdicit atque imperat**: notice the fullness of expression. We may translate, with *ne noceat, strictly forbids to injure*, or *orders positively not to injure.*

156 **XXIII.** 3. **Obsidibus acceptis**: besides hostages Caesar carried back slaves, and perhaps other booty. Dion Cassius says that Caesar himself remarked on the desolation he left behind him in Britain.

5. **deperierant**: *had been utterly destroyed.*

6. **commeatibus**: *trips* (*goings forward and back*).

9. **inanes**: two classes of vessels were sent to Caesar *inanes:* first, those from which the soldiers carried on the first trip had been landed; second, those which Labienus had had built. Of the latter the verb *mitterentur* would properly be used.

15. **angustius milites conlocavit**: *he crowded the soldiers into rather narrow quarters.*

16. **secunda . . . vigilia**: i.e. *though he had not sailed until*

after the beginning of the second watch.— **terram attigit**: the time of his return was probably about the middle of September. Caesar had very likely intended, if circumstances permitted, to winter in Britain. PAGE 156

Not for nearly a hundred years did a Roman force again land in Britain, and the actual conquest of the island was not completed until many years later.

XXIV. 18. **Samarobrivae**: the name means *Somme-bridge.* It is generally identified with Amiens.

19. **siccitates**: in the previous year also Gaul had suffered from droughts. Cf. p. 143, l. 28.

23. **Q. Ciceroni**: brother of the orator. He was Caesar's *legatus* several years. Some of his letters written from Gaul and Britain are mentioned in the extant collection of Cicero's correspondence.

26. **M. Crassum**: an older brother of the P. Crassus mentioned in Bk. I, Chap. LII.

27. **Unam legionem**: this legion was perhaps enrolled in the spring of this year, and was probably numbered XV. Caesar therefore should have had nine legions. Only eight and one half are here accounted for. One explanation is that the five cohorts mentioned in l. 28 belonged to XIV, and that the other five cohorts of XIV were used to fill gaps in other legions.

28. **in Eburones**: to Atuatuca, identified by Napoleon with the modern Tongres. Many scholars do not accept the identification. Some place it east of the Meuse. Caesar's purpose undoubtedly was to command the road from northern Gaul to the Rhine.

Into the discussion of the exact location of most of the winter camps mentioned in this chapter it is unnecessary to go. Of those who have studied the question most carefully, hardly any two agree exactly.

4. **mederi**: *meet*, lit. *remedy*. 157

6. **milibus passuum c continebantur**: this probably means that the distance between any two camps was not more than 100 miles, but the number is certainly too small; for Samarobriva, where it appears Trebonius was located, and Atuatuca must have been more than 100 miles apart.

8. **cognovisset**: see note on p. 128, l. 31.

XXV. 10. **Carnutibus**: on the Loire, round Orléans and Chartres. — **loco**: abl. of source, or origin.

13. **fuerat usus**: for *erat usus*, emphasizing the fact that this action preceded that of *restituerat*.

14. **multis ex civitate**: *many citizens*; these resented Caesar's

PAGE 157 interference, and wished to preserve the independence of the state.

17. **L. Plancum**: he had been sent among the Bellovaci.

18. **cognoverit**: *he should learn.*

21. **hibernis**: dat.

XXVI. 22. **quibus**: *after.*

25. **praesto fuissent**: *had met.*

26. **Indutiomari**: see Chaps. III and IV.

29. **Hispanis equitibus**: of what nation were the most of Caesar's cavalry?

158 1. **aliqui**: *aliqui* is usually an adjective, and the pronominal form is *aliquis.*

XXVII. 5. **eques Romanus**: *a Roman knight.*

8. **Sese**: it should be easy now for the student to turn indirect discourse into direct, and it is recommended that the translation also be given in the direct form. *Pro Caesaris in me beneficiis plurimum ei confiteor (me) debere, I admit that I owe much to Caesar for his kindnesses to me.*

10. **ei**: we might have had the reflexive, but *a Caesare* saves *ei* from ambiguity. Is *ei* equivalent in meaning to *ad eum?*

14. **sua imperia**: *his own powers.*

16. **porro**: *in the next place.* Having presented his own apology, Ambiorix proceeds to offer one for the state.

18. **imperitus rerum**: cf. p. 83, l. 28.

20. **hibernis oppugnandis**: *for assaulting the winter camps.*

24. **Quibus**: dat., to be connected with *satisfecerit.* — **pro pietate**: *i.e.* to meet the demands of patriotism.

27. **consulat**: *have regard for.*

28. **biduo**: *next day.* See note on p. 85, l. 1. — **Ipsorum esse consilium**: *i.e.* in the direct form, 'It is for you (the Romans) to consider.'

33. **Quod cum faciat**: *and in so doing.*

159 1. **quod levetur**: *because it would be relieved.* In the tenses of this speech we have numerous instances of present and perfect subjunctives in secondary sequence.

XXVIII. 8. **credendum**: *credible.*

10. **primorum ordinum centuriones**: see Introd., p. 34.

13. **rem**. *i.e.* what had occurred, given in the following *quod*-clause.

14. **ultro**: they had borne the attack, and wounded many of the enemy *besides.*

17. **quid esse**: direct, *quid est?* A. 586; B. 315. 2; G. 651. R. 1; H. 642. 2; HB. 591. a.

PAGE

XXIX. 19. **facturos**: sc. *illos* and *esse*; direct, *facietis*.

159 22. **Caesarem**: subject of *profectum* (*esse*).

24. **fuisse capturos**: direct, *cepissent*; apodosis of a condition contrary to fact (unreal), the protasis of which is contained in the adverb *aliter*. A. 589. b; B. 321. A. 2; G. 656. 2; H. 647; HB. 581. b. 1.

25. **venturos**: sc. *fuisse*. Some supply *esse*, and the manuscripts do not have '*venturos. Sese*' but '*venturos. esse*,' making the direct form *venirent*. — **Sese . . . spectare**: *he looked not to the enemy but to the facts as his authority*.

27. **Ariovisti mortem**: this has not been mentioned before. He escaped safely to Germany, according to Bk. I, Chap. LIII. Yet these words seem to indicate that he had been killed by Romans.

28. **ardere**: *was ablaze*.

30. **quis . . . persuaderet**: *who could convince himself of this?*

160 1. **consentiret**: pres. ind. in the direct form.

3. **consilium**: acc., subject of *habere*.

XXX. 6. **in utramque partem**: *pro and con*.

7. **resisteretur**: is its subject Sabinus?

9. **exaudiret**: notice the force of *ex*.

12. **perendino die**: i.e. *tertio die, the day after to-morrow*.

14. **fame**: notice the peculiarity in the declension of this word.

XXXI. 15. **comprehendunt**: the liveliness imparted to the narrative by the asyndeton and by the use of historical presents should be noticed.

20. **dat manus**: *yields*; originally *manus dare* meant *offer one's hands to be bound*. Probably Cotta had been directed by Caesar, in the event of a difference, to yield to Sabinus.

25. **quare . . . augeatur**: *why they could not remain without peril, and the peril would be increased*, etc.

26. **sic ut quibus esset persuasum**: *as men who had been convinced*. The subj. is characteristic.

28. **longissimo . . . impedimentis**: they did not take the ordinary precautions of an army on the march. Most of these troops were probably newly enlisted. See p. 156, l. 27, and the note.

161 **XXXII.** 1. **a**: *away*.

5. **nostris**: dat. with *iniquissimo*.

XXXIII. 7. **providisset**: subj. of characteristic, not strictly causal, but with a strong implication of cause.

9. **ut . . . viderentur**: freely, *so that it was plain he had lost all presence of mind*.

PAGE 161

10. **in ipso negotio**: *in the midst of action.*

14. **imperatoris**: depends upon *officia.*

16. **per se omnia obire**: *attend personally to everything.*

18. **orbem**: see Introd., p. 45.

22. **factum**: sc. *esse.*

23. **ab signis discederent**: *i.e.* left their places in the ranks.

24. **quaeque**: equivalent to *et* (*ea*) *quae.*

26. **fletu**: yet they fought with desperate courage.

XXXIV. 29. **Illorum, illis**: emphatic.

30. **proinde**: *so,* frequently used with imperative expressions.

32. **a fortuna**: notice the preposition. Fortune is, as it were, personified. *Fortuna* was worshiped as a goddess by the Romans.

162 5. **Levitate . . . posse**: a declarative sentence in indirect discourse, inserted parenthetically. The dative *his* refers to the Eburones (*vobis* in the mouth of Ambiorix).

6. **rursus. . . insequantur**: *and that they should follow them when they again fell back* (*se recipientis*) *to their standards.*

XXXV. 9. **quaepiam**: *some,* from *quispiam.*

10. **eam . . . erat**: *that part was necessarily exposed.* The part of the *orbis* from which the cohort had gone forward is perhaps meant, though most refer the words *eam partem* to the cohort itself. The phrase *latere aperto* seems to have its usual meaning, *the right side* (*i.e.* the side unprotected by shields).

11. **Rursus**: from *re-* + *versus;* it implies a reversal of action.

13. **sin . . . vellent**: contrasted with *cum reverti coeperant.* The subjunctive is occasionally used to denote repeated action in a subordinate clause, instead of the more usual imperfect or pluperfect indicative.

18. **ipsis**: depends on *indignum.* See A. 418. b; B. 226. 2; G. 397. N. 2; H. 481; HB. 442.

19. **T. Balventio**: A. 377; B. 188. 1. N.; G. 350. 1; H. 425. 4. N.; HB. 368.

20. **primum pilum**: from *pilus.* Apparently Balventius was no longer *primipilus,* and presumably he was serving as *evocatus.* See Introd., p. 34.

21. **eiusdem ordinis**: strictly this should mean that Lucanius was an ex-*primipilus,* but no doubt it means that he was actually *primipilus,* as Balventius had been the year before.

23. **in adversum os**: *right in the face.*

XXXVI. 27. **Cn. Pompeium**: probably an enfranchised Gaul who had taken a Roman name.

29. **quod . . . pertineat**: subject of *posse.*

PAGE

30. **ipsi . . . iri**: *but no harm would be done to him, i.e.* to Sabinus. What form of the verb is *nocitum iri?* 162

31. **suam fidem interponere**: *pledged his word.* — **cum Cotta communicat, ut**: *conferred with Cotta, (suggesting) that.*

35. **in eo perseverat**: *persisted in that (resolution).*

XXXVII. 1. **in praesentia**: *at the moment.* 163

5. **consulto**: an adv., *purposely.*

7. **victoriam conclamant**: *shout 'Victory!'*

15. **ad T. Labienum**: Labienus was among the Remi, near the Treveri.

The loss at Atuatuca was the severest blow Caesar had thus far suffered. Suetonius says, *Diligebat usque adeo [milites] ut audita clade Tituriana barbam capillumque submiserit, nec ante dempserit quam vindicasset.* He chastised the Eburones the following year, but could never catch Ambiorix.

XXXVIII. 19. **in Atuatucos**: cf. Bk. II, Chaps. XXIX–XXXIII.

21. **in Nervios**: according to Bk. II, Chap. XXVIII, the Nervii were 'almost annihilated' in the year 57 B.C.

22. **sui liberandi, ulciscendi**: dependent upon *occasionem.*

25. **esse**: the subject is *legionem . . . interfici.*

XXXIX. 29. **eorum**: i.e. *Nerviorum.*

2. **Huic quoque**: *i.e.* to Cicero, as well as to Sabinus and Cotta. 164
Cf. Chap. XXVI.

3. **munitionis**: *material for building defenses.*

8. **sustentatur**: cf. the impersonal use, p. 93, l. 2.

9. **adepti**: conditional, *if they should gain.* The accusative case agreeing with *se* might have been expected instead of the nominative.

XL. 11. **ad Caesarem**: Caesar was probably at Samarobriva.

12. **pertulissent**: why subjunctive? Cicero may have said to his messengers, *Magna praemia vobis dabo si litteras pertuleritis.*

14. **turres**: the towers were wooden frames raised from the rampart at intervals of perhaps forty feet, with floors, or platforms, on which the soldiers could stand. Such towers were often built with more than one story, and corresponding stories of adjacent towers were sometimes connected by galleries. — **admodum**: *fully.*

21. **opus**: predicate, *necessary*, lit. *a necessity.* — **praeustae sudes**: stakes sharpened at the end and hardened in the fire would make a very good substitute for javelins.

22. **muralium pilorum**: no doubt these were heavier than the ordinary javelin; they were intended to be hurled downwards.

PAGE 164 —**turres contabulantur**: this refers to the putting in of the floors mentioned in the note on l. 14.

23. **pinnae loricaeque**: each story, or platform, was protected in front and at the sides by a continuous parapet of wickerwork (*lorica*). At intervals in this rose battlements (*pinnae*), of the same material, to the height of six or seven feet. Between these the soldiers discharged their missiles.

26. **sibi**: dat., depending on *parcere*.

XLI. 28. **causam amicitiae**: *grounds of friendship*.

33. **Ambiorigem**: Ambiorix would not have been present, unless the camp in the country of the Eburones had been destroyed. —**eos**: Cicero and his soldiers, while *iis* refers to the soldiers in the other camps.

34. **suis rebus**: *their own safety*.

165 2. **incolumibus**: in agreement with *illis*. A. 455. a; B. 327. 2. a; G. 535. R. 3; H. 612. 3; HB. 585. c.

7. **se**: subject of *sperare*.

XLII. 10. **pedum XV**: when only one (unnamed) dimension of a trench is given, width is meant.

11. **consuetudine**: *intercourse*.

12. **nulla copia**: *since there was no supply*.

13. **quae essent**: *such as were*.

17. **turris**: these were movable. —**falcis**: these were to be used to tear down the rampart of the camp. See the picture on p. 50.

18. **testudines**: movable sheds, protected by which soldiers could approach the wall.

XLIII. 21. **glandis**: how red-hot balls of clay could be thrown by leather slings is "another story." The leather may have been lined with metal. Some think of hooks attached to the balls. —**fervefacta iacula**: either wound with inflammable material, or else themselves actually kindled at the end.

22. **casas**: the soldiers' quarters.

25. **parta atque explorata**: *gained and decided*.

166 2. **recessum . . . dabant**: *those farthest off did not allow those in front to fall back*.

6. **si vellent**: *in case they wished*. *Si vultis, introite* was the invitation.

8. **deturbati**: sc. *sunt*.

XLIV. 12. **de loco**: *for position*, or *promotion*.

17. **inrumpit**: sc. *in eam partem*.

18. **Ne . . . continet**: *then Vorenus did not remain inside the rampart either*.

19. **Mediocri spatio relicto**: *i.e.* between himself and the enemy. PAGE 166

21. **hunc**: refers to the same person as *quo*. We might have expected *quem percussum protegunt*, but *hunc* is used to mark the contrast with *illum* following.

23. **Pulloni**: dat. of reference. — **balteo**: see Introd., pp. 35, 36.

24. **conanti**: sc. *ei*.

28. **illum**: Pullo.

30. **in . . . inferiorem**: *stumbling into a hollow*.

31. **ambo**: *both*.

1. **utrumque**: *each*. — **inimicus**: emphatically contrasted with the two words following. 167

2. **anteferendus videretur**: *seemed superior (to be preferred)*.

XLV. 8. **a prima obsidione**: *at the beginning of the siege*.

10. **praestiterat**: *had made manifest*.

11. **in iaculo**: perhaps concealed in the shaft, or placed under the detachable head.

12. **versatus**: *mingling*.

XLVI. 18. **cum nuntio**: *i.e.* as soon as he received the order.

20. **sciebat**: Caesar is the subject.

21. **Labieno**: cf. p. 156, l. 24. — **rei publicae commodo**: *consistently with the interests of the state*.

23. **equites cogit**: it appears that in the fall the greater part of his Gallic cavalry was dismissed.

XLVII. 27. **Samarobrivae**: it is pretty certain that Caesar was here when he received the message from Cicero. Trebonius with one legion was at or near Samarobriva. It is believed that Caesar on setting out took this legion with him, leaving orders for Crassus with his legion to garrison the town.

31. **in itinere**: not to be connected with *moratus*.

2. **quos sciret**: *since he knew that they*. 168

5. **tria milia passuum longe**: *three miles far*, i.e. *away*.

XLVIII. 7. **opinione deiectus reciderat**: lit. *thrown down from his expectation he had fallen back*.

15. **Graecis litteris**: apparently Latin words in Greek characters. Caesar sometimes made use of a cipher.

20. **amentum**: *a thong*, attached to the dart. Experiments have shown that the range of a dart may be increased fourfold and the aim made much more accurate by the use of the thong in hurling.

24. **biduo**: *for two days*.

PAGE 168

25. **perlectam**: what is to be supplied? Examine the preceding sentences.

27. **incendiorum**: not signal-fires, nor yet camp-fires, but the fires of burning buildings.

XLIX. 31. **Gallum repetit**: *asks for another Gaul.*

169 1. **discessisse, convertisse**: *hostis* is the subject of both these infinitives.

8. **aequo . . . celeritate**: *he might with a clear conscience relax his speed.* The meaning of necessity or obligation which we have found attaching to the gerundive in the periphrastic conjugation is neither original nor invariable.

11. **milium septem**: besides the two legions there were four hundred cavalry. Previous campaigns had reduced the size of the legions.

12. **angustiis viarum**: *i.e.* by making the streets of the camp narrow.

13. **hostibus**: *in the eyes of the enemy.*

L. 16. **ad aquam**: i.e. *ad rivum.*

18. **Caesar**: sc. *sese suo loco continet.* On this depends the clause of purpose *ut . . . contenderet.*

24. **consulto**: cf. p. 153, l. 16.

26. **quam maxime concursari**: *the soldiers should run to and fro as much as possible.*

LI. 29. **iniquo loco**: for the Gauls, but *suo loco* for Caesar.

32. **seu . . . Romanus**: *if any one, Gaul or Roman.*

34. **Ac**: *and what is more.* — **in speciem**: *merely for show.*

35. **ea**: *that way, there.*

170 5. **armis**: abl. of separation.

LII. 8. **turris**: cf. p. 165, l. 17.

9. **non decimum quemque**: *not one in ten.*

17. **quod detrimentum**: *the disaster which.* — **legati**: Sabinus.

19. **expiato incommodo**: abl. abs.

LIII. 21. **per Remos**: the method of spreading news in Gaul is given on p. 200, ll. 18–20. In this case the news must have traveled nearly seven Roman miles an hour.

26. **Indutiomarus**: see Chaps. III and IV.

171 1. **tribus legionibus**: the three originally assigned to Crassus, Trebonius, and Cicero. — **triuis**: why is not *tribus* used?

4. **perlato**: *having been reported far and wide.*

6. **reliqui**: nom. pl.

9. **intercessit**: notice the literal meaning; almost no time free

from anxiety came between the anxious times. — **quin acciperet**: *without his receiving.* PAGE 171

12. **Aremoricae**: see note on p. 112, l. 22.

LIV. 17. **territando**: an enemy of Caesar might say *by bullying.* — **denuntiaret**: *denuntio* often conveys a covert threat.

19. **Senones**: mentioned in Bk. II, Chap. II. The verbs belonging to this noun are a long distance off, but the student should follow the Latin order in determining the meaning of the sentence.

26. **dicto**: dat. with *audientes, obedient.* They perhaps had heard of Caesar's treatment of the Germans the year before. See Bk. IV, Chap. XIII, end. — **tantum valuit**: *i.e.* it made so great an impression. The subject of *valuit* is the clause *esse . . . inferendi.*

29. **Haeduos et Remos**: the Haedui joined the great uprising of Gaul two years later, but the Remi remained faithful even then.

31. **nulla non**: the two negatives make an emphatic affirmative. We may reproduce the effect by translating *there was almost no state that was not suspected.*

32. **nobis**: A. 375; B. 189. 2; G. 354; H. 431. 2; HB. 373. 2. — **Idque . . . sit**: *and I do not know whether that is so very much to be wondered at.*

172 1. **compluribus aliis de causis**: large amounts of grain and immense sums of money had to be furnished by them to the Romans; whole districts were laid waste; their cities and homes were pillaged and burned; but no doubt, as Caesar thought, the loss of national honor was the greatest blow of all.

2. **praeferebantur**: *used to be considered superior.* — **tantum . . . deperdidisse ut perferrent**: *that they had lost so much of that prestige as to (be obliged to) endure.* For *se deperdidisse* see A. 572. b; B. 331. V; G. 533; H. 614; HB. 594.

LV. 8. **multo minorem superesse**: no doubt an inaccurate estimate, though Caesar had suffered fearful losses in this year's fighting.

10. **Ariovisti bello**: see Bk. I, Chaps. XXX–LIV.

11. **Tencterorum transitu**: see Bk. IV, Chaps. I–XV.

12. **copias cogere**: see p. 147, ll. 7, 8. Probably the hostages had been given back by Caesar; otherwise Indutiomarus would hardly have dared to make open war.

14. **tota Gallia**: the locative ablative usually omits *in* when *totus* is used.

LVI. 18. **ultro ad se veniri**: *i.e.* that the Gauls were rallying round him.

PAGE 172

19. **conscientia**: not 'conscience.' For the 'crime' of the Senones see Chap. LIV; of the Carnutes, Chap. XXV.

22. **Hoc**: not abl. — **quo**: an adv., *to such a council.*

24. **novissimus**: *last.*

25. **Cingetorigem**: see Chaps. III and IV.

29. **arcessitum**: *i.e.* to aid them.

30. **huc**: i.e. *ad has civitates.*

31. **priusquam id faciat**: *before doing that.* What forms of the verb might be used with *priusquam* in the direct form of this speech? — **castra Labieni**: among the Remi.

173 **LVII.** 3. **ne dimitteret**: *not to let slip;* the clause depends on *cogitabat.*

4. **a**: *from.*

6. **certam diem dicit**: *fixes a day.*

8. **sub castris**: on what kind of ground did the Romans usually build their camps?

11. **timoris opinionem augebat**: a common manoeuver; see Chap. L, and also Bk. III, Chaps. XVII and XVIII.

LVIII. 15. **arcessendos curaverat**: *had caused to be summoned.*

22. **dispersi . . . discedunt**: notice the occurence of *dis-* three times in four successive words.

23. **praecipit atque interdicit**: cf. *interdicit atque imperat*, p. 155, l. 35. Notice that the words here are followed by a command and a prohibition.

24. **quod . . . videbat**: *which he saw would be (happen), just as it did happen.*

26. **neu quis . . . viderit**: *and that no one should wound any one (else) before he saw him* (Indutiomarus) *killed.*

27. **mora . . . nactum**: *i.e.* winning time through the delay caused by the pursuit of the rest.

30. **fluminis vado**: it is implied that if he had crossed the river he would have been safe.

32. **equites**: nom.

BOOK VI

174 **I.** 1. **Multis de causis**: the reader of Bk. V can enumerate some of the causes.

2. **M. Silanum, C. Antistium Reginum, T. Sextium**: these *legati* are mentioned here for the first time.

PAGE 174

3. **Cn. Pompeio**: as proconsul, Pompey had been appointed to govern Spain, but he still lingered near Rome. See Introd., p. 15.

4. **ad urbem**: possessing the military *imperium* and having an army, he could not legally enter the city. — **rei publicae causa**: he was superintending the importation of grain to supply the needs of Rome.

5. **sacramento rogasset**: Pompey, as consul, in 55 B.C., had been allowed to levy soldiers wherever he pleased, even in another's province. The soldiers enlisted in Caesar's province Caesar now wished to receive.

6. **convenire**: the subject is *eos* understood, antecedent of *quos*. The soldiers were on furlough. — **magni interesse existimans**: *thinking that it was of great importance.*

7. **Galliae**: subjective gen.

8. **si quid detrimenti**: *if any loss.*

9. **sarciri**: *be made good.*

10. **augeri**: may be translated *be overbalanced.* — **Quod**: refers to the request introduced by *petit*, l. 4.

11. **amicitiae**: there was still friendship, nominally at least, between Caesar and Pompey.

12. **ante exactam hiemem**: *before the end of winter.*

14. **quas . . . amiserat**: the loss was fifteen cohorts. See Bk. V, Chaps. XXIV and XXVI–XXXVII. How many legions had Caesar now? See Introd., pp. 36, 37.

II. 16. **Indutiomaro**: see Bk. V, Chap. LVIII.

20. **inter se confirmant**: *give assurances to one another.* — **obsidibus . . . cavent**: *i.e.* they give hostages binding themselves not to default in payment of the money promised.

21. **Ambiorigem**: the hero, from the Gallic point of view, of Bk. V. — **societate et foedere**: the terms of the alliance (*societas*) were defined by the treaty (*foedus*).

175

1. **ad imperatum**: *at his command.*

3. **consilia communicare**: *were making common cause.*

4. **sibi cogitandum**: sc. *esse, that he must make his plans.*

III. 5. **proximis quattuor legionibus**: probably the three which were wintering about Samarobriva and the one among the Morini which Fabius commanded. See Bk. V, Chaps. XXIV and LIII.

8. **ea**: fem. sing., to agree with *praeda*; but it refers to the cattle and people captured, and we may translate *these . . . as booty.*

14. **ut . . . videretur**: *that he might be seen to make everything (else) subordinate.* — **Lutetiam Parisiorum**: *to the Lutetia* (which

PAGE 175 is a town) *of the Parisii*. There may have been other Lutetias. Caesar's Lutetia is Paris, named from the Parisii. This is the first mention of Paris we have in history.

15. **civitatem coniunxerant**: *i.e.* with the state of the Senones, a close alliance, or federation.

16. **ab hoc consilio afuisse**: *to have had no part in this design, i.e.* of revolt.

17. **pro suggestu**: see Introd., p. 42.

IV. 20. **princeps**: *leader*.

21. **oppida**: *walled towns*, in which the people assembled in time of danger. — **Conantibus**: dat., agreeing with a pron. depending on *nuntiatur*; lit. *to them making the attempt*.

24. **per Haeduos**: the Haedui served as mediators, to introduce the envoys to Caesar. — **quorum in fide**: *under whose protection*.

26. **instantis belli esse**: *belonged to the impending war*. The war is the one against the Treveri and Ambiorix. See ll. 32, 33 below.

27. **quaestionis**: this was postponed until later; see Chap. XLIV.

28. **custodiendos**: A. 500. 4; B. 337. 8. b. 2 (337. 7. b. 2); G. 430; H. 622; HB. 605. 2.

29. **Remis**: the Remi, as well as the Haedui, were friendly to the Romans.

V. 33. **Cavarinum**: see Bk. V, Chap. LIV.

176 2. **quod meruerat odio**: *hatred which he had earned*, by his harshness and cruelty, no doubt.

7. **hospitium**: see note on p. 73, l. 23.

8. **per Treveros**: not to be connected with *cognoverat*. — **venisse**: sc. as subject *Ambiorigem*.

9. **illi**: *from him*, lit. *for him* (*to his disadvantage*).

15. **loci praesidio**: *protection of their natural situation*.

VI. 17. **partitis**: passive in meaning.

18. **tripartito**: in three columns, commanded respectively by Caesar, Fabius, and Crassus.

23. **Commium**: see p. 135, l. 18.

24. **custodis loco**: *as a guard*.

VII. 29. **cum cognoscunt**: A. 546. a; B. 288. 2; G. 581; H. 600. I. 1; HB. 566. a.

30. **a milibus passuum XV**: *fifteen miles away*.

33. **impedimentis**: cf. l. 12.

177 5. **Augebatur spes**: in the minds of the Treveri.

6. **Loquitur**: sc. *Labienus*.

8. **et**: *but*.

PAGE

10. **Gallorum equitum**: the cavalry of Labienus, made up mostly of Gauls. **177**

11. **primis ordinibus**: *centurions of the first rank.*

16. **in . . . castrorum**: *as the camps were so near each other.*

VIII. 20. **perterritis Romanis**: *now that the Romans were thoroughly frightened.*

21. **exspectare**: subject of *esse*.

24. **Quae fore suspicatus**: *suspecting that this would happen.*

28. **petistis**: for *petiistis, petivistis*.

29. **ducibus**: pl. because *nobis* is pl., but both refer to Labienus himself. The plural pronoun of the first person is not seldom used of a single person. Note the distinction between *dux* and *imperator*.

35. **quos fugere . . . ire**: *that those whom they believed to be fleeing were coming*, etc.

4. **civitatem recepit**: *recovered the state*, which had revolted. **178**

7. **comitati eos**: *accompanying them.*

8. **Cingetorigi**: see p. 146, l. 19, and p. 172, l. 25.

IX. 10. **in Treveros**: cf. p. 176, l. 25.

12. **ad eos receptum**: *a retreat to them, i.e.* a place of refuge among them.

13. **supra eum locum**: see note on p. 132, l. 18.

15. **Nota**: the plan was known from the experience of two years before. Cf. Bk. IV, Chap. XVII.

18. **obsides dederant**: see Bk. IV, Chap. XVI.

19. **purgandi sui causa**: *to clear themselves.*

23. **amplius obsidum**: *more hostages.* — **velit**: subj. of implied ind. disc.

24. **Cognita causa**: *having investigated the case.*

X. 33. **ad . . . condicionem**: *i.e.* to fight under unfavorable conditions.

8. **pro . . . obiectam**: *intervening as a natural wall.* See the map of Gaul. **179**

XI. 12. **locum**: *i.e.* in the story. — **alienum**: *inapposite.*

17. **principes sunt . . . redeat**: *those who in the judgment of the people (eorum) are considered to have the greatest influence are the leaders, to whose will and judgment the control*, etc. The subj. is characteristic.

21. **auxili**: A. 356; B. 212. 1; G. 383. 1; H. 458. 2; HB. 347.

23. **Haec . . . Galliae**: *there is this same system in the general arrangement of Gaul as a whole.*

Caesar devotes eighteen chapters to a description and comparison

PAGE 179 of Gaul and Germany. His description of Britain in Bk. V occupies only three chapters. Both Gaul and Germany were nearer at hand than Britain, and information regarding them was more easily accessible. Yet Caesar's informants seem to have deceived him occasionally.

XII. 25. **principes**: with this chapter compare the speech of Diviciacus, Bk. I, Chap. XXXI.

28. **clientelae**: *dependencies, i.e.* subject tribes.

180 1. **antecesserant**: sc. *Sequani.*

4. **occupatam possiderent**: *seized and held.*

7. **infecta re**: *unsuccessful.* — **Adventu Caesaris**: Caesar drove out Ariovistus and the Germans, who supported the claims of the Sequani against the Haedui, though they also ill-treated the Sequani.

10. **eorum**: i.e. *Haeduorum.*

13. **quos . . . intellegebatur**: *and because it was understood that they* (the Remi) *were equally* (with the Haedui) *in favor with Caesar.*

19. **obtinerent**: *held.*

XIII. 20. **aliquo numero**: *of some account.*

21. **plebes**: what other nominative form has this word?

22. **nulli adhibetur consilio**: *is admitted to* (a share in) *no deliberation.*

25. **quibus sunt**: *who have.*

27. **druidum**: see Introd., pp. 27, 28. — **equitum**: *knights*, an order of nobility, which seemed to Caesar to correspond to the equestrian order at Rome.

28. **procurant**: *attend to, perform.* — **religiones**: *i.e.* questions concerning the will of the gods as shown by signs and omens, and the duties of mankind towards the gods.

30. **hi**: the druids. — **apud eos**: i.e. *apud Gallos.*

181 2. **sacrificiis**: abl. of separation. — **Haec poena**: excommunication would be a modern equivalent.

3. **Quibus**: dat.

5. **incommodi**: limits *quid.*

6. **neque ius redditur**: *i.e.* they are outside the pale of law.

9. **plures**: *more* (*than one*), *several.*

10. **armis**: in modern times, too, appeals have sometimes been made from the ballot to arms.

15. **in Britannia reperta**: this may or may not be true. Some think that when the Celts entered Gaul (see Introd., p. 24) they found druidism already existing there.

XIV. 24. **ea**: the precepts of their religion. — **litteris mandare**: *to commit to writing.* — **cum**: *though.* PAGE 181

25. **rationibus**: *accounts, transactions.*

26. **in vulgus efferri**: *to become public.*

27. **velint**: why subjunctive?

28. **minus memoriae studere**: *to cultivate the memory less.*

30. **remittant**: *relax.* — **hoc persuadere**: *to inculcate this doctrine.*

31. **animas**: *souls*, or *the soul.* — **transire**: the doctrine of the transmigration of souls is especially prominent in the Hinduism of India.

33. **Multa . . . disputant**: it seems, then, that the druids studied astronomy, geography, and natural science, as well as theology.

XV. 1. **Alterum**: cf. p. 180, ll. 26, 27. 182

3. **iniurias inferrent**: this refers to offensive war, and *inlatas* (sc. *iniurias*) *propulsarent* to defensive war.

4. **ut**: *in proportion as.*

6. **ambactos**: *slaves*, a Gallic word. — **clientis**: *dependents*, having more freedom than slaves, yet owing certain services to their *patronus*. Cf. the noun *clientela*, p. 179, l. 28. — **Hanc . . . noverunt**: *this is the only form of personal influence and power with which they are acquainted.*

XVI. 8. **religionibus**: *to religious observances.*

11. **homines immolant**: there seems little reason to doubt this statement. Cf. Bk. V, Chap. LVI. The Romans offered human sacrifices as late as the battle of Cannae, if Livy is to be believed.

14. **placari**: *to be propitiated.* — **publice**: besides those just mentioned, which seem to have been sacrifices offered by powerful individuals.

XVII. 22. **Mercurium**: Caesar gives to the Gallic divinities names belonging to gods worshiped by the Romans.

24. **viarum atque itinerum**: *roads and journeys.*

30. **ceperint**: subj. of informal ind. disc.

3. **ut . . . auderet**: subject of *accidit*. 183

4. **capta . . . occultare**: *to conceal at his own house things which had been captured.* — **posita**: *things which had been placed in the consecrated spots.*

XVIII. 6. **ab Dite prognatos**: this perhaps means that they considered themselves to have sprung from the earth. Cf. p. 151, l. 12.

8. **noctium**: cf. the English 'fortnight,' *i.e.* fourteen nights.

PAGE 183

9. **noctem dies subsequatur**: *i.e.* the complete day consists of a night and the following period of daylight. They held night in such honor because they considered themselves descended from the god of the lower world, or world of darkness.

13. **puerili aetate**: abl. of quality, or description.

14. **adsistere**: *to take his place*, i.e. *to show himself.*

XIX. 15. **dotis nomine**: *as dowry.*

17. **communicant**: *place in a common fund.*

18. **fructus**: *the income*, or *profits.* — **vita superavit**: *survives.* It would be interesting to know by whom this joint estate was managed, and whether the provisions here mentioned were always strictly carried out.

20. **in uxores**: *over their wives.*

21. **decessit**: *dies.*

22. **si . . . venit**: *i.e.* if there is suspicion of foul play.

23. **de uxoribus**: notice the plural. — **in servilem modum**: the Roman way of examining slaves was by torture.

24. **compertum est**: the subject of this impersonal is easily supplied. — **excruciatas interficiunt**: *they torture them and put them to death.*

26. **cordi fuisse**: *were (for) a delight.* A. 382. 1; B. 191. 2. a; G. 356; H. 433; HB. 360.

27. **hanc memoriam**: i.e. *hominum qui nunc sunt memoriam.*

28. **iustis funebribus**: *the regular funeral rites.*

29. **una cremabantur**: it was thought that these slaughtered dependents would be useful to the master in the life after death.

XX. 30. **Quae civitates**: trans. as if *eae civitates quae*, and notice once more this Latin idiom.

31. **habent sanctum**: *have (it) ordained; sanctum* agrees with the object of *habent*, which is the substantive clause *uti . . . communicet.* As the condition *si . . . acceperit* is subordinate to *deferat* and *communicet*, translate as if *uti* preceded *si quis.*

32. **rumore ac fama**: the former is the vaguer of the two words.

33. **neve . . . communicet**: *and not impart it to any one else.* Since *neve* contains the particle *ne*, *quo* (from *quis*) is the proper indefinite.

184

2. **cognitum est**: *it is known (has been learned).*

3. **visa sunt**: sc. *occultanda.* — **ex usu**: *of advantage.*

4. **nisi per concilium**: *i.e.* no private discussion of affairs of state is allowed.

XXI. 7. **praesint**: *manage*, or *direct.*

8. **student**: *pay attention to.*

9. **Vulcanum**: *fire*, or *the fire-god*.

PAGE 184

10. **ne . . . acceperunt**: *they have never even heard of*. A later writer, Tacitus, makes the religion of the Germans more elaborate than Caesar represents it. Caesar's information may have been defective, or the religious system may have developed during the century and a half that separated the two writers.

11. **venationibus, studiis**: pluralizing these abstracts turns them into concretes. — **a parvis**: *from babies*, i.e. *from babyhood*.

13. **hoc**: abl. of means.

XXII. 20. **agri**: *of land*.

23. **quique una coierunt**: sc. *iis; and to those who have banded together*. — **quantum visum est agri**: *as much land as seems best*.

24. **alio**: an adv.

25. **ne . . . commutent**: this and the four clauses which follow are explanatory of *causas*. — **adsidua consuetudine capti**: *under the influence of* (*taken by*) *long-continued familiarity*, *i.e.* with some definite tract of land. — **studium . . . commutent**: *give up an interest in warfare for agriculture*. For the ablative see A. 417. b; B. 222. A (218. 5); G. 404. N. 1; H. 478. 4; HB. 431.

28. **aedificent**: *build houses*. Notice the derivation of the word.

30. **animi aequitate contineant**: *keep contented* (lit. *hold in check by means of contentment of spirit*).

31. **cum suas quisque videat**: *everybody seeing his own*. In Italy at this time the small landholders had been nearly all driven out of their possessions by the *potentissimi*. This concentration of wealth in the hands of the few seems an almost inevitable accompaniment of advancing civilization. — **cum potentissimis**: i.e. *cum potentissimorum opibus*.

XXIII. 33. **proprium**: *a characteristic* (*indication*).

185

1. **expulsos . . . consistere**: this explains *hoc*, p. 184, l. 33.

4. **defendit**: notice the literal meaning of *defendere*, *to strike down* (or *away*).

5. **praesint**: why subjunctive? — **deliguntur**: perhaps by lot.

7. **ius dicunt**: *declare the law*, i.e. *administer justice*.

8. **Latrocinia**: *marauding expeditions*. They see no distinction between these and legitimate warfare.

10. **ubi quis**: *whenever any one*.

11. **profiteantur**: represents an imperative.

14. **omnium . . . derogatur**: *confidence is withdrawn from them thereafter in all matters; his* is dat.

18. **communicatur**: *is shared*. The laws of hospitality are

PAGE 185 often more strictly observed by primitive peoples than by the more civilized.

The ancestors of the English were Germans. Scholars have been interested in tracing the traits of the ancient Germans to their development in England, as well as on the continent of Europe.

XXIV. 20. **ultro bella inferrent**: *waged offensive wars against them.*

23. **Hercyniam silvam**: this extended from the Black Forest eastward to the Carpathians. *Hercynius* is said to mean 'high,' or 'mountainous.' — **Eratostheni**: a scholar of Alexandria, of the third century B.C. He wrote a work on geography, one of the earliest scientific works on that subject.

24. **Volcae Tectosages**: a Gallic tribe of this name dwelt near the Pyrenees. Doubts have been cast on Caesar's statement that the Volcae Tectosages in Germany came from Gaul. They may have been descended from a remnant of the tribe left behind in Germany in the general Celtic migration westward. See Introd., p. 24.

28. **patientia**: *endurance* of hardship. — **qua ante**: *as before.*

29. **Gallis**: dat., depending on *largitur.*

30. **provinciarum**: Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Hither Spain.

31. **adsuefacti**: sc. *hi*, or *Galli.*

32. **cum illis**: i.e. *cum Germanis.*

186 **XXV.** 2. **expedito**: *for one unencumbered*, i.e. *a rapid walker*, traveling, perhaps, twenty-five miles a day.

3. **mensuras itinerum**: *e.g.* miles, or paces.

4. **recta . . . regione**: *by the straight direction of the Danube*, *i.e.* following the line of the Danube.

6. **sinistrorsus**: *to the left.* River and forest part company, the river turning towards the south.

8. **huius Germaniae**: *of this part of Germany*, the part nearest Gaul.

9. **initium**: we should call the most remote point the end rather than the beginning.

10. **multa genera ferarum**: the misinformation which follows may be due to intentional deception on the part of Caesar's informants.

12. **memoriae prodenda**: *worthy of mention.*

XXVI. 14. **bos**: so also the elephant was called *bos* by the Romans. Probably the reindeer furnished the basis of this description.

15. **his . . . cornibus**: *i.e.* the horns of the animals which we know.

16. **sicut palmae ramique**: *branching antlers shaped like the*

human hand (lit. *as if hands and branches*). These two words illustrate the rhetorical figure called hendiadys. PAGE 186

17. **maris**: gen. of *mas*. The horns of the female reindeer are, as a matter of fact, shorter than those of the male.

XXVII. 19. **Sunt item**: *then again there are.*

20. **capris**: i.e. *caprarum figurae.* — **varietas**: *mottled coloring.* — **magnitudine paulo antecedunt**: *they go ahead of them a little in size.*

21. **mutilae cornibus**: the antlers of the European elk, which resembles our moose, are broad and blunt. — **nodis articulisque**: *knuckles and joints*, the *nodi* being the outer manifestations of the *articuli*.

24. **sunt pro**: *serve for.* — **se applicant**: *i.e.* they lean against the trees.

25. **paulum modo**: *just a little.*

27. **quo . . . consuerint**: an ind. quest.

28. **tantum . . . relinquatur**: *only far enough so that the perfect appearance of standing trees is still preserved.*

XXVIII. 32. **uri**: probably the aurochs, a species of bison, now nearly extinct.

33. **specie . . . tauri**: three ablatives of quality, or description, limited by a genitive.

1. **quam conspexerunt**: *which they have once caught sight of.* 187

4. **relatis in publicum cornibus**: *exhibiting the horns.*

5. **adsuescere ad homines**: *to get accustomed to men.*

6. **ne . . . excepti**: *not even if caught when very little.*

8. **Haec**: i.e. *cornua.* — **ab labris**: *at the lips, i.e.* the brim, or larger end, of the horn.

WORD-GROUPS

1. √ AC, SHARP

ācriter, *sharply.*
acerbus, *bitter.*
acerbē, *bitterly.*
acerbitās, *bitterness.*
aciēs, *sharp edge, battle-line.*
acūtus, *sharpened.*

2. √ AG, DRIVE

agō, *drive.*
agitō, *set in violent motion, discuss.*
āctuārius, *driven, swift.*
agmen, *marching army.*
ad-**ig**ō, *drive to, drive.*
cōgō (co- + **ag**ō), *drive together, compel.*
cōgitō (co- + **agit**ō), *consider thoroughly.*
co**ag**mentō, *fasten together.*
ex-**agit**ō, *drive about.*
ex-**cōgit**ō, *think out.*
ex-**ig**ō, *drive out, pass.*
nāv-**ig**ō (√ NAV), *sail.*
per-**ag**ō, *carry through, finish.*
red-**ig**ō, *drive back, reduce.*
sub-**ig**ō, *drive up, subdue.*
ager, *land, territory.*
ālārius, *belonging to the wing.*

3. √ AL, ALI, OTHER

alter, *the other of two.*
alternus, *one after the other.*
alius, *another.*
aliās, *at another time.*
aliō, *to another place.*
aliter, *otherwise.*
aliēnus, *another's.*
aliēnō, *make another's, alienate, drive insane.*
ali-quis, *some one.*
ali-quam-diū, *for some time.*
ali-quandō, *at some time or other.*
ali-quantus, *some.*
ali-quantō, *somewhat.*

4. √ AR, FIT

artus, *close.*
artē, *closely.*
articulus, *small joint.*
ars, *skill.*
arti-ficium (√ FAC), *handicraft, craft.*
in-**er**s, *without skill.*
soller**t**ia, *skill.*
arma, *arms, weapons.*
armō, *arm, equip.*
armātus, *armed, equipped.*
armāmenta, *equipment.*
armātūra, *armor, equipment.*
in-**er**mis, *unarmed.*

5. √ AVG, GROW

augeō, *increase.*
auctor, *author.*
auctōritās, *authority.*
auxilium, *help, support.*
auxilior, *give help.*
auxiliāris, *auxiliary.*

6. √ CAD, FALL

cadō, *fall.*
cadāver, *corpse.*
cāsus, *falling, event.*
ac-**cid**ō (ad + **cad**ō), *fall to, happen.*
con-**cid**ō (com- + **cad**ō), *fall, be slain.*
dē-**cid**ō, *fall down.*
in-**cid**ō, *fall upon, occur.*
oc-**cid**ō (ob + **cad**ō), *fall, die, set.*
oc-**cās**iō, *opportunity.*
oc-**cās**us, *setting, west.*
re-**cid**ō, *fall back.*

7. √ CAED, CUT

caedō, *cut, fell.*
caedēs, *killing, massacre.*
abs-**cīd**ō, *cut away, lop off.*
ex-**cīd**ō, *cut out, destroy.*
in-**cīd**ō, *cut into, notch.*
oc-**cīd**ō (ob + **caed**ō), *cut down, slay.*
suc-**cīd**ō (sub + **caed**ō), *cut off below, cut down.*

8. √ CAL, CLA, CALL

Kalendae (**Cal**endae), *day of proclamation, Calends.*
con-**cil**iō (com-), *call together, make friendly.*
con-**cil**ium, *assembly.*
clāmor, *shout.*
clāmitō, *call repeatedly, cry out.*
clārus, *clear, loud.*
dē-**clār**ō, *declare.*
classis, *thing summoned, fleet.*

9. √ CAP, TAKE, HOLD

capiō, *take.*
captus, *capacity.*
captīvus, *captive.*
ac-**cipi**ō (ad + **capi**ō), *receive.*
ac-**cep**tus, *acceptable.*
dē-**cipi**ō, *deceive.*
ex-**cipi**ō, *take out, capture.*
ex-**cep**tō, *take up.*
in-**cipi**ō, *take hold of, begin.*
prae-**cipi**ō, *take in advance, direct.*
prae-**cep**tum, *direction.*
prae-**cipu**us, *special.*
prae-**cipu**ē, *especially.*
re-**cipi**ō, *take back.*
re-**cep**tus, *retreat.*
re-**cept**āculum, *place of refuge.*
sus-**cipi**ō (subs- = sub + **capi**ō), *undertake.*
caput, *head.*
an-**ceps** (for ambi-**ceps**), *with two heads, doubtful.*
prae-**ceps**, *headlong.*
prae-**cipit**ō, *throw headlong.*
oc-**cupō** (ob), *take up, seize.*
oc-**cupāt**us, *taken up, busy.*
oc-**cupāti**ō, *business.*
dein-**ceps**, *taken next, in turn.*
prīn-**ceps** (prīmus), *foremost, chief.*
prīn-**cipāt**us, *chief place.*

10. √ CED, GO

cēdō, *go, yield.*
ac-**cēd**ō (ad), *go towards, be added.*
ante-**cēd**ō, *go before.*
con-**cēd**ō (com-), *go away, yield.*
dē-**cēd**ō, *go away.*
dē-**cessus**, *going away, ebbing.*
dis-**cēd**ō, *go in different directions.*
dis-**cessus**, *departure.*
ex-**cēd**ō, *go out.*
inter-**cēd**ō, *come between.*
prae-**cēd**ō, *surpass.*
prō-**cēd**ō, *go forward.*
re-**cēd**ō, *go back.*
re-**cessus**, *retreat.*
suc-**cēd**ō (sub), *go up, succeed.*
suc-**cessus**, *approach.*

11. √ CEL, RISE

ex-**cell**ō, *be eminent.*
ex-**cels**us, *elevated.*
collis, *hill.*
culmen, *summit.*

12. √ CLI, LEAN

clīvus, *hill.*
ac-**clīv**is (ad), *sloping upward.*
ac-**clīv**itās, *ascent.*
dē-**clīv**is, *sloping downward.*
dē-**clīv**itās, *slope.*
prō-**clīn**ō, *bend forward.*
re-**clīn**ō, *bend back.*

13. √ COL, TILL

colō, *till, honor.*
in-**colō**, *inhabit.*
colōnia, *colony.*
cultūra, *tillage.*
cultus, *care, way of living.*

14. √ CVR, RUN

currus, *wagon, chariot.*
cursus, *speed.*
ac-**curr**ō (ad), *run toward.*
ante-**cursor**, *forerunner.*
con-**curr**ō (com-), *run together.*
con-**cursus**, *running together.*
con-**cursō**, *run about.*
dē-**curr**ō, *run down.*
ex-**cursiō**, *sally.*
in-**cursiō**, *inroad, raid.*
in-**cursus**, *attack.*
oc-**curr**ō (ob), *run against, meet.*
per-**curr**ō, *run through.*
prae-**curr**ō, *run before.*
prō-**curr**ō, *run forward.*
suc-**curr**ō (sub), *run to help.*

15. √ DA, GIVE

dō, *give.*
dē-**dō**, *give up, surrender.*
dē-**ditiō**, *surrender.*
dē-**ditīcius**, *prisoner of war.*
man-**dō** (manus), *give into one's hands, enjoin.*
man-**dātum**, *charge.*
com-men**dō**, *intrust.*
prō-**dō**, *give forth, betray.*
prō-**dit**or, *traitor.*
prō-**ditiō**, *treason.*
red-**dō**, *give back.*
trā-**dō** (for trāns-**dō**), *give over, relate.*
dōs, *dowry.*
dōnum, *gift.*
dōnō, *give, present.*
con-**dōnō** (com-), *give, remit.*
sacer-**dōs** (√ SAC), *priest.*

16. √ DA, PUT (only in compounds)

ab-**dō**, *put away, hide.*
ab-**dit**us, *hidden.*
ad-**dō**, *put to, add.*
circum-**dō**, *put around, surround.*
crē**dō**, *put confidence in, believe.*
in-crē**dibilis**, *incredible.*
ē-**dō**, *put forth.*
ē-**dit**us, *elevated.*
per-**dit**us, *lost, corrupt.*

17. √ DIC, SHOW, POINT

dīcō, *say.*
dicō, *proclaim, dedicate.*
dictum, *saying.*
in-**dict**us, *not said.*
dictiō, *pleading.*
diciō, *bidding, sway.*
con-**diciō** (com-), *condition.*
in-**dīcō**, *proclaim.*
in-**dicium**, *information.*
inter-**dīcō**, *forbid.*
iū-**dicō** (√ IV), *judge.*
iū-**dicium**, *judgment.*
ad-iū**dicō**, *adjudge, award.*
prae-**dicō**, *announce.*
praecō (for prae**dicō**), *herald.*

18. √ DIV, DI, SHINE

dīvīnus, *divine.*
deus, *god.*
dītissimus, *richest.*
diēs, *day.*
merī-**diēs** (for medi-**diēs**, medius + **diēs**), *midday, south.*
merī-**diānus**, *of noon.*
postrī-**diē** (posterus), *on the next day.*
prī-**diē** (√ PRI), *on the day before.*
diurnus, *pertaining to the day.*
inter-**diū**, *in the daytime.*
bī-**duum** (bis), *two days.*
trī-**duum** (trēs), *three days.*

19. √ DVA, DVI, APART, TWO

duo, *two.*
du-plex (plangō, *strike*), *twofold.*
du-plicō, *double.*
dubius, *doubtful.*
dubitō, *doubt.*
dubitātiō, *doubt.*
dis-, inseparable prefix, *apart.*
bis (for **duis**), *twice.*
bi-, inseparable prefix, *two, twice.*
bīnī, *two at a time.*
bī-duum (√ DIV), *two days.*

20. √ DVC, LEAD

dūcō, *lead.*
ductus, *leadership.*
dux (for **ducs**), *leader.*
ab-**dūcō**, *lead away.*
ad-**dūcō**, *lead to.*
con-**dūcō** (com-), *lead together, hire.*
dē-**dūcō**, *lead down.*
dī-**dūcō**, *lead apart.*
ē-**dūcō**, *lead out.*
in-**dūcō**, *lead in.*
ob-**dūcō**, *lead to meet, extend.*
per-**dūcō**, *lead through.*
prae-**dūcō**, *lead forward.*
re-**dūcō**, *lead back.*
sub-**dūcō**, *lead off, draw up.*
trā-**dūcō** (for trāns-**dūcō**), *lead across.*

21. √ EM, TAKE

emō, *buy.*
ad-**imō**, *take to oneself.*
co-**emō**, *purchase.*
dē**mō** (dē + **emō**), *take down.*
ex-**em**plum, *example.*
ex-**imius**, *taken out, exceptional.*
prae**mium** (for prae-**em**ium), *advantage, prize.*
prō**mptus** (prō + **ēm**ptus), *brought forth, manifest, ready.*
red-**imō**, *buy back.*
sū**mō** (sub + **emō**), *take up, assume, spend.*
sū**mptus**, *expense.*
sū**mptuōsus**, *costly.*
cōn-sū**mō** (com-), *use up.*

22. √ ES, BE, LIVE

sum, *be, live.*
ab-**sum**, *be away.*
ab-**sēns**, *absent.*
ad-**sum**, *be near.*
dē-**sum**, *be wanting.*
pos-**sum** (for potis, *able* + **sum**), *be powerful, be able.*
potēns, *powerful.*
potentia, *power, authority.*
potentātus, *power.*
prae-**sum**, *be at the head of.*
prae-**sēns**, *present.*
prae-**sentia**, *presence, present.*
prō-**sum**, *be of advantage.*
sub-**sum**, *be under, be at hand.*
super-**sum**, *be over, be left.*

23. √ FA, SPEAK

fātum, *utterance, fate.*
īn-**fā**ns, *unable to speak, infant.*
fāma, *story, report.*
īn-**fā**mia, *evil repute.*
fās, *divine law.*
ne-**fās**, *impious act.*
ne-**fā**rius, *execrable.*
cōn-**fi**teor (com-), *confess.*
pro-**fi**teor, *declare publicly.*

24. √ FAC, MAKE

faciō, *make, do.*
factum, *deed.*
factiō, *faction.*
facilis, *easy.*
facile, *easily.*
facultās, *ability.*
dif-**ficil**is (dis- + **facil**is), *difficult.*
dif-**fic**ulter, *with difficulty.*
dif-**ficul**tās, *difficulty.*
per-**facil**is, *very easy.*
īn-**fec**tus, *not done.*
pate-**faci**ō (pateō), *lay open.*
satis-**faci**ō, *do enough, give satisfaction.*
satis-**fac**tiō, *apology.*
facinus, *deed, crime.*
ad-**fici**ō, *do to, affect.*
cōn-**fici**ō (com- + **faci**ō), *make completely.*
dē-**fici**ō, *break loose from, revolt.*
dē-**fec**tiō, *revolt.*
ef-**fici**ō (ex + **faci**ō), *cause, make.*
īn-**fici**ō, *stain, paint.*
inter-**fici**ō, *put to death.*
per-**fici**ō, *make thoroughly, bring about.*
prae-**fici**ō, *set over.*
prae-**fec**tus, *overseer, commander.*
prō-**fici**ō, *make headway, effect.*
pro-**fici**scor, *set out.*
pro-**fec**tiō, *departure.*
re-**fici**ō, *remake, recruit.*
suf-**fici**ō (sub + **faci**ō), *be sufficient.*
arti-**fic**ium (√ AR), *handicraft, craft.*
bene-**fic**ium, *good deed, favor.*
male-**fic**ium, *evil deed, injury.*
of-**fic**ium (ops), *service, duty.*
sacri-**fic**ium (√ SAC), *sacrifice.*
magni-**fic**us (√ MAG), *splendid.*
aedi-**fic**ō (aedēs, *building*), *build.*
aedi-**fic**ium, *building.*
sīgni-**fic**ō (sīgnum), *make signs, indicate.*
sīgni-**fic**ātiō, *sign, expression.*

25. √ FEN, STRIKE

dē-**fen**dō, *ward off, defend.*
dē-**fēns**iō, *defense.*
dē-**fēns**or, *defender.*
of-**fen**dō (ob), *strike against, offend.*
of-**fēns**iō, *striking against, offense.*

26. √ FER, BEAR

ferō, *bear.*
ferāx, *fertile.*
fertilis, *fertile.*
fertilitās, *fertility.*
ad-**fer**ō, *bear to.*
ante-**fer**ō, *bear before.*
cōn-**fer**ō (com-), *bear together.*
dē-**fer**ō, *bear off.*
ef-**fer**ō (ex), *bear out.*
īn-**fer**ō, *bear in.*
of-**fer**ō (ob), *bear before, present.*
per-**fer**ō, *bear through, endure, announce.*
prae-**fer**ō, *bear before, prefer.*
prō-**fer**ō, *bear forth, reveal.*
re-**fer**ō, *bear back.*
trāns-**fer**ō, *bear over.*
aquili-**fer** (aquila), *eagle-bearer.*
fors, *chance.*
fortuītō, *by chance.*

fortūna, *fortune.*
fortūnātus, *fortunate.*
fūrtum, *theft.*

27. √ FID, BIND, TRUST

fidēs, *trust, faith.*
fidēlis, *trustworthy.*
īn-fidēlis, *untrustworthy.*
fīdūcia, *trust, reliance.*
cōn-fīdō (com- + **fīdō**, *trust*), *have trust in.*
per-fidia, *faithlessness.*
foedus, *agreement, alliance.*

28. √ FRVG, USE, ENJOY

fruor, *enjoy, reap the benefit of.*
frūctus, *enjoyment, fruit.*
frūctuōsus, *fruitful.*
frūx (for **frūgs**), *fruit, produce.*
frūmentum, *grain.*
frūmentor, *get grain, forage.*
frūmentātiō, *foraging.*
frūmentārius, *of grain, fertile.*

29. √ GEN, GNA, BEGET

gēns, *race.*
in-gēns, *not natural, enormous.*
genus, *family, nation, kind, class.*
generātim, *by kinds, by nations.*
nāscor (for **gnāscor**), *be born.*
nātus, *birth, age.*
prō-gnātus, *descended.*
nātālis, *of birth.*
nātiō, *race, people.*
co-gnātiō, *kindred.*
nātīvus, *natural.*
nātūra, *nature.*
ē-nāscor, *grow out.*

30. √ GNO, KNOW

nōscō (for **gnōscō**), *learn.*
co-gnōscō, *learn.*
i-gnōscō (in- + (g)**nōscō**), *overlook.*
nōtus, *known, familiar.*
nōtitia, *knowledge.*
i-gnōtus (in- + (g)**nōtus**), *un known.*
nōbilis, *well-known, noble.*
nōbilitās, *nobility.*
i-gnōbilis (in- + (g)**nōbilis**), *un known, obscure.*
nōmen, *name, renown.*
nōminō, *name.*
nōminātim, *by name.*
i-gnōminia (in-), *disgrace.*
i-gnōrō (in-), *not know.*

31. √ GRAD, WALK

ad-gredior, *move toward, attack.*
con-gredior (com-), *come together join battle.*
con-gressus, *meeting, encounter.*
ē-gredior, *go out, disembark.*
ē-gressus, *going out, disembarkation*
in-gredior, *go in, enter.*
prō-gredior, *go forward, advance.*
trāns-gredior, *step across, pass over*

32. √ HAB, HAVE

habeō, *have, hold.*
ad-hibeō, *hold to, make use of.*
dēbeō (for **dē-hibeō**), *withhold owe.*
praebeō (for **prae-hibeō**), *hold be fore, offer.*
pro-hibeō, *hold back, impede, pre vent.*

33. √ I, GO

eō, *go.*
iter, *way, march.*
ab-eō, *go away.*
ad-eō, *go to, get at.*
ad-itus, *approach, access.*
circum-eō, *go around, surround.*
co-eō, *go together.*
com-es, *companion.*

com-itia, *assembly, election.*
com-itor, *accompany.*
ex-eō, *go out.*
ex-itus, *departure, conclusion, outcome.*
in-eō, *go into.*
in-itium, *entrance, beginning.*
inter-eō, *perish.*
inter-itus, *destruction, death.*
intro-eō, *go within, enter.*
intro-itus, *entrance.*
ob-eō, *go to meet.*
ob-itus, *death.*
per-eō, *pass away, be killed.*
praetor (for prae-itor), *leader, praetor.*
praetōrius, *praetorian.*
prōd-eō (prō), *go forward, proceed.*
red-eō, *go back.*
red-itus, *return.*
red-itiō, *return.*
sēd-itiō, *dissension, insurrection.*
sēd-itiōsus, *factious, turbulent.*
sub-eō, *go under, enter, approach, undergo.*
sub-itus, *sudden.*
sub-itō, *suddenly.*
trāns-eō, *go across.*
trāns-itus, *crossing.*

34. √ IAC, THROW

iaciō, *throw.*
iactūra, *throwing away, loss.*
iactō, *keep throwing.*
iaculum, *missile.*
ab-**ici**ō, *throw away.*
ad-**ici**ō, *throw to, add to.*
con-**ici**ō (com- + **iaci**ō), *throw together, put together.*
con-**iect**ūra, *guess.*
dē-**ici**ō, *throw down.*
dē-**iect**us, *declivity.*
dis-**ici**ō, *throw apart, rout.*
ē-**ici**ō, *throw out.*
ob-**ici**ō, *throw before, interpose.*
prō-**ici**ō, *throw forward, hurl down.*
rē-**ici**ō, *throw back.*
sub-**ici**ō, *throw under, subject.*
trā-**ici**ō (trāns + **iaci**ō), *throw across, pierce.*
trā-**iect**us, *passage.*
iaceō, *lie prostrate.*
ad-**iac**eō, *lie near.*

35. √ IV, IVG, BIND, YOKE

iūs, *that which is binding, right, law.*
iūstus, *lawful, just.*
iūstitia, *justice, uprightness.*
iūrō, *take oath.*
iūs iūrandum, *oath.*
con-**iūr**ō (com-), *take oath together, conspire.*
con-**iūrāti**ō, *conspiracy.*
iū-dicō (√ DIC), *judge.*
iū-dicium, *judgment.*
ad-**iūdic**ō, *adjudge, award.*
iugum, *yoke, ridge, hill.*
iungō, *join.*
iūnctūra, *joining, joint.*
iūmentum, *yoke-animal, pack-animal.*
ab-**iung**ō, *separate, cut off.*
ad-**iung**ō, *join to.*
con-**iung**ō (com-), *join.*
con-**iūnx**, *husband, wife.*
iūxtā, *close by.*

36. √ LEG, GATHER

legiō, *levy, legion.*
legiōnārius, *belonging to a legion.*
con-**lig**ō (com- + **leg**ō), *collect, rally.*
dē-**lig**ō, *choose, select.*
dī-**lig**ō, *single out, love.*
dī-**lēct**us, *choosing, levy.*
dī-**lig**enter, *carefully.*
dī-**lig**entia, *carefulness.*
in-dī**lig**ēns, *careless.*

in-dīligenter, *carelessly.*
in-dīligentia, *carelessness.*
intel-legō (for inter-legō), *perceive, understand.*
neg-legō (nec- = ne-), *pass over, be indifferent to.*
per-legō, *read through.*

37. √ LIC, LET

licet, *it is permitted.*
liceor, *bid.*
licentia, *license.*
pol-liceor (por- = prō), *offer, promise.*
pol-licitātiō, *promise, pledge.*

38. √ LIQV, LEAVE

re-linquō, *leave behind.*
re-liquus, *remaining.*
dē-lictum, *fault, wrong.*

39. √ LVC, SHINE

lūx (for lūcs), *light.*
lūna (for lūcsna), *moon.*
in-lūstris, *brilliant, noble.*

40. √ MAG, BIG

magnus, *large, great.*
magnitūdō, *greatness, might.*
magni-ficus (√ FAC), *splendid.*
magn-opere (opus), *with great labor, greatly.*
per-magnus, *very large.*
magis, *more.*
magistrātus, *public office, magistrate.*
mālō (for magis volō), *wish rather, prefer.*
māior, *greater.*
māiestās, *greatness, dignity.*
maximē, *in the highest degree.*

41. √ MAN, MEASURE

manus, *hand.*
man-dō (√ DA, *give*), *give into one's hands, enjoin.*
man-dātum, *charge.*
mani-pulus (√ PLE), *handful, maniple.*
mani-pulāris, *soldier of a maniple.*
mān-suētūdō (suēscō, *become accustomed*), *tameness, mercy.*
mānsuē-faciō (√ FAC), *make tame.*
com-manus, *hand to hand.*
ē-manus, *at a distance.*

42. √ MAN, MEN, STAY, MIND

maneō, *stay.*
per-maneō, *remain, continue.*
re-maneō, *stay behind.*
mēns, *mind, purpose.*
mentiō, *calling to mind, mention.*
dē-mentia, *folly.*
meminī, *remember.*
re-miniscor, *recall to mind.*
moneō, *remind, warn.*
ad-moneō, *warn.*
dē-mōnstrō, *point out, show.*

43. √ MIT, SEND

mittō, *send.*
missus, *sending.*
ā-mittō, *send away, lose.*
ad-mittō, *send to, admit, incur.*
com-mittō, *send together, intrust.*
com-missūra, *joining.*
dē-mittō, *send down, drive.*
dē-missus, *low-lying.*
dī-mittō, *send in different directions, dismiss.*
ē-mittō, *send out, hurl, let go.*
im-mittō (in), *send in, insert, throw at.*
inter-mittō, *let go between, leave off, neglect.*

intrō-**mittō**, *send within, admit.*
o-**mittō** (ob), *let go, lay aside, neglect.*
per-**mittō**, *let pass, yield, allow.*
prae-**mittō**, *send before.*
praeter-**mittō**, *allow to go by, neglect.*
prō-**mittō**, *send forth, let grow.*
re-**mittō**, *send back, relax.*
re-**missus**, *gentle.*
sub-**mittō**, *send under, send to help.*
trāns-**mittō**, *send across.*
trāns-**missus**, *passage.*

44. √ MOE, MV, WALL

moenia, *city walls.*
mūniō, *wall, fortify.*
mūnītus, *fortified.*
mūnītiō, *fortification.*
mūnīmentum, *fortification, defense.*
com-**mūni**ō, *fortify completely, secure.*
mūrus, *wall.*
mūrālis, *of a wall, mural.*

45. √ MOV, MOVE

moveō, *move.*
mōtus, *motion, disturbance.*
mōmentum, *movement, importance.*
mōbilis, *movable, changeable.*
mōbiliter, *rapidly, easily.*
mōbilitās, *mobility, changeableness.*
com-**move**ō, *disturb, impel.*
per-**move**ō, *move deeply, frighten, anger.*
prō-**move**ō, *move forward.*
re-**move**ō, *move back.*
re-**mō**tus, *distant.*
sub-**move**ō, *drive off.*

46. √ MV, SHARE

mūnus, *service, gift.*
com-**mūn**is, *common.*
com-**mūni**cō, *impart, share.*
im-**mūn**is (in-), *without obligation.*
im-**mūni**tās, *exemption.*
re-**mūn**eror, *repay, reward.*

47. √ NA, NAV, SWIM

trā-**nō** (for trāns-**nō**), *swim over.*
nāvis, *ship.*
nāvālis, *of ships.*
nāvicula, *boat.*
nāv-igō (√ AG), *sail.*
nāv-igātiō, *sailing.*
nāv-igium, *vessel.*
nauta (for **nāv**ita), *sailor.*
nauticus, *of sailors, of ships.*

48. √ NE, NEG, NOT

nē, *not, that not, lest.*
nē-ve or **neu**, *and not, nor, and lest.*
nē-cubi (for **nē** ubi), *lest somewhere, that nowhere.*
nē-quāquam (quisquam), *in no way.*
nē-quīquam, *to no purpose.*
ne-que or **nec**, *and not, nor.*
nec-ne, *or not.*
ne-fās (√ FA), *impious act.*
ne-fārius, *execrable.*
ne-uter, *neither.*
neg-legō (for **nec**-legō), *pass over, be indifferent to.*
nēmō (for **ne**-homō), *no one.*
nōlō (for **ne**-volō), *not wish, be unwilling.*
nūllus (for **ne**-ūllus), *not any.*
numquam (for **ne**-umquam), *never.*
negō, *say not, deny.*
dē-**neg**ō, *refuse, deny.*
neg-ōtium, *no leisure, business.*
neg-ōtior, *carry on business.*
nihilum, *nothing.*
nihil, *nothing.*
nimis, *beyond measure, too.*
nimius, *excessive.*

ni-si (sī), *if not, unless.*
nōn, *not.*
nōn-dum, *not yet.*

49. √ NEC, NOC, KILL, HARM

nex (for **necs**), *death.*
neco, *kill.*
inter-**neci**ō, *slaughter, extermination.*
per-**nici**ēs, *destruction.*
noceō, *harm.*
nocēns, *harmful, guilty.*
in-**nocē**ns, *harmless, innocent.*
in-**noce**ntia, *harmlessness, innocence.*
noxia, *harm, offense.*

50. √ NV, NOV, NOW, NEW

num, interrogative particle implying a negative answer.
nunc, *now, under these circumstances.*
nūper, *newly, lately.*
novus, *new, fresh.*
re-**novō**, *renew, begin again.*
nūntius (for **novi**-ventius, √ VEN), *bearer of tidings, news.*
nūntiō, *announce, relate.*
dē-**nūntiō**, *announce, order, threaten.*
ē-**nūntiō**, *tell in public.*
prō-**nūntiō**, *proclaim.*
re-**nūntiō**, *report, declare elected.*

51. √ PA, FEED

pābulum, *fodder.*
pābulor, *forage.*
pābulātor, *forager.*
pābulātiō, *foraging.*

52. √ PAC, PAG, FIX

pāx (for **pācs**), *agreement, treaty, peace.*
pācō, *make peaceful, conquer.*
pācātus, *peaceful, conquered.*
pactum, *agreement.*
pāgus, *district, canton.*

53. √ PAR, PREPARE

parō, *prepare, obtain.*
ap-**parō** (ad), *prepare for, prepare.*
im-**perō** (in + **parō**), *command, demand.*
im-**perātum**, *command.*
im-**perātor**, *commander, general.*
im-**perium**, *command, authority.*
sē-**parō**, *prepare apart, separate.*
sē-**parātus**, *separate.*
sē-**parātim**, *separately.*
pariō, *produce, effect.*

54. √ PAV, LITTLE

paucī, *few.*
paucitās, *fewness.*
paulum, *a little.*
paulō, *by a little, somewhat.*
paululum, *a very little.*
paulātim, *little by little.*
paulisper, *for a little while.*

55. √ PED, TREAD

pēs (for **peds**), *foot.*
pedālis, *a foot in measure.*
pedes, *foot-soldier.*
pedester, *of foot-soldiers, on foot, overland.*
peditātus, *infantry.*
ex-**pediō**, *unfetter, make ready.*
ex-**peditus**, *unencumbered, lightly equipped.*
ex-**peditiō**, *expedition.*
im-**pediō** (in), *fetter, hinder.*
im-**peditus**, *burdened, pathless.*
im-**pedīmentum**, *obstruction.*

op-**pid**um (ob), *walled town, stronghold.*
op-**pid**ānus, *of a town.*

56. √ PEL, PVL, DRIVE

pellō, *drive.*
ap-**pell**ō (ad), *drive to.*
com-**pell**ō, *drive together, collect.*
dē-**pell**ō, *drive down, remove.*
ex-**pell**ō, *drive out.*
im-**pell**ō (in), *drive on, influence.*
im-**puls**us, *pressure, influence.*
prō-**pell**ō, *drive forth, drive away.*
prō-**puls**ō, *drive forth, repel.*
re-**pell**ō, *drive back, repel.*
pulvis, *dust.*

57. √ PER, THROUGH, BRING

per, *through.*
peren-dinus (diēs), *after to-morrow.*
per-fidia (fidēs), *faithlessness.*
per-paucī, *very few.*
perītus, *experienced, skilled.*
im-**per**ītus (in-), *unskilled, unacquainted with.*
perīculum, *trial, danger.*
perīculōsus, *full of danger.*
perīclitor, *try, risk.*
com-**per**iō, *find out.*
ex-**per**ior, *try, endure.*
re-**per**iō, *find again, find.*
pro-**per**ō, *hasten.*
porta, *gateway, gate.*
portō, *carry, convey.*
com-**port**ō, *carry together, collect.*
im-**port**ō (in), *carry in, import.*
portus, *harbor.*
portōrium, *customs, tariff.*
op-**port**ūnus (ob + **port**us), *fit, fortunate, opportune.*
op-**port**ūnē, *opportunely.*
op-**port**ūnitās, *fitness, opportunity.*

58. √ PLE, PLV, FILL

plēnus, *full.*
plērī-que, *very many, most.*
plērum-que, *mostly, generally.*
plēbēs or **plēb**s, *the masses, the common people.*
com-**pleō**, *fill up, crowd.*
ex-**pleō**, *fill out, make good.*
re-**pleō**, *fill again, replenish.*
sup-**plēm**entum (sub), *that which fills up, reinforcements.*
plūs, *more.*
com-**plūr**ēs, *many, several.*
plūrimus, *most, very much.*
po**pul**us, *people, nation.*
mani-**pul**us (manus), *handful, maniple.*
mani-**pul**āris, *soldier of a maniple.*

59. √ POT, MASTER

potius, *rather, more.*
potior, *become master of.*
potestās, *power, dominion.*
possum (for **pot**is, *able* + sum), *be powerful, be able.*
potēns, *powerful.*
potentia, *power, authority.*
potentātus, *power.*
hos-**pes** (hostis), *host, guest, stranger.*
hos-**pit**ium, *hospitality, friendship.*

60. √ PRO, PRI, PRAE, BEFORE

prō, *before.*
prō-tinus (√ TEN), *straight forward, without pause.*
procul, *far away.*
prōnē, *with a forward slope.*
proprius, *own, special, characteristic.*
prior, *former, in advance.*
prius, *before.*
prīmus, *first.*
prīmō, *at first.*

prīmum, *first of all.*
prī-diē (diēs), *on the day before.*
prīn-ceps (**prīmus** + capiō), *foremost, chief.*
prīn-cipātus, *chief place.*
prīstinus, *previous, old.*
prīvātus, *private, isolated.*
prīvātim, *privately, individually.*
prae, *before, in comparison with, on account of.*
praeter, *beyond, except.*
praeter-eā (is), *besides.*
prae-cipiō (capiō), *take in advance, direct.*
prae-ceptum, *direction.*
prae-ceps (√ CAP), *headlong.*
prae-cipuus (√ CAP), *special.*
prae-cipuē, *especially.*
praecō (**prae** + dicō), *herald.*
praemium (for **prae**-emium), *advantage, prize.*
praesertim, *especially.*
praestō, *at hand, present.*
praetor (√ I), *leader, praetor.*
praetōrius, *praetorian.*

61. √ PVG, FIGHT

pugnō, *fight.*
pugna, *fight.*
dē-**pug**nō, *fight a decisive battle.*
ex-**pug**nō, *take by storm.*
ex-**pug**nātiō, *taking, storming.*
im-**pug**nō (in), *assail.*
op-**pug**nō (ob), *assault.*
op-**pug**nātiō, *assault.*
prō-**pug**nō, *repel attack.*
prō-**pug**nātor, *defender.*
re-**pug**nō, *make resistance.*

62. √ RAP, SNATCH

rapīna, *robbery.*
rapiditās, *rush, swiftness.*
ad-**ripiō** (**rapiō**, *snatch*), *snatch.*
dī-**ripiō**, *tear to pieces, plunder.*
ē-**ripiō**, *snatch out, rescue.*

63. √ REG, STRETCH, GUIDE

regō, *direct, control.*
rēctus, *straight.*
rēctē, *rightly, safely.*
regiō, *direction, neighborhood, region.*
dē-**rigō**, *straighten out.*
dē-**rēc**tus, *straight.*
dē-**rēc**tē, *straight.*
ē-**rigō**, *raise up.*
per**gō** (per + **regō**), *press on, proceed.*
por-**rigō** (por- = prō + **regō**), *stretch forth, extend.*
rēx (for **rēgs**), *king, chief.*
rēgius, *of a king.*
rēgnum, *kingly power, kingdom.*
rēgnō, *be king.*

64. √ RVP, BREAK

cor-**rumpō** (com- + **rumpō**, *break*), *destroy, ruin.*
ē-**rumpō**, *cause to break out, rush out.*
ē-**ruptiō**, *sally, sortie.*
in-**rumpō**, *break in.*
in-**ruptiō**, *breaking in, incursion.*
per-**rumpō**, *break through.*
prae-**rumpō**, *break off.*
prae-**ruptus**, *abrupt, rugged.*
rūpēs, *cliff, rock.*

65. √ SAC, SACRED

sacer-dōs (√ DA, *give*), *priest.*
sacrāmentum, *oath.*
sacri-ficium (√ FAC), *sacrifice.*
sanciō, *make sacred, enact.*
sānctus, *consecrated, inviolable.*
ob-**secrō**, *beseech, conjure.*

66. √ SCI, SCID, SPLIT

sciō, *distinguish, know.*
scienter, *skilfully.*
scientia, *knowledge.*
cōn-**sci**entia, *consciousness.*
cōn-**sci**us, *conscious, aware.*
īn-**sci**ēns, *not knowing.*
īn-**sci**entia, *lack of knowledge, inexperience.*
īn-**sci**us, *not knowing.*
a-**scī**scō (ad + **scī**scō, *approve*), *receive to oneself, accept.*
cōn-**scī**scō (com- + **scī**scō, *approve*), *approve of, decide upon.*
re-**scī**scō, *find out, learn.*
scindō, *split, tear up, break down.*
re-**scind**ō, *cut down, tear apart.*

67. √ SCV, CV, COVER

scūtum, *shield.*
cūstōs, *guard.*
cūstōdia, *guard.*
cūstōdiō, *guard.*

68. √ SEC, FOLLOW

sequor, *follow.*
secundus, *following, second, favorable.*
secundum, *following, along, besides.*
sector, *follow eagerly, hunt.*
cōn-**sequ**or (com-), *follow, come up with, obtain.*
ex-**sequ**or, *follow out, carry out.*
īn-**sequ**or, *follow upon, pursue, press upon.*
per-**sequ**or, *follow through, pursue, avenge.*
prō-**sequ**or, *follow forward, see off.*
socius, *associate, ally.*
societās, *association, league.*

69. √ SEC, CUT

secō, *cut.*
sectiō, *booty.*
sectūra, *digging, quarry, mine.*
dē-**sec**ō, *cut off.*
secūris, *ax.*
saxum (for **sec**sum), *large stone, rock.*

70. √ SED, SID, SIT

sēdēs, *abode.*
ad-**sid**uus, *sitting beside, incessant.*
cōn-**sīd**ō (com-), *take a position, make a home.*
dē-**sid**ia, *idleness, indolence.*
īn-**sid**iae, *ambush, artifice.*
īn-**sid**ior, *lie in ambush.*
ob-**sid**eō, *besiege, obstruct.*
ob-**sid**iō, *siege.*
ob-**sess**iō, *siege.*
ob-**ses** (for ob-**sids**), *hostage.*
pos-**sid**eō (por- = prō), *occupy, own.*
pos-**sess**iō, *ownership, property.*
pos-**sīd**ō, *take possession of, seize.*
prae-**sid**ium, *defense, garrison.*
re-**sid**eō, *be left, abide.*
re-**sīd**ō, *settle down, grow calm.*
sub-**sid**ium, *reserve, aid, relief.*
sub-**sīd**ō, *settle down, stay.*
super-**sed**eō, *sit above, refrain from.*

71. √ SEM, SIM, TOGETHER, LIKE

semel, *once.*
semper, *always, ever.*
similis, *like.*
cōn-**simil**is (com-), *very similar.*
simul, *at once, at the same time.*
similitūdō, *likeness.*
simulō, *counterfeit, pretend.*
dis-**simul**ō, *disguise, keep secret.*
simulātiō, *pretense.*
simulācrum, *likeness, effigy.*
simultās, *rivalry.*
singulī, *one at a time.*
singulāris, *solitary, remarkable.*
singillātim, *one by one.*

72. √ SPEC, SEE, SPY

speciēs, *appearance, display.*
spectō, *look, consider.*
speculor, *observe, spy.*
speculātor, *spy.*
speculātōrius, *for spying.*
cōn-**spiciō** (com-), *get sight of, notice.*
cōn-**spectus**, *sight.*
cōn-**spicor**, *get sight of, notice.*
dē-**spiciō**, *look down on, despise.*
dē-**spectus**, *prospect, view.*
di-**spiciō** (dis-), *descry.*
ex-**spectō**, *look out for, await.*
īn-**spectō**, *look at, watch.*
per-**spiciō**, *look through, see clearly.*
prō-**spiciō**, *look forward, watch, provide.*
prō-**spectus**, *outlook, sight.*
re-**spiciō**, *look back, contemplate, consider.*
su-**spīciō** (sub), *mistrust, distrust.*
su-**spicor**, *suspect, conjecture.*

73. √ STA, STAND

stō, *stand.*
cōn-**stō**, *stand together, be established.*
cōn-**stanter**, *consistently, firmly.*
cōn-**stantia**, *firmness.*
ex-**stō**, *stand forth.*
īn-**stō**, *press on, be at hand.*
per-**stō**, *stand firm, persist.*
prae-**stō**, *stand before, excel, maintain.*
stabiliō, *make firm.*
stabilitās, *firmness.*
īn-**stabilis**, *unsteady.*
statiō, *station, guard.*
statim, *on the spot, instantly.*
status, *attitude.*
statūra, *height, stature.*
statuō, *set up, decide, order.*
cōn-**stituō** (com- + **statuō**), *station, decide.*
dē-**stituō**, *set down, abandon.*
īn-**stituō**, *put in place, begin, teach.*
īn-**stitūtum**, *custom, habit.*
re-**stituō**, *replace, restore, renew.*
ab-**sistō**, *hold aloof.*
ad-**sistō**, *stand near.*
cōn-**sistō** (com-), *take one's stand, remain.*
dē-**sistō**, *stand off, give up.*
ex-**sistō**, *come forth, spring up.*
īn-**sistō**, *take a stand on.*
ob-**sistō**, *stand in the way, withstand.*
re-**sistō**, *stay behind, make a stand, withstand.*
re-**sistēns**, *enduring, resolute.*
sub-**sistō**, *stand firm, resist.*
dē-**stinō**, *make fast, detail.*
ob-**stinātē**, *firmly.*

74. √ TEN, STRETCH

tenuis, *stretched, thin, feeble.*
tenuiter, *thinly.*
tenuitās, *thinness, scarcity, poverty.*
tener, *tender, flexible.*
teneō, *hold.*
abs-**tineō**, *hold away, refrain.*
con-**tineō** (com- + **teneō**), *hold together, surround, keep.*
con-**tinēns**, *contiguous, uninterrupted.*
con-**tinēns**, *mainland.*
con-**tinenter**, *uninterruptedly.*
con-**tinentia**, *self-control.*
con-**tentus**, *satisfied.*
con-**tinuus**, *successive.*
con-**tinuō**, *without delay.*
con-**tinuātiō**, *duration.*
ob-**tineō**, *hold, maintain.*
per-**tineō**, *extend, tend, pertain.*
per-**tinācia**, *persistence, obstinacy.*
prō-**tinus**, *straight forward, without pause.*
re-**tineō**, *hold back.*

sus-**tineō** (subs- = sub + **teneō**), *hold up, check, withstand.*
sus-**tentō**, *sustain, hold out.*
tendō, *stretch out.*
con-**tendō** (com-), *strive, hurry, fight.*
con-**tentiō**, *struggle.*
os-**tendō** (obs-=ob), *stretch toward, show, declare.*
os-**tentō**, *show, display.*
os-**tentātiō**, *display, pride.*

75. √ TRAH, DRAG, DRAW

trahō, *drag.*
con-**trahō** (com-), *draw together, collect, contract.*
dē-**trahō**, *drag down, remove.*
dis-**trahō**, *draw apart, pull to pieces, tear away.*
ex-**trahō**, *draw out, waste in delay.*
re-**trahō**, *drag back, bring back.*
sub-**trahō**, *draw from below, take away.*

76. √ VEH, MOVE, CARRY

vehementer, *violently, greatly.*
vectōrius, *for transport.*
vectīgālis, *paying tribute, tributary.*
vectīgal, *tribute, tax.*
vexō, *harass.*
vēlum (for **vēx**lum), *sail.*
vēxillum, *banner.*
con-**vehō** (com-), *carry together, store.*
dē-**vehō**, *carry down, convey.*
prō-**vehō**, *carry forward.*
sub-**vehō**, *bring up, transport.*
sub-**vectiō**, *transportation.*

77. √ VEN, COME

veniō, *come.*
ventitō, *come often.*
ad-**ventus**, *arrival.*
circum-**veniō**, *come around.*
con-**veniō** (com-), *come together.*
con-**ventus**, *meeting.*
cōntiō (for co-**ventiō**), *assembly, speech.*
dē-**veniō**, *come down, arrive.*
ē-**veniō**, *come out.*
ē-**ventus**, *outcome, result.*
in-**veniō**, *come upon, learn.*
in-**ventor**, *discoverer.*
inter-**veniō**, *come between.*
inter-**ventus**, *coming between.*
ob-**veniō**, *come against, meet.*
per-**veniō**, *come through, arrive.*
prō-**veniō**, *come forth, grow.*
prō-**ventus**, *result.*
sub-**veniō**, *come to help.*
nūntius (for novi-**ventius**, √ NOV), *bearer of tidings, news.*

78. √ VERT, TURN

vertō, *turn.*
versus, *toward.*
versus, *line, verse.*
versō, *keep turning.*
ā-**vertō**, *turn away.*
ā-**versus**, *turned away.*
ad-**vertō**, *turn toward.*
ad-**versus**, *turned toward, opposite, unfavorable.*
ad-**versus**, *in opposition to, against.*
ad-**versārius**, *opponent.*
anim-ad**vertō** (animus), *turn the mind to, notice.*
con-**vertō** (com-), *turn about, alter.*
dī-**versus**, *turned different ways, straggling.*
intr**ōrsus** (for intrō-**versus**), *within, inside.*
prae-**vertō**, *attend to first.*
quōque-**versus** (quisque), *in every direction, everywhere.*
re-**vertor**, *turn back, return.*
rūrsus (for re-**versus**), *back, again, on the other hand.*

trāns-**vers**us, *turned across, transverse.*
ūni-**vers**us (ūnus), *all together.*

79. √ VID, SEE

videō, *see.*
in-**vid**eō, *look askance at, envy.*
in-**vid**ia, *envy, ill will.*
prō-**vid**eō, *foresee, prepare, look out for.*
prūdentia (for prō-**vid**entia), *foresight, discretion.*
im-prūdēns (for in-prō**vid**ēns, *not foreseeing*), *unaware.*
im-prōvīsus (in-), *not foreseen.*
im-prōvīsō, *unexpectedly, suddenly.*

80. √ VOL, WILL, WISH

volō, *will, wish.*
voluntās, *will, wish, inclination.*
voluntārius, *willing, volunteer.*
voluptās, *satisfaction, enjoyment.*
vel, *or* (*if you will*), *even.*
vel-ut, *even as, just as.*
mālō (for magis **volō**), *wish rather, prefer.*
nōlō (for ne-**volō**), *not wish, be unwilling.*
quī-**vīs**, *any you please.*

VOCABULARY

A

A., the abbreviation for the praenomen **Aulus**, *Aulus.*

***ā, ab, abs** (**ā** only before consonants; **ab** before vowels and most consonants; **abs** rare, except in compounds and the phrase **abs tē**), prep. with abl., *from, away from; in the direction of, near, at, on, in; after; by, at the hands of;* sometimes with force of an adv., *away;* **ā fronte**, *in front;* **ab utrōque latere**, *on both sides;* **ā puerīs**, *from boyhood;* **ā mīlibus passuum octō**, *eight miles away.* In comp., *from, away;* in adjectives and nouns often has a negative force.

***abditus, -a, -um** [part. of abdō], *hidden, concealed.*

***abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus** [ab + -dō, *put*], *put away, hide;* **sē abdere**, *take refuge*, commonly used with **in** and the acc.

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [ab + dūcō], *lead away, take away.*

abeō, -īre, -īvī(-iī), -itūrus [ab + eō], *go away, go off, depart.*

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [ab + iaciō], *throw away, throw down, hurl* (from oneself).

abiēs, -ietis, f., *fir* (tree or wood).

abiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus [ab + iungō], *separate, detach.*

abs, see **ā, ab, abs.**

abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [abs + caedō], *cut away, cut off, cut.*

***absēns, -entis** [part. of absum], adj., *absent.*

absimilis, -e [ab + similis], *unlike.*

absistō, -sistere, -stitī [ab + sistō, *cause to stand*], *take position away, hold aloof.*

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [abs + teneō], *hold away, keep away; refrain, abstain;* **ā mulieribus abstinēre**, *spare the women.*

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [abs + trahō], *drag away, carry off.*

***absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus** [ab + sum], *be away, be absent, be distant; remain away; be lacking;* **ab hōc cōnsiliō abesse**, *not be concerned in this scheme;* **ā bellō abesse**, *be exempt from the duty of fighting.*

abundō, -āre, -āvī [ab + undō, *surge;* cf. unda, *wave*], *overflow; abound, be supplied.*

ac, see **atque.**

***accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus** [ad + cēdō], *go towards, come towards, approach; arrive, come; be added* (equivalent to pass. of **addō**); **accēdit quod**, *there is the additional reason that, besides;* **accēdit ut**, *there is the additional fact that, besides.*

accelerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad +

celerō, *quicken;* cf. celer], *hasten, make haste.*

***acceptus, -a, -um** [part. of accipiō], *acceptable, beloved;* **plēbī acceptus,** *popular.*

***accidō, -cidere, -cidī** [ad + cadō], *fall to; fall; befall; happen, come to pass, turn out;* **cāsū accidit ut,** *it chanced that.*

accīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [ad + caedō], *cut at, cut into, cut partly through.*

***accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus** [ad + capiō], *take, receive, accept, get; suffer, undergo; hear of, learn.*

acclīvis, -e [ad + clīvus], *sloping upward, ascending.*

acclīvitās, -ātis [acclīvis], f., *ascent, slope.*

Accō, -ōnis, m., *Acco,* a chief among the Senones.

***accommodātus, -a, -um** [part. of accommodō], *fitted, adapted, suitable.*

***accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [ad + commodō, *accommodate;* cf. commodus], *fit on, adjust.*

accūrātē [accūrātus, *careful*], adv., *carefully, accurately.*

accurrō, -currere, -currī or **-cucurrī, -cursus** [ad + currō, *run*], *run to; run* (towards); *ride up.*

***accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [ad + causa], *accuse, blame, chide.*

acerbē [acerbus], adv., *bitterly, harshly, painfully;* **acerbius ferre,** *suffer too severely from.*

acerbitās, -ātis [acerbus], f., *bitterness, severity, pain;* pl., *sufferings.*

acerbus, -a, -um [ācer, *sharp*], *bitter, harsh.*

ācerrimē, sup. of **ācriter.**

acervus, -ī, m., *pile, heap.*

***aciēs, -ēī** [cf. ācer, *sharp*], f., *sharp edge, keenness; battle-line, array; army; battle;* **prīma aciēs,** *front rank;* **aciēs oculōrum,** *glare of the eyes;* **triplex aciēs,** *triple line,* see Introd., p. 44.

***ācriter** [ācer, *sharp*], adv., *sharply, keenly, fiercely; vigorously, courageously.*

āctuārius, -a, -um [agō], *driven, swift;* **nāvis āctuāria,** *swift vessel,* propelled by both sails and oars.

āctus, -a, -um, part. of **agō.**

acūtus, -a, -um [part. of acuō, *sharpen*], *sharpened, sharp.*

***ad,** prep. with acc., *to, towards, to the vicinity of; near, with, among, at;* of time, *up to, until, by, at;* often with a gerund or gerundive, *for the purpose of, in order to, for; according to, as to, in regard to;* with numerals, *to, as many as, about;* **ūsque ad,** see **ūsque; ad hunc modum,** *in this manner, to this effect;* **quem ad modum,** *how? as;* **ad extrēmum,** *at last;* **ad tempus,** *on time;* **ad Īdūs Aprīlīs,** *on the Ides of April.* In comp., *to, towards, near, at, besides,* etc.

adāctus, -a, -um, part. of **adigō.**

***adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [ad + aequō], *make equal; become equal, be equal; equal; keep up with.*

adamō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad + amō, *love*], *fall in love with, take a liking to.*

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [ad + -dō, *put*], *put to, place on, make additions, add; say besides.*

***addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus** [ad + dūcō], *lead to, lead towards, lead, draw towards, bring, bring along; draw tight, stretch;* chiefly in pass., *induce, influence.*

adēmptus, -a, -um, part. of **adimō.**

adeō [ad + adv. eō], adv., *to that point, to such a degree, so, so much, so far; even.*

***adeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus** [ad + eō], *go to, get near, approach; visit, get at; accost; attack.*

adeptus, -a, -um, part. of **adipīscor.**

adequitō, -āre, -āvī [ad + equitō, *ride*], *ride* (towards).

adfectus, -a, -um, part. of **adficiō.**

***adferō, adferre, attulī, adlātus** [ad + ferō], *bring to, carry to, bring, carry; bring forward, cite, announce; cause, produce.*

adficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [ad + faciō], *do to; affect, delight, afflict, distress; treat;* **suppliciō adficere,** *punish;* **beneficiō adfectus,** *treated kindly.*

adfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus [ad + fīgō, *fix*], *fasten to, attach.*

adfingō, -fingere, -fīnxī, -fictus [ad + fingō], *make up in addition, add falsely.*

adfīnitās, -ātis [adfīnis, *related by marriage*], f., *relationship by marriage, alliance.*

adfīrmātiō, -ōnis [adfīrmō, *strengthen*], f., *assurance, statement.*

adfīxus, -a, -um, part. of **adfīgō.**

adflictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of adflīgō], *dash against; strand, wreck.*

adflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flictus [ad + flīgō, *strike*], *strike against, dash against; damage; overthrow.*

adfore, fut. inf. of **adsum.**

***adgredior, -gredī, -gressus** [ad + gradior, *step*], *move towards, approach; attack; try.*

adgregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad + gregō, *collect into a herd;* cf. grex, *herd*], *collect; join to, attach;* **sīgnīs sē adgregāre,** *gather around the standards.*

adhaerēscō, -haerēscere, -haesī [inchoative of adhaereō, *cling to*], *stick.*

***adhibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus** [ad + habeō], *hold to; have with* (oneself); *retain, detain; summon, admit; apply to, make use of.*

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus [ad + hortor], *encourage, exhort, urge, arouse; address.*

adhūc [ad + hūc], adv., *to this point; thus far; up to this time, hitherto.*

adiaceō, -iacēre, -iacuī [ad + iaceō], *lie near, be adjacent.*

Adiatunnus, -ī, m., *Adiatunnus,* a chief among the Sotiates.

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [ad + iaciō], *throw to, throw beside, throw; build up, throw up, add;* **adiectā plānitiē,** *with a plain adjoining.*

***adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus** [ad + agō], *drive to, bring to, bring near; hurl to; drive in, drive down;* **ad iūs iūrandum adigere,** *force to take oath.*

***adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus** [ad + emō], *take to oneself; remove, take away; destroy.*

adipīscor, -ipīscī, -eptus [ad + apīscor, *reach after*], *arrive at; gain.*

***aditus, -ūs** [adeō], m., *approach, arrival, meeting; way of approach, entrance, access; admittance, privilege of association.*

adiūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad + iūdicō], *adjudge, award.*

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus [ad + iungō], *join to, join with; win over, take as ally; annex.*

adiūtor, -ōris [adiuvō], m., *helper, mediator.*

***adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtus** [ad + iuvō], *help, be of assistance; further, support.*

adlātus, -a, -um, part. of **adferō.**

adliciō, -licere, -lexī, -lectus [ad + laciō, *entice*], *allure, entice.*

administer, -trī [ad + minister, *servant;* cf. minus], m., *assistant, helper.*

***administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [ad + ministrō, *serve*], *manage, direct; perform, carry out; manage affairs;* **imperia administrāre,** *perform the duties of commander;* **rem pūblicam administrāre,** *conduct public affairs.*

***admīrandus, -a, -um** [part. of admīror], *wonderful, surprising.*

***admīror, -ārī, -ātus** [ad + mīror], *wonder, feel surprise; wonder at, admire.*

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [ad + mittō], *send to, let in, admit; permit, incur; commit;* **equō admissō,** *with horse at full speed.*

admodum [ad + modus], adv., *to the limit, to a high degree, very much, very, especially, particularly; at least, about.*

admoneō, -monēre, -monuī, -monitus [ad + moneō], *warn, advise.*

***adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultus** [ad + olēscō, *grow*], *grow up, become full-grown.*

***adorior, -orīrī, -ortus** [ad + orior], *rise, rise against, attack.*

adquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus [ad + quaerō], *seek in addition, gain;* **aliquid adquīrere,** *gain some advantage.*

adripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [ad + rapiō, *snatch*], *snatch, catch hurriedly, seize.*

adroganter [adrogāns, *assuming*], adv., *presumptuously, impertinently.*

adrogantia, -ae [adrogāns, *assuming*], f., *presumption, arrogance, insolence.*

adsiduus, -a, -um [adsideō, *sit beside*], *sitting beside; constant, continual, incessant.*

adsistō, -sistere, -stitī [ad + sistō, *cause to stand*], *take a stand, stand near.*

adsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [adsuētus, part. of adsuēscō + faciō], *make accustomed, train, inure;* pass., *grow accustomed.*

adsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus [ad + suēscō, *become accustomed*], *accustom; grow accustomed.*

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [ad + sum], *be near, be present, be* (in a place); often equivalent to *have arrived; stand by, help, sustain.*

***adulēscēns, -entis** [part. of adolēscō], adj., *young;* as subst., m. and f., *young man, young woman;* often with proper names, *the younger,* to distinguish from older persons of the same name.

adulēscentia, -ae [adulēscēns], f., *youthfulness, youth.*

adulēscentulus, -ī [dim. of adulēscēns], m., *very young man, youth, stripling.*

***adventus, -ūs** [adveniō, *arrive*], m., *arrival, coming, approach.*

adversārius, -a, -um [adversus], *opposing;* as subst., m., *opponent, adversary.*

***adversus, -a, -um** [part. of advertō], *turned against, opposing, opposite; unfavorable, adverse;* **adversō flūmine,** *up-stream;* **adversīs hostibus,** *the enemy, face to face;* **adversā nocte,** *in the face of the*

night; **in adversum ōs,** *full in the face.*

***adversus** [adversus], prep. with acc., *against, in opposition to.*

***advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus** [ad + vertō], *turn towards;* **animum advertere,** *turn the mind to,* i.e. *observe, notice* (cf. **animadvertō**).

advocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad + vocō], *call to; call, summon.*

advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad + volō, *fly*], *fly to; hasten, rush.*

***aedificium, -ī** [aedificō], n., *building, house.*

***aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [aedēs, *building* + faciō], *build a house, build.*

***aeger, -gra, -grum,** *sick, ill, weak, suffering.*

***aegrē** [aeger], adv., *painfully, with difficulty, barely;* sup. **aegerrimē,** *with the utmost difficulty.*

Aemilius, -ī, m., *Aemilius,* a Roman nomen; *Lucius Aemilius,* probably an enfranchised Gaul, decurion of cavalry in Caesar's army.

aequāliter [aequālis, *equal*], adv., *evenly, uniformly.*

aequinoctium, -ī [aequus + nox], n., *the time when day and night are equal, equinox.*

aequitās, -ātis [aequus], f., *uniformity, equality; justice;* **animī aequitās,** *calmness of mind, equanimity.*

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [aequus], *make level, make equal, equalize.*

***aequus, -a, -um,** *level, plain, equal; favorable, fair, just;* **aequō animō,** *with calmness of mind, with equanimity;* **aequō Mārte,** *in an evenly balanced conflict.*

aerāria, -ae [aerārius, *of copper*], f., *copper-mine, mine.*

aes, aeris, n., *copper, bronze* (an alloy of copper and tin); *money;* **aes aliēnum,** *debt* (*another's money*).

***aestās, -ātis** [cf. aestus], f., *heat, summer.*

aestimātiō, -ōnis [aestimō], f., *valuation, estimate.*

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *determine the value of, estimate, judge; consider, think.*

aestīvus, -a, -um [aestās], *of summer, summer.*

aestuārium, -ī [aestus], n., *inlet* (where the tide flows in), *salt marsh, estuary.*

***aestus, -ūs** [cf. aestās], m., *heat; seething, swell* (of the sea), *tide.*

aetās, -ātis [old form aevitās, from aevum, *age*], f., *time of life, age; old age.*

aeternus, -a, -um [for aeviternus, from aevum, *age*], *everlasting, endless.*

Āfricus, -a, -um [Āfrica, *Africa*], *African;* as subst. (sc. **ventus**), m., *southwest wind* (blowing from Africa towards Italy).

āfuisse, perf. inf. of **absum.**

āfutūrus, -a, -um, see **absum.**

Agēdincum, -ī, n., *Agedincum,* the principal town of the Senones, now *Sens,* on the Yonne.

***ager, -grī,** m., *land, soil; country, territory, district, region;* pl., *land, lands, country;* **agrī solum,** *the bare ground;* **agrī cultūra,** *farming, agriculture.*

***agger, -eris** [ad + gerō], m., *heap, mound; dike, mole, rampart;* especially, *terrace* or *elevated roadway,* built of wood, earth, and stones, on which were placed besieging engines (see Introd., p. 47); *material* for a rampart or terrace, *earth, timber.*

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of agō], *set in violent motion; bring up for discussion, discuss.*

***agmen, -minis** [agō], n., *marching army, column; line of march, march;* **prīmum agmen,** *van;* **extrēmum** or **novissimum agmen,** *rear.*

***agō, agere, ēgī, āctus,** *set in motion; drive, pursue; conduct, lead; push forward, bring forward; drive down, drive in; drive away; treat, discuss, negotiate; do, act, manage; construct, build;* **conventūs agere,** *hold court;* **grātiās agere,** *express thanks.*

***alacer, -cris, -cre,** *lively, eager, ready.*

alacritās, -ātis [alacer], f., *eagerness, spirit, energy.*

ālārius, -a, -um [āla, *wing*], *belonging to the wing;* as subst., m. pl., *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries,* so called because their proper station in battle was on the wings of the army.

albus, -a, -um, *white;* **plumbum album** (*white lead*), *tin.*

alcēs, -is, f., *elk.*

Alesia, -ae, f., *Alesia,* a town of the Mandubii, now *Alise Sainte Reine,* northwest of Dijon.

ali-, an indefinite prefix.

***aliās** [alius], adv., *at another time, otherwise;* **aliās . . . aliās,** *at one time . . . at another time, sometimes . . . sometimes, now . . . now.*

aliēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [aliēnus], *make another's; make unfriendly, estrange, alienate; deprive of reason, drive insane.*

***aliēnus, -a, -um** [alius], *another's, belonging to other people; untimely, unfavorable; alien, hostile;* **aliēnissimī, -ōrum,** m. pl., *utter strangers;* **aes aliēnum,** see **aes.**

***aliō** [alius], adv., *to another place, elsewhere.*

aliquamdiū [aliquis + diū], adv., *for some time, for a time, a while.*

aliquandō [ali- + quandō], adv., *at some time or other, once; at length.*

aliquantō [aliquantus], adv., *by something, by a little, somewhat.*

aliquantus, -a, -um [ali- + quantus], *some, considerable;* as subst., n., *something, a little;* **aliquantum itineris,** *some distance.*

***aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod)** [ali- + quis (quī)], indef. pron., *some one, any one; something, anything; some, any;* **aliquid novī cōnsilī,** *some new plan;* **aliquid,** as adv., *somewhat.*

***aliquot** [ali- + quot], indecl. adj., *some, several, a few.*

***aliter** [alius], adv., *in another way, otherwise;* **aliter ac,** *otherwise than, differently from;* **aliter sē habēre,** *be different.*

***alius, -a, -ud,** *another, other, different, else, any other;* **alius . . . alius,** *one . . . another;* **aliī . . . aliī,** *some . . . others;* **alius aliā causā inlātā,** *one giving one reason, another another;* **cum alius aliī subsidium ferret,** *since they helped one another;* **alius atque (ac),** *other than, different from.*

Allobrogēs, -um, m. pl., *the Allobroges,* a Gallic tribe in the northeastern part of the Roman province.

alō, alere, aluī, altus or **alitus,** *feed, sustain, support; increase; cherish; raise; continue.*

Alpēs, -ium, f. pl., *the Alps,* mountains separating Cisalpine Gaul

from Transalpine Gaul and Germany.

***alter, -era, -erum,** *the other, one* (of two); *second; another;* **alter . . . alter,** *the one . . . the other;* **alterī . . . alterī,** *the one party . . . the other party.*

alternus, -a, -um [alter], *one after the other, alternate.*

***altitūdō, -dinis** [altus], f., *height, altitude; depth; thickness;* **in altitūdinem,** *in height (depth).*

***altus, -a, -um** [part. of alō, lit. *nourished, grown great*], *high, lofty; deep;* as subst., n., *the deep, the sea.*

alūta, -ae [cf. alūmen, *alum*], f., *soft leather,* prepared with alum.

ambactus, -ī, m., *dependent, follower, vassal, slave.*

Ambarrī, -ōrum [Celtic, *dwellers on both sides of the Arar*], m. pl., *the Ambarri,* a Gallic tribe near the Haedui on the Arar (Saône).

ambi- [cf. ambō], an inseparable prefix, *around, round about.*

Ambiānī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Ambiani,* a Belgic tribe.

Ambibariī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Ambibarii,* a Gallic tribe on or near the English Channel.

Ambiliatī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Ambiliati,* a Gallic tribe, perhaps on the left bank of the Liger (Loire).

Ambiorīx, -īgis [Celtic, *king of the ramparts*], m., *Ambiorix,* king of a part of the Eburones.

Ambivaretī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Ambivareti,* a Gallic tribe, probably near the Haedui on the Liger (Loire).

Ambivaritī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Ambivariti,* a Belgic tribe, probably on the left bank of the Mosa (Meuse).

ambō, -ae, -ō [cf. ambi-], adj., *both* (of two closely associated; cf. **uterque**).

āmentia, -ae [āmēns, *mad,* from ā + mēns], f., *madness, frenzy, folly.*

āmentum, -ī, n., *strap, thong,* used to give a whirling motion to a javelin.

***amīcitia, -ae** [amīcus], f., *friendship; alliance, league.*

***amīcus, -a, -um** [amō, *love*], *friendly, devoted;* as subst., m., *friend, ally.*

***āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus** [ā + mittō], *let go away, send away, dismiss; let go by, lose; abandon.*

amor, -ōris [amō, *love*], m., *love, affection.*

***amplē** [amplus], adv., *largely; liberally, munificently;* comp. **amplius,** *more, longer; besides.*

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [amplus + faciō], *increase, extend.*

amplitūdō, -dinis [amplus], f., *size, breadth; greatness, dignity, might.*

amplius, see **amplus** and **amplē.**

***amplus, -a, -um,** *of great extent, ample, abundant; numerous; distinguished, illustrious; magnificent;* comp. **amplius,** as subst., n., *more.*

***an,** conj., *or,* introducing the second part of a double question; **utrum (-ne) . . . an,** *whether . . . or;* sometimes the first part of the question is suppressed, and the force of **an** can be given by some turn to the translation, *e.g.* **an speculandī causā,** (for some other reason) *or for the purpose of spying,* i.e. *was it really to spy?*

Anartēs, -ium, m. pl., *the Anartes,*

a tribe in Dacia, in what is now Hungary.

Ancalitēs, -um, m. pl., *the Ancalites,* a tribe in Britain, south of the Thames.

***anceps, -cipitis** [ambi- + caput], adj., *with two heads; double, two-fold; doubtful, uncertain.*

***ancora, -ae,** f., *anchor;* **in ancorīs,** *at anchor.*

Andebrogius, -ī, m., *Andebrogius,* a prominent man among the Remi.

Andēs, -ium, or **Andī, -ōrum,** m. pl., *the Andes,* or *Andi,* a Gallic tribe north of the Liger (Loire). The name survives in the modern Anjou.

ānfrāctus, -ūs, m., *turn, circuitous route.*

angulus, -ī, m., *angle, corner, bend.*

***angustē** [angustus], adv., *narrowly, within a narrow space, in close quarters; stintingly.*

***angustiae, -ārum** [angustus], f. pl., *narrowness, narrow place, narrow pass, defile; difficulty, perplexity.*

***angustus, -a, -um** [angō, *press tight*], *narrow, small, scanty; difficult;* **in angustō,** *at a crisis.*

anima, -ae [cf. animus], f., *breath; life, soul.*

***animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus** [animus + advertō], *turn the thoughts toward, give attention to, notice, perceive;* **animadvertere in,** *take notice of, take measures against, punish;* cf. **animum advertere.**

animal, -ālis [cf. anima], n., *living being, animal.*

***animus, -ī** [cf. anima], m., *inspiration, spirit; feelings, thoughts, inclination, character; heart, will, purpose; spirit, courage, pluck; consciousness, mind;* **bonō animō vidērī,** *seem well-disposed;* **animī causā,** *for amusement;* **animum advertere,** see **advertō.**

annōtinus, -a, -um [annus], *belonging to last year, a year old.*

***annus, -ī,** m., *year.*

annuus, -a, -um [annus], *belonging to a year, for a year, yearly, annual.*

ānser, -eris, m., *goose.*

***ante:** (1) adv., *before, earlier, previously;* **paulō ante,** *a short time before, a little while ago;* (2) prep. with acc., *before* (of place or time), *in front of;* **ante exāctam hiemem,** *before the winter was gone.* In comp., *before, rather than, in preference to.*

anteā [ante + is], adv., *before, formerly, previously, earlier, once.*

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus [ante + cēdō], *go before, precede, march in advance; proceed; surpass.*

antecursor, -ōris [antecurrō, *run before*], m., *forerunner;* pl., *advance-guard.*

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [ante + ferō], *bear before, place before; prefer.*

antemna, -ae, f., *sail-yard.*

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [ante + pōnō], *place before; consider more important, prefer.*

antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, versus [ante + vertō], *place before;* pass., *take precedence of.*

antīquitus [antīquus], adv., *from ancient times, in old times, long ago, of old.*

antīquus, -a, -um [ante], *belonging to old times, ancient; former, old.*

Antistius, -ī, m., *Antistius*, a Roman nomen; *Gaius Antistius Reginus*, one of Caesar's legates.

Antōnius, -ī, m., *Antonius, Antony*, a Roman nomen; *Marcus Antonius, Mark Antony*, served as legate under Caesar. He was afterwards a member of the so-called Second Triumvirate.

***aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertus**, *open, uncover*.

***apertē** [apertus], adv., *openly, manifestly*.

***apertus, -a, -um** [part. of aperiō], *open, uncovered, unprotected, exposed, bare; unimpeded;* **apertum latus**, *exposed flank*, usually the right, which was unprotected by the shields.

Apollō, -linis, m., *Apollo*, a god of the Greek and Roman mythologies. He was the god of music, poetry, and medicine. Caesar identifies a Gallic deity with Apollo.

App., the abbreviation for the praenomen **Appius**, *Appius*.

apparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad + parō], *prepare, get ready, provide*.

***appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *speak to, call by name, call*.

***appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus** [ad + pellō], *drive to, bring up; bring to land*.

appetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus [ad + petō], *seek for, seek to get, aim at, desire; draw near, approach*.

applicō, -plicāre, -plicāvī or **-plicuī, -plicātus** or **-plicitus** [ad + plicō, *fold*], *bend towards;* **sē applicāre ad**, *lean against*.

apportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad + portō], *bring to, bring, fetch*.

approbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad + probō], *think good, commend, assent to*.

***appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [ad + propinquō, *come near*], *draw near, approach*.

appulsus, -a, -um, part. of **appellō**.

Aprīlis, -e [aperiō], *of April*.

***aptus, -a, -um**, *fastened; fitted, suitable, fit; ready*.

***apud**, prep. with acc., *in the presence of, before; in the sight of; among, with, near*.

***aqua, -ae**, f., *water*.

aquātiō, -ōnis [aquor, *get water*], f., *getting water, watering*.

***aquila, -ae**, f., *eagle; standard* of a legion, a silver eagle mounted on a staff.

Aquilēia, -ae, f., *Aquileia*, a town of Cisalpine Gaul, at the head of the Adriatic.

aquilifer, -erī [aquila + ferō], m., *eagle-bearer, standard-bearer*.

Aquītānia, -ae, f., *Aquitania*, the part of Gaul inhabited by the Aquitani. It was bounded by the ocean (Bay of Biscay), the Garumna (Garonne), the Pyrenees, and the Roman province.

Aquītānus, -a, -um, *belonging to Aquitania, Aquitanian;* as subst., m., *an Aquitanian;* pl., *the Aquitani, the Aquitanians*.

Arar, -aris, acc. **-im**, abl. **-ī**, m., *the Arar* river, now *the Saône*, a branch of the Rhone.

arbiter, -trī, m., *witness; mediator, arbitrator, umpire*.

arbitrium, -ī [arbiter], n., *decision, judgment; free will, pleasure*.

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus [arbiter], *decide, believe, think, consider, suppose*.

***arbor, -oris**, f., *tree*.

*arcessō, -cessere, -cessīvī, -cessītus, *cause to come, send for, invite, summon; procure.*

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsus, *be on fire, burn; be full of fury.*

Arduenna, -ae, f., *the Ardennes*, a great forest stretching westward from the Rhine through the land of the Belgae.

arduus, -a, -um, *steep, high; difficult.*

Arecomicī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Arecomici*, a division of the Volcae, a people inhabiting the western part of the Roman province.

Aremoricus, -a, -um [Celtic, equivalent to Lat. maritimus], *Aremorican.* The word is used of the Gallic coast states between the Liger (Loire) and Sequana (Seine), and also of the Caleti, just north of the Sequana.

argentum, -ī, n., *silver; plate, silverware.*

argilla, -ae, f., *white clay; clay.*

*āridus, -a, -um [āreō, *be dry*], *parched, dry;* as subst., n., *dry place, dry land.*

ariēs, -ietis, m., *ram; battering-ram; prop.*

Ariovistus, -ī, m., *Ariovistus*, a German chief, or king.

Aristius, -ī, m., *Aristius*, a Roman nomen; *Marcus Aristius*, a tribune in Caesar's army.

*arma, -ōrum, n. pl., *arms, weapons, armor; outfit; ship's tackle, rigging;* in armīs, *under arms, in the field.*

armāmenta, -ōrum [armō], n. pl., *implements; equipment, rigging.*

armātūra, -ae [armō], f., *armor, equipment;* levis armātūrae, *light-armed.*

*armātus, -a, -um [part. of armō], *armed, equipped, under arms;* as subst., m. pl., *armed men, troops.*

*armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [arma], *arm, equip.*

Arpīnēius, -ī, m., *Arpineius*, a Roman nomen; *Gaius Arpineius*, a Roman knight in Caesar's army.

ars, artis, f., *skill, art.*

artē [artus], adv., *closely, firmly.*

articulus, -ī [dim. of artus, *joint*], m., *small joint, joint, articulation.*

artificium, -ī [artifex, *master of an art*], n., *employment, handicraft, craft; skill, knowledge; artifice.*

artus, -a, -um, *close, dense.*

Arvernus, -a, -um, *Arvernian;* as subst., m., *an Arvernian;* pl., *the Arverni, the Arvernians*, a powerful Gallic tribe north of the Roman province. The name remains in the modern Auvergne.

arx, arcis [cf. arceō, *inclose*], f., *citadel, stronghold.*

*ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus [ad + scandō, *climb*], *mount, climb, ascend, scale.*

ascēnsus, -ūs [ascendō], m., *ascent, way up.*

ascīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītus [ad + scīscō, *approve*], *attach* (to oneself), *receive.*

aspectus, -ūs [aspiciō, *look at*], m., *seeing, sight; look, aspect.*

asper, -era, -erum, *rough; hard, perilous.*

*at, conj., *but, but on the other hand, but meanwhile, but yet; yet at least, at least, at any rate.*

*atque, ac (atque before vowels, *h*, and some consonants; ac only before consonants) [ad + -que], conj., *and, and also, and besides, and even;* alius atque, *other than, different from;* aliter ac, *otherwise than;* contrā atque, see con-

trā; **īdem** or **pār atque**, *the same as;* **similis atque**, *like as;* **simul atque**, *as soon as.*

Atrebās, **-ātis**, m., *an Atrebatian;* pl., *the Atrebates, the Atrebatians*, a Belgic tribe.

Ātrius, **-ī**, m., *Atrius*, a Roman nomen; *Quintus Atrius*, an officer in Caesar's army.

attexō, **-texere**, **-texuī**, **-textus** [ad + texō, *weave*], *weave to, join on.*

***attingō**, **-tingere**, **-tigī**, **-tāctus** [ad + tangō], *touch, arrive at, reach; border on.*

attribuō, **-tribuere**, **-tribuī**, **-tribūtus** [ad + tribuō], *assign, give, give in charge.*

attulī, see **adferō**.

Atuatuca, **-ae**, f., *Atuatuca*, a stronghold of the Eburones, which has usually been identified with Tongres; but strong arguments have been advanced for placing it east of the Mosa (Meuse), in the vicinity of Aix-la-Chapelle.

Atuatucī, **-ōrum**, m. pl., *the Atuatuci*, a Belgic tribe west of the Mosa (Meuse). According to Caesar they were of Germanic origin.

auctor, **-ōris** [augeō], m., *promoter, leader, author, voucher, responsible person, authority, adviser.*

***auctōritās**, **-ātis** [auctor], f., *weight, personal influence, prestige, power, authority; dignity, importance, force.*

***auctus**, **-a**, **-um** [part. of augeō], *increased, abundant; rich.*

audācia, **-ae** [audāx, *daring*], f., *daring, boldness, recklessness; temerity, insolence.*

***audācter** [audāx, *daring*], adv., *daringly, boldly, courageously, confidently, recklessly.*

***audeō**, **audēre**, **ausus**, *venture, dare, risk; be bold.*

***audiō**, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-ītus**, *hear, hear of, learn; listen to, obey;* **dictō audiēns**, *obedient to the word, obedient.*

audītiō, **-ōnis** [audiō], f., *hearing, hearsay, rumor, news.*

***augeō**, **augēre**, **auxī**, **auctus**, *increase, enlarge, add to;* pass., *grow.*

Aulercus, **-ī**, m., *an Aulercan;* pl., *the Aulercans, the Aulerci*, a tribe having several divisions: *Aulerci Brannovices*, probably south of the Haedui; *Aulerci Cenomani*, *Aulerci Diablintes*, and *Aulerci Eburovices*, in northwestern Gaul.

aureus, **-a**, **-um** [aurum, *gold*], *of gold, golden, gold.*

aurīga, **-ae**, m., *charioteer, driver.*

auris, **-is**, f., *ear.*

Aurunculēius, **-ī**, m., *Aurunculeius*, a Roman nomen; *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, one of Caesar's legates.

Auscī, **-ōrum**, m. pl., *the Ausci*, an Aquitanian tribe.

ausus, **-a**, **-um**, part. of **audeō**.

***aut**, conj., *or, or even, or at least, or on the other hand;* **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or.*

***autem** (always postpositive), conj., *but, however, yet, on the other hand, while; furthermore, too; now.*

autumnus, **-ī**, m., *autumn.*

auxī, see **augeō**.

auxiliāris, **-e** [auxilium], *aiding, auxiliary;* as subst., m. pl., *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.*

auxilior, **-ārī**, **-ātus** [auxilium], *give aid, help.*

***auxilium**, **-ī** [augeō], n., *help, aid, support; resource, resort;* pl., *auxiliaries, reinforcements.*

Avaricēnsis, -e [Avaricum], *of Avaricum, belonging* or *pertaining to Avaricum.*

Avaricum, -ī [Celtic, *town on the Avara* (Yèvre)], n., *Avaricum*, a town of the Bituriges, now *Bourges.*

avāritia, -ae [avārus, *grasping*], f., *greed, avarice.*

āvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus [ā + vehō, *carry*], *carry away.*

***āversus, -a, -um** [part. of āvertō], *turned away; in the rear, from the rear, retreating.*

***āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus** [ā + vertō], *turn away, turn aside, avert; alienate.*

***avis, -is**, f., *bird.*

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather.*

Axona, -ae, m., *the Axona* river, now *the Aisne*, a branch of the Isara (Oise).

B

Bācenis, -is, f., *Bacenis*, the name of a forest in Germany, between the Suebi and Cherusci.

Baculus, -ī, m., *Baculus*, a Roman cognomen; see **Sextius.**

Baleāris, -e, *Balearic, belonging to the Balearic Islands*, a group of islands east of Spain. Excellent slingers came from these islands.

balteus, -ī, m., *belt, sword-belt, shoulder-belt.*

Balventius, -ī, m., *Balventius*, a Roman nomen; *Titus Balventius*, a brave centurion of Caesar's army.

***barbarus, -a, -um**, *of strange speech; not Greek or Roman, barbarous, uncivilized; savage, cruel;* as subst., m., *native, barbarian.*

Basilus, -ī, m., *Basilus*, a Roman cognomen; see **Minucius.**

Batāvī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Batavi, the Batavians*, a people, probably German, dwelling near the mouth of the Rhine.

Belgae, -ārum, m. pl., *the Belgae, the Belgians*, the people inhabiting the northern of the three divisions of Gaul.

Belgium, -ī, n., *Belgium*, the region inhabited by the Belgae.

bellicōsus, -a, -um [bellicus], *warlike, fond of war.*

bellicus, -a, -um [bellum], *pertaining to war, military, warlike.*

***bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [bellum], *carry on war, fight.*

Bellovacī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Bellovaci*, the most powerful and influential tribe of the Belgae.

***bellum, -ī**, n., *war;* **bellum dēfendere**, *repel war, carry on defensive war;* **dūcere bellum**, *prolong the war;* **bellum īnferre**, *make war.*

***bene** [bonus], adv., *well, successfully, advantageously.*

***beneficium, -ī** [bene + faciō], n., *favor, kindness, service, benefit;* **beneficiō obstrictus**, *under obligations for kindness received.*

benevolentia, -ae [benevolēns, *well-wishing*], f., *good will, friendship, kindness.*

bi- [cf. bis], an inseparable prefix, *twice, double, two.*

Bibracte, -tis, n., *Bibracte*, the chief town of the Haedui, situated on Mont Beuvray.

Bibrax, -actis, f., *Bibrax*, a town of the Remi, situated perhaps on a hill now called Vieux Laon.

Bibrocī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Bibroci*, a tribe on the southern coast of Britain.

***bīduum, -ī** [bis + diēs], n., *period of two days, two days.*

biennium, -ī [bi- + annus], n., *period of two years, two years.*

Bigerriōnēs, -um, m. pl., *the Bigerriones,* a tribe of Aquitania, near the Pyrenees. The name is preserved in the modern Bigorre.

***bīnī, -ae, -a** [bis], pl. adj., *two by two, two at a time, two apiece;* with nouns plural in form which usually have a singular meaning, *two.*

bipartītō [bipartītus, *divided into two parts*], adv., *in two divisions.*

bipedālis, -e [bi- + pedālis], *two feet in measure, of two feet, two feet thick.*

***bis** [cf. bi-], adv., *twice.*

Biturīgēs, -um, m. pl., *the Bituriges,* an important tribe of central Gaul.

Boduognātus, -ī, m., *Boduognatus,* a chief of the Nervii.

Bōiī, Bōiōrum, m. pl., *the Boii,* a Gallic tribe, which was finally settled in the territory of the Haedui, perhaps in the angle between the Elaver (Allier) and the Liger (Loire).

bonitās, -ātis [bonus], f., *goodness, richness, fertility.*

***bonus, -a, -um,** *good; faithful, reliable; favorable; friendly, kindly;* **bonus animus,** *good will;* as subst., n., *good, advantage;* n. pl., *goods, property, possessions.*

bōs, bovis, m. and f., *ox, cow;* pl., *cattle.*

***bracchium, -ī,** n., *forearm, arm.*

Brannovīcēs, -um, m. pl., *Brannovices;* see **Aulercus.**

Brātuspantium, -ī, n., *Bratuspantium,* a town of the Bellovaci, perhaps near the modern Breteuil.

***brevis, -e,** *short, brief;* **brevī,** *in a short time, within a short space.*

brevitās, -ātis [brevis], f., *shortness, brevity; low stature.*

***breviter** [brevis], adv., *briefly, in few words, tersely.*

Britannī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Britons, the people of Britannia.*

Britannia, -ae [Britannī], f., *Britain,* the island now including England, Scotland, and Wales. See Introd., p. 29.

Britannicus, -a, -um [Britannī], *of the Britons, of Britain, Britannic, British.*

brūma, -ae [for brevuma, old sup. of brevis], f., *shortest day of the year, winter solstice; winter.*

Brūtus, -ī, m., *Brutus,* a Roman cognomen; *Decimus Junius Brutus,* an able legate under Caesar, afterwards one of his murderers.

C

C., the abbreviation for the praenomen **Gāius,** *Gaius.*

Caburus, -ī, m., *Caburus;* see **Valerius.**

cacūmen, -minis, n., *extremity; top.*

cadāver, -eris [cadō], n., *corpse.*

***cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus,** *fall; fall dead, be slain.*

Cadūrcus, -ī, m., *a Cadurcan;* pl., *the Cadurci, the Cadurcans,* a small Gallic tribe near the Roman province.

caedēs, -is [caedō], f., *cutting down, killing, slaughter, massacre.*

***caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesus,** *cut, cut down.*

caelestis, -e [caelum, *heaven*], *of heaven, heavenly;* as subst., m. pl., *gods.*

Caemanī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Caemani,* a tribe of the Belgae, sometimes classed as Germans.

caerimōnia, -ae, f., *sacred rite, ceremonial.*

Caeroesī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Caeroesi*, a tribe of the Belgae, sometimes classed as Germans.

caeruleus, -a, -um [for caeluleus, from caelum, *heaven*], *sky-blue, blue.*

Caesar, -aris, m., *Caesar*, a Roman cognomen: (1) *Gaius Julius Caesar*, the conqueror of Gaul (see Introd., p. 8); (2) *Lucius Julius Caesar*, a distant relative of (1), and his legate in 52 B.C. He is thought to be the same Lucius Caesar who was consul in 64 B.C.

caespes, -pitis, m., *cut sod, turf, clod.*

caesus, -a, -um, part. of **caedō**.

***calamitās**, -ātis, f., *loss, injury, disaster; overthrow, defeat.*

Caletēs, -um, or **Caletī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Caletes*, or *Caleti*, an Aremorican tribe on the English Channel, near the mouth of the Sequana (Seine).

***callidus**, -a, -um [calleō, *be experienced*], *shrewd, cunning.*

cālō, -ōnis, m., *soldier's servant, camp-follower, driver.*

campester, -tris, -tre [campus], *of a level field, level; in the plain.*

campus, -ī, m., *level place, open country, field, plain.*

Camulogenus, -ī [Celtic, *son of Camulos* (the war-god)], m., *Camulogenus*, an Aulercan leader.

Canīnius, -ī, m., *Caninius*, a Roman nomen; *Gaius Caninius Rebilus*, a legate under Caesar.

canō, **canere**, **cecinī**, **cantus**, *sound, sing.*

Cantaber, -brī, m., *a Cantabrian*; pl., *the Cantabri, the Cantabrians*, a tribe of northern Spain.

Cantium, -ī, n., *Cantium*, a district in the southeastern part of Britain, now *Kent.*

capillus, -ī, m., *hair.*

***capiō**, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captus**, *take, receive; seize, capture, catch; deceive, take in; reach, arrive at; move, affect, win over*; **coniectūram capere**, *draw an inference, guess*; **cōnsilium capere**, *form a plan*; **initium capere ā**, *begin at*; **quiētem capere**, *rest*; **dolōrem capere**, *feel pain.*

capra, -ae [caper, *goat*], f., *she-goat.*

***captīvus**, -a, -um [capiō], *taken, captured*; as subst., m., *captive, prisoner.*

captus, -a, -um, part. of **capiō**.

captus, -ūs [capiō], m., *capacity, standard.*

***caput**, -pitis, n., *head; mouth* (of a river); *life*; pl., *souls, individuals*, used with numerals; **capitis poena**, *capital punishment.*

Carcasō, -ōnis, f., *Carcaso*, a town of the Volcae Tectosages, in the Roman province, now *Carcassonne.*

careō, **carēre**, **caruī**, **caritūrus**, *be without, go without.*

carīna, -ae, f., *keel; bottom.*

Carnutēs, -um, m. pl., *the Carnutes*, a Gallic tribe north of the Liger (Loire).

***carō**, **carnis**, f., *flesh, meat.*

carpō, **carpere**, **carpsī**, **carptus**, *pick; blame, carp at; divide.*

***carrus**, -ī, m., *cart, wagon.*

cārus, -a, -um, *dear, precious, beloved.*

Carvilius, -ī, m., *Carvilius*, one of four kings in Cantium (Kent).

casa, -ae, f., *hut, cabin.*

cāseus, -ī, m., *cheese.*

Cassī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Cassi*, a

tribe in Britain, probably north of the Thames.

Cassiānus, -a, -um [Cassius], *of Cassius, pertaining* or *belonging to Cassius.*

cassis, -idis, f., *helmet* (of metal), used chiefly by the cavalry. See the illustration, p. 37.

Cassius, -ī, m., *Cassius,* a Roman nomen; *Lucius Cassius Longinus,* consul in 107 B.C.

Cassivellaunus, -ī [Celtic, *of superior goodness*], m., *Cassivellaunus,* leader of the Britons in 54 B.C. In the ancient history of Britain this name appears as *Caswallon.*

***castellum, -ī** [dim. of castrum, *fortified place*], n., *little fort, post, fortress, redoubt, stronghold; small camp.*

Casticus, -ī, m., *Casticus,* a chief of the Sequani, son of Catamantaloedis.

***castra, -ōrum** [pl. of castrum, *fortified place*], n. pl., *military camp, camp;* **castra nāvālia,** *naval camp* (to protect a fleet drawn up on shore); **castra movēre,** *break camp, decamp;* **castra pōnere,** *pitch camp;* **quīntīs castrīs,** *in five days* (*at the fifth camp*); **trīna** (not **tria**) **castra,** *three camps.* See Introd., p. 41.

***cāsus, -ūs** [cadō], m., *falling, fall; occurrence, chance, event; state of affairs; calamity, fate;* **cāsū,** *accidentally.*

Catamantāloedis, -is, m., *Catamantaloedis,* a Sequanian, for many years king of his people.

***catēna, -ae,** f., *chain, fetter.*

Caturīgēs, -um [Celtic, *kings of battle*], m. pl., *the Caturiges,* a Gallic tribe living in the Alps.

Catuvolcus, -ī [Celtic, *swift in battle*], m., *Catuvolcus,* king of a part of the Eburones.

***causa, -ae,** f., *cause, reason; pretext, occasion; condition; case; claim;* **causā,** *for the sake of, because of.*

***cautē** [cautus, part. of caveō], adv., *carefully, cautiously, guardedly.*

***cautēs, -is,** f., *sharp rock, reef.*

Cavarillus, -ī, m., *Cavarillus,* a chieftain of the Haedui.

Cavarinus, -ī, m., *Cavarinus,* a prominent man among the Senones.

***caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus,** *take care, be on guard;* **dē pecūniā cavēre,** *give security in regard to money;* **inter sē cavēre,** *exchange pledges.*

Cavillōnum, -ī, n., *Cavillonum,* a town of the Haedui, now *Châlon-sur-Saône.*

Cebenna, -ae, f., *the Cévennes,* a mountain range in the southern part of Gaul.

***cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessus,** *go, move; withdraw, retire, retreat; yield, obey.*

***celer, -eris, -ere,** *quick, swift, speedy, sudden.*

***celeritās, -ātis** [celer], f., *quickness, swiftness, speed.*

***celeriter** [celer], adv., *quickly, swiftly, speedily; immediately, soon.*

***cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *hide, conceal.*

Celtae, -ārum, m. pl., *the Celtae, the Celts,* the inhabitants of the central of the three divisions of Gaul. There were Celts in other parts of Gaul also, and in Britain. See Introd., pp. 23, 24.

Celtillus, -ī, m., *Celtillus,* an Arvernian, father of Vercingetorix.

Cēnabēnsis, -e [Cēnabum], *of Cena-*

bum, at Cenabum; as subst., m. pl., *people of Cenabum.*

Cēnabum, -ī, n., *Cenabum,* a city of the Carnutes, on the Liger (Loire). It was later called Urbs Aurelianensis, whence the modern name *Orléans.*

Cēnimagnī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Cenimagni,* a tribe of Britain.

Cēnomanī, -ōrum, m. pl., *Cenomani;* see **Aulercus.**

cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus, *tax, estimate; think, determine; suggest, advise, vote, decree; give judgment, give an opinion.*

cēnsus, -ūs [cēnseō], m., *registering, enumeration, census.*

* **centum** (C), indecl. adj., *one hundred.*

* **centuriō, -ōnis** [centuria, *division of a hundred men, century*], m., *commander of a century, captain, centurion.* See Introd., p. 33.

cēpī, see **capiō.**

* **cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus** (certus), *separate; distinguish, make out, discern, see.*

* **certāmen, -minis** [certō, *decide, struggle*], n., *battle, contest; rivalry.*

* **certē** [certus], adv., *surely, certainly; at least.*

* **certus, -a, -um** [part. of cernō], *decided, determined; fixed, definite, accurate; appointed, special; trustworthy, well-established, certain;* **certiōrem facere,** *inform, tell, direct;* **certior fierī,** *be informed, learn;* **certī quid esset,** *what was really being done;* **prō certō,** *for a fact.*

cervus, -ī, m., *stag; 'stag's horns,'* a defense made of forked branches resembling the horns of a stag.

(cēterus), -a, -um, *other, the other, the rest;* as subst., m. pl., *the others, the rest, everybody else.*

Ceutronēs, -um, m. pl., *the Ceutrones:* (1) a Gallic tribe among the Alps; (2) a tribe of the Belgae.

Chēruscī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Cherusci,* a German tribe.

cibārius, -a, -um [cibus], *relating to food;* as subst., n. pl., *food, supplies;* **molita cibāria,** *meal.*

* **cibus, -ī,** m., *food, provisions.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero,* a Roman cognomen; *Quintus Tullius Cicero,* brother of Cicero the orator, was one of Caesar's legates in Gaul.

Cimberius, -ī, m., *Cimberius,* a leader of the Suebi.

Cimbrī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Cimbri,* a German people who invaded Gaul in the second century B.C.

Cingetorīx, -īgis [Celtic, *king of warriors*], m., *Cingetorix:* (1) a leader among the Treveri; (2) one of the kings of Cantium (Kent).

* **cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus,** *go around, be around, surround; inclose, invest.*

cippus, -ī, m., *stake, pillar, gravestone.*

circinus, -ī, m., *pair of compasses.*

* **circiter** [circus, *circle*]: (1) adv., *about, nearly;* (2) prep. with acc., *about, around, near.*

* **circuitus, -ūs** [circumeō], m., *going around, way around, circuit, roundabout way; distance around.*

* **circum** [circus, *circle*], prep. with acc., *around, about; near, in the neighborhood of.*

circumcīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [circum + caedō], *cut around.*

circumcīsus, -a, -um [part. of circumcīdō], *inaccessible, steep.*

circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [circum + claudō], *shut in, surround.*

***circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus** [circum + -dō, *put*], *put around; surround, encompass.*

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [circum + dūcō], *lead around; draw around, trace.*

circumeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus [circum + eō], *go around, ride around, surround; visit.*

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus [circum + fundō], *pour around, surround;* pass., *throng around.*

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [circum + iaciō], *throw around, place around.*

circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [circum + mittō], *send around.*

circummūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [circum + mūniō], *wall around, hem in.*

circumplector, -plectī, -plexus [circum + plectō, *interweave*], *surround, encompass.*

***circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī** [circum + sistō, *cause to stand*], *take stand around, rally around, stand around, surround.*

circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [circum + speciō, *look*], *look about for, look around at; consider.*

circumvāllō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [circum + vāllō, *fortify with a rampart*], *surround with a rampart, blockade, invest.*

circumvehor, -vehī, -vectus [circum + vehō, *carry*], *be carried around, ride around.*

***circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus** [circum + veniō], *come around, surround, beset; circumvent, deceive.*

cis, prep. with acc., *this side, on this side of.*

Cisalpīnus, -a, -um [cis + Alpīnus, *Alpine* (from Alpēs)], *on this* (the Italian) *side of the Alps, Cisalpine;* **Cisalpīna Gallia,** *Cisalpine Gaul,* now northern Italy. See Introd., p. 21.

Cisrhēnānus, -a, -um [cis + Rhēnānus, *pertaining to the Rhine* (from Rhēnus)], *on this* (the Gallic) *side of the Rhine, Cisrhenane.*

Cita, -ae, m., *Cita,* a Roman cognomen; see **Fūfius.**

citātus, -a, -um [part. of citō, *put in swift motion*], *quick, rapid;* sometimes has the force of an adv., *swiftly.*

***citerior, -ius** [citer, *on this side*], comp. adj., *on this side, nearer, hither;* **Gallia Citerior** is equivalent to **Gallia Cisalpīna; Citerior Hispānia,** *Hither Spain,* the eastern part of Spain (nearer Rome).

citō [citus, *quick*], adv., *quickly;* sup. **citissimē,** *most swiftly.*

citrā [citer, *on this side*], prep. with acc., *on this side of.*

citrō [citer, *on this side*], adv., *to this side;* **ultrō citrōque,** *to and fro, back and forth.*

cīvis, -is, m. and f., *citizen; fellow-citizen.*

***cīvitās, -ātis** [cīvis], f., *condition of a citizen, citizenship; community of citizens, state; nation, tribe.*

***clam** [cf. cēlō], adv., *secretly.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of clāmō, *call*], *call repeatedly, cry out.*

***clāmor, -ōris** [clāmō, *call*], m., *loud call, shout, uproar, clamor.*

clandēstīnus, -a, -um [clam], *secret, clandestine.*

clārus, -a, -um, *clear, bright; loud.*

***classis, -is,** f., *fleet.*

Claudius, -ī, m., *Claudius,* a Roman nomen; *Appius Claudius Pulcher,* consul in 54 B.C.

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus [cf. clāvis, *key*], *shut, close;* **agmen claudere,** *bring up the rear.*

clāvus, -ī [cf. claudō], m., *nail, spike.*

clēmentia, -ae [clēmēns, *kind*], f., *kindness, forbearance, mercy.*

***cliēns, -entis,** m., *dependent, follower, client;* pl., *dependent tribe, tributaries, vassals.*

clientēla, -ae [cliēns], f., *relation between patron and client, clientship, protection; dependency; dependent state, vassals.*

clīvus, -ī, m., *slope, hill, ascent.*

Clōdius, -ī [another form of *Claudius*], m., *Clodius,* a Roman nomen; *Publius Clodius Pulcher,* younger brother of Appius Claudius (see **Claudius**). Clodius was a bitter enemy of Cicero the orator, and was killed by Milo in a brawl, in January, 52 B.C.

Cn., the abbreviation for the praenomen **Gnaeus,** *Gnaeus.*

co-, see **com-.**

coacervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [co- + acervō, *heap up*], *heap together, pile up.*

(coāctus, -ūs), found only in the abl. sing. [cōgō], m., *compulsion.*

coāctus, -a, -um, part. of **cōgō.**

coagmentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [coagmentum, *joining together*], *fasten together.*

coartō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [co- + artō, *contract*], *press together.*

Cocosātēs, -um, m. pl., *the Cocosates,* a tribe of Aquitania.

coēgī, see **cōgō.**

coëmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [co- + emō], *purchase, buy up.*

coĕō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus [co- + eō], *go together, come together.*

***coepī, coepisse, coeptus,** *began, undertook,* generally used with a dependent inf.; when the inf. is pass., the pass. of **coepī** is used, *e.g.* **rēs agī coeptae sunt.** The forms of the pres. system are supplied by **incipiō.**

coërceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus [co- + arceō, *inclose*], *shut in; restrain, hold in check.*

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [co- + agitō], *consider thoroughly, think, ponder; intend, plan; expect.*

cognātiō, -ōnis [cognātus, *of the same blood*], f., *blood-relationship; family, group of kinsmen.*

***cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitus** [co- + (g)nōscō], *get a knowledge of, learn, find out about; investigate;* in perf., *know.*

***cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus** [co- + agō], *drive together, bring together, get together, collect; compel, oblige, force.*

***cohors, -ortis,** f., *cohort, company* (see Introd., p. 31); **cohors praetōria,** *commander's body-guard.*

cohortātiō, -ōnis [cohortor], f., *inciting, encouragement.*

***cohortor, -ārī, -ātus** [co- + hortor], *incite, encourage; address.*

***collis, -is,** m., *rising ground, hill.*

colō, colere, coluī, cultus, *till; honor, worship.*

colōnia, -ae [colōnus, *husbandman*], f., *colony.*

color, -ōris, m., *color.*

com-, co- [cf. cum], a prefix, *with, together; entirely, thoroughly.*

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus [com- + ūrō, *burn*], *burn up, consume.*

comes, -mitis [com- + eō], m., *companion, comrade.*

comitia, -ōrum [sing. comitium, *place of assembly*], n. pl., *assembly of the people* for voting; *election.*

comitor, -ārī, -ātus [comes], *accompany, follow.*

***commeātus, -ūs** [commeō], m., *going to and fro, trip; supplies, provisions.*

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com- + memorō, *bring to remembrance*], *bring to mind; recount, mention.*

commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com- + mandō], *put under one's protection, intrust, commit, commend.*

commeō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com- + meō, *go*], *go back and forth, go about; go.*

commīlitō, -ōnis [com- + mīles], m., *fellow-soldier.*

comminus [com- + manus], adv., *hand to hand, at close quarters.*

commissūra, -ae [committō], f., *joining, joint.*

***committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus** [com- + mittō], *put together, join, unite; do, act, take measures; risk, intrust; commit; allow, admit;* **proelium committere,** *begin battle.*

Commius, -ī, m., *Commius,* an Atrebatian.

***commodē** [commodus], adv., *well, suitably, conveniently; effectively, profitably; easily.*

***commodum, -ī** [commodus], n., *convenience, profit, advantage, blessing.*

***commodus, -a, -um** [com- + modus], *complete; suitable, convenient, favorable, easy; serviceable, useful.*

commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [commoneō, *remind* + faciō], *remind.*

commoror, -ārī, -ātus [com- + moror], *delay, stay.*

***commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus** [com- + moveō], *disturb, excite, agitate, impel.*

commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [commūnis], *communicate, impart, share; unite; consult.*

commūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [com- + mūniō], *fortify on all sides, make secure; build.*

***commūnis, -e** [com- + mūnus], *common, universal, general, belonging to all; in common.*

***commūtātiō, -ōnis** [commūtō], f., *changing, change; reversal.*

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com- + mūtō, *change*], *change wholly, alter; exchange, replace.*

***comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [com- + parō], *get ready, make ready, prepare, prepare for; provide, procure, acquire, obtain, establish.*

***comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [compār, *like*], *match, compare, count equal.*

***compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus** [com- + pellō], *drive together, collect; drive.*

compendium, -ī [com- + pendō], n., *advantage, gain.*

***comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertus** [com- + √ PER, cf. experior], *learn, find out about, ascertain, detect.*

***compertus, -a, -um** [part. of comperiō], *established, certain.*

***complector, -plectī, -plexus** [com- + plectō, *interweave*], *embrace, include, encircle.*

***compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus** [com- + -pleō, *fill*], *fill up, fill, crowd; occupy, cover.*

complexus, -a, -um, part. of **complector.**

***complūrēs, -a** or **-ia** [com- + plūs], pl. adj., *many, several.*

***comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [com- + portō], *carry together, collect, bring in.*

comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsus [com- + prehendō, *grasp*], *grasp, lay hold of; seize, capture;* **īgnem comprehendere,** *catch fire.*

comprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com- + probō], *approve.*

compulsus, -a, -um, part. of **compellō.**

***cōnātum, -ī** [part. of cōnor], n., *undertaking, attempt.*

cōnātus, -ūs [cōnor], m., *attempt.*

***concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus** [com- + cēdō], *go away; yield, give over, grant; submit; permit.*

(concessus, -ūs), found only in the abl. sing. [concēdō], m., *permission.*

concidō, -cidere, -cidī [com- + cadō], *fall down, fall; be slain.*

***concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus** [com- + caedō], *cut to pieces; cut up, intersect; kill.*

***conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [concilium], *call together; make friendly, reconcile, win over; establish, bring about; gain.*

***concilium, -ī,** n., *assembly, meeting, council.*

concīsus, -a, -um, part. of **concīdō.**

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of conciō, *call together*], *rouse, incite.*

***conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [com- + clāmō, *call*], *cry out, call out, exclaim, shout; call.*

conclūsus, -a, -um [part. of conclūdō, *shut in*], *inclosed.*

Conconnetodumnus, -ī, m., *Conconnetodumnus,* a desperado, of the tribe of the Carnutes.

concrepō, -crepāre, -crepuī, -crepitus [com- + crepō, *rattle*], *clash.*

***concurrō, -currere, -currī** or **-cucurrī, -cursus** [com- + currō, *run*], *run together, run up; rush, hurry; flock.*

concursō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of concurrō], *run to and fro, run about.*

***concursus, -ūs** [concurrō], m., *running together, thronging; encounter, collision; onset, attack; tumult.*

concursus, -a, -um, part. of **concurrō.**

condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com- + damnō], *condemn, convict.*

***condiciō, -ōnis** [com- and cf. dīcō], f., *terms of agreement, condition, terms; proposition; situation, circumstances, state.*

condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com- + dōnō], *remit, forgive, overlook, condone.*

Condrūsī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Condrusi,* a tribe of the Belgae, sometimes classed as Germans. The name survives in Condroz, the name of a tract on the east bank of the Meuse.

***condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus** [com- + dūcō], *lead together, collect, assemble; employ, hire.*

cōnfectus, -a, -um, part. of **cōnficiō.**

***cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus** [com- + ferō], *bring together, collect, convey; compare; defer, put off; contribute; ascribe, attribute;* **culpam cōnferre,** *lay the blame;* **sē cōnferre,** *betake oneself, go.*

*cōnfertus, -a, -um [part. of cōnferciō, *press close together*], *crowded, dense, in dense array.*

*cōnfestim [com- and cf. festīnō, *hasten*], adv., *at once, immediately.*

*cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [com- + faciō], *make, complete, accomplish, perform, finish; make up, muster; wear out, exhaust; dress* (of leather); pass., *go by* (of time), *be over.*

*cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus [com- + fīdō, *trust*], *have confidence in, rely upon, trust, believe; hope.*

cōnfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus [com- + fīgō, *fix*], *fasten together.*

cōnfīnis, -e [com- + fīnis], *bordering, neighboring, next.*

cōnfīnium, -ī [cōnfīnis], n., *border, frontier.*

cōnfīrmātiō, -ōnis [cōnfīrmō], f., *assertion, assurance.*

*cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com- + fīrmō], *strengthen, make firm; encourage, embolden; assert, state, give assurance; confirm, establish, make certain; appoint, set; exhort.*

cōnfīsus, -a, -um, part. of cōnfīdō.

cōnfiteor, -fitērī, -fessus [com- + fateor, *admit*], *confess, admit.*

cōnfīxus, -a, -um, part. of cōnfīgō.

cōnflagrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com- + flagrō, *blaze*], *be on fire, burn up, burn.*

cōnflīctor, -ārī, -ātus [freq. of cōnflīgō], *struggle; be harassed.*

cōnflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctus [com- + flīgō, *strike*], *dash together; fight together, contend.*

cōnfluēns, -entis [part. of cōnfluō], m., *flowing together, confluence.*

cōnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī [com- + fluō], *flow together; flock together, throng.*

cōnfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī [com- + fugiō], *flee, flee for refuge.*

cōnfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus [com- + fundō], *mingle, confuse.*

*congredior, -gredī, -gressus [com- + gradior, *step*], *meet; meet in arms, join battle; meet in friendship, make an alliance.*

congressus, -ūs [congredior], m., *meeting, encounter, engagement.*

congressus, -a, -um, part. of congredior.

*coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [com- + iaciō], *throw together; throw, hurl; station, put; attribute;* in fugam conicere, *put to flight, rout;* sē conicere, *dash, rush.*

coniectūra, -ae [coniciō], f., *guess, conjecture.*

coniectus, -a, -um, part. of coniciō.

coniūnctim [coniungō], adv., *in common, together.*

*coniūnctus, -a, -um [part. of coniungō], *closely joined, allied, associated, connected, having relationship.*

*coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus [com- + iungō], *join together, unite; connect, fasten together;* sē coniungere, *unite.*

coniūnx, -iugis [coniungō], m. and f., *spouse;* esp. frequent as f., *wife.*

coniūrātiō, -ōnis [coniūrō], f., *oath-bound alliance; conspiracy, plot; revolt.*

*coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com- + iūrō], *take oath together; conspire, plot.*

conlātus, -a, -um, part. of cōnferō.

conlaudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com- + laudō], *praise, commend.*

conligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com- + ligō, *tie*], *tie together, fasten together.*

conligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [com- + legō, *gather*], *gather together,*

get together, collect; get; **sē conligere,** *compose oneself, rally, recover, collect one's wits.*

***conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [com- + locō, *place*], *place, station, establish, put; place permanently, settle; give in marriage.*

***conloquium, -ī** [conloquor], n., *conference, conversation, interview.*

***conloquor, -loquī, -locūtus** [com- + loquor], *converse, confer, talk.*

***cōnor, -ārī, -ātus,** *attempt, try, endeavor; venture.*

conquiēscō, -quiēscere, -quiēvī, -quiētus [com- + quiēscō, *rest*], *go to sleep, take rest.*

conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus [com- + quaerō], *seek for, hunt up; bring together, procure.*

***cōnsanguineus, -a, -um** [com- + sanguis], *related by blood;* as subst., m., *kinsman, blood-relation.*

***cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus** [com- + scandō, *climb*], *climb, scale;* with **nāvīs,** *go on board, embark in.*

cōnscientia, -ae [com- + sciō], f., *consciousness, knowledge.*

cōnscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītus [com- + scīscō, *approve*], *approve of, decide upon, decree;* **sibi mortem cōnscīscere,** *commit suicide.*

cōnscius, -a, -um [com- + sciō], *conscious, aware.*

cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus [com- + scrībō], *write; enroll, levy, enlist.*

cōnsecrātus, -a, -um [part. of cōnsecrō, *dedicate*], *sacred, hallowed, consecrated.*

***cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus** [freq. of cōnsequor], *follow closely, overtake, hunt down; pursue.*

cōnsecūtus, -a, -um, part. of **cōnsequor.**

cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis [cōnsentiō], f., *agreement, unanimity.*

cōnsēnsus, -ūs [cōnsentiō], m., *consent, agreement.*

***cōnsentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus** [com- + sentiō], *agree together, conspire; make an agreement.*

***cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus** [com- + sequor], *follow up, follow out, overtake; obtain, secure, attain; pursue, follow.*

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com- + servō], *spare, keep safe, protect; observe, regard.*

Cōnsidius, -ī, m., *Considius,* a Roman nomen; *Publius Considius,* an officer in Caesar's army.

***cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessus** [com- + sīdō, *sit down*], *take a seat; settle, make a home; pitch camp; take a position, station oneself; hold a meeting.*

***cōnsilium, -ī,** n., *consideration; counsel, plan, scheme; decision, purpose, design; advice, consent, authority; shrewdness, judgment, wisdom; meeting for consideration, council.*

cōnsimilis, -e [com- + similis], *very similar, much like.*

***cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī** [com- + sistō, *cause to stand*], *take a stand, be stationed, stand; halt; stay, remain; get a foothold, settle; ground, anchor; consist, depend; be.*

cōnsōbrīnus, -ī [com- + soror], m., *son of a mother's sister, first cousin.*

cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus [com- + sōlor, *comfort*], *console, comfort, encourage.*

***cōnspectus, -ūs** [cōnspiciō], m., *sight, appearance; presence.*

***cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus**

[com- + speciō, *look*], *get a look at, see, behold; observe.*

* **cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus** [cf. cōnspiciō], *get sight of, see, notice.*

cōnspīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com- + spīrō, *breathe*], *agree together; conspire, plot.*

* **cōnstanter** [cōnstāns, part. of cōnstō], adv., *consistently, unanimously; firmly, resolutely.*

cōnstantia, -ae [cōnstāns, part. of cōnstō], f., *firmness, steadfastness, perseverance.*

cōnsternō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *dismay, frighten.*

cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus [com- + sternō, *spread out*], *strew over, spread, cover; floor over.*

cōnstīpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com- + stīpō, *crowd*], *crowd together, pack closely.*

* **cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus** [com- + statuō], *station, arrange, place, put, settle; set up; halt, anchor; appoint, make; finish, accomplish, form; decide, determine, decide upon, plan; declare an intention.*

* **cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus** [com- + stō], *stand together; be unchanged, be evident, be agreed, appear; rest upon, depend upon; be accompanied by, cost.*

cōnstrātus, -a, -um, part. of **cōnsternō.**

* **cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus** [com- + suēscō, *become accustomed*], *become accustomed, form a habit;* in perf. system, *be accustomed, have the habit, be wont.*

* **cōnsuētūdō, -dinis** [cōnsuēscō], f., *custom, habit; manner, way of life; practice; intercourse;* **quam cōnsuētūdō fert,** *than usual.*

cōnsuētus, -a, -um, part. of **cōnsuēscō.**

cōnsul, -ulis, m., *consul,* the highest magistrate of the Roman state; **M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus,** *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso.*

cōnsulātus, -ūs [cōnsul], m., *consul's term; consulship, consulate.*

* **cōnsulō, -sulere, -suluī, -sultus,** *consider together, take counsel, hold a consultation; take thought for, consult for, look out for; spare; consult.*

* **cōnsultō** [cōnsultum], adv., *with intention, purposely, designedly.*

cōnsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of cōnsulō], *take counsel, deliberate, consult.*

* **cōnsultum, -ī** [cōnsulō], n., *decree, decision.*

* **cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus** [com- + sūmō], *use up, eat up, consume, exhaust, waste; overcome, destroy; spend, pass.*

cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctus [com- + surgō, *rise*], *rise in a body, rise, stand up.*

contabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com- + tabula], *build of boards, erect; raise in stories, cover.*

contāgiō, -ōnis [com- + tangō], f., *touching, contact; evil association.*

contāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [contāmen, equivalent to contāgiō], *bring into contact; corrupt.*

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus [com- + tegō], *cover, conceal.*

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptus [com- + temnō, *slight*], *hold of little value, regard lightly, despise.*

contemptiō, -ōnis [contemnō], f., *disregard, scorn, contempt.*

contemptus, **-ūs** [contemnō], m., *despising, contempt.*

***contendō**, **-tendere**, **-tendī**, **-tentus** [com- + tendō], *strain, exert oneself; strive for, attempt, try; hasten, press forward; contend, vie; join battle, fight, quarrel; insist; demand.*

contentiō, **-ōnis** [contendō], f., *effort; struggle, contest, rivalry.*

***contentus**, **-a**, **-um** [part. of contineō], *satisfied, content.*

contentus, **-a**, **-um**, part. of **contendō** and of **contineō.**

contestor, **-ārī**, **-ātus** [com- + testor, *call as a witness*], *call to witness, invoke.*

contexō, **-texere**, **-texuī**, **-textus** [com- + texō, *weave*], *weave together, join together, weave.*

***continēns**, **-entis** [part. of contineō], adj., *contiguous, continuous, uninterrupted, consecutive; temperate;* as subst., f., *continent, mainland.*

***continenter** [continēns], adv., *continuously, uninterruptedly, continually.*

continentia, **-ae** [continēns], f., *self-control, moderation.*

***contineō**, **-tinēre**, **-tinuī**, **-tentus** [com- + teneō], *hold together, keep; restrain, check; surround, shut in, hem in, bound; hold, contain, comprise; fill;* **sē continēre**, *stay, remain.*

contingō, **-tingere**, **-tigī**, **-tāctus** [com- + tangō], *touch, reach, extend to, border on; happen.*

continuātiō, **-ōnis** [continuō, *make continuous*], f., *continuance, duration.*

***continuō** [continuus], adv., *without delay, at once, immediately.*

***continuus**, **-a**, **-um** [com- + teneō], *continuous, successive, without interruption.*

cōntiō, **-ōnis** [for coventiō, cf. conveniō], f., *assembly, council; speech, harangue.*

***contrā** [comparative of com-]: (1) adv., *opposite, fronting; on the other hand, in opposition;* **contrā cōnsistere**, *form an opposing line;* **contrā atque**, *opposite to, otherwise than, differently from;* (2) prep. with acc., *contrary to, opposite, against; turned towards, facing; in spite of; in reply to.*

***contrahō**, **-trahere**, **-trāxī**, **-trāctus** [com- + trahō], *bring together, collect; draw in, contract, make smaller.*

***contrārius**, **-a**, **-um** [contrā], *on the other side, opposite, contrary; opposing;* **ex contrāriō**, *on the contrary.*

contrōversia, **-ae** [contrōversus, *disputed*], f., *dispute, disagreement, quarrel.*

***contumēlia**, **-ae**, f., *insult, abuse, disgrace; buffeting, violence.*

convalēscō, **-valēscere**, **-valuī** [com- + valēscō, *grow strong*, from valeō], *recover health, regain strength.*

convallis, **-is** [com- + vallēs], f., *valley, ravine.*

convehō, **-vehere**, **-vexī**, **-vectus** [com- + vehō, *carry*], *carry together, store.*

***conveniō**, **-venīre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventus** [com- + veniō], *come together, assemble; be set, be agreed upon; be suitable, be necessary; meet, have an interview with.*

***conventus**, **-ūs** [conveniō], m., *meeting, assembly; session of a court, assize, court.*

*convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [com- + vertō], *turn, turn about; alter, change;* **conversa sīgna īnferre,** *wheel and charge.*

Convictolitavis, -is, m., *Convictolitavis,* a prominent Haeduan, rival of Cotus.

convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus [com- + vincō], *overcome; prove beyond doubt.*

*convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com- + vocō], *call together, summon, assemble.*

*coorior, -orīrī, -ortus [co- + orior], *arise, begin, break out; spring up, come up.*

*cōpia, -ae [co- + ops], f., *plenty, abundance, supply, number;* pl., *supplies; resources, riches; soldiers, troops, forces.*

cōpiōsus, -a, -um [cōpia], *abundantly supplied, rich.*

cōpula, -ae, f., *tie, grapnel, grappling-hook.*

cor, cordis, n., *heart;* **cordī esse,** *be pleasing.*

*cōram [co- + ōs], adv., *present, before one's eyes, face to face, in person.*

Coriosolitēs, -um, m. pl., *the Coriosolites,* a maritime tribe in western Gaul.

corium, -ī, n., *skin, hide, leather.*

*cornū, -ūs, n., *horn, antler; wing* (of an army), *flank.*

*corōna, -ae, f., *wreath, chaplet; circle* (of men); **sub corōnā vēndere,** *sell at auction.*

*corpus, -poris, n., *body, person; dead body, corpse.*

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [com- + rumpō, *break*], *break up, destroy, spoil.*

cortex, -ticis, m. and f., *bark.*

Cōrus, -ī, m., *the northwest wind;* the word may be used as an adj. with **ventus.**

Cotta, -ae, m., *Cotta,* a Roman cognomen; see **Aurunculēius.**

*cottīdiānus, -a, -um [cottīdiē], *belonging to every day, daily; usual.*

*cottīdiē [quot + diēs], adv., *daily, every day.*

Cotuatus, -ī, m., *Cotuatus,* a desperado, of the tribe of the Carnutes.

Cotus, -ī, m., *Cotus,* a prominent Haeduan, rival of Convictolitavis.

crassitūdō, -dinis [crassus, *thick*], f., *thickness.*

Crassus, -ī, m., *Crassus,* a Roman cognomen: (1) *Marcus Licinius Crassus,* the triumvir, consul in 55 B.C. See Introd., p. 11. (2) *Marcus Licinius Crassus,* son of (1). He was quaestor with Caesar. (3) *Publius Licinius Crassus,* a younger son of (1). He was one of Caesar's officers.

crātis, -is, f., *fagot, fascine;* pl., *wickerwork.*

*crēber, -bra, -brum, *thick, crowded; frequent; numerous.*

*crēbrō [crēber], adv., *in rapid succession.*

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, *intrust; trust; believe, consider true; think, suppose.*

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *burn, consume.*

*creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *create; appoint, elect.*

Crēs, Crētis, m. adj., *Cretan.* The Cretans were famous archers.

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus [cf. creō], *grow, rise, increase in size, power,* or *dignity; swell.*

Critognātus, -ī, m., *Critognatus,* an Arvernian of high rank.

*cruciātus, -ūs [cruciō, *crucify*], m., *torment, torture.*

crūdēlitās, -ātis [crūdēlis, *cruel*], f., *harshness, cruelty, barbarity.*

crūdēliter [crūdēlis, *cruel*], adv., *cruelly, harshly.*

crūs, crūris, n., *the leg* below the knee, *shank.*

cubīle, -lis [cubō, *lie down*], n., *bed; resting-place.*

culmen, -minis [for columen, cf. collis], n., *summit.*

culpa, -ae, f., *fault, error; blame.*

cultūra, -ae [colō], f., *tillage, cultivation.*

cultus, -ūs [colō], m., *care; training; way of living, civilization.*

***cum** (used as enclitic with certain pronouns) [cf. com-], prep. with abl., *with, in company with, together with, along with; in addition to, besides; at the same time with; against.*

***cum,** conj., *when, while, after, at the time when; whenever, as often as; at such time as, in the circumstances that; since, because; though, although, while;* **cum prīmum,** *as soon as;* **cum . . . tum,** *as . . . so, both . . . and, not only . . . but also, while . . . also.*

cumulus, -ī, m., *heap.*

cunctātiō, -ōnis [cunctor], f., *delay, hesitation.*

***cunctor, -ārī, -ātus,** *delay, hesitate.*

cūnctus, -a, -um, *all collectively, all, the whole of.*

cuneātim [cuneus], adv., *in wedge-shaped formation.*

cuneus, -ī, m., *wedge; wedge-shaped body of troops.* See Introd., p. 45.

cunīculus, -ī, m., *rabbit; underground passage, mine.*

***cupidē** [cupidus], adv., *eagerly, ardently.*

cupiditās, -ātis [cupidus], f., *eagerness, readiness; longing, greed, desire.*

***cupidus, -a, -um** [cupiō], *eager, ready, desirous, fond.*

***cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus,** *desire, wish earnestly; be impatient; wish well to, be interested for.*

***cūr,** interrog. adv., *why? from what motive? for what purpose? wherefore?*

cūra, -ae, f., *care, anxiety, forethought.*

***cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [cūra], *take care of, see to, cause, oversee;* often used with a gerundive, *e.g.* **nāvīs aedificandās cūrāre,** *cause ships to be built, have ships built.*

currus, -ūs [currō, *run*], m., *car, wagon, chariot.*

***cursus, -ūs** [currō, *run*], m., *running, speed; rate of speed; course, voyage; impetus.*

cūstōdia, -ae [cūstōs], f., *watch, guard.*

cūstōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [cūstōs], *watch, guard, hold in custody.*

cūstōs, -ōdis, m., *guard, sentinel, watchman.*

D

D., the abbreviation for the praenomen **Decimus,** *Decimus.*

Dācī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Dacians,* a people living near the Danube River.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [damnum], *find guilty, convict, condemn.*

damnum, -ī, n., *loss, damage.*

Dānuvius, -ī, m., *the Danube* river.

datus, -a, -um, part. of **dō.**

***dē,** prep. with abl., *down from, from, down; away from; out of; about, concerning, of; just after; during, about; in accordance with, in regard to, because of, in*

consequence of, for; **dē imprōvīsō**, *unexpectedly.* In comp., *down, away, off, through, thoroughly;* sometimes has a negative force.

***dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus** [dē + habeō], *keep back, be under obligations to supply, owe;* with inf., *ought, should, must;* pass., *be due.*

***dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus** [dē + cēdō], *go away, depart, withdraw; avoid, shun; die.*

***decem** (X), indecl. adj., *ten.*

dēceptus, -a, -um, part. of **dēcipiō.**

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus [dē + cernō], *judge, pass judgment, give a decision; decide, determine, resolve, appoint.*

***dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [dē + certō, *decide, struggle*], *fight it out, fight to a finish, decide by battle.*

dēcessus, -ūs [dēcēdō], m., *going away, ebbing.*

Decetia, -ae, f., *Decetia*, a town of the Haedui, on the Liger (Loire), now *Decize.*

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī [dē + cadō], *fall down, fall off.*

***decimus, -a, -um** [decem], *tenth;* **decimus quisque**, *one out of every ten;* **tertius decimus**, *thirteenth;* **quārtus decimus**, *fourteenth.*

Decimus, -ī, m., *Decimus*, a Roman praenomen.

***dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus** [dē + capiō], *deceive.*

dēclārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + clārō, *make clear*], *state publicly, declare.*

dēclīvis, -e [dē + clīvus], *sloping downward, inclining;* as subst., n. pl., *slopes, declivities.*

dēclīvitās, -ātis [dēclīvis], f., *incline, downward slope;* **ad dēclīvitātem**, *downward.*

dēcrētum, -ī [part. of dēcernō], n., *decree, decision.*

dēcrētus, -a, -um, part. of **dēcernō.**

decumānus, -a, -um [decimus], *of the tenth;* **porta decumāna**, *decuman gate, rear gate* of a camp, so called because originally the tenth cohorts of the legions were stationed near this gate.

decuriō, -ōnis [decuria, *division of ten*], m., *decurion*, commander of a troop of ten horsemen. See Introd., p. 38.

***dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī** or **-currī, -cursus** [dē + currō, *run*], *run down; hurry, hasten.*

***dēdecus, -coris** [dē + decus, *grace*], n., *disgrace, reproach.*

dēditīcius, -a, -um [dēditus, part. of dēdō], *surrendered;* as subst., m. pl., *prisoners of war, captives.*

***dēditiō, -ōnis** [dēdō], f., *surrender, capitulation;* **in dēditiōnem accipere**, *accept the surrender of, receive in surrender;* **in dēditiōnem venīre**, *surrender.*

***dēditus, -a, -um** [part. of dēdō], *given up, devoted.*

***dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus** [dē + dō], *give up, surrender, yield, abandon; devote.*

***dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus** [dē + dūcō], *lead down, bring down, drive down; draw away, withdraw; draw out; launch; instigate, lead astray, mislead; conduct* (a bride to her husband); *reduce, bring;* **in perīculum dēdūcere**, *endanger.*

dēfatīgātiō, -ōnis [dēfatīgō], f., *weariness, fatigue.*

dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + fatīgō, *weary*], *tire out, exhaust, wear out.*

dēfectiō, -ōnis [dēficiō], f., *falling*

away from allegiance, *desertion, revolt, rebellion.*

***dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus** [dē + -fendō, *strike*], *drive off, ward off, repel, avert; defend, protect; make defense, offer resistance.*

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis [dēfendō], f., *defense.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris [dēfendō], m., *protector, defender;* pl., *guards, garrison, defenses.*

dēfēnsus, -a, -um, part. of **dēfendō.**

***dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus** [dē + ferō], *carry off, drive down, force; bring, carry; confer, grant, give, offer; report, state; propose, lay before;* pass., *drift, fall, be turned aside.*

***dēfessus, -a, -um** [part. of dēfetīscor], *wearied, exhausted, worn out.*

dēfetīscor, -fetīscī, -fessus [dē + fatīscō, *become weary*], *become very weary, be exhausted.*

***dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus** [dē + faciō], *break loose from; revolt; fail, be wanting, cease;* **dēficere ab,** *desert;* **animō dēficere,** *lose heart.*

***dēfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus** [dē + fīgō, *fix*], *set, fix, fasten, drive down.*

dēfīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [dē + fīniō], *set bounds to, limit, define.*

dēfīxus, -a, -um, part. of **dēfīgō.**

dēfore, fut. inf. of **dēsum.**

dēfōrmis, -e [dē + fōrma], *misshapen, deformed, unsightly.*

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī [dē + fugiō], *run away; flee from, shrink from, avoid, shun.*

***dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus** [dē + iaciō], *throw down, overthrow; throw, hurl; drive away, drive; destroy;* **sē dēicere,** *leap down.*

***dēiectus, -a, -um** [part. of dēiciō], *disappointed.*

dēiectus, -ūs [dēiciō], m., *throwing down; declivity, descent;* **lateris dēiectus,** *fall of the side, lateral slope.*

deinceps [dein = deinde + capiō], adv., *taken next, in turn, successively; continuously.*

***deinde** [dē + inde], adv., *afterwards, secondly, next, then; besides, also.*

dēlātus, -a, -um, part. of **dēferō.**

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *delight, please.*

dēlēctus, -a, -um, part. of **dēligō.**

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *blot out, obliterate; destroy, annihilate, overthrow.*

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + lībrō, *weigh*], *weigh carefully; consider, discuss.*

dēlibrō, -āre, -ātus [dē + liber, *inner bark*], *strip of bark, peel.*

dēlīctum, -ī [dēlinquō, *fail*], n., *fault, crime.*

dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + ligō, *tie*], *tie down, make fast, fasten, moor.*

***dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus** [dē + legō, *gather*], *choose, select, detail.*

dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -lituī [dē + latēscō, *hide oneself*], *hide away.*

dēmentia, -ae [dēmēns, *insane*], f., *madness, folly.*

dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messus [dē + metō], *harvest, gather.*

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + migrō, *remove*], *move away, depart, go from home.*

dēminuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtus [dē + minuō], *make less, diminish, reduce; impair; take away.*

dēmissus, -a, -um [part. of dēmittō], *bowed; low.*

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [dē + mittō], *let down, send down, lower; thrust down, sink;* **sē dēmittere**, *descend, march down, go down;* **sē animō dēmittere**, *lose courage.*

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēmptus [dē + emō], *take down.*

* **dēmōnstrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + mōnstrō, *point out*], *point out, show; indicate, designate; mention, speak of, explain.*

dēmoror, -ārī, -ātus [dē + moror], *delay, hinder.*

dēmptus, -a, -um, part. of **dēmō**.

* **dēmum** [dē + sup. ending], adv., *at last, at length.*

dēnegō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + negō], *refuse, deny.*

dēnī, -ae, -a [decem], pl. adj., *ten at a time, by tens; ten each, ten together.*

dēnique, adv., *finally, after all, at last; at least.*

* **dēnsus**, -a, -um, *dense, thick, crowded.*

dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + nūntiō], *announce, declare; direct, order; threaten.*

dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus [dē + pellō], *drive down; drive away, expel; remove, avert.*

dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditus [dē + perdō, *destroy*], *lose.*

dēpereō, -perīre, -periī, -peritūrus [dē + pereō], *go to destruction, be lost, be wrecked.*

* **dēpōnō**, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [dē + pōnō], *lay down, lay aside; put; put by, deposit; give in charge; give up, resign.*

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus [dē + populor], *lay waste, plunder;* the perf. part. often has passive force.

dēportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + portō], *carry away.*

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposcī [dē + poscō], *call for, demand.*

dēpositus, -a, -um, part. of **dēpōnō**.

dēprecātor, -ōris [dēprecor], m., *intercessor, mediator.*

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus [dē + precor, *pray*], *pray off, beg to escape, beg off; implore; ask pardon.*

dēprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsus [dē + prehendō, *grasp*], *seize, catch; overtake, surprise.*

dēpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + pugnō], *fight out, fight to a finish.*

dēpulsus, -a, -um, part. of **dēpellō**.

dērēctē [dērēctus], adv., *straight, vertically.*

dērēctus, -a, -um [part. of dērigō], *straight; upright, vertical.*

dērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus [dē + regō], *lay straight, lay out, arrange;* **aciem dērigere**, *draw up a battle-line.*

dērīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + rīvus], *turn aside, divert.*

dērogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + rogō], *take away, withhold.*

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus [dē + scandō, *climb*], *climb down, descend; lower oneself, stoop, fall, resort.*

dēsecō, -secāre, -secuī, -sectus [dē + secō], *cut off.*

* **dēserō**, -serere, -seruī, -sertus [dē + serō, *bind together*], *leave, abandon, desert, fail.*

dēsertor, -ōris [dēserō], m., *runaway, deserter.*

* **dēsertus**, -a, -um [part. of dēserō], *deserted, lonely.*

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *desire,*

wish, ask for, demand; lack, miss; pass., *be lost.*

dēsidia, -ae [dēses, *inactive*], f., *idleness, indolence.*

dēsīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + sīgnō, *mark*], *mark out, describe, designate.*

* **dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultus** [dē + saliō, *leap*], *leap down, jump down; jump overboard; dismount.*

* **dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitus** [dē + sistō, *cause to stand*], *stand away, desist, give up, leave off, cease.*

dēspectus -a, -um, part. of **dēspiciō.**

dēspectus, -ūs [dēspiciō], m., *downward look, view.*

dēspērātiō, -ōnis [dēspērō], f., *hopelessness, desperation, despair.*

dēspērātus, -a, -um [part. of dēspērō], *hopeless, desperate.*

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + spērō], *be hopeless, despair, give up hope; despair of.*

* **dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus** [dē + speciō, *look*], *look down on; feel contempt for, despise.*

dēspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + spoliō], *rob, despoil.*

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē and cf. stō], *make fast, bind; detail.*

dēstitī, see **dēsistō.**

dēstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus [dē + statuō], *abandon, desert.*

dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus [dē + stringō, *draw tight*], *unsheathe.*

* **dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus** [dē + sum], *fail, be lacking, be needed.*

dēsuper [dē + super, *above*], adv., *from above.*

* **dēterior, -ius** [comp. from dē], *poorer, less.*

* **dēterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus** [dē + terreō], *frighten off; deter, hinder, prevent.*

dētestor, -ārī, -ātus [dē + testor, *call as a witness*], *curse.*

dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [dē + teneō], *detain, delay.*

dētrāctō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + trāctō, *drag*], *decline, shirk.*

* **dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus** [dē + trahō], *take off, pull off; take away, remove, seize.*

dētrīmentōsus, -a, -um [dētrīmentum], *hurtful, detrimental.*

* **dētrīmentum, -ī** [dēterō, *rub off*], n., *loss, injury; defeat.*

dēturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + turbō, *throw into confusion*], *drive down; overthrow, dislodge.*

deūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus [dē + ūrō, *burn*], *burn down.*

deus, -ī, m., *god, divinity.*

deūstus, -a, -um, part. of **deūrō.**

dēvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus [dē + vehō, *carry*], *carry down, carry away, convey, bring.*

* **dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus** [dē + veniō], *come, arrive.*

dēvexus, -a, -um, *sloping, steep.*

dēvincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus [dē + vincō], *overpower completely, vanquish.*

dēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + vocō], *call down;* in **dubium dēvocāre**, *endanger, risk.*

dēvōtus, -a, -um [part. of dēvoveō], *devoted, attached;* as subst., m., *faithful follower.*

dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtus [dē + voveō], *devote, sacrifice.*

* **dexter, -tera** or **-tra, -terum** or **-trum**, *on the right, right;* as subst., **dextra, -ae** (sc. **manus**), f., *right hand.*

dī-, see **dis-.**

Diablintēs, -um, m. pl., *Diablintes;* see **Aulercus.**

(dicīō), -ōnis [cf. dīcō], f., *bidding, sway, rule.*

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *proclaim; dedicate, devote, give up.*

* **dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus**, *speak, say; state, plead; talk, mention; appoint, arrange, set;* **iūs dīcere**, *pronounce judgment.*

dictiō, -ōnis [dīcō], f., *speaking, pleading.*

* **dictum, -ī** [part. of dīcō], n., *word, assertion; command;* **dictō audiēns**, *obedient to the word, obedient.*

dīdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [dī- + dūcō], *lead apart; divide, distribute; lead in different directions.*

* **diēs, -ēī**, m., sometimes f. in sing., *day, daytime; time, space of time; opportunity;* **multō diē**, *late in the day;* **diem ex diē**, *from day to day, day after day;* **ad diem**, *on the day, on time;* **in diēs**, *daily, from day to day;* **postrīdiē ēius diēī**, *next day;* **post diem tertium**, *the next day but one;* **in longiōrem diem**, *until a later day.*

* **differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus** [dis- + ferō], *spread, scatter; put off, defer; differ;* **inter sē differre**, *differ from one another.*

difficilis, -e [dis- + facilis], *difficult, hard; hard to pass through; laborious, perilous.*

* **difficultās, -ātis** [difficilis], f., *difficulty, perplexity, hardship; crisis, strait; want, embarrassment.*

difficulter [difficilis], adv., *with difficulty;* comp. **difficilius**, *with greater* (or *too great*) *difficulty.*

diffīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus [dis- + fīdō, *trust*], *distrust, be distrustful; despair.*

diffluō, -fluere, -flūxī [dis- + fluō], *flow apart, branch.*

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus [dis- + fundō], *spread out, extend.*

digitus, -ī, m., *finger; finger's breadth;* **digitus pollex**, *thumb.*

dignitās, -ātis [dignus], f., *worth, character; reputation, eminence, dignity, honor; authority; self-respect.*

dignus, -a, -um, *worthy, deserving.*

diiūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dī- + iūdicō], *distinguish, determine.*

dīlēctus, -ūs [dīligō], m., *choosing; levy, enrollment, conscription.*

dīlēctus, -a, -um, part. of **dīligō.**

* **dīligenter** [dīligēns, *industrious*], adv., *attentively, with painstaking, carefully, diligently.*

dīligentia, -ae [dīligēns, *industrious*], f., *industry, watchfulness, care, earnestness, diligence.*

* **dīligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus** [dī- + legō, *gather*], *single out; value, love.*

dīmētior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus [dī- + mētior], *measure, lay out;* the perf. part. often has passive force.

dīmicātiō, -ōnis [dīmicō], f., *fight, struggle.*

* **dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [dī- + micō, *shake*], *fight, strive, contend.*

dīmidius, -a, -um [dī- + medius], *half;* as subst., n., *half.*

* **dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus** [dī- + mittō], *send in different directions, send about, send out; dismiss, send away; let slip, lose; give up, abandon.*

dīreptus, -a, -um, part. of **dīripiō.**

dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [dis-

+ emō], *break up, interrupt, end.*

dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [dī- + rapiō, *snatch*], *tear to pieces; plunder, pillage.*

dis- (**dī-**) [akin to duo], an inseparable prefix, *apart, away, in different directions; between, among;* sometimes has a negative force.

Dīs, Dītis, m., *Dis,* or *Pluto,* the god of the underworld. Caesar identifies one of the Gallic divinities with this god.

* **discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus** [dis- + cēdō], *go in different directions, disperse, scatter; go away, depart, decamp;* with **ab,** *abandon, forsake.*

disceptātor, -ōris [disceptō, *decide*], m., *arbitrator, umpire.*

discernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus [dis- + cernō], *distinguish, determine.*

* **discessus, -ūs** [discēdō], m., *departure, withdrawal; marching away, decamping.*

disciplīna, -ae [discipulus, *learner*], f., *instruction, training, education, discipline; doctrine.*

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [dis- + claudō], *hold apart, shut off, separate.*

discō, discere, didicī, *learn, be taught.*

discrīmen, -minis [discernō]. n., *that which parts; decisive moment, crisis.*

discutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus [dis- + quatiō, *shake*], *break up, clear away.*

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [dis- + iaciō], *drive apart; disperse, scatter.*

dispār, -aris [dis- + pār], adj., *unlike, unequal, ill-matched.*

disparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dis- + parō], *part, separate.*

* **dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersus** [dis- + spargō, *strew*], *scatter, disperse.*

dispiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [dis- + speciō, *look*], *descry, perceive.*

* **dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus** [dis- + pōnō], *put in different places, station here and there; arrange, assign, post.*

disputātiō, -ōnis [disputō], f., *argument, discussion.*

disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dis- + putō], *investigate, discuss, argue.*

dissēnsiō, -ōnis [dissentiō], f., *difference of opinion; dissension, strife.*

dissentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus [dis- + sentiō], *think differently, dissent, disagree.*

disserō, -serere, -sēvī, -situs [dis- + serō], *set here and there.*

dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dis- + simulō], *disguise, keep secret, conceal.*

dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dis- + supō, *throw*], *scatter, disperse, put to flight.*

dissuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus [dis- + suādeō, *urge*], *advise against, dissuade.*

distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [dis- + teneō], *keep apart; hold back, hinder, prevent.*

* **distō, -stāre, -stitī** [dis- + stō], *stand apart, be distant.*

distrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [dis- + trahō], *pull to pieces, tear away.*

* **distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtus** [dis- + tribuō], *divide, distribute; assign, apportion.*

distulī, see **differō.**

dītissimus, -a, -um, sup. of **dīves.**

* **diū**, adv., *a long time, long;* **quam diū**, *as long as.*

diurnus, -a, -um [diēs], *pertaining to the day, by day.*

diūtinus, -a, -um [diū], *long continued, permanent.*

diūtius, diūtissimē, comp. and sup. of **diū.**

diūturnitās, -ātis [diūturnus], f., *long continuance, long duration.*

diūturnus, -a, -um [diū], *long, enduring.*

dīversus, -a, -um [part. of dīvertō, *turn away*], *turned different ways, facing in the opposite direction; straggling, scattered; different, separate, separated, distant.*

dīves, -vitis (also **dīs, dītis**), adj., *rich, wealthy, opulent.*

Dīviciācus, -ī, m., *Diviciacus:* (1) a druid, one of the Haedui. He was brother of Dumnorix, but, unlike the latter, was friendly to the Romans; (2) a king of the Suessiones.

Dīvicō, -ōnis, m., *Divico*, a leader among the Helvetii.

* **dīvidō, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsus,** *divide, separate, scatter; send in different directions.*

dīvīnus, -a, -um [dīvus, *divine*], *belonging to the gods, coming from the gods, divine, sacred.*

* **dīvīsus, -ā, -um** [part. of dīvidō], *divided.*

* **dō, dare, dedī, datus,** *give, grant, furnish, present; assign, impose, allot; afford, cause; offer; give up, allow;* **inter sē dare,** *exchange;* **in mātrimōnium dare,** *give in marriage;* **in mandātīs dare,** *order, commission;* **dare negōtium,** *give as a task, direct;* **dare operam,** *exert oneself, do one's utmost;* **recessum dare,** *make way;* **dare suspīciōnem,** *arouse suspicion;* **in fugam dare,** *put to flight;* **manūs dare,** *yield, submit.*

* **doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus,** *teach, show; inform, tell, mention, relate.*

documentum, -ī [doceō], n., *lesson, example, warning.*

* **doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus,** *suffer, grieve, lament, mourn.*

dolor, -ōris [doleō], m., *suffering, pain, grief; annoyance, resentment, anger, indignation, chagrin.*

dolus, -ī, m., *device; deceit, trickery.*

domesticus, -a, -um [domus], *belonging to a home; domestic, civil; native.*

domicilium, -ī [domus], n., *home, dwelling-place.*

dominor, -ārī, -ātus [dominus], *be master, bear sway.*

dominus, -ī [domus], m., *master, owner, lord.*

Domitius, -ī, m., *Domitius*, a Roman nomen; *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul in 54 B.C., with Appius Claudius.

Domnotaurus, -ī, m., *Domnotaurus;* see **Valerius.**

* **domus, -ūs**, f., *house; family; home; country.*

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dōnum], *give, present.*

dōnum, -ī [dō], n., *gift, present; bribe.*

dorsum, -ī, n., *back; ridge, summit.*

dōs, dōtis [dō], f., *marriage portion, dowry.*

druidēs, -um [Celtic, *true* or *wise*], m. pl., *druids*, the priests of the religion of Gaul and Britain. See Introd., p. 27.

Dubis, -is, m., *the Dubis*, a river of Gaul flowing into the Arar (Saône), now *the Doubs.*

dubitātiō, -ōnis [dubitō], f., *doubt, uncertainty; hesitancy.*

***dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [dubius], *doubt, be uncertain; hesitate, delay.*

dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful, uncertain, undetermined;* **nōn est dubium quīn,** *there is no doubt that;* **in dubium dēvocāre,** *endanger, risk.*

***ducentī, -ae, -a** (CC) [duo + centum], pl. adj., *two hundred.*

***dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus,** *lead, conduct, guide; lead out, marshal; bring, take; construct, extend; prolong, put off; consider, reckon, hold, think;* **in mātrimōnium dūcere** (sometimes **dūcere** alone), *lead home as a bride, marry.*

ductus, -ūs [dūcō], m., *leading, leadership, command.*

***dum,** conj., *while; as long as; until.*

Dumnorīx, -īgis [Celtic, *grand king*], m., *Dumnorix,* a Haeduan, brother of Diviciacus.

***duo, -ae, -o** (II), adj., *two.*

***duodecim** (XII) [duo + decem], indecl. adj., *twelve.*

duodecimus, -a, -um [duodecim], *twelfth.*

duodēnī, -ae, -a [duodecim], pl. adj., *twelve each, twelve apiece, by twelves, twelve together.*

duodēseptuāgintā (LXVIII) [duo + dē + septuāgintā], indecl. adj., *sixty-eight.*

duodētrīgintā (XXVIII) [duo + dē + trīgintā], indecl. adj., *twenty-eight.*

duodēvīgintī (XVIII) [duo + dē + vīgintī], indecl. adj., *eighteen.*

***duplex, -plicis** [duo + plangō, *strike*], adj., *twofold, double.*

duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [duplex], *double.*

dūritia, -ae [dūrus], f., *hardness, hardship.*

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dūrus], *harden, make hardy.*

Durocortorum, -ī, n., *Durocortorum,* an important town of the Remi, from whose name comes the modern name of the town, *Rheims.*

***dūrus, -a, -um,** *hard; severe, inclement; difficult; adverse.*

Dūrus, -ī, m., *Durus,* a Roman cognomen; see **Laberius.**

***dux, ducis** [dūcō], m., *leader, guide; commander, general; chief, ruler.*

E

ē, see **ex.**

***eā** [abl. f. of is; sc. viā], adv., *that way, on that side, there.*

Eburōnēs, -um, m. pl., *the Eburones,* a tribe of the Belgae, sometimes classed as Germans.

Eburovīcēs, -um, m. pl., *Eburovices;* see **Aulercus.**

ēdiscō, -discere, -didicī [ē + discō], *learn thoroughly, learn by heart.*

***ēditus, -a, -um** [part. of ēdō], *elevated, rising, high.*

***ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus** [ē + -dō, *put*], *put forth, display; inflict.*

ēdoceō, -docēre, -docuī, -doctus [ē + doceō], *teach thoroughly; inform, instruct, show.*

***ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus** [ē + dūcō], *lead out, lead forth;* **gladium ēdūcere,** *draw a sword.*

effarciō, -farcīre, -farsī, -fertus [ex + farciō, *stuff*], *fill out, fill up.*

effēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex + fēmina], *make effeminate, weaken.*

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus [ex + ferō], *carry out, take away; make public, announce, report,*

tell; lift up, raise; encourage, elate.

***efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus** [ex + faciō], *accomplish, do; finish, complete; effect, cause, bring about, produce, render; make, construct; muster, furnish;* **commeātūs ut portārī possent efficiēbat,** *made it possible for supplies to be brought.*

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus [ex + fodiō], *dig out, tear out.*

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī [ex + fugiō], *flee from, escape, shun.*

effundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus [ex + fundō], *pour out;* **sē effundere,** *rush.*

egēns, -entis [part. of egeō], adj., *needy, poor, destitute.*

egeō, egēre, eguī, *be in want; lack, need.*

egestās, -ātis [egēns], f., *indigence, poverty.*

***ego, meī,** pers. pron., *I;* sometimes used reflexively in the oblique cases, **mē,** *myself,* **nōs,** *ourselves;* **nōsmet,** see **-met.**

***ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus** [ē + gradior, *step*], *go out, march out; go beyond, leave; disembark, land.*

***ēgregiē** [ēgregius], adv., *excellently, remarkably well.*

***ēgregius, -a, -um** [ē + grex, *herd*], *excellent, admirable.*

ēgressus, -a, -um, part. of **ēgredior.**

ēgressus, -ūs [ēgredior], m., *going out, disembarkation.*

ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [ē + iaciō], *drive out, expel, eject, banish; throw, cast; strand;* **sē ēicere,** *rush out, break out.*

ēlābor, -lābī, -lāpsus [ē + lābor], *slip away, escape.*

ēlātus, -a, -um, part. of **efferō.**

Elaver, -eris, n., *the Elaver* river, a branch of the Liger (Loire), now *the Allier.*

ēlēctus, -a, -um [part. of ēligō, *pick out*], *picked, select, excellent, choice.*

elephantus, -ī, m., *elephant.*

Eleutetī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Eleuteti,* a small Gallic tribe living, perhaps, near the Cadurci.

ēliciō, -licere, -licuī, -licitus [ē + laciō, *entice*], *lure out, entice.*

Elusātēs, -ium, m. pl., *the Elusates,* a tribe in Aquitania.

ēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ē + migrō, *remove*], *move away, go forth.*

ēmineō, -minēre, -minuī, *stand out, project.*

ēminus [ē + manus], adv., *from a distance, at a distance.*

ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [ē + mittō], *send out, send forth; throw; let go, throw away.*

***emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus,** *buy.*

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus [ē + nāscor], *grow out, sprout out.*

***enim** (always postpositive), conj., *in fact, to be sure; for.*

***ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [ē + nūntiō], *tell in public, announce, disclose.*

***eō** [is], adv., *thither, to that place; to that point; to such a point, so far, to such an extent; thereon; to this* or *that end.*

***eō, īre, īvī (iī), itūrus,** *go, walk, march, travel;* used impersonally in pass., *e.g.* **ītur,** *a march is made;* with a supine **īrī** forms a fut. pass. inf.

***eōdem** [īdem], adv., *to the same place; to the same end* or *purport.*

ephippiātus, -a, -um [ephippium], *provided with saddle-cloths, using saddle-cloths.*

ephippium, -ī, n., *saddle-cloth, housing.*

epistula, -ae, f., *letter, written message.*

Eporēdorīx, -īgis, m., *Eporedorix:* (1) a Haeduan of high rank; (2) a Haeduan general.

epulae, -ārum, f. pl., *feast.*

***eques**, -quitis [equus], m., *horseman, rider; trooper; member of the equestrian order, knight;* pl., *cavalry.*

***equester**, -tris, -tre [eques], *equestrian, of cavalry, cavalry.*

***equitātus**, -ūs [eques], m., *cavalry, body of horsemen.*

***equus**, -ī, m., *horse;* **ex equīs**, *on horseback;* **in equum īnferre**, *place on a horse.*

Eratosthenēs, -is, m., *Eratosthenes*, a learned Greek of the third century B.C. He won distinction as an astronomer, geographer, philosopher, and grammarian.

ērēctus, -a, -um [part. of ērigō], *set up, upright, lofty.*

ēreptus, -a, -um, part. of **ēripiō**.

ergā, prep. with acc., *towards, in relation to.*

ergō, adv., *consequently;* **quid ergō**? *what, then?*

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus [ē + regō], *raise up, lift;* **ērigere sēsē**, *rise.*

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [ē + rapiō, *snatch*], *tear away, take away; snatch, seize; rescue;* pass., *be lost* or *destroyed;* **sē ēripere**, *break away, escape.*

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wander; be mistaken.*

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [ē + rumpō, *break*], *cause to break out; rush forth.*

***ēruptiō**, -ōnis [ērumpō], f., *breaking forth; sally, sortie, rush, raid.*

essedārius, -ī [essedum], m., *fighter in an essedum, charioteer.*

essedum, -ī, n., *essedum, war-chariot,* used by the Britons.

Esuviī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Esuvii*, a maritime tribe of northwestern Gaul.

***et**, conj., *and;* often, especially after a negative, *but; also, even;* **et . . . et**, *both . . . and, not only . . . but also.*

***etiam** [et + iam], adv., *now too, even now, still; also, besides; even;* **nōn sōlum (nōn modo) . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also;* **quīn etiam**, *nay more, besides, furthermore.*

***etsī** [et + sī], conj., *even if, although.*

***ēvādō**, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsus [ē + vādō, *go*], *go out, escape.*

ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsus [ē + vellō, *pluck*], *pull out.*

***ēveniō**, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus [ē + veniō], *come out, turn out, happen.*

***ēventus**, -ūs [ēveniō], m., *outcome, event, result, issue; accident, fate, lot.*

***ēvocātus**, -a, -um [part. of ēvocō], *called out;* as subst., m., *reënlisted veteran.* See Introd., p. 34.

***ēvocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ē + vocō], *call away, summon; call out, challenge; invite.*

ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ē + volō, *fly*], *fly out, rush forth.*

***ex, ē** (ē only before consonants, **ex** before vowels and consonants), prep. with abl., *out of, from; from among, of; immediately after, after, since; in accordance with, in consequence of, by; of* (made of); *in, on;* **ex omnī parte**, *on*

every side, on all sides; **ex vinculīs,** *in chains;* **ex equīs,** *on horseback;* **ex contrāriō,** *on the other hand;* **diem ex diē,** *from day to day, day after day;* **ūnus ē fīliīs,** *one of the sons;* **ē regiōne,** *opposite;* **ex parte,** *to some extent, in some degree;* **magnā ex parte,** *in great measure;* **quā ex parte,** *in which respect;* **ex ūsū,** *to the advantage, advantageous.* In comp., *out, from, thoroughly;* sometimes has a negative force.

exāctus, -a, -um, part. of **exigō.**

exagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex + agitō], *drive about; harass.*

exāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [exāmen, *tongue of a balance*], *weigh, test.*

***exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [exanimus, *breathless*], *put out of breath, fatigue, exhaust; kill.*

exārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsī, -ārsus [ex + ārdēscō, *take fire*], *blaze forth, rage.*

exaudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [ex + audiō], *hear clearly, hear.*

***excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus** [ex + cēdō], *go out, go forth, withdraw, depart, retire.*

excellō, -cellere, -celluī, -celsus, *be eminent, be superior.*

excelsus, -a, -um [part. of excellō], *elevated, high.*

exceptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of excipiō], *take up, catch up.*

exceptus, -a, -um, part. of **excipiō.**

excīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [ex + caedō], *cut out; cut down, destroy.*

***excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus** [ex + capiō], *take out; capture, intercept; receive; bear, take, endure, meet; pick up; relieve, take the place of; follow, succeed;* **clāmōrem excipere,** *take up the cry.*

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of exciō, *call out*], *call forth; rouse, incite, kindle; erect, build up, raise.*

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [ex + claudō], *shut out; hinder, prevent.*

excōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex + cōgitō], *think out, consider.*

excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex + cruciō, *crucify*], *torture, rack.*

excubitor, -ōris [excubō], m., *watchman, sentinel.*

excubō, -cubāre, -cubuī, -cubitus [ex + cubō, *lie*], *lie out on guard, keep watch.*

exculcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex + calcō, *tread*], *tread down, stamp firm.*

excursiō, -ōnis [excurrō, *run out*], f., *sortie, sally.*

excūsātiō, -ōnis [excūsō], f., *excuse, explanation, apology.*

excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex + causa], *excuse;* **sē excūsāre,** *offer an excuse.*

exemplum, -ī [eximō, *take out*], n., *sample, example; precedent; way, manner.*

***exeō, -īre, -īvī(-iī), -itus** [ex + eō], *go out, march out, depart, withdraw.*

exerceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus [ex + arceō, *inclose*], *drive on, keep at work, occupy; train, discipline, exercise.*

***exercitātiō, -ōnis** [exercitō, *exercise diligently*], f., *exercise, practice, training; experience, skill.*

exercitātus, -a, -um [part. of exercitō, *exercise diligently*], *trained, experienced, practised.*

***exercitus, -ūs** [exerceō], m., *trained force of men, army; infantry.*

exhauriō, -haurīre, -hausī, -haustus

[ex + hauriō, *draw*], *draw out, remove.*

exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [ex + agō], *drive out; spend, pass;* **exācta aestās erat,** *summer was gone.*

exiguē [exiguus], adv., *scarcely, hardly.*

exiguitās, -ātis [exiguus], f., *scantiness, shortness, smallness; small numbers.*

exiguus, -a, -um [exigō], *small, inconsiderable, scanty, little.*

eximius, -a, -um [eximō, *take out*], *exceptional, extraordinary, excellent.*

exīstimātiō, -ōnis [exīstimō], f., *judgment, opinion, thought; repute.*

***exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [ex + aestimō], *think, suppose; estimate, consider.*

exitus, -a, -um, part. of **exeō.**

exitus, -ūs [exeō], m., *departure; exit, way out; end, conclusion; result, outcome.*

***expediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus** [ex + pēs], *unfetter, extricate, disentangle; make ready, put in order.*

expedītiō, -ōnis [expediō], f., *getting ready; expedition, raid.*

***expedītus, -a, -um** [part. of expediō], *unencumbered, lightly equipped, without luggage; free, unembarrassed, easy.*

***expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus** [ex + pellō], *drive out, eject, banish, expel; dispel, remove.*

***experior, -perīrī, -pertus** [ex + √PER, cf. comperiō], *try, attempt; experience, endure, meet.*

expiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex + piō, *appease*], *atone for, expiate.*

expleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus [ex + -pleō, *fill*], *fill up; make up, complete; supply, make good.*

***explōrātor, -ōris** [explōrō], m., *explorer; scout.*

***explōrātus, -a, -um** [part. of explōrō], *ascertained, assured, certain;* **prō explōrātō habēre,** *hold it as certain, be sure.*

***explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [ex + plōrō, *cry out*], *search out, explore, investigate, examine; reconnoiter.*

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [ex + pōnō], *put out; set on shore, disembark; expose, exhibit, display; set forth, tell, show, point out.*

exportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex + portō], *carry out.*

exposcō, -poscere, -poposcī [ex + poscō], *ask earnestly, request, demand.*

exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [ex + premō], *force out, extort; carry up.*

expugnātiō, -ōnis [expugnō], f., *taking by assault, storming, capture.*

***expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [ex + pugnō], *take by storm, capture, overcome.*

expulsus, -a, -um, part. of **expellō.**

exquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus [ex + quaerō], *search out, explore; inquire into, ask.*

exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus [ex + sequor], *follow up, enforce.*

exserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus [ex + serō, *bind together*], *thrust out, uncover.*

exsistō, -sistere, -stitī [ex + sistō, *cause to stand*], *come forth, appear; arise, be produced, spring up; project.*

***exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [ex + spectō], *look out for, await, wait for; expect, hope for; wait, delay;* **exspectāre sī,** *wait to see whether;*

exspectāre quid, *wait to see what.*

exspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex + spoliō], *rob, deprive.*

exstinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus [ex + stinguō, *put out*], *quench, destroy.*

exstō, -stāre [ex + stō], *stand forth.*

***exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus** [ex + struō, *pile up*], *pile up, heap up; build up, erect, construct.*

exsul, -ulis, m., *banished person, exile.*

exterior, -ius [comp. of exterus, *on the outside*], *outer, exterior, on the outside.*

exterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus [ex + terreō], *strike with terror, frighten thoroughly.*

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī [ex + inchoative of timeō], *fear greatly.*

extorqueō, -torquēre, -torsī, -tortus [ex + torqueō, *twist*], *obtain by force, extort.*

extrā [exterus, *on the outside*], prep. with acc., *outside of, beyond.*

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [ex + trahō], *draw out; waste in delay.*

***extrēmus, -a, -um** [sup. of exterus, *on the outside*], *most distant, farthest, last, utmost, extreme; end of; border, frontier;* **extrēmum agmen,** *rear;* **extrēmae fossae,** *ends of the trenches;* **extrēmae rēs, extrēma fortūna,** *utmost peril;* **ad extrēmum,** *finally.*

extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsus [ex + trūdō, *thrust*], *thrust out, shut out.*

exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [cf. induō], *strip off; strip, rob, despoil.*

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus [ex + ūrō, *burn*], *destroy by fire, burn up.*

exūtus, -a, -um, part. of **exuō.**

F

faber, -brī, m., *workman, smith, artisan.*

Fabius, -ī, m., *Fabius,* a Roman nomen. Caesar mentions three of the name: (1) *Gaius Fabius,* a legate; (2) *Lucius Fabius,* a centurion of the eighth legion; (3) *Quintus Fabius Maximus,* conqueror of the Arverni and Ruteni, 121 B.C. He also conquered the Allobroges, and from this fact received the surname *Allobrogicus.*

***facile** [facilis], adv., *easily, without difficulty; safely; unquestionably.*

***facilis, -e** [faciō], *easy to do, practicable, easy.*

facinus, -noris [faciō], n., *deed; villainy, crime.*

***faciō, facere, fēcī, factus** (for pass., see **fīō**), *make, construct, fashion, form; do, act; establish; give, furnish; cause, incite; constitute, appoint; obtain;* **fidem facere,** *establish confidence, convince, be believed;* **imperāta facere,** *carry out orders;* **potestātem facere,** *give a chance;* **certiōrem facere,** see **certus;** **fīnem facere,** *stop, put an end to;* **initium facere,** *begin;* **iter facere,** *march;* **iūdicium facere,** *pass judgment, express an opinion;* **facere verba,** *make a speech, act as spokesman;* **vim facere,** *make opposition, force a way;* **sēmentīs quam maximās facere,** *sow as much as possible;* **nihil reliquī facere,** *leave nothing undone* (**ad celeritātem,** i.e. *make all possible*

speed); **reī pūblicae commodō facere**, *do so with advantage to the state;* **facere ut**, *cause* (something) *to* (be done).

factiō, -ōnis [faciō], f., *taking sides; faction, party.*

***factum, -ī** [part. of faciō], n., *deed, act, measure.*

***facultās, -ātis** [facilis], f., *ability, power; opportunity, chance, occasion, leave; supply, abundance;* pl., *resources.*

fāgus, -ī, f., *beech-tree.*

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsus, *deceive, cheat, trick; fail, disappoint.*

falsus, -a, -um [part. of fallō], *false, groundless.*

falx, falcis, f., *sickle; hook, wall-hook.*

fāma, -ae [for, *speak*], f., *story, rumor, report; reputation, repute.*

famēs, -is, abl. **famē**, f., *hunger, want, famine.*

familia, -ae [famulus, *servant*], f., *collection of slaves, household, retinue; vassals, followers; family;* **pater familiae**, *head of the household, master.*

***familiāris, -e** [familia], *belonging to a house* or *family, private;* **rēs familiāris**, *private possessions;* as subst., m., *intimate friend, associate.*

familiāritās, -ātis [familiāris], f., *intimacy, friendship.*

fās, indecl., found only in nom. and acc. [for, *speak*], n., *divine law; justice, right;* **fās esse**, *be lawful, be proper.*

fastīgātē [fastīgātus], adv., *slanting, leaning.*

fastīgātus, -a, -um [cf. fastīgium], *sloping, descending.*

fastīgium, -ī, n., *gable-end; top, ridge, summit; slope, declivity;* **paulātim angustiōre fastīgiō**, *with a gradually narrowing slope.*

fātum, -ī [part. of for, *speak*], n., *destiny, fate; ill fortune.*

***faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus**, *be well disposed toward, show favor to, favor.*

fax, facis, f., *torch, firebrand.*

fefellī, see **fallō**.

fēlīcitās, -ātis [fēlīx, *fruitful*], f., *good fortune, prosperity, success.*

fēlīciter [fēlīx, *fruitful*], adv., *fortunately, successfully.*

fēmina, -ae, f., *female; woman.*

femur, -moris or **-minis**, n., *thigh.*

fera, -ae [ferus], f., *wild animal, beast.*

ferāx, -ācis [ferō], adj., *fruitful, fertile.*

***ferē**, adv., *nearly, almost, about; generally, usually; chiefly.*

***ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**, *bear, carry, bring; endure, suffer, meet; carry away, remove; receive, bear off, win; declare, report; offer;* pass., *rush, flow;* **sīgna ferre**, *march forward, advance, start from camp;* **graviter** or **molestē ferre**, *feel indignation at, take hard;* **ventus ferēbat**, *the wind was blowing;* **condiciōnem ferre**, *propose terms, lay down conditions;* **ut cōnsuētūdō fert**, *as custom is;* **ut fert illōrum opīniō**, *as they think.*

ferrāmenta, -ōrum [ferrum], n. pl., *tools made of iron.*

ferrāria, -ae [ferrum], f., *iron-mine.*

***ferreus, -a, -um** [ferrum], *made of iron, iron.*

ferrum, -ī, n., *iron; weapon, sword.*

fertilis, -e [ferō], *fertile, fruitful.*

fertilitās, -ātis [fertilis], f., *fertility.*

***ferus, -a, -um**, *wild, savage; fierce, cruel.*

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [ferveō + faciō], *make hot.*

fervefactus, -a, -um [part. of fervefaciō], *hot, burning, boiling.*

fervēns, -entis [part. of ferveō], adj., *red-hot, hot.*

ferveō, -ēre, *be hot.*

fībula, -ae [īgō, *fix*], f., *fastening, brace, clasp.*

fictus, -a, -um, part. of **fingō.**

fidēlis, -e [fidēs], *trustworthy, faithful.*

***fidēs, -eī** [fīdō, *trust*], f., *trust, faith, confidence, belief, reliance; trustworthiness, fidelity, loyalty, good faith; protection, promise to protect; word, pledge, assurance.*

fīdūcia, -ae [fīdō, *trust*], f., *trust, confidence, reliance.*

figūra, -ae [fingō], f., *form, shape, fashion.*

***fīlia, -ae,** f., *daughter.*

***fīlius, -ī,** m., *son.*

***fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus,** *mold, model, fashion, make; make up, imagine, conceive, devise;* **vultum fingere;** *compose the countenance, control the expression.*

fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [fīnis], *limit, bound, put an end to, end; mark off, define, determine.*

***fīnis, -is,** m., occasionally f. in sing., *boundary, limit, end;* pl., *borders, frontier; country, territory, land.*

***fīnitimus, -a, -um** [fīnis], *bordering, adjacent, neighboring;* as subst., m. pl., *neighbors, adjoining peoples.*

***fiō, fierī, factus,** used as pass. of **faciō,** *be made, be done, be built, be formed, be accomplished; become; happen, take place, come about; result;* **certior fierī,** *be informed;* **sī quid opus factō esset,** *if there was any need of action.*

***fīrmiter** [fīrmus], adv., *steadily, firmly.*

fīrmitūdō, -dinis [fīrmus], f., *firmness, stability, strength.*

fīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [fīrmus], *make secure, strengthen.*

***fīrmus, -a, -um,** *strong, powerful; stable, firm, steady; trustworthy.*

fistūca, -ae, f., *rammer, pile-driver.*

Flaccus, -ī, m., *Flaccus,* a Roman cognomen; see **Valerius.**

***flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *demand urgently, importune.*

flamma, -ae [for flagma, from flagrō, *blaze*], f., *flame, fire.*

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus, *bend, turn.*

***fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus,** *weep, bewail.*

flētus, -ūs [fleō], m., *weeping, lamenting.*

flō, flāre, flāvī, flātus, *blow.*

***flōrēns, -entis** [part. of flōreō, *bloom*], adj., *flourishing, prosperous; influential.*

flōs, flōris, m., *blossom, flower.*

***flūctus, -ūs** [fluō], m., *wave.*

***flūmen, -minis** [fluō], n., *running water, river;* **adversō flūmine,** *up-stream;* **secundō flūmine,** *down-stream;* **in flūmine,** *over a river* (as a bridge).

***fluō, fluere, flūxī, flūxus,** *flow, run.*

fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossus, *dig, make by digging.*

foedus, -deris [fīdō, *trust*], n., *alliance, compact, treaty.*

fore, equivalent to **futūrus esse,** from **sum.**

forem, equivalent to **essem,** from **sum.**

forīs [foris, *door*], adv., *out of doors, outside.*

fōrma, -ae, f., *form, shape, appearance; plan, design.*

fors (fortis) [cf. ferō], f., *chance, fortune;* abl. **forte**, *by chance, perhaps.*

***fortis, -e**, *brave, manly, bold.*

***fortiter** [fortis], adv., *bravely, valiantly, boldly.*

fortitūdō, -dinis [fortis], f., *courage, bravery.*

fortuītō [fortuītus, *accidental*], adv., *by chance, accidentally.*

***fortūna, -ae** [fors], f., *fortune, chance, luck; fate, lot; good fortune;* pl., *property, possessions;* **extrēma fortūna**, *utmost peril.*

fortūnātus, -a, -um [part. of fortūnō, *make prosperous*], *prosperous, fortunate.*

forum, -ī [cf. forīs], n., *open space, public square, market-place.*

***fossa, -ae** [fodiō], f., *ditch, trench, moat.*

fovea, -ae, f., *small pit, pitfall.*

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus, *break, dash to pieces, crush.*

***frāter, -tris**, m., *brother;* pl., *brethren, allies.*

***frāternus, -a, -um** [frāter], *of a brother, brotherly, fraternal.*

fraus, fraudis, f., *deceit, imposition.*

***fremitus, -ūs** [fremō, *roar*], m., *roaring, uproar.*

frequēns, -entis, adj., *in great numbers.*

frētus, -a, -um, *relying on, trusting in.*

frīgidus, -a, -um [cf. frīgus], *cold.*

frīgus, -goris, n., *cold, frost, wintry weather;* pl., *cold seasons, cold.*

***frōns, frontis**, f., *forehead; front.*

frūctuōsus, -a, -um [frūctus], *fruitful, productive.*

frūctus, -ūs [fruor], m., *enjoyment; fruit, crops; result, effect; interest, profit; reward.*

***frūmentārius, -a, -um** [frūmentum], *of grain; abounding in grain, fertile;* **rēs frūmentāria**, *grain-supply, provisions.*

frūmentātiō, -ōnis [frūmentor], f., *providing of grain, foraging.*

frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus [frūmentum], *get grain, forage.*

***frūmentum, -ī** [fruor], n., *grain, harvested grain,* usually wheat, barley, or spelt; pl., *standing grain, grain-crop.*

fruor, fruī, frūctus, *enjoy, reap the benefit of.*

***frūstrā** [cf. fraus], adv., *in vain, uselessly.*

frūx, frūgis [fruor], f., *fruit, produce;* usually pl., *crops.*

Fūfius, -ī, m., *Fufius*, a Roman nomen; *Gaius Fufius Cita*, a Roman knight.

***fuga, -ae**, f., *fleeing, flight, rout,* **sēsē fugae mandāre**, *take to flight, run away;* **in fugam dare**, *put to flight, rout.*

***fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus** [fuga], *flee, run away; shun, avoid.*

fugitīvus, -a, -um [fugiō], *fugitive;* as subst., m., *runaway, deserter.*

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [fuga], *put to flight, rout.*

fūmō, -āre [fūmus], *smoke.*

fūmus, -ī, m., *smoke.*

funda, -ae, f., *sling; sling-stone.*

funditor, -ōris [funda], m., *slinger.*

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus, *pour; hurl, spread, scatter; overthrow, put to flight.*

fūnebris, -e [fūnus], *of a funeral;* **iūsta fūnebria**, *due rites of burial.*

fungor, fungī, fūnctus, *perform, execute.*

***fūnis, -is**, m., *rope.*

fūnus, -neris, n., *funeral, funeral rites.*

furor, -ōris [furō, *rage*], m., *madness, hot-headedness, frenzy.*

fūrtum, -ī [fūr, *thief*], n., *theft.*

fūsilis, -e [fundō], *molten, red-hot.*

futūrus, -a, -um, fut. part. of **sum.**

G

Gabalī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Gabali,* a small Gallic tribe, clients of the Arverni.

Gabīnius, -ī, m., *Gabinius,* a Roman nomen; *Aulus Gabinius,* consul in 58 B.C.

gaesum, -ī, n., *javelin.* The *gaesum* was the characteristic weapon of the Gauls in early times. It was probably made entirely of iron.

Galba, -ae, m., *Galba:* (1) a Roman cognomen; *Servius Sulpicius Galba,* one of Caesar's legates; (2) a king of the Suessiones.

galea, -ae, f., *helmet* (of leather, often strengthened with metal).

Gallia, -ae [Gallus], f., *Gaul;* for the different applications of the word see Introd., p. 23.

Gallicus, -a, -um [Gallus], *Gallic, of Gaul, pertaining to Gaul.*

gallīna, -ae [gallus, *cock*], f., *hen.*

Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul;* pl., *the Gauls,* generally used as synonymous with *Celtae,* meaning the inhabitants of the central of Caesar's divisions of Transalpine Gaul (see Bk. I, Chap. I., and Introd., p. 23); as adj., **Gallus, -a, -um,** *Gallic.*

Gallus, -ī, m., *Gallus,* a Roman cognomen; see **Trebius.**

Garumna, -ae, m., *the Garumna,* a river of southwestern Gaul, now *the Garonne.*

Garumnī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Garumni,* an Aquitanian tribe near the head waters of the Garumna (Garonne) among the Pyrenees.

Gatēs, -ium, m. pl., *the Gates,* a tribe in eastern Aquitania.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus, *rejoice, be glad.*

Geidumnī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Geidumni,* a small Belgic tribe, clients of the Nervii.

Genava, -ae, f., *Genava, Geneva,* an important city of the Allobroges.

gener, -erī, m., *son-in-law.*

generātim [genus], adv., *by kinds, by tribes.*

gēns, gentis [cf. gignō, *produce*], f., *race, tribe; nation, people.*

***genus, -neris** [cf. gignō, *produce*], n., *descent, race; kind, sort; class, rank, order; genus, species; family, house; nation, people, tribe; method.*

Gergovia, -ae, f., *Gergovia,* a city of the Arverni near the Elaver (Allier). It was not far from the modern Clermont-Ferrand.

Germānia, -ae [Germānus], f., *Germany,* a country of indefinite extent lying east of the Rhine; see Introd., p. 30.

Germānicus, -a, -um [Germānus], *Germanic, German.*

Germānus, -ī, m., *a German;* pl., *the Germans;* as adj., **Germānus, -a, -um,** *German.*

***gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus,** *carry; administer, manage, carry on, conduct; do, carry out, finish; hold;* pass., *go on, take place;* **bellum gerere,** *wage war;* **rēs gestae,** see **rēs.**

***gladius, -ī,** m., *sword.*

glaeba, -ae, f., *clod; lump, mass.*

glāns, glandis, f., *acorn; ball, sling-bullet.*

glōria, -ae, f., *renown, fame, praise, glory.*

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus [glōria], *boast, pride oneself.*

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, m., *Gobannitio,* an Arvernian, uncle of Vercingetorix.

Gorgobina, -ae, f., *Gorgobina,* a town of the Boii, perhaps between the Elaver (Allier) and the Liger (Loire).

Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek;* as subst., m., *a Greek.*

Graiocelī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Graioceli,* a Gallic tribe in the Alps not far from Mt. Cenis.

grandis, -e, *large, massive, huge.*

***grātia, -ae** [grātus], f., *gratitude, thanks; return, requital; favor, friendship, good will; influence, power, popularity;* **grātiam hābere,** *feel grateful;* **grātiam referre,** *make return;* **grātiās agere,** *express thanks;* **grātiā,** with gen., *for the sake of, for the purpose of.*

grātulātiō, -ōnis [grātulor], f., *rejoicing, joy, congratulation.*

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus [grātus], *manifest joy; congratulate.*

grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing, satisfactory, grateful, acceptable;* as subst., n., *pleasing thing, favor.*

***gravis, -e,** *heavy, ponderous, burdensome; hard to bear, severe; serious, important, grave;* **graviōris aetātis,** *of maturer years.*

gravitās, -ātis [gravis], f., *weight; importance, influence.*

***graviter** [gravis], adv., *heavily; seriously, forcibly; bitterly, severely, vehemently;* **graviter ferre,** *be troubled about, feel indignation at, take hard.*

***gravor, -ārī, -ātus** [gravis], *be unwilling, hesitate.*

Grudiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Grudii,* a small Belgic tribe, dependants of the Nervii.

***gubernātor, -ōris** [gubernō, *steer*], m., *pilot, helmsman.*

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *taste.*

H

***habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus,** *have, hold, possess; regard, consider, count; take* (a census); *make* (a speech); **compertum habēre,** *to have (hold) discovered,* almost equivalent to **comperisse; habēre in animō,** *intend;* **aliter sē habēre,** *be different;* **habēre īnfāmiam,** *involve disgrace;* **grātiam habēre,** see **grātia; satis habēre,** *deem sufficient.*

Haeduus, -a, -um [Celtic, *fiery*], *Haeduan;* as subst., m., *a Haeduan;* pl., *the Haedui,* a prominent tribe of Gaul, usually friendly to the Romans.

haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of haereō, *cling*], *stick fast.*

hāmus, -ī, m., *hook.*

harpagō, -ōnis, m., *hook, wall-hook, grapple.*

Harūdēs, -um, m. pl., *the Harudes,* a German tribe, originally perhaps living in Jutland.

haud, adv., *not, by no means.*

Helvēticus, -a, -um [Helvētius], *Helvetian.*

Helvētius, -a, -um, *Helvetian;* as subst., m., *a Helvetian;* pl., *the Helvetii,* a rich and powerful tribe, whose country was nearly the same as modern Switzerland.

Helviī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Helvii,* a small Gallic tribe in the Roman province.

Hercynius, -a, -um, *Hercynian.* The **Hercynia silva** was an im-

mense forest, or series of forests, extending through southern Germany.

hērēditās, -ātis [hērēs, *heir*], f., *inheritance.*

Hibernia, -ae, f., *Hibernia*, or *Ireland.*

***hībernus, -a, -um** [hiems], *of winter, pertaining to winter;* as subst., **hīberna, -ōrum** (sc. **castra**), n. pl., *winter camp, winter quarters; time spent in winter quarters.*

***hīc, haec, hōc**, dem. pron., *this, this man, he; the following; the latter* (contrasted with **ille**); *such, of this kind;* **hōc**, *on this account, in this respect, by this, the.*

***hīc** [hīc], adv., *here, in this place; at this time, hereupon.*

***hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus** [hiems], *spend the winter, winter, be in winter quarters.*

***hiems, -emis**, f., *winter; wintry weather, storm.*

***hinc** [hīc], adv., *from this place, from here, hence.*

Hispānia, -ae [Hispānus], f., *Spain*, including the whole peninsula, *i.e.* Spain and Portugal. **Citerior Hispānia** comprised the northern and eastern parts of the peninsula.

Hispānus, -a, -um, *Spanish.*

***homō, -minis**, m. and f., *human being, person, man;* pl., *men, people.*

honestus, -a, -um [honōs], *honored, respected, honorable, noble.*

honōrificus, -a, -um [honōs + faciō], *conferring honor, honorable.*

honōs (honor), -ōris, m., *honor, repute, distinction; office;* **honōris causā**, *out of respect (for).*

***hōra, -ae**, f., *hour*, a twelfth part of the time between sunrise and sunset, consequently varying in length according to the season.

horreō, horrēre, horruī, *bristle; shudder at, dread.*

horribilis, -e [horreō], *terrible.*

horridus, -a, -um [horreō], *savage, frightful.*

***hortor, -ārī, -ātus**, *urge, incite, encourage, impel.*

***hospes, -pitis**, m., *stranger*, especially one bound to another by ties of hospitality, *guest-friend; guest, host; friend.*

***hospitium, -ī** [hospes], n., *tie of hospitality, guest-friendship, hospitality; friendship.*

***hostis, -is**, m. and f., *enemy* (public), *foe;* pl., *the enemy.*

***hūc** [hīc], adv., *to this place, hither; to this, to these;* **hūc accēdēbat**, *to this was added.*

hūmānitās, -ātis [hūmānus], f., *civilization, refinement.*

hūmānus, -a, -um [homō], *civilized, refined.*

***humilis, -e** [humus, *ground*], *low, small; humble, insignificant, weak.*

humilitās, -ātis [humilis], f., *lowness; insignificance.*

I

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī [cf. iaciō], *lie, lie prostrate, lie dead;* pres. part. as subst., **iacentēs, -ium**, m. pl., *the fallen.*

***iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus**, *throw, hurl, cast; throw up, construct;* **ancorās iacere**, *cast anchor.*

iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of iaciō], *throw with violence, hurl; toss about, shake; discuss.*

iactūra, -ae [iaciō], f., *throwing; sacrifice; outlay.*

iactus, -a, -um, part. of **iaciō**.

iaculum, -ī [iaciō], n., *missile, dart, javelin.*

***iam,** adv., *by this time, already, now; at length; even, in fact;* with fut., *presently, soon;* with neg., *longer.*

***ibi,** adv., *there, in that place; at that time, then.*

ibīdem [ibi + -dem (cf. īdem)], adv., *in the same place.*

Iccius, -ī, m., *Iccius,* a leading man among the Remi.

ictus, -ūs [icō, *strike*], m., *stroke, blow, shot.*

idcircō [id + abl. of circus, *circle* (cf. circum)], adv., *on that account, for this reason.*

***īdem, eadem, idem** [is], dem. pron., *that same one, the same; identical;* **eōdem vēstīgiō,** *in one spot.*

identidem [īdem + itidem, *so*], adv., *again and again, repeatedly.*

***idōneus, -a, -um,** *suitable, capable, convenient, fit.*

Īdūs, -uum, f. pl., *the Ides,* a fixed date near the middle of each month, being the fifteenth of March, May, July, and October, the thirteenth of the other months.

***īgnis, -is,** m., *fire;* pl., *beacon-fires.*

ignōbilis, -e [in- + (g)nōbilis], *unknown, insignificant.*

ignōminia, -ae [in- + (g)nōmen], f., *disgrace, shame, ignominy.*

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ignārus, *ignorant*], *not know, be ignorant of, misunderstand;* **nōn ignōrāns,** *knowing well.*

***ignōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnōtus** [in- + (g)nōscō], *overlook, pardon, excuse.*

***ignōtus, -a, -um** [in- + (g)nōtus], *unknown, strange.*

***ille, illa, illud,** dem. pron., *that, that one; he, she, it; the former* (contrasted with **hīc**); *the well-known.*

***illīc** [ille], adv., *in that place, there.*

***illō** [ille], adv., *thither; to that point.*

Illyricum, -ī, n., *Illyricum,* the country along the eastern shore of the Adriatic, corresponding nearly to the modern Istria and Dalmatia. It was a part of Caesar's province.

imbēcillitās, -ātis [imbēcillus, *weak*], f., *weakness, feebleness.*

imber, -bris, m., *rain, storm.*

imitor, -ārī, -ātus, *copy, imitate.*

immānis, -e, *monstrous, huge.*

immineō, -minēre, *hang over; be close upon, threaten.*

***immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus** [in + mittō], *cause to go in, send in; insert, let down; send against, throw.*

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *sacrifice.*

immortālis, -e [in- + mortālis, *mortal*], *deathless, immortal.*

immūnis, -e [in- + mūnus], *free from burdens, untaxed.*

immūnitās, -ātis [immūnis], f., *freedom from obligation, exemption.*

imparātus, -a, -um [in- + parātus], *unprepared, off guard.*

***impedīmentum, -ī** [impediō], n., *obstruction, hindrance;* pl., *luggage, baggage, baggage train, pack-animals.*

***impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus** [in + pēs], *fetter; entangle, obstruct, hinder.*

***impedītus, -a, -um** [part. of im-

pediō], *shackled; burdened, embarrassed, at a disadvantage; occupied, busied; inaccessible, difficult.*

***impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus** [in + pellō], *drive in, drive on; urge on, influence.*

impendeō, -pendēre [in + pendeō, *be suspended*], *hang over.*

impēnsus, -a, -um [part. of impendō, *weigh out*], *heavy, excessive.*

imperātor, -ōris [imperō], m., *leader, general, commander-in-chief.* See Introd., p. 32.

***imperātum, -ī** [part. of imperō], n., *order, command.*

imperītus, -a, -um [in- + perītus], *not experienced, unskilled, ignorant; unused to, unacquainted with.*

***imperium, -ī** [imperō], n., *military authority, power; order, command; government, control, dominion, sway;* **nova imperia,** see **novus.**

***imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [in + parō], *be commander, rule; command, order, direct; demand, impose, levy.*

***impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [in + patrō, *bring to pass*], *accomplish; ask and receive, obtain on request, get.*

***impetus, -ūs** [in + petō], m., *attack; shock, force, violence; fury.*

impius, -a, -um [in- + pius, *dutiful*], *undutiful, impious.*

implicō, -plicāre, -plicāvī or **-plicuī, -plicātus** or **-plicitus** [in + plicō, *fold*], *enfold, entwine, connect closely.*

***implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [in + plōrō, *cry out*], *beg, entreat.*

***impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus** [in + pōnō], *put upon, place, impose; mount.*

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in + portō], *carry in, bring in, import.*

impositus, -a, -um, part. of **impōnō.**

improbus, -a, -um [in- + probus, *estimable*], *wicked, shameless.*

***improvīsō** [improvīsus], adv., *unexpectedly, on a sudden.*

***improvīsus, -a, -um** [in- + provīsus, part. of provideō], *not foreseen;* **dē improvīsō,** *unexpectedly, suddenly.*

imprūdēns, -entis [in- + prūdēns, *foreseeing*], adj., *not expecting, unaware, off one's guard.*

imprūdentia, -ae [imprūdēns], f., *want of foresight, inconsiderateness, ignorance.*

impūbēs, -beris [in- + pūbēs, *grown-up*], adj., *under age; chaste.*

impugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in + pugnō], *fight against, assail, fight.*

impulsus, -ūs [impellō], m., *striking against; impulse, influence.*

impulsus, -a, -um, part. of **impellō.**

impūne [impūnis, *unpunished*], adv., *without punishment, with impunity.*

impūnitās, -ātis [impūnis, *unpunished*], f., *freedom from punishment.*

***īmus, -a, -um,** equivalent to **īnfimus,** which see; as subst., n., *bottom, foot.*

***in-,** an inseparable prefix, *not, in-, un-, -less.*

***in,** prep.: (1) with acc., *into, to, against;* sometimes *in* with expressions which imply motion; *among; on, upon; towards, in the direction of; until, for; according to;* **in Arvernōs versus,**

towards the Arverni; **in tertium annum,** *for the third year;* **in noctem,** *till night;* **in perpetuum,** *forever;* **in diēs,** *from day to day;* **in annōs singulōs,** *year by year, yearly;* **in suspīcionem,** *under suspicion;* **in servīlem modum,** *like slaves;* (2) with abl., *in, within; on; among, in the country of; at; in the case of; in the time of, during;* **in ancorīs,** *at anchor;* **in epulīs,** *at feasts;* **in armīs,** *under arms;* **in diciōne,** *under the sway;* **in flūmine,** *over a river;* **in praesentiā,** *at the time, for the present.* In comp., *in, into, at, on, against, among.*

inānis, -e, *empty; groundless.*

incautē [incautus], adv., *carelessly.*

incautus, -a, -um [in- + cautus, part. of caveō], *incautious, off one's guard.*

incendium, -ī [incendō], n., *fire, conflagration.*

***incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsus** [in + candeō, *glow*], *set fire to, burn; arouse.*

inceptus, -a, -um, part. of **incipiō.**

incertus, -a, -um [in- + certus], *not certain, undetermined, doubtful; untried, unexpected; in disorder.*

***incidō, -cidere, -cidī** [in + cadō], *fall upon; happen, occur;* **incidere in,** *fall in with.*

incīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [in + caedō], *cut into, notch.*

***incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus** [in + capiō], *take hold of, enter upon, begin.*

incīsus, -a, -um, part. of **incīdō.**

***incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [in + citō, *put in swift motion*], *hurry on, drive on; incite, rouse, excite;* **sē incitāre,** *rush in;* **incitātō equō,** *with his horse at full speed;* **cursū incitātō,** *advancing at full speed.*

incognitus, -a, -um [in + cognitus, part. of cognōscō], *not examined, unknown.*

***incolō, -colere, -coluī** [in + colō], *inhabit; dwell, live.*

***incolumis, -e,** *uninjured, safe, unimpaired.*

incommodē [incommodus, *inconvenient*], adv., *inconveniently, disadvantageously.*

incommodum, -ī [incommodus, *inconvenient*], n., *inconvenience, disadvantage, trouble; injury, loss, defeat.*

***incrēdibilis, -e** [in- + crēdibilis, *worthy of belief*], *marvelous, wonderful, incredible.*

increpitō, -āre [freq. of increpō, *rebuke*], *find fault with, rebuke; taunt.*

incumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitus [in + -cumbō, *lie*], *lie upon; bend one's energy, exert oneself.*

incursiō, -ōnis [incurrō, *run in*], f., *inroad, invasion, raid.*

incursus, -ūs [incurrō, *run in*], m., *approach, charge, attack.*

incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in + causa], *bring a charge against, accuse, censure.*

***inde** [is], adv., *from there, thence; after that, next, then.*

indicium, -ī [indicō, *point out*], n., *information, disclosure, evidence;* **per indicium,** *through information,* i.e. *through informers.*

indīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus [in + dīcō], *declare publicly, proclaim; appoint.*

indictus, -a, -um [in- + dictus, part. of dīcō], *not said, unsaid;* **indictā causā,** *without a hearing.*

indīgnē [indīgnus], adv., *undeservedly, shamefully.*

indīgnitās, -ātis [indīgnus], f., *unworthiness; insult, outrage.*

indīgnor, -ārī, -ātus [indīgnus], *deem unworthy; be indignant, chafe.*

indīgnus, -a, -um [in- + dīgnus], *unworthy, unbecoming.*

indīligēns, -entis [in- + dīligēns, *industrious*], adj., *careless, negligent.*

indīligenter [indīligēns], adv., *carelessly, negligently.*

indīligentia, -ae [indīligēns], f., *carelessness, neglect.*

***indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus** [in + dūcō], *lead in; induce, influence;* **pellibus indūcere,** *cover with skins.*

indulgentia, -ae [indulgēns, part. of indulgeō], f., *indulgence, forbearance, favor.*

***indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, -dultus,** *be kind to, indulge, favor.*

induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtus [cf. exuō], *put on, impale.*

industriē [industrius, *active*], adv., *energetically.*

indūtiae, -ārum, f. pl., *armistice, truce.*

Indūtiomārus, -ī, m., *Indutiomarus,* a chief of the Treveri.

***ineō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus** [in + eō], *go into; enter upon, begin; make, take, form; gain;* pass., *begin* (in intrans. sense).

***inermis, -e** [in- + arma], *unarmed.*

iners, -ertis [in- + ars], adj., *without skill; lazy.*

īnfāmia, -ae [īnfāmis, *disreputable*], f., *evil repute, disgrace, dishonor.*

īnfāns, -antis [in- + part. of for, *speak*], adj., *not speaking;* as subst., m. and f., *little child, infant.*

īnfectus, -a, -um [in- + factus, part. of faciō], *not done, unaccomplished.*

***īnferior, -ius** [comp. of īnferus, *below*], *lower; below, beneath, farther down; inferior, weaker; lower part of;* **ab īnferiōre parte** and **ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis,** *on the down-stream side.*

***īnferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātus** [in + ferō], *bring in, import, bring; place upon; inflict, cause; bring forward, allege;* **sīgna īnferre,** *charge;* **conversa sīgna īnferre,** *wheel and charge;* **spē inlātā,** *hope being inspired;* **bellum īnferre,** *make war.*

īnfēstus, -a, -um, *unsafe, hostile, threatening, dangerous.*

īnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [in + faciō], *stain, paint.*

īnfidēlis, -e [in- + fidēlis], *faithless, untrustworthy.*

īnfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus [in + fīgō, *fix*], *drive in, fasten.*

***īnfimus, -a, -um** [sup. of īnferus, *below*], *lowest, at the bottom; lowest part of, bottom of;* as subst., n., *bottom, foot.*

īnfīnītus, -a, -um [in- + fīnītus, part. of fīniō], *endless, measureless, countless, vast.*

īnfīrmitās, -ātis [īnfīrmus], f., *want of strength, feebleness; inconstancy.*

īnfīrmus, -a, -um [in- + fīrmus], *not strong, weak;* **īnfīrmiōrēs animō,** *less courageous.*

īnfīxus, -a, -um, part. of **īnfīgō.**

īnflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexus [in + flectō], *bend down, bend.*

īnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -flūxus [in + fluō], *flow in, empty into.*

īnfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus [in + fodiō], *dig into, bury.*

īnfrā [īnferus, *below*]: (1) adv., *below, farther on;* (2) prep. with acc., *below, smaller than.*

ingēns, -entis [in- + gēns], adj., *not natural; enormous, vast.*

ingrātus, -a, -um [in- + grātus], *displeasing, unsatisfactory.*

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus [in + gradior, *step*], *enter; advance.*

***iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus** [in + iaciō], *throw in, throw on; put on; inspire, cause.*

inimīcitia, -ae [inimīcus], f., *enmity, hostility.*

inimīcus, -a, -um [in- + amīcus], *unfriendly, hostile;* as subst., m., *personal enemy, opponent.*

inīquitās, -ātis [inīquus], f., *unevenness; unfavorableness, inequality; unfairness.*

inīquus, -a, -um [in- + aequus], *uneven, unequal; unfavorable, disadvantageous; unfair, hard.*

***initium, -ī** [ineō], n., *going in, entrance; beginning, start; first part;* **initium capere**, *begin.*

initus, -a, -um, part. of **ineō.**

iniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus [in + iungō], *join to, impose on.*

***iniūria, -ae** [in- + iūs], f., *injustice; insult, wrong, outrage, injury;* **iniūriā**, *unfairly, unjustly.*

(iniussus, -ūs) [in- + iussus], m., found only in the abl. sing. **iniussū**, *without orders.*

inlātus, -a, -um, part. of **īnferō.**

inligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in + ligō, *tie*], *tie to; tie, fasten together.*

inlūstris, -e [in + lūx], *brilliant; noble, noteworthy.*

innāscor, -nāscī, -nātus [in + nāscor], *be born in; spring up, be roused.*

innātus, -a, -um [part. of innāscor], *inborn, innate.*

innītor, -nītī, -nīxus or **-nīsus** [in + nītor], *lean on, rest on.*

innocēns, -entis [in- + nocēns], adj., *harmless; innocent.*

innocentia, -ae [innocēns], f., *harmlessness; integrity.*

***inopia, -ae** [inops, *without resources*], f., *lack, need, scarcity; poverty, destitution.*

inopīnāns, -antis [in- + opīnāns, part. of opīnor, *suppose*], adj., *not expecting, surprised.*

inquam, defective verb, *say;* **inquit**, *said, said he,* commonly inserted parenthetically after one or more words of a direct quotation.

inrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsus [in + rīdeō, *laugh*], *laugh at; laugh sneeringly.*

inrīdiculē [in- + rīdiculē, *laughably*], adv., *without wit.*

inrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [in + rumpō, *break*], *break in, rush in.*

inruptiō, -ōnis [inrumpō], f., *breaking in; incursion, attack.*

īnsciēns, -entis [in- + sciēns, part. of sciō], adj., *not knowing, unaware.*

īnscientia, -ae [īnsciēns], f., *ignorance, inexperience.*

īnscius, -a, -um [in- + sciō], *ignorant, unaware.*

***īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus** [in + sequor], *follow on, follow up, follow closely, pursue, press upon.*

īnserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus [in + serō, *bind together*], *put in, insert.*

***īnsidiae, -ārum** [īnsideō, *sit upon*], f. pl., *snare, trap, ambush; plot, stratagem; treachery.*

īnsidior, -ārī, -ātus [īnsidiae], *lie in ambush.*

***īnsīgnis, -e** [in + sīgnum], *remarkable, conspicuous;* as subst., n., *mark, emblem, ornament; signal.*

īnsiliō, -silīre, -siluī [in + saliō, *leap*], *leap against, leap.*

īnsimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in + simulō], *make suspected, charge, accuse.*

īnsinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in + sinuō, *bend*], *wind in;* **sē īnsinuāre**, *wind one's way in.*

***īnsistō, -sistere, -stitī** [in + sistō, *cause to stand*], *take a stand upon; stand upon, stand;* **ratiōnem īnsistere**, *pursue a plan;* **in bellum īnsistere**, *devote oneself to war.*

īnsolenter [īnsolēns, *unaccustomed*], adv., *in an unusual way; haughtily, insolently.*

īnspectō, -āre [freq. of īnspiciō, *look into*], *look on, watch.*

īnstabilis, -e [in- + stabilis, *firm*], *unsteady.*

īnstar, indecl., n., *resemblance;* with gen., *equal to, like.*

īnstīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *goad on, incite.*

***īnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus** [in + statuō], *put in position, marshal, draw up; begin; decide upon, determine; establish; build, construct; furnish, provide, prepare, procure, organize; teach, train.*

***īnstitūtum, -ī** [part. of īnstituō], n., *design; custom, habit; institution.*

***īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus** [in + stō], *push on, press on; approach, impend, be near.*

īnstrūctus, -a, -um, part. of **īnstruō**.

īnstrūmentum, -ī [īnstruō], n., *implement; equipment.*

***īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus** [in + struō, *pile up*], *build in; set up, prepare; marshal, draw up; fit out, equip, rig.*

īnsuēfactus, -a, -um [īnsuēscō, *habituate* + faciō], *accustomed, trained.*

īnsuētus, -a, -um [in- + suētus, *accustomed*], *unaccustomed, untrained.*

***īnsula, -ae**, f., *island.*

īnsuper [in + super, *above*], adv., *above, on the top.*

integer, -gra, -grum [in- + tangō], *not touched, unhurt; entire, fresh, vigorous;* **rē integrā**, *at the beginning.*

integō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus [in + tegō], *cover over.*

***intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus** [inter + legō, *gather*], *distinguish; find out, come to know, perceive; know, understand, see.*

intentus, -a, -um [part. of intendō, *stretch out to*], *fixed, intent.*

***inter** [in], prep. with acc., *between; among, in the midst of, with; during, within;* **inter sē**, in a reciprocal sense, *with (to, for, from*, etc.) *each other* or *one another, together;* **cohortārī inter sē**, *encourage one another.* In comp., *between, among, apart;* sometimes, *to destruction.*

***intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus** [inter + cēdō], *come between, be between; intervene, pass; occur, be.*

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [inter + capiō], *take on the way, intercept, catch up; cut off.*

***interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus** [inter + claudō], *shut off, cut off, hinder, prevent.*

interdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus [inter + dīcō], *interpose by an order, forbid, prohibit, interdict, exclude.*

interdiū [inter + diēs], adv., *in the daytime, by day.*

***interdum** [inter + dum], adv., *sometimes, at times.*

***intereā** [inter + is], adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

intereō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus [inter + eō], *perish, be killed, be destroyed.*

***interficiō, -fĭcere, -fēcī, -fectus** [inter + faciō], *put out of the way, destroy, kill.*

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [inter + iaciō], *throw between, put among, scatter in, plant (set, put) between; intersperse;* **brevī spatiō interiectō,** *after a short interval.*

***interim** [inter], adv., *meanwhile.*

interior, -ius [comp. from inter], *inner, interior, interior of; farther inland, inland;* **interiōrēs,** *those within.*

interitus, -ūs [intereō], m., *fall, destruction, death.*

***intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus** [inter + mittō], *let go between, leave between; omit, stop, leave, leave off; leave vacant; allow to intervene; neglect; interrupt, separate;* **intermissō spatiō,** *at a distance, after an interval.*

interneciō, -ōnis [inter + necō], f., *slaughter, annihilation.*

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *interrupt, interfere with.*

***interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus** [inter + pōnō], *put between, interpose, introduce; cause; put forward, allege; promise, pledge.*

interpres, -etis, m. and f., *mediator; interpreter.*

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus [interpres], *explain, interpret.*

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [inter + rogō], *ask, question.*

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [inter + rumpō, *break*], *break apart, break down, destroy.*

interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus [inter + scindō], *cut through, break down.*

intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [inter + sum], *be between; be present, take part; attend to;* **interest,** *it concerns, it matters, it is of advantage.*

***intervāllum, -ī** [inter + vāllus], n., *space between palisades; space, distance, interval.*

interveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus [inter + veniō], *come between, arrive.*

interventus, -ūs [interveniō], m., *coming between, coming in, coming on, intervention.*

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus [in + texō, *weave*], *weave in, make by weaving.*

intoleranter [intolerāns, *not enduring*], adv., *immoderately, violently.*

***intrā** [inter], prep. with acc., *within, among, inside; during; before.*

intrītus, -a, -um [in- + trītus, part. of terō, *wear away*], *not worn, unwearied.*

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *go in, enter.*

introdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [intrō, *to the inside* + dūcō], *lead in, bring in.*

introeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus [intrō, *to the inside* + eō], *go in, enter.*

introitus, -ūs [introeō], m., *entrance.*

intrōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [intrō, *to the inside* + mittō], *let in, send in, admit.*

intrōrsus [intrō, *to the inside* + versus], adv., *within, inside; to the interior.*

intrōrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [intrō, *to the inside* + rumpō, *break*], *break in, force a way in.*

intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus [in + tueor], *look upon.*

intulī, see **īnferō.**

intus [in], adv., *within, inside.*

inūsitātus, -a, -um [in- + ūsitātus], *unusual, uncommon, strange.*

inūtilis, -e [in- + ūtilis], *useless, unserviceable.*

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus [in + veniō], *come upon, find; learn, find out.*

inventor, -ōris [inveniō], m., *discoverer, author.*

inventus, -a, -um, part. of **inveniō.**

inveterāscō, -veterāscere, -veterāvī [inchoative of inveterō, *make old*], *grow old; get a footing, become established.*

invicem [in + vicis, *change*], adv., *in turn.*

invictus, -a, -um [in- + victus, part. of vincō], *unconquered, invincible.*

invideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus [in + videō], *look askance at, envy.*

invidia, -ae [invidus, *envious*], f., *envy, ill will.*

inviolātus, -a, -um [in- + violātus, part. of violō], *not treated with violence, inviolate, inviolable.*

***invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *invite, urge, induce, attract.*

***invītus, -a, -um**, *against one's will, under compulsion, unwilling;* sometimes to be trans. as adv., *unwillingly.*

***ipse, ipsa, ipsum** [is], intensive pron., *self, himself,* etc.; *very; he himself, he in person, he* (the principal person mentioned); *the very man.* Distinguish carefully the intensive *self* (**ipse**) from the reflexive *self* (**suī**).

īrācundia, -ae [īrācundus], f., *inclination to anger, quick temper, violence.*

īrācundus, -a, -um [īrāscor, *be angry*], *easily made angry, quick-tempered.*

***is, ea, id**, dem. pron., *that, that one, this, this one, the one; he, she, it, they;* often as antec. of a rel. pron., *the man* (*he*) who, etc.; *such;* **eō**, *for this reason* or *purpose*, explained by a following clause introduced by **quod** or **ut**; with comp., *the* (*by this*), *e.g.* **eō magis**, *the more, all the more.*

iste, ista, istud [is], dem. pron., *this, that* (of something near the person addressed or connected in some way with him), *that of yours; such;* sometimes used with contemptuous force.

***ita** [is], adv., *thus, so, in this way, as follows; so far; therefore;* **nōn ita magnus**, *not very large;* **ita ut**, *just as.*

Italia, -ae, f., *Italy.* Caesar sometimes includes Cisalpine Gaul in Italy. See Introd., p. 21.

***itaque** [ita + -que], conj., *and so, therefore, accordingly, consequently;* sometimes it is equivalent to **et ita.**

***item** [is], adv., *also, besides, likewise, in the same way, too.*

***iter, itineris** [eō], n., *going, way, journey, march; route, course, road; distance;* **magnum iter**, *forced march.*

***iterum**, adv., *a second time, again.*

Itius, -ī, m., properly an adj. (used with **portus**), *Itius; Portus Itius* was a harbor on the northwest coast of Gaul, probably either Boulogne or Wissant.

iuba, -ae, f., *mane.*

***iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus**, *order,*

command, direct, tell; **mūnīre iussit,** *gave orders to fortify.*

iūdicium, -ī [iūdicō], n., *judgment, decision, opinion, sentence; trial;* **iūdiciō,** *purposely, designedly.*

***iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [iūdex, *judge*], *judge, form an opinion, decide; have an opinion, think, suppose; declare.*

***iugum, -ī** [iungō], n., *yoke; ridge, summit, hill.*

iūmentum, -ī [iugum], n., *yoke-animal, draft-animal, pack-animal, horse, mule.*

iūnctūra, -ae [iungō], f., *uniting, joining; cross-tie.*

***iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus,** *join, put together.*

iūnior, -ius [comp. of iuvenis, *young*], *younger;* as subst., **iūniōrēs, -um,** m. pl., *men of military age.*

Iūnius, -ī, m., *Junius,* a Roman nomen; *Quintus Junius,* a man in Caesar's army, either a Spaniard or a Roman born in Spain. See also **Brūtus.**

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter,* son of Saturn, chief among the gods of the Romans. Caesar identifies a Gallic divinity with Jupiter.

Iūra, -ae, m., *Jura,* a range of mountains forming the boundary between the Helvetii and the Sequani.

***iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [iūs], *take oath, swear;* **iūs iūrandum,** gen. **iūris iūrandī,** *oath.*

***iūs, iūris,** n., *that which is binding; constitution, law; rights, privilege, authority; right, justice;* **iūs iūrandum,** see **iūrō.**

iussus, -a, -um, part. of **iubeō.**

(iussus, -ūs) [iubeō], m., found only in the abl. sing. **iussū,** *by order, by command.*

***iūstitia, -ae** [iūstus], f., *justice, uprightness.*

iūstus, -a, -um [iūs], *just, lawful; proper, suitable, complete, exact; due.*

iuventūs, -ūtis [iuvenis, *young*], f., *youth* (time of life); in a collective sense, *young men, men of military age.*

***iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus,** *help, aid, assist.*

iūxtā [cf. iungō], adv., *close by.*

K

Kalendae, -ārum, f. pl., *the Calends,* the first day of the month.

L

L., the abbreviation for the praenomen **Lūcius,** *Lucius.*

Laberius, -ī, m., *Laberius,* a Roman nomen; *Quintus Laberius Durus,* a tribune of the soldiers.

Labiēnus, -ī, m., *Labienus,* a Roman cognomen; *Titus Atius Labienus,* Caesar's most trusted legate during the Gallic War. He fought against Caesar in the Civil War.

lābor, lābī, lāpsus, *glide; fall into error, be disappointed; waver* (in allegiance).

***labor, -ōris,** m., *work, toil, exertion, labor; suffering.*

***labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [labor], *exert oneself, strive, labor; labor for; be in danger, be troubled, suffer.*

labrum, -ī, n., *lip; edge, brim.*

***lac, lactis,** n., *milk.*

***lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītus** [laciō, *entice*], *provoke; challenge, harass, attack.*

***lacrima, -ae,** f., *tear.*

lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [lacrima], *shed tears, weep.*

***lacus, -ūs,** m., *lake.*

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus, *injure; break, violate.*

laetitia, -ae [laetus], f., *joy, exultation, delight.*

laetus, -a, -um, *joyful, exultant.*

languidē [languidus], adv., *slowly, with little vigor.*

languidus, -a, -um [langueō, *be faint*], *faint, listless.*

languor, -ōris [langueō, *be faint*], m., *fatigue.*

***lapis, -idis,** m., *stone.*

lāpsus, -a, -um, part. of **lābor.**

laqueus, -ī [laciō, *entice*], m., *noose.*

largior, -īrī, -ītus [largus, *abundant*], *give generously; bribe.*

***largiter** [largus, *abundant*], adv., *in abundance;* **largiter posse,** *have great authority* or *influence.*

largītiō, -ōnis [largior], f., *lavish giving, bribery.*

lassitūdō, -dinis [lassus, *faint*], f., *exhaustion.*

***lātē** [lātus], adv., *widely, extensively;* **longē lātēque,** *far and wide.*

latebra, -ae [lateō], f., *hiding-place, lurking-place.*

***lateō, latēre, latuī,** *lurk; escape notice.*

***lātitūdō, -dinis** [lātus], f., *width, extent;* **in lātitūdinem,** *in width; sideways.*

Latobrigī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Latobrigi,* a Gallic tribe dwelling not far from the Helvetii, perhaps east of the Rhine, near the source of the Danube.

latrō, -ōnis, m., *freebooter, robber.*

latrōcinium, -ī [latrōcinor, *rob*], n., *brigandage; raid.*

***lātus, -a, -um,** *wide, broad, extensive.*

lātus, -a, -um, part. of **ferō.**

***latus, -teris,** n., *side; flank, wing* (of an army).

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [laus], *praise.*

laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory, fame; merit, excellence.*

lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautus or **lōtus,** *wash;* pass., *bathe.*

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [laxus, *wide*], *extend, open out.*

***lēgātiō, -ōnis** [lēgō, *commission*], f., *embassy, legation; members of an embassy.*

***lēgātus, -ī** [part. of lēgō, *commission*], m., *ambassador, envoy, messenger; legate, lieutenant, commander's assistant, deputy.* See Introd., p. 32.

***legiō, -ōnis** [legō, *gather*], f., *body of troops, legion.* See Introd., p. 31.

***legiōnārius, -a, -um** [legiō], *belonging to a legion, legionary.* See Introd., p. 34.

Lemannus, -ī, m., with **lacus,** *Lake Geneva.*

Lemovīcēs, -um, m. pl., *the Lemovices,* a Gallic tribe west of the Arverni. The name appears in the modern Limoges.

lēnis, -e, *soft, gentle, favorable.*

lēnitās, -ātis [lēnis], f., *smoothness, gentleness.*

lēniter [lēnis], adv., *gently, moderately;* **lēnius,** *with less vigor.*

Lēpontiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Lepontii,* a tribe dwelling among the Alps.

lepus, -poris, m., *hare.*

Leucī, -ōrum [Celtic, *bright*], m. pl., *the Leuci,* a Gallic tribe near the head waters of the Mosa (Meuse) and Mosella (Moselle).

Levācī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Levaci,*

a Belgic tribe, clients of the Nervii.

***levis**, -e, *light; slight, trifling; capricious, untrustworthy;* **levis armātūrae**, *of light equipment, light-armed;* **leve proelium**, *skirmish.*

levitās, -ātis [levis], f., *lightness; changeableness, inconstancy.*

levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [levis], *lift up; relieve, free.*

lēx, lēgis, f., *statute, law, regulation, enactment.*

Lexoviī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Lexovii*, a Gallic tribe on the coast.

libenter [libēns, *willing*], adv., *willingly, gladly.*

***līber**, -era, -erum, *free; unrestricted, unhindered.*

līberālitās, -ātis [līberālis, *relating to freedom*], f., *characteristic of a free man; liberality, generosity.*

***līberāliter** [līberālis, *relating to freedom*], adv., *like a free man; courteously, liberally.*

***līberē** [līber], adv., *freely, unrestrictedly; openly, boldly.*

***līberī**, -ōrum [līber], m. pl., *children.*

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [līber], *set free, free, release; exempt.*

***lībertās**, -ātis [līber], f., *freedom, liberty, independence; lack of restraint, permission.*

lībrīlis, -e [lībra, *pound*], *of a pound, weighing a pound;* **fundae lībrīlēs**, *slings throwing stones weighing a pound.*

licentia, -ae [licet], f., *boldness, presumption, license.*

liceor, licērī, licitus, *bid.*

***licet, licēre, licuit** or **licitum est**, impersonal verb, *it is permitted, it is allowed;* with inf. often to be translated by *may*, etc.

Liger, -eris, acc. -im, abl. -ī, m., *the Liger*, one of the principal rivers of Gaul, now *the Loire.*

lignātiō, -ōnis [lignor, *get wood*], f., *getting wood.*

lignātor, -ōris [lignor, *get wood*], m., *man sent to get wood, wood-cutter.*

līlium, -ī, n., *lily, lily-cup.*

līnea, -ae [līnum], f., *string, line;* **rēctīs līneīs**, *in straight lines.*

Lingonēs, -um, m. pl., *the Lingones*, an important tribe of northeastern Gaul, across the Arar (Saône) from the Sequani. The name survives in the modern Langres.

***lingua**, -ae, f., *tongue; language.*

lingula, -ae [dim. of lingua], f., *tongue of land, cape.*

linter, -tris, f., *boat, skiff.*

līnum, -ī, n., *flax.*

līs, lītis, f., *dispute;* **lītem aestimāre**, *assess damages.*

Liscus, -ī, m., *Liscus*, a Haeduan, who held the chief magistracy of his tribe in 58 B.C.

Litaviccus, -ī, m., *Litaviccus*, a young Haeduan noble.

***littera**, -ae, f., *letter* (of the alphabet); pl., *epistle, letter, message, despatch; records, writing.*

***lītus**, -toris, n., *shore, beach, strand.*

***locus**, -ī, m., pl. **locī** (not in Caesar), m., or more commonly **loca**, n., *place, position, space, station; rank, degree; condition, state; influence, importance; opportunity, occasion, room;* esp. in pl., *country, region, district.*

locūtus, -a, -um, part. of **loquor.**

***longē** [longus], adv., *far, at a distance; very much, by far;* **longē abesse**, *be far from, be of no avail;* comp. **longius**, *farther, longer, for a longer time.*

***longinquus**, -a, -um [longus], *dis-*

tant, remote; long-continued, protracted.

longitūdō, -dinis [longus], f., *length;* **in longitūdinem,** *in length.*

longurius, -ī [longus], m., *long pole.*

***longus, -a, -um,** *long* (in extent or duration); *distant, late; tedious;* **nāvis longa,** *ship of war, galley.* See Introd., p. 51.

***loquor, loquī, locūtus,** *talk, speak, say.*

lōrīca, -ae [lōrum, *thong*], f., *coat of mail; defense, breastwork.*

Lūcānius, -ī, m., *Lucanius,* a Roman nomen; *Quintus Lucanius,* a centurion.

Lucterius, -ī, m., *Lucterius,* a Cadurcan.

Lugotorīx, -īgis, m., *Lugotorix,* a British noble.

lūna, -ae [cf. lūx], f., *moon; moon-goddess, Diana.*

Lutetia, -ae, f., *Lutetia,* a town of the Parisii, on an island in the Seine, now *Paris.*

***lūx, lūcis,** f., *light, dawn, daylight;* **sub lūcem,** *just before daybreak.*

lūxuria, -ae [lūxus, *excess*], f., *luxury, high living, extravagance.*

M

M., the abbreviation for the praenomen **Mārcus,** *Marcus, Mark.*

māceria, -ae, f., *wall.*

māchinātiō, -ōnis [māchinor, *contrive*], f., *mechanical contrivance, machine, engine.*

maestus, -a, -um [maereō, *be sad*], *sad, despondent.*

Magetobriga, -ae, f., *Magetobriga,* a town near which Ariovistus defeated the Haedui and their allies. It was, perhaps, west of Vesontio on the Saône, but its site is uncertain.

***magis** [magnus], comp. adv., *more, in greater degree; rather;* in comparison of adjectives, *more.*

***magistrātus, -ūs** [magister, *master*], m., *magistracy, public office; municipal officer, magistrate; body of magistrates.*

magnificus, -a, -um [magnus + faciō], *splendid.*

***magnitūdō, -dinis** [magnus], f., *greatness, size; extent, force, might; amount, magnitude;* **magnitūdō corporum,** *great stature;* **magnitūdō animī,** *great courage* or *spirit.*

***magnopere** [magnus + opus], adv., *very much, greatly; earnestly, urgently; particularly.*

***magnus, -a, -um,** *large, great, high, extensive; long; numerous, abundant; important; intense;* **magnā vōce,** *in a loud voice;* **magnī habēre,** *consider of great importance;* **magnī interest,** *it is of great importance;* **magnō flētū,** *with many tears.*

māiestās, -ātis [māior], f., *greatness; dignity, sovereignty.*

***māior, -ius,** comp. of **magnus;** **māior nātū,** *older;* as subst., **māiōrēs, -um,** m. pl., *ancestors, forefathers;* **māiōrēs nātū,** *elders.*

malacia, -ae, f., *calm.*

male [malus, *bad*], adv., *badly; unsuccessfully, ill.*

***maleficium, -ī** [maleficus, *wicked*], n., *wicked deed, mischief, harm.*

mālō, mālle, māluī [magis + volō], *wish rather, like better, prefer, choose.*

mālus, -ī, m., *upright pole, mast, post.*

***mandātum, -ī** [part. of mandō], n.,

charge, injunction, order, commission.

***mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [manus + dō], *give into one's hands, commit, consign, intrust; command, charge, order;* **fugae sēsē mandāre,** *take to flight.*

Mandubiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Mandubii,* a Gallic tribe, within whose territory Alesia was situated.

Mandubracius, -ī, m., *Mandubracius,* a young prince of the Trinovantes.

māne, adv., *in the morning.*

***maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsus,** *stay, remain; abide* (*in* or *by*).

manipulāris, -e [manipulus], *belonging to a maniple;* as subst., m., *soldier of a maniple; comrade.*

manipulus, -ī [manus + √PLE, cf. plēnus], m., *handful* (of hay); *maniple,* the standard of which was originally a wisp of hay. See Introd., p. 31.

Mānlius, -ī, m., *Manlius,* a Roman nomen; *Lucius Manlius,* a proconsul, who was defeated by the Aquitani in 78 B.C.

mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [mānsuēscō, *tame* + faciō], *make tame, tame.*

mānsuētūdō, -dinis [mānsuētus, *tamed*], f., *kindness, mercy.*

***manus, -ūs,** f., *hand; hold, grasp, power; band, force, division* of an army; **manū,** *by hand, artificially;* **per manūs,** *from hand to hand;* **in manibus nostrīs,** *close upon us;* **manūs dare,** *yield.*

Marcomannī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Marcomanni,* a tribe of Germans.

***mare, -ris,** n., *sea, the sea;* **mare Ōceanum,** *the* (Atlantic) *Ocean;* **marī ūtī,** *sail a sea;* **nostrum mare,** the Mediterranean.

***maritimus, -a, -um** [mare], *belonging to the sea, maritime, naval; bordering on the sea;* **ōra maritima,** *sea-coast.*

Marius, -ī, m., *Marius,* a Roman nomen; *Gaius Marius,* a famous Roman, born near Arpinum in 157 B.C., died in 86 B.C. He was the conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutoni.

Mārs, Mārtis, m., *Mars,* the war-god of the Romans; **aequō Mārte,** *on an equal footing, with equal chance of success.* Caesar identifies a Gallic deity with the Roman Mars.

mās, maris, adj., *masculine;* as subst., m., *male.*

matara, -ae, f., a Gallic *javelin* or *pike.*

***māter, -tris,** f., *mother;* **māter familiae,** *matron.*

***māteria, -ae** (-iēs, -iēī) [māter], f., *timber.*

māterior, -ārī, -ātus [māteria], *get timber.*

Matiscō, -ōnis, f., *Matisco,* a town of the Haedui, now *Mâcon.*

mātrimōnium, -ī [māter], n., *marriage;* **in mātrimōnium dare,** *give in marriage;* **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** *marry, take as wife.*

Mātrona, -ae, m., *the Matrona,* an important river of northern Gaul, now *the Marne.*

***mātūrē** [mātūrus], adv., *in season; early, soon, quickly.*

mātūrēscō, mātūrēscere, mātūruī [mātūrus], *grow ripe, ripen.*

***mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [mātūrus], *hurry, make haste.*

mātūrrimē, sup. of **mātūrē.**

*mātūrus, -a, -um, *ripe; early.*

*maximē [maximus], adv., *most; in the highest degree, especially, exceedingly, chiefly, very;* in comparison of adjectives, *most;* **cum . . . tum maximē,** *not only . . . but most especially.*

*maximus, -a, -um, sup. of **magnus**; **maximus nātū,** *oldest.*

Maximus, -ī, m., *Maximus,* a Roman cognomen; see **Fabius.**

medeor, -ērī, *relieve, provide against.*

mediocris, -e [medius], *moderate, ordinary, inconsiderable;* **nōn mediocris,** *extraordinary.*

mediocriter [mediocris], adv., *moderately;* **nōn mediocriter,** *not a little.*

Mediomatricī, -ōrum, or **Mediomatricēs, -um,** m. pl., *the Mediomatrici,* a tribe of northern Gaul, east of the Remi.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um [medius + terra], *inland.*

*medius, -a, -um, *middle, mid, in the middle; middle part of, midst; half-way between;* **in mediō colle,** *half-way up the hill.*

Meldī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Meldi,* a Gallic tribe near the Marne; possibly Caesar applies this name to a different tribe. See note on p. 147, l. 19.

melior, -ius, comp. of **bonus.**

melius, comp. of **bene.**

membrum, -ī, n., *limb, member.*

meminī, meminisse [cf. mēns], found only in the perf. system, *remember, keep in mind.*

*memoria, -ae [memor, *mindful*], f., *calling to mind, recollection, remembrance; memory; tradition; the remembrance of future generations;* **memoriā tenēre,** *remember;* **memoriam dēpōnere,** *forget;* **haec memoria,** *memory of the present generation.*

Menapiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Menapii,* a Belgic tribe, which possessed lands on both sides of the Rhine.

mendācium, -ī [mendāx, *false*], n., *falsehood.*

mēns, mentis [cf. meminī], f., *mind, thought, sense.*

*mēnsis, -is [cf. mētior], m., *month.*

mēnsūra, -ae [mētior], f., *measurement, measure, extent.*

mentiō, -ōnis [cf. meminī], f., *mention.*

*mercātor, -ōris [mercor, *trade*], m., *trader, traveling merchant.*

mercātūra, -ae [mercor, *trade*], f., *trade;* pl., *commercial transactions.*

mercēs, -ēdis [merx, *goods;* cf. mercor, *trade*], f., *pay.*

Mercurius, -ī [cf. merx, *goods,* and mercor, *trade*], m., *Mercury,* the god of trade and gain, patron of merchants. He was also the messenger of the gods, especially of Jupiter. Caesar identifies a Gallic divinity with this god.

*mereō, merēre, meruī, meritus, *deserve, merit, earn; serve in the army;* also as dep., **mereor, merērī, meritus,** *merit, deserve, earn, be entitled to;* **optimē merēns (meritus),** *most deserving.*

meridiānus, -a, -um [meridiēs], *of midday, of noon.*

meridiēs, defective, acc. **-em,** abl. **-ē** [medius + diēs], m., *midday, noon; south.*

*meritum, -ī [part. of mereō], n., *worth, merit, deserts; kindness, service; fault.*

meritus, -a, -um, part. of **mereō.**

Messāla, -ae, m., *Messala,* a Roman

cognomen; *Marcus Valerius Messala*, consul in 61 B.C.

-met, enclitic, used with many forms of personal pronouns, *-self.*

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus, *measure, measure out.*

Metiosēdum, -ī, n., *Metiosedum*, a town of the Senones, situated on an island in the Seine, now *Melun.*

Metius, -ī, m., *Metius*, a Roman nomen; *Marcus Metius*, a man whom Caesar sent as an envoy to Ariovistus.

metō, metere, messuī, messus, *reap, harvest.*

metus, -ūs, m., *fear, dread, terror;* **metū territāre**, *alarm.*

meus, -a, -um [meī, gen. of ego], *my, mine.*

***mīles, -litis**, m., *soldier.*

mīlia, see **mīlle.**

***mīlitāris, -e** [mīles], *of a soldier; belonging to military service, military;* **rēs mīlitāris**, *art of war.*

mīlitia, -ae [mīles], f., *military service, warfare.*

***mīlle** (M), indecl. adj. in sing., *thousand;* as subst., **mīlia, -ium**, n. pl., *thousands;* **mīlle passūs**, *a thousand paces* (double steps), *mile;* **duo mīlia**, with or without **passuum**, *two miles.* The Roman mile, consisting of 5000 Roman feet, was equal to about 4854 feet in English measure.

Minerva, -ae [cf. mēns], f., *Minerva*, goddess of wisdom and mental activity. Caesar identifies a Gallic goddess with Minerva.

***minimē** [minimus], adv., sup. of **parum**, *least, in the smallest degree; by no means;* **minimē saepe**, *very seldom.*

***minimus, -a, -um**, sup. of **parvus**, *smallest, least;* **quam minimum spatī**, *the shortest possible time;* **minimum posse**, *have very little influence.*

***minor, minus**, comp. of **parvus**; **minus valēre**, *have less power.*

Minucius, -ī, m., *Minucius*, a Roman nomen; *Lucius Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers, perhaps a cavalry commander, though some think he was a legate.

***minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtus** [minus], *lessen, reduce; settle; grow less, run out, ebb.*

***minus** [minor], adv., comp. of **parum**, *less; not;* **nihilō minus**, *no less, still, nevertheless.*

mīrandus, -a, -um [part. of mīror], *to be wondered at, wonderful, strange.*

mīror, -ārī, -ātus [mīrus], *wonder, wonder at.*

***mīrus, -a, -um**, *wonderful, strange.*

miser, -era, -erum, *wretched, unhappy; poor, insignificant.*

misericordia, -ae [misericors, *tender-hearted*], f., *pity, compassion, mercy.*

miseror, -ārī, -ātus [miser], *deplore, lament.*

missus, -a, -um, part. of **mittō.**

missus, -ūs [mittō], m., *sending;* **missū Caesaris**, *sent by Caesar.*

mītissimē [mītis, *gentle*], sup. adv., *most kindly, very gently.*

***mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus**, *cause to go, let go, send; throw, hurl.*

mōbilis, -e [moveō], *easy to move; easily influenced, changeable.*

mōbilitās, -ātis [mōbilis], f., *ease of movement, quickness; changeableness.*

mōbiliter [mōbilis], adv., *easily.*

moderor, -ārī, -ātus [modus], *guide, control; check.*

modestia, -ae [modestus, *moderate*], f., *moderation, discretion.*

***modo** [modus], adv., *with a limit, simply, only, merely, even; just now, lately, a little while before;* **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also.*

***modus**, -ī, m., *measure, extent, limit; capacity; style, manner, method; kind, sort;* **nūllō modō**, *by no means;* **omnibus modīs**, *in every way;* **cūiusque modī**, *of every kind;* **ēius (hūius) modī**, *of that (this) sort, of such a kind, such;* **ad hunc modum**, see **ad.**

moenia, -ium [cf. mūniō], n. pl., *walls of defense, city walls, walls.*

***mōlēs**, -is, f., *mass; mole, dam, dike.*

molestē [molestus, *troublesome*], adv., *with difficulty, with vexation;* **molestē ferre**, *be annoyed at, be indignant.*

mōlīmentum, -ī [mōlior, *exert oneself*], n., *great exertion, effort.*

molitus, -a, -um, part. of **molō.**

molliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [mollis], *make easy.*

***mollis**, -e, *soft, gentle; weak.*

mollitia, -ae (-iēs, -iēī) [mollis], f., *softness, lack of endurance.*

molō, **molere**, **moluī**, **molitus**, *grind;* **molita cibāria**, *meal.*

mōmentum, -ī [moveō], n., *weight, importance.*

Mona, -ae, f., *Mona*, an island between England and Ireland. By Mona Caesar probably meant *the Isle of Man*, though the name was later applied to the island now called *Anglesey.*

***moneō**, **monēre**, **monuī**, **monitus** [cf. meminī], *remind, warn, advise, direct.*

***mōns**, **montis**, m., *mount, mountain, mountain-range; cliff.*

***mora**, -ae, f., *delay, hesitation, pause.*

morbus, -i [morior], m., *illness, disease.*

Morinī, -ōrum [Celtic, *dwellers by the sea*], m. pl., *the Morini*, a tribe of the Belgae dwelling on the coast.

morior, **morī** (morīrī), **mortuus** (fut. part. **moritūrus**), *die.*

Moritasgus, -ī, m., *Moritasgus*, a king of the Senones.

***moror**, -ārī, -ātus [mora], *delay, wait, stay, remain; hinder, check.*

***mors**, **mortis** [morior], f., *death;* **sibi mortem cōnscīscere**, *commit suicide.*

mortuus, -a, -um, part. of **morior.**

***mōs**, **mōris**, m., *way, habit, fashion, custom;* often in pl., *manners, character.*

Mosa, -ae, m., *the Mosa*, an important river of Belgic Gaul, now *the Meuse.*

mōtus, -a, -um, part. of **moveō.**

***mōtus**, -ūs [moveō], m., *moving, motion, action; political movement, disturbance, uprising.*

***moveō**, **movēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtus**, *set in motion, move; influence, affect;* **castra movēre**, *break camp;* **sē movēre**, *stir;* often in pass., *be in motion.*

***mulier**, -eris, f., *woman.*

mūliō, -ōnis [mūlus], m., *mule-driver.*

***multitūdō**, -dinis [multus], f., *great number, multitude, throng; common people, crowd.*

multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [multa, *fine*], *deprive.*

***multō** [multus], adv., *much, by far.*

***multum** [multus], adv., *much, greatly; much of the time, often;* **nōn ita multum**, *not very long.*

***multus, -a, -um,** *much, great;* pl., *many;* **multa,** *many things;* **multā nocte,** *late at night;* (**linguā**) **multā ūtī,** *speak fluently;* **multum posse (valēre),** *have much power.*

mūlus, -ī, m., *mule.*

Mūnātius, -ī, m., *Munatius,* a Roman nomen; *Lucius Munatius Plancus,* one of Caesar's legates.

mundus, -ī, m., *world, universe.*

mūnīmentum, -ī [mūniō], n., *defense, fortification.*

***mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus** [cf. moenia], *fortify, strengthen; protect, secure, guard; build,* **iter mūnīre,** *construct a road.*

***mūnītiō, -ōnis** [mūniō], f., *fortifying, building of defenses; fortifications, ramparts; material for fortifying; defensive strength.*

***mūnītus, -a, -um** [part. of mūniō], *fortified, protected, safe;* sup. **mūnītissimus, -a, -um,** *strongly fortified.*

***mūnus, -neris,** n., *service, function, duty; favor, kindness, gift.*

mūrālis, -e [mūrus], *of a wall, wall-, mural.*

***mūrus, -ī** [cf. mūniō], m., *wall, city wall; earthwork.*

mūsculus, -ī [mūs, *mouse*], m., *musculus, mantelet, shed,* used in siege operations. See Introd., p. 48.

mutilus, -a, -um, *maimed, mutilated, broken.*

N

nactus, -a, -um, part. of **nancīscor.**

***nam,** conj., *for;* as enclitic, appended to interrogatives, *pray.*

Nammēius, -ī, m., *Nammeius,* a Helvetian noble.

Namnetēs, -um, m. pl., *the Namnetes,* a Gallic tribe north of the Loire. The name survives in the modern Nantes.

***namque** [nam + -que], conj., *for indeed, for, and in fact.*

***nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus** or **nanctus,** *get, obtain, secure, meet with, find.*

Nantuātēs, -ium, m. pl., *the Nantuates,* a Gallic tribe living among the Alps, probably south of Lake Geneva.

Nārbō, -ōnis, m., *Narbo,* an important city of southern Gaul, the capital of the Roman province, now *Narbonne.*

***nāscor, nāscī, nātus** (old **gnāscor,** etc.), *be born, be produced, grow; arise, spring up, originate; be found.*

Nasua, -ae, m., *Nasua,* a leader of the Suebi.

nātālis, -e [nātus], *of birth;* **diēs nātālis,** *birthday.*

***nātiō, -ōnis** [nāscor], f., *race, tribe, people, nation.*

nātīvus, -a, -um [nāscor], *produced by nature, natural.*

***nātūra, -ae** [nāscor], f., *nature, natural situation; natural disposition, temperament, character; human nature; shape, appearance;* **nātūrā,** *naturally;* **nātūra flūminis,** *course of the river, current.*

nātus, -a, -um, part. of **nāscor.**

***(nātus, -ūs)** [nāscor], m., found only in the abl. sing. **nātū,** *by birth, in age;* see **māior** and **maximus.**

***nauta, -ae** [for nāvita, from nāvis], m., *sailor.*

nauticus, -a, -um [nauta], *of sailors, of ships, nautical, naval.*

nāvālis, -e [nāvis], *of ships, for*

ships, naval; **castra nāvālia**, see **castra**.

nāvicula, -ae [dim. of nāvis], f., *small vessel, skiff, boat.*

***nāvigātiō**, -ōnis [nāvigō], f., *sailing, navigation; voyage.*

nāvigium, -ī [nāvigō], n., *vessel, boat.*

***nāvigō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nāvis + agō], *sail, cruise, make a voyage.*

***nāvis**, -is, f., *ship;* **nāvis onerāria**, *transport;* **nāvis longa**, *ship of war, galley* (see Introd., p. 51); **nāvis āctuāria**, see **āctuārius**.

nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nāvus, *busy*], *do earnestly;* **operam nāvāre**, *do one's utmost.*

***nē**: (1) adv., *not;* used with **quidem**, with the emphasized word or words between, *not even, not . . . either;* **nōn modo . . . sed nē . . . quidem**, *not only not . . . but not even;* (2) conj., *that . . . not, lest;* after verbs and other expressions of fearing, *that;* sometimes to be translated *from;* **nē quis**, *that no one.*

ne-, inseparable prefix, *not, un-, in-.*

-ne, enclitic interrog.: (1) adv., in direct questions, equivalent merely to a mark of interrogation and untranslatable; (2) conj., in indirect questions, *whether;* in the second member of a double (disjunctive) question, *or.*

nec, see **neque**.

***necessāriō** [necessārius], adv., *inevitably, from necessity, necessarily.*

***necessārius**, -a, -um [necesse], *necessary, indispensable, requisite; pressing, urgent;* **tempus necessārium**, *time of need, critical time;* as subst., m., *connection, kinsman.*

necesse, indecl. adj., *necessary, needful, inevitable.*

necessitās, -ātis [necesse], f., *urgency, exigency, necessity; force, compulsion; need.*

necessitūdō, -dinis [necesse], f., *close connection, friendship.*

necne [nec + -ne], conj., used in the second member of a double (disjunctive) question, *or not.*

***necō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nex], *kill, slay, destroy.*

nēcubi [nē + cubi (ubi)], conj., *that nowhere, lest somewhere.*

nefārius, -a, -um [nefās], *execrable, abominable.*

nefās, indecl. [ne- + fās], n., *something contrary to divine law, impious act, sin.*

***neglegō**, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus [nec- = ne- + legō, *gather*], *disregard, neglect, overlook, be indifferent to.*

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deny, say no, say . . . not; refuse;* **negat sē posse**, *says he cannot.*

negōtior, -ārī, -ātus [negōtium], *carry on business, traffic.*

***negōtium**, -ī [neg- = ne- + ōtium], n., *business, affair; concern, interest; trouble, difficulty;* **dare negōtium**, *intrust as a task, order.*

Nemetēs, -um, m. pl., *the Nemetes*, a tribe of Germans, living probably on the left bank of the Rhine.

***nēmō**, dat. **nēminī**, acc. **nēminem** [ne- + homō], m. and f., *no one, nobody, not one;* **nōn nēmō**, *somebody, some;* for gen. and abl. sing. and all pl. cases the proper form of **nūllus** is regularly used.

nēquāquam [nē + quisquam], adv., *in no way, by no means, not at all.*

***neque** or **nec** [ne- + -que], conj., *and not, nor, but not; nor yet;*

neque (nec) . . . neque (nec), *neither . . . nor.*

nēquīquam [nē + quisquam], adv., *to no purpose, without a reason, in vain.*

Nervicus, -a, -um [Nervius], *pertaining to the Nervii, with the Nervii.*

Nervius, -ī, m., *a Nervian;* pl., *the Nervians, the Nervii*, a powerful tribe of the Belgae.

nervus, -ī, m., *sinew, muscle;* pl., *power, resources.*

neu, see **nēve.**

***neuter, -tra, -trum** [nē + uter], *neither;* as subst., m. pl., *neither party, neither army.*

***nēve** or **neu** [nē + -ve], conj., *and that . . . not, and lest, and not, nor.*

nex, necis, f., *death, murder, slaughter.*

***nihil**, indecl. [nihilum], n., *nothing;* often trans. as adv., *not, not at all;* **nōn nihil**, *somewhat;* **nihil agrī**, *no land;* **nihil reliquī**, *no remainder, nothing left.*

***nihilum, -ī** [ne- + hīlum, *shred*], n., *nothing;* **nihilō**, *by nothing;* **nihilō magis**, *none the more;* **nihilō minus**, *none the less, nevertheless;* **nihilō sētius**, *no less, nevertheless.*

nimius, -a, -um [nimis, *beyond measure*], *excessive, too great.*

***nisi** [ne- + sī], conj., *if not, unless;* with ellipsis of verb, *except, save, but.*

nīsus, -a, -um, part. of **nītor.**

Nitiobrogēs, -um, m. pl., *the Nitiobroges*, an Aquitanian tribe on the Garonne.

***nītor, nītī, nīxus** or **nīsus**, *strive, struggle, endeavor; rely on, trust to.*

nix, nivis, f., *snow.*

***nōbilis, -e** [nōscō], *well-known, noted, famous; of high birth, noble;* as subst., m. pl., *nobles.*

***nōbilitās, -ātis** [nōbilis], f., *nobility, rank;* in a collective sense, *nobles, aristocracy.*

***nocēns, -entis** [part. of noceō], adj., *harmful; guilty.*

***noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus**, *injure, harm, hurt, do injury.*

***noctū** [nox], adv., *by night, in the night.*

nocturnus, -a, -um [nox], *of night, nocturnal, night; during the night.*

nōdus, -ī, m., *knot; protuberance, knuckle.*

***nōlō, nōlle, nōluī** [ne- + volō], *not wish, be unwilling, wish . . . not;* the imperative with an infinitive expresses a prohibition, *e.g.* **nōlīte exspoliāre**, *do not deprive.*

***nōmen, -minis** [nōscō], n., *name, title; reputation, renown;* **suō nōmine**, *in his (their) own name, on his (their) own account.*

***nōminātim** [nōmen], adv., *by name, expressly.*

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nōmen], *name, call; mention.*

***nōn**, adv., *not, not at all, by no means.*

***nōnāgintā** (XC) [novem], indecl. adj., *ninety.*

***nōndum** [nōn + dum], adv., *not yet.*

***nōnus, -a, -um** [for novenus, from novem], *ninth.*

Nōrēia, -ae, f., *Noreia*, a city of the Norici, identified with the modern *Neumarkt* in Styria.

Nōricus, -a, -um, *pertaining to the Norici, Norican;* as subst., f., *a Norican woman;* m. pl., *the Norici*, a tribe living near the Danube.

nōs, pl. of **ego**.

***nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus**, *get knowledge of, learn;* **nōvī**, *I have learned*, hence *I know, I understand.*

nōsmet, see **-met**.

***noster, -tra, -trum** [nōs], *our, ours;* as subst., m. pl., *our men.*

nōtitia, -ae [nōtus], f., *acquaintance, knowledge.*

***nōtus, -a, -um** [part. of nōscō], *known, well-known, familiar.*

***novem** (VIIII or IX), indecl. adj., *nine.*

Noviodūnum, -ī [Celtic, *New-town*], n., *Noviodunum*, the name of several towns in Gaul. Caesar mentions: (1) a town of the Haedui, probably the modern *Nevers;* (2) a town of the Bituriges, situation unknown; (3) a town of the Suessiones, located perhaps about three miles northwest of the modern Soissons.

***novissimus, -a, -um**, sup. of **novus**, *last, latest;* **novissimum agmen**, *rear;* as subst., m. pl., *soldiers in the rear, rear guard.*

novitās, -ātis [novus], f., *newness, strangeness.*

***novus, -a, -um**, *new, fresh, recently acquired; novel, strange, unusual;* **novae rēs, nova imperia**, *change in government, revolution.*

***nox, noctis**, f., *night;* **prīmā nocte**, *at nightfall;* **multā nocte**, see **multus**.

noxia, -ae [noxius, *harmful*], f., *injurious act, harm, offense, crime.*

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptus, *veil oneself, be married* (said of the woman); **nūptum conlocāre**, *give in marriage.*

***nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [nūdus], *strip, uncover; expose, leave unprotected.*

nūdus, -a, -um, *naked; bare; unprotected* (by a shield).

***nūllus, -a, -um** [ne- + ūllus], *not any, no, none;* **nōn nūllus**, *some;* as subst., m., *no one, nobody* (cf. **nēmō**).

num, interrog.: (1) adv., introducing a direct question and implying an expected negative answer; (2) conj., *whether, if*, introducing an indirect question.

nūmen, -minis [-nuō, *nod*], n., *divine will, divinity.*

***numerus, -ī**, m., *number, quantity; enumeration; rank, class; repute, position, importance;* **ad numerum**, *to the required number.*

Numida, -ae, m., *a Numidian*, native of Numidia, a country of northern Africa.

nummus, -ī, m., *piece of money, money, coin.*

numquam [ne- + umquam], adv., *never;* **nōn numquam**, *sometimes.*

nunc, adv., *now, under these circumstances.*

***nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [nūntius], *bring news; announce, report, relate; command.*

***nūntius, -ī** [novus + veniō], m., *messenger; message, news.*

nūper [novus], adv., *lately, recently.*

nūptum, supine of **nūbō**.

***nūtus, -ūs** [-nuō, *nod*], m., *nod, signal; will.*

O

***ob**, prep. with acc., *before; on account of, because of, for;* **quam ob rem**, *wherefore, therefore, why?* In comp., *toward, against, before.*

obaerātus, -a, -um [ob + aes], *in debt;* as subst., m., *debtor.*

obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [ob + dūcō], *lead to meet, extend in front of; carry out, dig* a trench.

obeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus [ob + eō], *go to meet; attend to.*

***obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus** [ob + iaciō], *throw before, cast in the way; interpose; expose.*

***obiectus, -a, -um** [part. of obiciō], *opposite, intervening.*

obitus, -ūs [obeō], m., *destruction, death.*

oblātus, -a, -um, part. of **offerō.**

oblīquē [oblīquus], adv., *aslant, obliquely.*

oblīquus, -a, -um, *slanting, oblique.*

oblīvīscor, -līvīscī, -lītus, *forget, be forgetful of.*

obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob + sacrō, *consecrate*], *beseech, implore, beg.*

obsequentia, -ae [obsequēns, *yielding*], f., *compliance, complaisance.*

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob + servō], *observe, take note of, watch; respect, regard.*

***obses, -sidis** [ob + sedeō, *sit*], m. and f., *hostage.*

obsessiō, -ōnis [obsideō], f., *siege, blockade.*

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus [ob + sedeō, *sit*], *beset, besiege, blockade; occupy, obstruct.*

***obsidiō, -ōnis** [obsideō], f., *siege, investment; oppression.*

obsīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob + sīgnō, *mark*], *seal, attest.*

obsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitus [ob + sistō, *cause to stand*], *make a stand against, withstand.*

obstinātē [obstinātus, *resolved*], adv., *firmly, resolutely.*

obstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus [ob + stringō, *draw tight*], *bind; lay under obligations.*

obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus [ob + struō, *pile up*], *build against, stop up, obstruct.*

obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob + temperō], *obey, yield to.*

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus [ob + testor, *call as a witness*], *call as a witness; appeal to, beseech, entreat.*

***obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus** [ob + teneō], *hold against* (another), *hold fast, hold, possess, keep, occupy; preserve, maintain; get possession of, gain.*

obtulī, see **offerō.**

obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus [ob + veniō], *come up to, come against, meet; come by chance, be allotted.*

obviam [ob + via], adv., *in the way of, toward, against;* **obviam prōficīscī,** *start to meet.*

***occāsiō, -ōnis** [occidō], f., *opportunity, fit time, convenient moment; surprise.*

***occāsus, -ūs** [occidō], m., *going down, setting;* **occāsus sōlis,** *sunset, west.*

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsus [ob + cadō], *fall, be killed; set.*

***occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus** [ob + caedō], *cut down, kill, destroy.*

occultātiō, -ōnis [occultō], f., *concealment.*

***occultē** [occultus], adv., *secretly.*

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of occulō, *cover*], *hide, conceal.*

***occultus, -a, -um** [part. of occulō, *cover*], *covered up, hidden, secret;* **ex occultō,** *in* (*from*) *ambush;* **sē in occultum abdere,** *go into hiding;* **in occultō,** *in a secret place, secretly.*

occupātiō, -ōnis [occupō], f., *business, engagement, employment;* **occupātiōnēs reī pūblicae,** *affairs of state.*

***occupātus, -a, -um** [part. of occupō], *busy.*

***occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [ob + capiō], *take, seize, take possession of, master; take up, fill, occupy.*

***occurrō, -currere, -currī** or **-cucurrī, -cursus** [ob + currō, *run*], *run against, fall in with, meet; run to; resist, face; be involved in; obviate, counteract; suggest itself, occur* (to the mind).

***Ōceanus, -ī,** m., *the ocean;* Caesar applies the word to the Atlantic, including the North Sea. See **mare.**

Ocelum, -ī, n., *Ocelum,* a town of Cisalpine Gaul, on the eastern slopes of the Alps.

***octāvus, -a, -um** [octō], *eighth.*

***octingentī, -ae, -a** (DCCC) [octō + centum], pl. adj., *eight hundred.*

***octō** (VIII), indecl. adj., *eight.*

Octodurus, -ī, m., *Octodurus,* a town of the Veragri, on the Dranse, now *Martigny.*

octōgēnī, -ae, -a [octōgintā], pl. adj., *eighty each, eighty in every instance.*

***octōgintā** (LXXX) [octō], indecl. adj., *eighty.*

octōnī, -ae, -a [octō], pl. adj., *eight apiece, by eights, eight.*

oculus, -ī, m., *eye.*

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, defective verb, *hate.*

odium, -ī [ōdī], n., *hatred, animosity, odium.*

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus [ob + -fendō, *strike*], *dash against, hit; offend, hurt; suffer disaster.*

offēnsiō, -ōnis [offendō], f., *striking against; offense;* **offēnsiō animī,** *wounding the feelings.*

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus [ob + ferō], *bear to; present, put in one's power, offer, proffer, confer, bestow;* **sē offerre,** *offer oneself, rush against, expose oneself to.*

***officium, -ī** [ops + faciō], n., *duty, official duty, business; sense of duty, obligation, allegiance; service, favor.*

Ollovicō, -ōnis, m., *Ollovico,* one of the Nitiobroges, father of Teutomatus.

omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [ob + mittō], *let go, lay aside; give up, neglect.*

***omnīnō** [omnis], adv., *wholly, entirely, utterly; in all; only; at all.*

***omnis, -e,** *every, all; the whole.*

***onerārius, -a, -um** [onus], *of burden, for freight;* **nāvis onerāria,** *transport.*

onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [onus], *load.*

***onus, -neris,** n., *load, burden, weight; cargo.*

***opera, -ae** [opus], f., *exertion, effort, pains, work; services, agency;* **dare operam,** *exert oneself, do one's utmost.*

***opīniō, -ōnis** [opīnor, *suppose*], f., *opinion, supposition, belief, guess; expectation; reputation, renown;* **celerius omnī opīniōne,** *more quickly than any one would have thought.*

***oportet, oportēre, oportuit,** impersonal verb, *it is necessary, it is proper, it behooves; ought, should.*

oppidānus, -a, -um [oppidum], *of a town;* as subst., m., *townsman, inhabitant of a town.*

***oppidum, -ī,** n., *town* (fortified), *stronghold.*

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [ob + pōnō], *set against, oppose.*

***opportūnē** [opportūnus], adv., *seasonably, opportunely.*

opportūnitās, -ātis [opportūnus], f., *convenience, fitness; occasion, opportunity; advantage.*

***opportūnus, -a, -um** [ob + portus], *fit, convenient, seasonable, opportune; useful, advantageous, fortunate.*

oppositus, -a, -um [part. of oppōnō], *set against, lying in the way.*

***opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus** [ob + premō], *weigh down, burden, press upon; oppress, overthrow, subdue; fall upon, surprise.*

***oppugnātiō, -ōnis** [oppugnō], f., *assault, siege; method of attacking.*

***oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [ob + pugnō], *fight against, attack, besiege.*

ops, opis, f., *aid, assistance;* pl., *resources, wealth, power, ability, influence.*

optātus, -a, -um [part. of optō, *wish*], *longed for, welcome.*

optimē, sup. of **bene**; **optimē merēns (meritus),** see **mereō.**

optimus, -a, -um, sup. of **bonus.**

***opus, -peris,** n., *work, labor; undertaking; structure; fortifying, fortification, works.*

***opus,** indecl., n., *necessity, need;* **opus esse,** *be necessary.*

ōra, -ae, f., *shore, coast.*

***ōrātiō, -ōnis** [ōrō], f., *speech, plea;* **ōrātiōnem habēre,** *make a speech.*

ōrātor, -ōris [ōrō], m., *speaker; ambassador, envoy.*

orbis, -is, m., *circle;* see Introd., p. 45; **orbis terrārum,** *the whole earth* or *world.*

Orcynia, -ae, f. adj., *Orcynian,* the name given by the Greeks to the *Hercynia silva.*

***ōrdō, -dinis,** m., *row, line; order; series; layer; rank, position, class; company of soldiers, century;* **prīmī ōrdinēs,** *first centurions;* see Introd., p. 34.

Orgetorīx, -īgis, m., *Orgetorix,* a Helvetian nobleman.

***orior, orīrī, ortus,** *rise, arise, appear; spring, begin; be descended, be born;* **ortā lūce,** *at daybreak.*

ōrnāmentum, -ī [ōrnō], n., *honor, distinction, ornament.*

ōrnātus, -a, -um [part. of ōrnō], *fitted out;* sup. **ōrnātissimus, -a, -um,** *fully equipped.*

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fit out; honor.*

***ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *speak, plead; beg, implore.*

ortus, -a, -um, part. of **orior.**

ortus, -ūs [orior], m., *rising.*

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, face.*

Ōsismī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Osismi,* a tribe on the northwestern coast of Gaul.

***ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus** [obs- = ob + tendō], *stretch toward, expose to view, point out, show; declare, make known, mention.*

ostentātiō, -ōnis [ostentō], f., *exhibition, display; ostentation, pride;* **ostentātiōnis causā,** *to attract notice, for show.*

ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of ostendō], *present to view, exhibit, display.*

ōtium, -ī, n., *leisure; quiet, peace.*

ōvum, -ī, n., *egg.*

P

P., the abbreviation for the praenomen **Pūblius,** *Publius.*

pābulātiō, -ōnis [pābulor], f., *collecting of fodder, foraging.*

pābulātor, -ōris [pābulor], m., *forager.*

pābulor, -ārī, -ātus [pābulum], *forage, get fodder.*

pābulum, -ī [pāscō, *feed*], n., *food for cattle, fodder.*

***pācātus, -a, -um** [part. of pācō], *pacified, conquered; peaceful, undisturbed.*

pacīscor, pacīscī, pactus, *agree, agree upon;* the perf. part. often has passive force.

***pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [pāx], *make peaceful, quiet; subdue, conquer.*

pactum, -ī [part. of pacīscor], n., *agreement; way, manner.*

pactus, -a, -um, part. of **pacīscor.**

Padus, -ī, m., *the Padus,* a large river of northern Italy (Cisalpine Gaul), now *the Po.*

***paene,** adv., *nearly, almost.*

***paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit,** impersonal verb, *it grieves, it repents;* used with acc. of the person, but to be translated personally, *e.g.* **eōs paenitet,** *they repent.*

***pāgus, -ī,** m., *district, canton; people of a canton.*

palam, adv., *openly, publicly.*

palma, -ae, f., *palm, hand.*

***palūs, -ūdis,** f., *swamp, marsh; marshy stream.*

palūster, -tris, -tre [palūs], *marshy, swampy.*

***pandō, pandere, pandī, passus,** *spread out, extend;* **passus capillus,** *disheveled hair.*

***pār, paris,** adj., *equal, well matched; like, same.*

***parātus, -a, -um** [part. of parō], *prepared, ready; fitted, equipped.*

parcē [parcus, *sparing*], adv., *sparingly.*

parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsus [parcus, *sparing*], *use sparingly; spare, protect, not injure, treat with care.*

parēns, -entis, m. and f., *parent.*

parentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [parēns], *offer sacrifice in honor of dead kindred; avenge.*

pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, *obey, submit, comply.*

pariō, parere, peperī, partus, *produce; gain, accomplish, effect.*

Parīsiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Parisii,* a Gallic tribe, on the Sequana (Seine). The name survives in the modern Paris.

***parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *prepare, make ready, prepare for, provide; arrange; procure.*

***pars, partis,** f., *part, division, section; party, faction; side, direction; respect, particular;* **maximam partem,** *for the most part, chiefly;* **quam in partem,** *in what direction;* **ūnā ex parte,** *on one side;* **māior pars,** *the majority;* **ex parte,** *in part;* **trēs partēs,** *three fourths.*

***partim** [pars], adv., *partly, in part;* **partim . . . partim,** *partly . . . partly, some . . . others.*

partior, -īrī, -ītus [pars], *divide, distribute, share;* the perf. part. often has passive force.

partus, -a, -um, part. of **pariō.**

***parum** [parvus], adv., *too little.*

parvulus, -a, -um [dim. of parvus], *very small; petty, slight; very young.*

***parvus, -a, -um,** *small, little; inconsiderable, slight, trifling; young.*

***passim** [pandō], adv., *in every direction.*

passus, -a, -um, part. of **pandō** and of **patior.**

***passus, -ūs** [pandō], m., *step, pace; double step* (five Roman feet);

mīlle passūs, *mile;* **duo mīlia passuum**, *two miles.* See **mīlle.**

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [pateō + faciō], *lay open, open.*

patefīō, -fierī, -factus, pass. of **patefaciō.**

***patēns, -entis** [part. of pateō], adj., *open; accessible, passable.*

***pateō, patēre, patuī**, *stand open, be open; be accessible, be free; stretch out, extend.*

***pater, -tris**, m., *father;* pl., *forefathers, ancestors.*

***patienter** [patiēns, part. of patior], adv., *with fortitude.*

patientia, -ae [patiēns, part. of patior], f., *endurance, suffering; submissiveness, patience.*

***patior, patī, passus**, *bear, endure, undergo, suffer; permit, allow, let.*

patrius, -a, -um [pater], *of a father, ancestral.*

patrōnus, -ī [pater], m., *protector, patron.*

patruus, -ī [pater], m., *paternal uncle.*

***paucī, -ae, -a**, pl. adj., *few, only a few.*

paucitās, -ātis [paucī], f., *small number, fewness.*

***paulātim** [paulus, *little*], adv., *little by little, by degrees; a few at a time.*

***paulisper** [paulus, *little*], adv., *for a short time.*

***paulō** [paulus, *little*], adv., *by a little, a little, somewhat;* **paulō post**, *just after.*

paululum [paululus, *very little*, dim. of paulus, *little*], adv., *a very little.*

***paulum, -ī** [paulus, *little*], n., *a little;* often used adverbially, *a little, somewhat.*

***pāx, pācis** [cf. pacīscor], f., *compact, treaty of peace; peace.*

peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *do wrong.*

pectus, -toris, n., *breast.*

pecūnia, -ae [pecū, *cattle*], f., *property, wealth; money.*

***pecus, -coris**, n., *cattle*, used of all domestic animals kept for food or service; *flesh.*

pedālis, -e [pēs], *a foot* in measure.

***pedes, -ditis** [pēs], m., *foot-soldier;* pl., *infantry.*

***pedester, -tris, -tre** [pedes], *of foot-soldiers, of infantry; on foot, overland;* **pedestrēs cōpiae**, *infantry.*

peditātus, -ūs [pedes], m., *foot-soldiers, infantry.*

Pedius, -ī, m., *Pedius*, a Roman nomen; *Quintus Pedius*, one of Caesar's legates. He was the grandson of one of Caesar's sisters.

pēior, -ius, comp. of **malus**, *bad;* as subst., n., *greater misfortune, worse fate.*

pēius, comp. of **male.**

***pellis, -is**, f., *skin, hide, leather;* **sub pellibus**, *in tents.*

***pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus**, *drive, drive away; rout, put to flight, defeat; expel.*

***pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsus**, *hang, weigh, weigh out; pay;* **poenās pendere**, *pay the penalty, suffer punishment.*

penitus [penes, *with*], adv., *far within;* **penitus ad**, *all the way to.*

***per**, prep. with acc., *through, across;* of time, *through, during, for; over, along, on; by means of, by the agency of; on account of, because of, by;* **per manūs**, see **manus**; **per vim**, *by violence;* **per sē**, *of himself (themselves), of his (their) own accord, in itself, so far as he is concerned.* In

comp., *through, along, thoroughly, very.*

***peragō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctus** [per + agō], *carry through, go through with, finish.*

perangustus, -a, -um [per + angustus], *very narrow.*

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [per + capiō], *get, receive; reap; perceive, hear, learn.*

percontātiō, -ōnis [percontor, *ask particularly*], f., *questioning, investigation.*

percurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or **-currī, -cursus** [per + currō, *run*], *run through; run along.*

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus [per + quatiō, *shake*], *strike through, transfix.*

perdiscō, -discere, -didicī [per + discō], *learn thoroughly, get by heart.*

perditus, -a, -um [part. of perdō, *destroy*], *lost, desperate, corrupt, abandoned.*

***perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus** [per + dūcō], *lead through, bring, conduct; win over, persuade; draw out, prolong, continue; extend, construct.*

perendinus, -a, -um [perendiē, *on the day after to-morrow*], *after to-morrow.*

pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus [per + eō], *pass away, be killed.*

perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [per + equitō, *ride*], *ride through, drive through.*

perexiguus, -a, -um [per + exiguus], *very small, insignificant.*

perfacilis, -e [per + facilis], *very easy.*

perfectus, -a, -um, part. of **perficiō.**

***perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus** [per + ferō], *bear through, bear; endure, submit to, suffer; carry, announce, report.*

***perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus** [per + faciō], *make thoroughly, bring about, accomplish; finish, complete; arrange; construct.*

perfidia, -ae [perfidus, *faithless*], f., *faithlessness, treachery.*

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus [per + frangō], *break through, force a way through.*

perfuga, -ae [perfugiō], m., *deserter, fugitive.*

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī [per + fugiō], *flee for refuge, go over, escape, desert.*

perfugium, -ī [perfugiō], n., *refuge, place of safety.*

***pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus** [per + regō], *press on, proceed.*

perīclitor, -ārī, -ātus [perīculum], *try, make trial of, put to the test, try to find out; be put in peril, be endangered.*

perīculōsus, -a, -um [perīculum], *dangerous.*

***perīculum, -ī** [cf. experior], n., *trial, attempt, experiment; test, proof; danger.*

***perītus, -a, -um** [cf. experior], *experienced, acquainted with; skilled, skilful.*

perlātus, -a, -um, part. of **perferō.**

perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctus [per + legō, *gather*], *read through.*

perluō, -luere, -luī, -lūtus [per + -luō, *wash*], *wash, bathe;* the passive is used in a reflexive sense, like the Greek middle voice.

permagnus, -a, -um [per + magnus], *very large.*

permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus [per + maneō], *stay, remain; continue, hold out.*

permisceō, -miscēre, -miscuī, -mix-

tus [per + misceō, *mix*], *mingle, intermingle.*

***permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus** [per + mittō], *give up, yield, surrender; intrust; permit.*

permixtus, -a, -um, part. of **permisceō.**

***permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus** [per + moveō], *move deeply, rouse, influence, induce; disturb; discourage, frighten; anger.*

permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsus [per + mulceō, *stroke*], *soothe, appease.*

perniciēs, -ēī [pernecō *kill outright*], f., *destruction, overthrow, ruin.*

perpaucī, -ae, -a [per + paucī], pl. adj., *very few.*

perpendiculum, -ī [per + pendō], n., *weight, plummet;* **ad perpendiculum,** *perpendicularly.*

perpetior, -petī, -pessus [per + patior], *bear resolutely, endure.*

***perpetuō** [perpetuus], adv., *continually, forever.*

***perpetuus, -a, -um** [per + petō], *continuous, unbroken, uninterrupted; whole, entire; lasting, enduring, perpetual;* **in perpetuum,** *forever.*

perquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus [per + quaerō], *ask earnestly about, inquire about.*

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [per + rumpō, *break*], *break through, penetrate, force a passage.*

perscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus [per + scrībō], *write in full, write out, recount in detail.*

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus [per + sequor], *follow up, chase, hunt down; press upon, proceed against; resent, avenge.*

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [perse-vērus, *very strict*], *persist, persevere.*

persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtus [per + solvō], *pay in full, suffer.*

***perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus** [per + speciō, *look*], *look through; look at carefully, see clearly, examine, inspect; perceive, learn, find out; understand.*

perstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus [per + stō], *stand firmly, persist.*

***persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus** [per + suādeō, *urge*], *persuade, induce, prevail upon; convince.*

***perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus** [per + terreō], *frighten thoroughly, fill with terror.*

***perterritus, -a, -um** [part. of perterreō], *panic-stricken.*

pertināciа, -ae [pertināx, *persevering*], f., *persistence, obstinacy.*

***pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī** [per + teneō], *reach, extend; belong, pertain, tend;* **pertinēre ad,** *concern.*

pertulī, see **perferō.**

perturbātiō, -ōnis [perturbō], f., *confusion, alarm.*

***perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [per + turbō, *disturb*], *throw into confusion, disturb, alarm.*

pervagor, -ārī, -ātus [per + vagor], *roam about.*

***perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus** [per + veniō], *come through, arrive, come.*

***pēs, pedis,** m., *foot; a foot,* as a measure, slightly shorter than the standard English foot; **pedibus,** *on foot;* **pedibus trānsīre,** *ford;* **pedibus aditum habēre,** *have an approach by land;* **pedem referre,** *fall back, retreat.*

***petō, petere, petīvī, petītus,** *strive*

for, seek; try to reach; beg, beseech, ask; aim at, attack; **fugam petere,** *take to flight.*

Petrocoriī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Petrocorii,* a tribe of southwestern Gaul.

Petrōnius, -ī, m., *Petronius,* a Roman nomen; *Marcus Petronius,* a centurion of the eighth legion.

Petrosidius, -ī, m., *Petrosidius,* a Roman nomen; *Lucius Petrosidius,* an eagle-bearer of Caesar's army.

***phalanx, -angis,** f., *phalanx,* a compact body of troops in battle array.

Pictonēs, -um, m. pl., *the Pictones,* a tribe of Gaul, south of the Liger (Loire).

pietās, -ātis [pius, *dutiful*], f., *dutiful conduct; patriotism.*

***pīlum, -ī,** n., *javelin* (see Introd., p. 35); **mūrāle pīlum,** *wall-javelin,* a heavy javelin to be hurled from fortifications.

pīlus, -ī [pīlum], m., *first maniple* (of a cohort); **prīmus pīlus,** *first maniple* (of a legion); **prīmī pīlī centuriō,** *first centurion* (of a legion), *chief centurion,* often called **prīmipīlus** (see Introd., p. 34).

pinna, -ae, f., *feather; battlement.*

Pīrustae, -ārum, m. pl., *the Pirustae,* a tribe in Illyricum.

piscis, -is, m., *fish.*

Pīsō, -ōnis, m., *Piso,* a Roman cognomen: (1) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso,* consul in 58 B.C., father-in-law of Caesar; (2) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso,* grandfather of (1); (3) *Marcus Pupius Piso,* consul in 61 B.C.; (4) *Piso,* an Aquitanian of high rank.

pix, picis, f., *pitch.*

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitus, *please, be pleasing; seem best;* **eī placuit,** *he decided.*

placidē [placidus, *quiet*], adv., *quietly.*

plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. placeō], *appease, propitiate.*

Plancus, -ī, m., *Plancus,* a Roman cognomen; see **Mūnātius.**

***plānē** [plānus], adv., *plainly, clearly; quite.*

plānitiēs, -ēī [plānus], f., *level ground, plain.*

***plānus, -a, -um,** *even, level, flat.*

plēbs, plēbis (**plēbēs, plēbeī**), f., *common people, populace.*

plēnē [plēnus], adv., *fully, completely.*

plēnus, -a, -um [-pleō, *fill*], *full, complete.*

***plērīque, -aeque, -aque** [plērus, *most* + -que], pl. adj., *most, the most, the majority, a very great part.*

***plērumque** [plērīque], adv., *for the most part, mostly, usually.*

Pleumoxiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Pleumoxii,* a Belgic tribe, clients of the Nervii.

plumbum, -ī, n., *lead;* **plumbum album,** (*white lead*), *tin.*

***plūrimum** [plūrimus], sup. of **multum,** adv., *very much.*

***plūrimus, -a, -um** [plūs], sup. of **multus;** pl., *very many, a great many;* **quam plūrimī,** *as many as possible;* as subst., **plūrimum, -ī,** n., *very much, a great deal.*

***plūs, plūris,** comp. of **multus;** in sing. as subst., n., *the greater part;* pl., **plūrēs, plūra,** gen. **plūrium,** *more, a good many;* **plūs** is sometimes used adverbially.

pluteus, -ī, m., *mantelet, breastwork, parapet; screen.*

pōculum, -ī [cf. pōtus, *drunk*], n., *drinking-cup.*

poena, -ae [cf. pūniō, *punish*], f., *punishment, recompense, penalty.*

pollex, -licis, m., *thumb;* as adj. in **digitus pollex**, (*thumb finger*), *thumb.*

***polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus** [por- = prō + liceor], *offer, promise;* **līberāliter pollicērī**, *make generous promises.*

pollicitātiō, -ōnis [pollicitor, freq. of polliceor], f., *promise, pledge.*

pollicitus, -a, -um, part. of **polliceor.**

Pompēius, -ī, m., *Pompeius, Pompey,* a Roman nomen: (1) *Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus,* the friend and son-in-law, later the rival and antagonist, of Caesar, born in 106 B.C.; (2) *Gnaeus Pompeius,* an interpreter, probably an enfranchised Gaul.

***pondus**, -deris [pendō], n., *weight, mass.*

***pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus**, *put, place, station, set; pitch; assign; make depend (upon); lay down, surrender;* perf. pass., *depend (upon).*

***pōns, pontis**, m., *bridge.*

poposcī, see **poscō.**

populātiō, -ōnis [populor], f., *laying waste, plundering.*

***populor**, -ārī, -ātus, *lay waste, pillage.*

***populus**, -ī, m., *people, nation.*

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus [por- = prō + regō], *stretch forward, extend.*

porrō, adv., *furthermore, then.*

***porta**, -ae, f., *gateway, gate;* **porta decumāna**, see **decumānus.**

***portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. porta], *bring, carry, convey.*

portōrium, -ī [cf. portō], n., *tariff, toll, tax on traffic, duty.*

***portus**, -ūs [cf. porta], m., *harbor, port.*

***poscō, poscere, poposcī**, *demand, request; call for, need.*

***positus**, -a, -um [part. of pōnō], *situated.*

possessiō, -ōnis [possideō], f., *possessing, occupation, possession, ownership; property, farm.*

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus [por- = prō + sedeō, *sit*], *have and hold, occupy, own.*

possīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessus [por- = prō + sīdō, *sit down*], *take possession of, seize.*

***possum, posse, potuī** [potis, *able* + sum], *be able, have the power, can* (with inf.); *have influence, be powerful;* **plūrimum posse**, *be most powerful;* **quid potest**, *what power has he?*

***post**: (1) adv., *afterwards, after, later;* (2) prep. with acc., *after; behind, next to; less important than.*

***posteā** [post + is], adv., *after that, afterwards, later;* **posteā . . . quam** as conj., see **posteāquam.**

***posteāquam** [posteā + quam], conj., *after;* also **posteā . . . quam.**

***posterus**, -a, -um [post], *following, next, later;* **in posterum**, *to the next day;* as subst., m. pl., *posterity.*

postpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [post + pōnō], *put after, deem less important; postpone.*

***postquam** [post + quam], conj., *after, when.*

***postrēmō** [postrēmus, sup. of posterus], adv., *at last, finally, last of all.*

***postrīdiē** [posterus + diēs], adv., *on the next day, the day after.*

***postulātum**, -ī [part. of postulō], n., *demand.*

***postulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs, *demand, request, require, call for; make necessary.*

posuī, see **pōnō**.

***potēns**, -entis [part. of possum], adj., *mighty, powerful, influential.*

potentātus, -ūs [potēns], m., *power, ascendancy, sway.*

potentia, -ae [potēns], f., *power, authority; influence, eminence.*

***potestās**, -ātis [potis, *able*], f., *power, ability; dominion, civil authority; opportunity, possibility, chance; permission.*

***potior**, -īrī, -ītus [potis, *able*], *get possession of, become master of.*

potius [comp. of potis, *able*], adv., *rather, more, sooner.*

prae [cf. prō], prep. with abl., *before; in comparison with, in view of; for, because of.* In comp., *before, in front, rather.*

praeacūtus, -a, -um [part. of praeacuō, *sharpen at the end*], *sharpened at the end, pointed.*

***praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitus** [prae + habeō], *hold out; show, furnish, offer, present; cause.*

praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautus [prae + caveō], *take care beforehand.*

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus [prae + cēdō], *go ahead of, surpass.*

***praeceps**, -cipitis [prae + caput], adj., *headlong; steep.*

praeceptum, -ī [part. of praecipiō], n., *order, command, injunction, direction.*

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [prae + capiō], *take in advance; imagine beforehand, anticipate, suspect; enjoin, order, direct.*

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [praeceps], *throw headlong, hurl down.*

praecipuē [praecipuus], adv., *chiefly, especially.*

praecipuus, -a, -um [prae + capiō], *extraordinary, special.*

praeclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [prae + claudō], *shut in one's face; shut off, close up.*

praecō, -ōnis [prae + dicō], m., *crier, herald.*

Praecōnīnus, -ī, m., *Praeconinus*, a Roman cognomen; see **Valerius.**

praecurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī [prae + currō, *run*], *run before, hasten forward; get ahead.*

***praeda**, -ae, f., *spoil, booty, plunder.*

praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prae + dicō], *announce, proclaim, assert; report, declare; boast.*

***praedor**, -ārī, -ātus [praeda], *take booty, plunder, spoil.*

praedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [prae + dūcō], *lead forward; construct before, construct.*

***praefectus**, -a, -um, part. of **praeficiō**; as subst., m., *overseer, commander, prefect.*

***praeferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [prae + ferō], *bear before, put before; prefer;* **sē praeferre**, *place oneself before, surpass.*

***praeficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [prae + faciō], *set over, put in command of.*

praefīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus [prae + fīgō, *fix*], *fasten before, set up in front.*

praemetuō, -metuere [prae + metuō, *fear*], *fear beforehand, be apprehensive.*

***praemittō**, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [prae + mittō], *send ahead, send forward.*

***praemium**, -ī [prae + emō], n.,

advantage, privilege; reward, recompense, prize; bribe.

praeoccupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prae + occupō], *seize upon beforehand; seize, fill.*

praeoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prae + optō, *wish*], *choose rather, prefer.*

praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prae + parō], *make ready beforehand, prepare.*

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [prae + pōnō], *place in front of; set over, put in charge of.*

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [prae + rumpō, *break*], *tear away in front, break off.*

praeruptus, -a, -um [part. of praerumpō], *abrupt, steep, rugged.*

praesaepiō, -saepīre, -saepsī, -saeptus [prae + saepiō, *hedge in*], *block up.*

***praescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus** [prae + scrībō], *write beforehand, direct, dictate.*

***praescrīptum, -ī** [part. of praescrībō], n., *previous direction, dictation.*

***praesēns, -entis** [part. of praesum], adj., *present, at hand; existing.*

praesentia, -ae [praesēns], f., *presence, readiness; present;* **in praesentiā,** see **in.**

praesentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus [prae + sentiō], *perceive in advance, have a presentiment of, foresee.*

***praesertim** [prae + serō, *bind together*], adv., *especially, chiefly, particularly.*

***praesidium, -ī** [praesideō, *protect*], n., *defense, protection, aid; guard, garrison; post, station.*

praestō, adv., *at hand, present;* **praestō esse,** *meet.*

***praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitus** or **-stātus** [prae + stō], *stand before, excel, surpass; maintain, perform; reveal, exhibit, show;* **praestat,** *it is better.*

***praesum, -esse, -fuī** [prae + sum], *be before, be set over, be in command of.*

***praeter** [prae], prep. with acc., *past, beyond; except, besides, in addition to; contrary to.* In comp., *past, by, besides.*

***praetereā** [praeter + is], adv., *in addition, furthermore, besides.*

praetereō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus [praeter + eō], *go by, pass; omit, disregard, pass over.*

praeterita, -ōrum [part. of praetereō], n. pl., *the past, bygones.*

praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [praeter + mittō], *let go by, overlook, lose.*

praeterquam [praeter + quam], adv., *beyond, except, other than.*

praetor, -ōris [for praeitor, from prae + eō], m., *leader, commander; praetor;* **prō praetōre,** *acting as praetor, of praetorian rank, propraetor.*

praetōrius, -a, -um [praetor], *of the praetor, praetorian;* **praetōria cohors,** (*commander's*) *body-guard.*

praeūstus, -a, -um [prae + ūstus, part. of ūrō, *burn*], *charred at the end.*

praevertō, -vertere, -vertī [prae + vertō], *attend to first, anticipate.*

prāvus, -a, -um, *distorted; wrong, vicious.*

***premō, premere, pressī, pressus,** *press, press upon, press hard, crowd; urge, drive, follow up; oppress, weigh down, burden, impede.*

prēndō (for **prehendō**), **prēndere, prēndī, prēnsus,** *grasp, seize.*

*pretium, -ī, n., *price, value.*

*(prex, precis), used chiefly in pl., f., *request, entreaty, prayer; curse, imprecation.*

*prīdiē [prae + diēs], adv., *on the day before.*

prīmipīlus, -ī [prīmus + pīlus], m., *first centurion* (of a legion), *chief centurion;* see Introd., p. 34.

*prīmō [prīmus], adv., *at first, in the first place.*

*prīmum [prīmus], adv., *first, first of all;* **cum prīmum** and **ubi prīmum,** *as soon as;* **quam prīmum,** *as soon as possible.*

*prīmus, -a, -um [sup. from prae], *first, foremost; first part of;* as subst., m. pl., *the van;* **in prīmīs,** *among the first things, especially, chiefly.*

*prīnceps, -cipis [prīmus + capiō], adj., *foremost, first; chief, most eminent, most noble;* as subst., m., *leader, originator; noble, chieftain.*

prīncipātus, -ūs [prīnceps], m., *first place; supremacy, leadership.*

*prior, prius [comp. from prae], *former; in advance, ahead; previous, first;* as subst., m. pl., *those in front, the van.*

*prīstinus, -a, -um [prior], *former, previous, preceding; of old, original, pristine.*

*prius [prior], adv., *before, earlier;* **prius . . . quam** as conj., see **priusquam.**

*priusquam [prius + quam], conj., *earlier than, sooner than, before;* also **prius . . . quam.**

*prīvātim [prīvātus], adv., *in private capacity, personally, privately.*

*prīvātus, -a, -um [part. of prīvō, *deprive*], *private; personal, individual;* as subst., m., *private person.*

*prō [cf. prae], prep. with abl., *before, in front of; in behalf of, for, for the benefit of; in place of; as, just as; because of, in return for; in accordance with, in comparison with, in proportion to, in consideration of.* In comp. (**prōd-** usually before vowels), *before, forward, forth, away, for.*

*probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [probus, *estimable*], *approve, esteem; assent to; commend; assert; show, prove.*

*prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus [prō + cēdō], *go forward, advance, proceed, march on.*

Procillus, -ī, m., *Procillus,* a Roman cognomen; see **Valerius.**

prōclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prō + -clīnō, *bend*], *bend forward;* perf. part., *already started.*

prōcōnsul, -ulis [prō + cōnsul], m., *proconsul, ex-consul,* as governor of a province.

procul, adv., *at a distance, far away; from a distance.*

*prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitus [prō + -cumbō, *lie*], *fall forward, fall prostrate, sink down; lean forward, incline; be beaten down; lie down.*

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prō + cūrō], *take care of, attend to.*

prōcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursus [prō + currō, *run*], *run forward, rush forward, charge.*

*prōdeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus [prōd- = prō + eō], *go forward, advance, go out.*

prōdesse, see **prōsum.**

prōditiō, -ōnis [prōdō], f., *treason, treachery.*

prōditor, -ōris [prōdō], m., *traitor.*

prōdō, **-dere**, **-didī**, **-ditus** [prō + dō], *give forth, divulge; hand down, transmit; give up, betray.*

***prōdūcō**, **-dūcere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductus** [prō + dūcō], *lead forward, bring forward, produce; prolong, protract.*

proelior, **-ārī**, **-ātus** [proelium], *join battle, fight.*

***proelium**, **-ī**, n., *battle, combat;* **proelium facere**, *fight a battle;* **proelium committere**, see **committō**.

***profectiō**, **-ōnis** [proficīscor], f., *setting out, departure.*

profectus, **-a**, **-um**, part. of **proficīscor**.

prōfectus, **-a**, **-um**, part. of **prōficiō**.

prōferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātus** [prō + ferō], *carry out, bring out.*

prōficiō, **-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectus** [prō + faciō], *forward, advance; effect, accomplish.*

***proficīscor**, **-ficīscī**, **-fectus** [prōficiō], *set out, start, depart; march.*

profiteor, **-fitērī**, **-fessus** [prō + fateor, *admit*], *declare publicly, avow, profess; promise, offer.*

prōflīgō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus** [prō + flīgō, *strike*], *strike down, overthrow, rout.*

prōfluō, **-fluere**, **-flūxī** [prō + fluō], *flow forth, rise.*

***profugiō**, **-fugere**, **-fūgī** [prō + fugiō], *flee forth, escape.*

prōfuī, see **prōsum**.

prōgnātus, **-a**, **-um** [prō + (g)nātus, part. of (g)nāscor], *descended, sprung.*

***prōgredior**, **-gredī**, **-gressus** [prō + gradior, *step*], *go forward, advance, proceed.*

***prohibeō**, **-hibēre**, **-hibuī**, **-hibitus** [prō + habeō], *hold back, hinder, check, impede, prevent; keep off; defend; cut off.*

***prōiciō**, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectus** [prō + iaciō], *hurl forward, throw, throw down; abandon, reject;* **sē prōicere**, *prostrate oneself; hurl oneself, leap.*

proinde [prō + inde], adv., *therefore, accordingly, so.*

prōmineō, **-minēre**, **-minuī**, *lean forward.*

prōmiscuē [prōmiscuus, *mixed*], adv., *in common, together.*

prōmissus, **-a**, **-um** [part. of prōmittō], *long.*

prōmittō, **-mittere**, **-mīsī**, **-missus** [prō + mittō], *let go forward; let grow long.*

prōmoveō, **-movēre**, **-mōvī**, **-mōtus** [prō + moveō], *move forward, push onward.*

prōmptus, **-a**, **-um** [part. of prōmō, *take forth*], *manifest; ready, prompt.*

prōmunturium, **-ī** [cf. prōmineō], n., *headland, promontory.*

***prōnē** [prōnus, *turned forward*], adv., *leaning forward.*

***prōnūntiō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus** [prō + nūntiō], *make known publicly, proclaim, announce; pronounce; tell, relate, report; order.*

***prope**: (1) adv., *almost, near, nearly;* **prope nūllī**, *scarcely any;* (2) prep. with acc., *near.*

prōpellō, **-pellere**, **-pulī**, **-pulsus** [prō + pellō], *drive away, keep off, dislodge.*

***properō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus** [properus, *quick*], *hasten.*

propinquitās, **-ātis** [propinquus], f., *nearness, vicinity; relationship.*

***propinquus**, **-a**, **-um** [prope], *near, neighboring, at hand; related;* as subst., m. and f., *relative.*

***propior, -ius** [comp. from prope], *nearer.*

***propius** [propior], adv., *nearer;* used sometimes with acc.

***prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus** [prō + pōnō], *place before; set forth, display; propose, offer, present; relate, recount, explain, point out; intend.*

proprius, -a, -um, *special, individual, own; peculiar, characteristic.*

***propter** [prope], prep. with acc., *on account of, because of.*

***propterea** [propter + is], adv., *therefore, on that account;* **propterea quod,** *for the reason that, because.*

prōpugnātor, -ōris [prōpugnō], m., *defender.*

prōpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prō + pugnō], *go forth to fight, fight on the offensive, sally forth; repel an attack, resist.*

prōpulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of prōpellō], *beat back, repel.*

prōra, -ae, f., *bow, prow.*

prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus [prō + ruō, *cast down*], *tear down, demolish.*

***prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus** [prō + sequor], *follow up, pursue; escort, honor;* **līberāliter ōrātiōne prōsequī,** *dismiss with gracious words.*

prōspectus, -ūs [prōspiciō], m., *view, prospect, sight.*

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, spectus [prō + speciō, *look*], *look forward; watch, provide, use foresight.*

prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus [prō + sternō, *spread out*], *overthrow, ruin.*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī [prō + sum], *be of advantage, help.*

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus [prō + tegō], *cover over, protect, shield.*

prōterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus [prō + terreō], *frighten off, terrify.*

prōtinus [prō + tenus, *stretching to;* cf. tendō], adv., *straight onward, forward; at once, without pause.*

prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prō + turbō, *disturb*], *drive away, repel.*

prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus [prō + vehō, *carry*], *carry forward;* pass., *advance, sail out.*

prōveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus [prō + veniō], *come forth; be produced, grow.*

prōventus, -ūs [prōveniō], m., *issue, result, outcome.*

***prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus** [prō + videō], *see in advance, discern, foresee; take precautions, provide, prepare.*

***prōvincia, -ae,** f., *official duty; province,* territory governed by a magistrate from Rome; **Gallia prōvincia,** see Introd., p. 23.

prōvinciālis, -e [prōvincia], *belonging to a province, of the province.*

prōvīsus, -a, -um, part. of **prōvideō.**

prōvolō, -āre, -āvī [prō + volō, *fly*], *hurry forth, rush out.*

***proximē** [proximus], adv., *very lately, most recently, last;* used sometimes with acc., *nearest.*

***proximus, -a, -um** [sup. from prope], *nearest, next, adjoining; last, latest, most recent; following, ensuing;* used sometimes with acc., *nearest.*

prūdentia, -ae [prūdēns, *foreseeing*], f., *foresight, practical judgment, wisdom, discretion.*

Ptianiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Ptianii,* a tribe of Aquitania.

pūbēs, -beris, adj., *grown-up;* as subst., **pūberēs, -um,** m. pl., *adults, men of military age.*

*pūblicē [pūblicus], adv., *in the name of the state, officially; publicly.*

pūblicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pūblicus], *make public, confiscate.*

*pūblicus, -a, -um [pūbēs], *of the grown men, of the people, public, official;* as subst., n., *public place, public view;* rēs pūblica, gen. reī pūblicae, f., *public interest, public welfare, the state* (especially Rome).

pudet, pudēre, puduit or puditum est, impersonal verb, *it makes ashamed;* used with acc. of person, but to be translated personally, *e.g.* eum pudet, *he is ashamed.*

pudor, -ōris [pudet], m., *sense of shame, shame, conscientiousness.*

*puer, -erī, m., *boy;* pl., *children;* ā puerīs, *from childhood.*

puerīlis, -e [puer], *of a boy, boyish.*

*pugna, -ae [pugnō], f., *fight, fighting, battle.*

*pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pugnus *fist*], *fight, give battle;* used impersonally in pass., *e.g.* pugnātur, *there is fighting.*

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful; honorable, illustrious.*

Pullō, -ōnis, m., *Pullo,* a Roman cognomen; *Titus Pullo,* a brave centurion in Caesar's army.

pulsus, -a, -um, part. of pellō.

pulsus, -ūs [pellō], m., *beating, stroke; impulsion.*

pulvis, -veris, m., *dust, cloud of dust.*

*puppis, -is, f., *stern.*

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pūrus + agō], *cleanse; excuse, justify.*

*putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, consider, believe, deem, judge.*

Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, with montēs, *the Pyrenees Mountains.*

Q

Q., the abbreviation for the praenomen Quīnctus, *Quintus.*

*quā [abl. f. of quī; sc. viā], adv., *by which way, where; on which side.*

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a [quadrāgintā], pl. adj., *forty each.*

*quadrāgintā (XL) [quattuor], indecl. adj., *forty.*

*quadringentī, -ae, -a (CCCC) [quattuor + centum], pl. adj., *four hundred.*

*quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *look for, seek; try to find out, inquire, investigate, ask.*

quaestiō, -ōnis [quaerō], f., *questioning; judicial investigation.*

*quaestor, -ōris [quaerō], m., *quaestor;* see Introd., p. 32.

quaestus, -ūs [quaerō], m., *gain, profit.*

quālis, -e [quis and quī], *of what sort? what? of which kind.*

*quam [quis and quī], adv., *to what degree? how? as; than, rather than;* quam with a superlative, with or without some form of possum, *in the highest degree, as . . . possible;* quam prīmum, see prīmum; quam diū, see diū; posteā . . . quam, prius . . . quam, see posteāquam, priusquam.

*quamvīs [quam + vīs, from volō], adv., *as you will; however.*

quandō [quis], adv., *when?* after sī, *at any time, ever.*

*quantopere [quantus + opus], adv., *how much? how greatly? as much as, as.*

*quantus, -a, -um [quis and quī], *how great? how much? as great, as much, as; as great as, as much as;* tantus . . . quantus, *as great . . . as, as much . . . as;* quantō

. . . **tantō**, *by how much . . . by so much, the . . . the.*

quantusvīs, -tavīs, -tumvīs [quantus + vīs, from volō], *as great as you please, however great.*

***quārē** (**quā rē**), adv., *on what account? wherefore? why? on which account, and for that reason, and so, wherefore, therefore.*

***quārtus, -a, -um** [quattuor], *fourth;* **quārtus decimus**, *fourteenth.*

quasi [quam + sī], conj., *as if, just as if.*

***quattuor** (IIII or IV), indecl. adj., *four.*

***quattuordecim** (XIIII) [quattuor + decem], indecl. adj., *fourteen.*

***-que**, enclitic conj., *and; and finally, and in fact;* often, especially after a negative, *but;* **-que . . . -que**, *both . . . and.*

***queror, querī, questus**, *complain, bewail, lament; complain of.*

***quī, quae, quod**, rel. pron., *who, which, that; and this, and that; and he (she, it), but he (she, it); he (she) who, that which, what; as;* **quō . . . eō**, *the . . . the;* **quem ad modum**, *after what manner, just as;* **quam ob rem**, *for which reason, therefore;* **quod sī**, *but if, and if, now if.*

***quī, quae, quod**, interrog. adj., *which? what?* **quem ad modum**, *after what manner? how?* **quam ob rem**, *for what reason? why?* the form **quī** is sometimes used as a substantive, *who?*

***quī, quae** or **qua, quod**, indef. adj., used chiefly after **sī, nisi, nē, num**, *any, some;* the form **quī** is sometimes used as a substantive, *any one, some one.*

quicquam, see **quisquam.**

***quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque** [quī], indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever, whosoever; every one who, everything which, all who.*

***quīdam, quaedam, quiddam** and (adj.) **quoddam** [quis], indef. pron., *a certain one, certain; somebody, something, some; a sort of, a.*

***quidem** (postpositive), adv., *assuredly, certainly, in fact, indeed; yet, however;* **nē . . . quidem**, see **nē.**

quiēs, -ētis, f., *repose, rest, sleep.*

quiētus, -a, -um [part. of quiēscō, *rest*], *at rest, peaceful, tranquil.*

***quīn** [quī + -ne, *not*], conj., *that . . . not, but that, but, than that, that; who . . . not;* **quīn etiam**, *why even, nay more, in fact.*

quīnam, see **quisnam.**

quīncūnx, -ūncis [quīnque], m., *quincunx*, an arrangement like that of the five of cards or dice.

***quīndecim** (XV) [quīnque + decem], indecl. adj., *fifteen.*

***quīngentī, -ae, -a** (D) [quīnque + centum], pl. adj., *five hundred.*

***quīnī, -ae, -a** [quīnque], pl. adj., *five each, by fives.*

***quīnquāgintā** (L) [quīnque], indecl. adj., *fifty.*

***quīnque** (V), indecl. adj., *five.*

***quīntus, -a, -um** [quīnque], *fifth.*

***quis, quid**, interrog. pron. (the form **quis** is sometimes used adjectively), *who? what?* **quid**, *why? how much?*

***quis, quid**, indef. pron., used chiefly after **sī, nisi, nē, num**, *any one, anything; some one, something;* the form **quis** is sometimes used adjectively, *any, some.*

quisnam and (adj.) **quīnam, quaenam, quidnam** and (adj.) **quod-**

nam [quis + nam], interrog. pron., *who, pray? which, pray? what, pray? who? which? what?*

quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam and (adj.) **quodpiam** [quis], indef. pron., *any one, any, some one, some;* nearly equivalent to **aliquis,** but rarer.

***quisquam, quicquam** [quis + quam], indef. pron., *any one at all, a single one, anything at all, any at all, any one, anything, any;* used chiefly in negative sentences or those implying negatives.

***quisque, quaeque, quidque** and (adj.) **quodque** [quis + -que], indef. pron., *each, every one, everybody, all;* **decimus quisque,** *one in ten;* **nōbilissimus quisque,** *all the highest nobles;* **antīquissimum quodque tempus,** *each most ancient time, priority of time.*

quisquis, quicquid or **quidquid** [quis + quis], indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever.*

***quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs** and (adj.) **quodvīs** [quī + vīs, from volō], indef. pron., *any one you please;* as adj., *any you please, whatever.*

quō, abl. of **quī** and of **quis.**

***quō** [quis and quī], adv.: (1) rel., *to which place, whither; as far as; to whom; to which;* (2) interrog., *whither? to what end?* (3) indef., after **sī, nisi, nē, num,** *to any place, in any direction.*

***quō** [quī], conj., *that thereby, in order that,* used in clauses of purpose with comparatives; in a clause which gives a reason only to deny it, **quō** often has the force of *because, for the reason that.*

***quoad** [quō + ad], conj., *until; as long as.*

***quod** [quī], conj., *that, in that, because, since; as to the fact that; the fact that.*

***quōminus (quō minus),** conj., *whereby the less, that . . . not, but that;* **terrēre quōminus,** *prevent from;* **recūsāre quōminus,** *refuse to.*

***quoniam** [quom = cum + iam], conj., *since now, since, because.*

***quoque,** adv. (placed after a word to emphasize it), *also, too.*

quōque, for **et quō.**

quōque, abl. of **quisque.**

quōqueversus [quisque + versus], adv., *in all directions, everywhere.*

quot [quis and quī], indecl. adj., *how many? as many as, as.*

quotannīs [quot + annus], adv., *year by year, every year, annually.*

quotiēns [quot], adv., *how often? how many times? as often as.*

R

***rādīx, -īcis,** f., *root; lower part, base;* pl., *foot* of a hill or mountain.

rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsus, *scrape, shave.*

raeda, -ae, f., *wagon,* four-wheeled, sometimes covered; *traveling-carriage.*

rāmus, -ī, m., *branch, bough; prong.*

rapiditās, -ātis [rapidus, *swift*], f., *rush, swiftness, rapidity.*

rapīna, -ae [rapiō, *snatch*], f., *robbery, plundering.*

***rārus, -a, -um,** *far apart, scattered, straggling;* pl., *few.*

rāsus, -a, -um, part. of **rādō.**

***ratiō, -ōnis** [ratus, part. of reor, *reckon*], f., *reckoning, numbering; account, list, statement, report; theory, knowledge, art, science; method, plan, manner,*

arrangement; conduct, fashion, way; condition; motive, reason, explanation; respect, regard.

***ratis, -is,** f., *raft, float.*

Rauracī, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Rauraci*, a Gallic tribe about the head waters of the Rhine.

re- or **red-,** inseparable prefix, *again, back; against; not.*

rebelliō, -ōnis [re- + bellum], f., *renewal of hostilities, revolt.*

Rebilus, -ī, m., *Rebilus*, a Roman cognomen; see **Canīnius.**

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus [re- + cēdō], *go back, withdraw, retire.*

***recēns, -entis,** adj., *recent, fresh; unwearied, vigorous.*

recēnseō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsus [re- + cēnseō], *count again, number; review.*

receptāculum, -ī [receptō, freq. of recipiō], n., *place of refuge, shelter, retreat.*

receptus, -a, -um, part. of **recipiō.**

receptus, -ūs [recipiō], m., *retreat; way of retreat; place of refuge, shelter.*

recessus, -ūs [recēdō], m., *retreat; means of retreat; chance to retreat.*

recidō, recidere, recidī or **reccidī, recāsūrus** [re- + cadō], *fall back, be thrown back.*

***recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus** [re- + capiō], *take back, recover; carry back, lead back; retreat; take, admit, accept, receive;* **sē recipere,** *regain composure, recover; betake oneself, retire, retreat, go.*

recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re- + citō, *cite*], *read aloud.*

reclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re- + clīnō, *bend*], *bend back;* pass., *lean;* **sē reclīnāre,** *lean, recline.*

rēctē [rēctus], adv., *rightly, well, excellently, safely.*

rēctus, -a, -um [part. of regō], *straight, direct;* **rēctā regiōne,** *in a straight line, parallel to.*

recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [recipiō], *get back, recover.*

***recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [re- + causa], *make objections; refuse, decline, reject.*

red-, see **re-.**

redāctus, -a, -um, part. of **redigō.**

***reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditus** [red- + dō], *give back, restore, return; grant, assign, give; render, make.*

redēmptus, -a, -um, part. of **redimō.**

***redeō, -īre, īvī (-iī), -itūrus** [red- + eō], *go back, return; sink down; be referred.*

***redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus** [red- + agō], *drive back; bring down, reduce; cause to be, render.*

***redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus** [red- + emō], *buy back, buy up, purchase.*

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [red- + integrō, *make whole*], *restore, renew, recruit; begin again.*

reditiō, -ōnis [redeō], f., *going back, return.*

reditus, -ūs [redeō], m., *going back, return.*

Rēdonēs, -um, m. pl., *the Redones*, a tribe of northwestern Gaul. The name survives in the modern Rennes.

***redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus** [re- + dūcō], *lead back, bring back; draw off, withdraw; draw back, extend back.*

refectus, -a, -um, part. of **reficiō.**

***referō, referre, rettulī, relātus** [re- + ferō], *carry back; bring, carry; report, announce; refer;*

grātiam referre, see **grātia**; **pedem referre**, see **pēs**.

***reficiō**, **-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectus** [re- + faciō], *repair; recruit, refresh, make strong again.*

refringō, **-fringere**, **-frēgī**, **-frāctus** [re- + frangō], *break open, break down; break.*

refugiō, **-fugere**, **-fūgī** [re- + fugiō], *flee back, flee for safety, escape.*

Rēgīnus, **-ī**, m., *Reginus*, a Roman cognomen; see **Antistius**.

***regiō**, **-ōnis** [regō], f., *direction, line; region, territory, district; country;* **ē regiōne**, *over against, opposite.*

rēgius, **-a**, **-um** [rēx], *of a king, royal.*

rēgnō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus** [rēgnum], *be king, reign.*

***rēgnum**, **-ī** [rēx], n., *kingly power, royalty, sovereignty; kingdom, throne.*

regō, **regere**, **rēxī**, **rēctus**, *make straight; direct, control; govern, rule.*

***rēiciō**, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectus** [re- + iaciō], *throw back, hurl back; drive back, drive away; throw away, throw aside, reject.*

relanguēscō, **-languēscere**, **-languī** [re- + languēscō, *become faint*], *become enfeebled, become weak, be relaxed.*

relātus, **-a**, **-um**, part. of **referō**.

relēgō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus** [re- + lēgō, *commission*], *send away, remove, banish.*

relīctus, **-a**, **-um**, part. of **relinquō**.

religiō, **-ōnis**, f., *sense of duty; duty to the gods; superstition;* pl., *religious matters, religious obligations.*

***relinquō**, **-linquere**, **-līquī**, **-līctus** [re- + linquō, *leave*], *leave behind, leave remaining, leave; let remain; abandon, forsake;* pass., *remain.*

***reliquus**, **-a**, **-um** [relinquō], *remaining; the remainder, the rest of, the rest; the other; else; future;* as subst., n., *remainder;* **nihil ad celeritātem reliquī facere**, see **faciō**.

***remaneō**, **-manēre**, **-mānsī** [re- + maneō], *stay behind, be left, remain; stay, continue; last, continue to be.*

rēmex, **-migis** [rēmus + agō], m., *rower.*

rēmigō, **-āre** [rēmex], *row.*

remigrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus** [re- + migrō, *remove*], *go back, return.*

reminīscor, **-minīscī** [re- + meminī], *recall to mind, remember.*

***remissus**, **-a**, **-um** [part. of remittō], *relaxed, gentle, mild.*

***remittō**, **-mittere**, **-mīsī**, **-missus** [re- + mittō], *let go back, send back; release; hurl back; relax, slacken; remit, remove; resign.*

remollēscō, **-mollēscere** [re- + mollēscō, *become soft*], *lose strength, become enervated.*

***remōtus**, **-a**, **-um** [part. of removeō], *distant, remote, retired.*

***removeō**, **-movēre**, **-mōvī**, **-mōtus** [re- + moveō], *move back; remove, take away, dismiss.*

remūneror, **-ārī**, **-ātus** [re- + mūneror, *give*], *repay, reward.*

***rēmus**, **-ī**, m., *oar.*

Rēmus, **-ī**, m., *Reman, one of the Remi;* pl., *the Remi*, a powerful Belgic tribe. Their chief city, Durocortorum, is now Rheims.

rēnō, **-ōnis**, m., *deerskin.*

***renovō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus** [re- + novō, *make new*], *renew, revive; begin again.*

***renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [re- + nūntiō], *bring back word, announce, report; declare elected.*

***repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus** [re- + pellō], *drive back, repel, repulse;* **ab hāc spē repellī,** *be forced to abandon this hope.*

repente [repēns, *sudden*], adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly.*

***repentīnus, -a, -um** [repēns, *sudden*], *sudden, unlooked for; impetuous, hasty.*

***reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus** [re- + √ PER, cf. comperiō], *find, meet with; discover, hit upon, devise; ascertain, learn.*

repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus [re- + petō], *seek again, demand again, ask back; demand in compensation, claim.*

repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus [re- + -pleō, *fill*], *replenish, supply fully.*

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re- + portō], *carry back.*

reposcō, -poscere [re- + poscō], *demand back; demand, exact, require.*

reppulī, see **repellō.**

repraesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re- + praesēns], *bring back into the present; do at once.*

***reprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsus** [re- + prehendō, *grasp*], *hold back; blame, censure, rebuke.*

reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [re- + premō], *press back, drive back; suppress, stop.*

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re- + pudet], *reject, refuse, repudiate; disdain.*

repugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re- + pugnō], *fight back, resist, defend oneself, oppose; be an objection.*

repulsus, -a, -um, part. of **repellō.**

requīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus [re- + quaerō], *demand, require, need; ask, seek for.*

***rēs, reī,** f., *thing; matter, object, affair, event; business; condition, fact, circumstance;* the proper translation of the word must often be derived from the context; **rēs gestae,** *deeds, occurrences;* **novae rēs,** see **novus;** **rēs familiāris,** *private property;* **summa rēs,** *highest interest;* **commūnis rēs,** *matter of common interest;* **secundae rēs,** *prosperity;* **extrēmae rēs,** *utmost peril;* **quā ex rē,** *from this state of things, therefore;* **rēs pūblica,** see **pūblicus;** **rēs mīlitāris,** *art of war.*

rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus [re- + scindō], *cut down, break down, tear apart.*

rescīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītus [re- + scīscō, *inquire*], *find out, learn.*

rescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus [re- + scrībō], *write again; transfer, enroll.*

***reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [re- + servō], *keep back, reserve, keep.*

resideō, -sidēre, -sēdī [re- + sedeō, *sit*], *be left, remain, linger, abide.*

resīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī [re- + sīdō, *sit down*], *settle down again, become calm.*

***resistēns, -entis** [part. of resistō], adj., *enduring, firm, resolute.*

***resistō, -sistere, -stitī** [re- + sistō, *cause to stand*], *stay behind; halt, stop; make a stand, withstand, resist, oppose;* **resistitur,** *resistance is offered.*

***respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus** [re- + speciō, *look*], *look back; look at, give attention to, contem-*

plate; regard, be mindful of, consider.

***respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsus** [re- + spondeō, *promise*], *answer, reply.*

***respōnsum, -ī** [part. of respondeō], n., *answer.*

respuō, -spuere, -spuī [re- + spuō, *spit*], *reject, spurn.*

restinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus [re- + stinguō, *put out*], *put out, extinguish; put out a fire in.*

restitī, see **resistō**.

***restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus** [re-+statuō], *restore, renew, reinstate; begin again; give back, deliver up, return; rebuild.*

***retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus** [re- + teneō], *hold back, keep, retain, detain; restrain, check, prevent;* **memoriam retinēre**, *keep a memory, remember.*

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [re-+trahō], *drag back, bring back.*

rettulī, see **referō**.

revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsus [re- + vellō, *pluck*], *pull away, tear away, tear out.*

***revertor, -vertī, -versus**, perf. usually act. in form, **revertī** [re- + vertō], *turn back, come back, go back, return.*

revinciō, -vincīre, -vinxī, -vinctus [re- + vinciō], *bind back, fasten back, fasten.*

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re- + vocō], *recall; call off, call away, withdraw.*

***rēx, rēgis** [regō], m., *king.*

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine*, a large river forming the boundary between Gaul and Germany.

Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the Rhone*, a large river of southeastern Gaul.

***rīpa, -ae**, f., *bank, margin.*

rīvus, -ī, m., *small stream, brook.*

***rōbur, -boris**, n., *oak, oak-wood.*

***rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *ask, beg, implore;* **sacrāmentō rogāre**, *bind by oath, enlist.*

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um [Rōma], *Roman;* as subst., m., *a Roman;* pl., *Romans, the Romans.*

Rōscius, -ī, m., *Roscius*, a Roman nomen; *Lucius Roscius*, one of Caesar's legates.

***rōstrum, -ī** [rōdō, *gnaw*], n., *beak; ship's beak, ram.*

rota, -ae, f., *wheel.*

rubus, -ī, m., *bramble.*

Rūfus, -ī, m., *Rufus*, a Roman cognomen; see **Sulpicius**.

***rūmor, -ōris**, m., *report, hearsay, rumor, common talk.*

***rūpēs, -is** [rumpō, *break*], f., *cliff, rock.*

***rūrsus** [reversus, part. of revertor], adv., *turned back; back again, again; on the other hand, in turn.*

Rutēnī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Ruteni*, a Gallic tribe, partly within and partly without the boundaries of the province.

Rutilus, -ī, m., *Rutilus*, a Roman cognomen; see **Semprōnius**.

S

Sabīnus, -ī, m., *Sabinus*, a Roman cognomen; see **Titūrius**.

Sabis, -is, acc. **-im**, m., *the Sabis*, a river of Gaul, now *the Sambre.*

sacerdōs, -ōtis [sacer, *consecrated* + dō], m. and f., *priest, priestess.*

sacrāmentum, -ī [sacrō, *consecrate*], n., *oath;* **sacrāmentō rogāre**, see **rogō**.

sacrificium, -ī [sacrificus, *sacrificial*], n., *sacrifice.*

***saepe**, adv., *many times, often;* **minimē saepe**, *very seldom;* comp. **saepius**, *more frequently, too often;* sup. **saepissimē**, *very often.*

***saepenumerō** [saepe + numerus], adv., *very often, again and again.*

saepēs, -is, f., *hedge.*

***saeviō**, -īre, -iī, -ītus [saevus, *fierce*], *be fierce, rage.*

***sagitta**, -ae, f., *arrow.*

sagittārius, -ī [sagitta], m., *bowman, archer.*

sagulum, -ī [dim. of sagum, *military cloak*], n., *small military cloak, cloak.*

saltus, -ūs, m., *pass, glen.*

***salūs**, -ūtis [salvus, *well*], f., *health; safety, preservation, deliverance; welfare, prosperity; place of safety.*

Samarobrīva, -ae [Celtic, *bridge over the Samara (Somme)*], f., *Samarobriva*, the chief town of the Ambiani, now *Amiens.*

sanciō, **sancīre**, **sānxī**, **sānctus**, [cf. sacer, *consecrated*], *make sacred; establish, ratify, confirm, enact;* **inter sē sancīre**, *solemnly agree with one another.*

sānctus, -a, -um [part. of sanciō], *sacred, inviolable.*

sanguis, -inis, m., *blood.*

sānitās, -ātis [sānus], f., *soundness; sanity, good sense.*

sānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sānus], *heal, cure; correct, repair.*

Santonēs, -um, or **Santonī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Santones*, or *Santoni*, a tribe of western Gaul.

sānus, -a, -um, *sound, well; discreet, sensible;* **prō sānō**, *as a reasonable being, reasonably, sanely.*

sānxī, see **sanciō**.

sapiō, **sapere**, **sapīvī**, *savor of, taste; have taste, be discreet, be wise.*

sarcina, -ae [sarciō], f., *bundle, pack, soldier's pack, burden.* See Introd., p. 40.

sarciō, **sarcīre**, **sarsī**, **sartus**, *mend, repair, make good.*

sarmentum, -ī, n., *light branch, fagot;* pl., *brushwood.*

***satis**: (1) indecl. adj., only nom. and acc. n., *enough, sufficient, adequate;* it is often used substantively; (2) adv., *enough, sufficiently, fully; somewhat.*

satisfaciō, **-facere**, **-fēcī**, **-factus** [satis + faciō], *do enough for, satisfy; give satisfaction, make reparation; make amends; make excuse, apologize; conciliate, placate.*

satisfactiō, **-ōnis** [satisfaciō], f., *apology, explanation.*

satus, -a, -um, part. of **serō**.

***saucius**, -a, -um, *wounded.*

***saxum**, -ī, n., *large stone, rock.*

scālae, -ārum [scandō, *climb*], f. pl., *flight of steps, ladder, scaling-ladder.*

scapha, -ae, f., *ship's boat, skiff.*

scelerātus, -a, -um [part. of scelerō, *pollute*], *infamous, vicious, wicked.*

scelus, -leris, n., *wicked deed, crime, sin.*

***scienter** [sciēns, part. of sciō], adv., *intelligently, skilfully, expertly.*

scientia, -ae [sciēns, part. of sciō], f., *knowledge, intelligence, skill.*

scindō, **scindere**, **scidī**, **scissus**, *split, cut; tear up, break down.*

***sciō**, **scīre**, **scīvī**, **scītus**, *understand, know.*

scorpiō, -ōnis, m., *scorpion.* See Introd., p. 51.

scrībō, **scrībere**, **scrīpsī**, **scrīptus**, *write.*

scrobis, -is, m. and f., *ditch, pit.*

*scūtum, -ī, n., *shield.*

sē- or sēd-, inseparable prefix, *apart.*

sē, acc. and abl. of suī.

sēbum, -ī, n., *fat, tallow.*

secō, secāre, secuī, sectus, *cut; reap.*

sēcrētō [sēcrētus, *separated*], adv., *separately, apart, in private.*

sectiō, -ōnis [secō], f., *booty.*

sector, -ārī, -ātus [freq. of sequor], *follow after, search for, hunt.*

sectūra, -ae [secō], f., *excavation, quarry, mine.*

secundior, -ius, comp. of secundus ; secundiōrēs rēs, *greater prosperity.*

*secundum [secundus], prep. with acc., *following, along, beside; in addition to;* secundum nātūram flūminis, *down-stream* (see nātūra).

*secundus, -a, -um [part. of sequor], *following; second; successful; favorable;* secundō flūmine, *down-stream.*

secūris, -is [secō], f., *ax;* secūribus subiecta, *subject to the authority of Rome* (axes carried by the lictors were a symbol of Roman power).

secūtus, -a, -um, part. of sequor.

sēd-, see sē-.

*sed, conj., *but, on the contrary; yet, however; but in fact, but indeed.*

*sēdecim (XVI) [sex + decem], indecl. adj., *sixteen.*

sēdēs, -is [sedeō, *sit*], f., *seat, dwelling, habitation, home.*

sēditiō, -ōnis [sēd- + eō], f., *dissension, civil discord, sedition, insurrection.*

sēditiōsus, -a, -um [sēditiō], *full of discord, factious, turbulent, seditious.*

Sedulius, -ī, m., *Sedulius*, a chieftain of the Lemovices.

Sedūnī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Seduni*, an Alpine tribe of Gauls.

Sedusiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Sedusii*, a German tribe.

seges, -etis, f., *crop of grain, grainfield.*

Segnī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Segni*, a German tribe, living in Belgic Gaul.

Segontiācī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Segontiaci*, a tribe of Britain.

Segovax, -actis, m., *Segovax*, a king of Cantium (Kent).

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Segusiavi*, a Gallic tribe, clients of the Haedui.

*semel, adv., *once;* semel atque iterum, *again and again;* ut semel, *when once.*

sēmentis, -is [sēmen, *seed*], f., *sowing, seeding;* sēmentīs facere, *sow.*

sēmita, -ae [sē- + meō, *go*], f., *path, byway.*

semper, adv., *always, ever.*

Semprōnius, -ī, m., *Sempronius*, a Roman nomen; *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus*, an officer in Caesar's army.

senātor, -ōris [senex], m., *senator, councilor.*

*senātus, -ūs [senex], m., *senate, council of elders;* the name usually referred to the Roman senate, but Caesar uses it also of other national councils.

senex, senis, m., *old man.*

sēnī, -ae, -a [sex], pl. adj., *six each.*

Senonēs, -um, m. pl., *the Senones*, a Gallic tribe on the Sequana (Seine). Their chief town, Agedincum, is now Sens.

*sententia, -ae [sentiō], f., *way of*

thinking, feeling, opinion; purport; decision, determination, purpose; official judgment, sentence; vote.

sentēs, -ium, m. pl., *thorns, briers.*

***sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus**, *perceive, notice, find out, observe; feel, experience; think, judge; understand, know.*

sēparātim [sēparātus], adv., *apart, separately, individually.*

sēparātus, -a, -um [part. of sēparō], *separate, distinct.*

sēparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sē- + parō], *separate, divide.*

***septem** (VII), indecl. adj., *seven.*

***septemtriōnēs, -um** [septem], m. pl., *seven plow-oxen*, the seven stars of the constellation *'Great Bear'; north;* sometimes sing. in same sense.

***septimus, -a, -um** [septem], *seventh.*

***septingentī, -ae, -a** (DCC) [septem + centum], pl. adj., *seven hundred.*

***septuāgintā** (LXX) [septem], indecl. adj., *seventy.*

sepultūra, -ae [sepeliō, *bury*], f., *burial, obsequies.*

Sēquana, -ae, f., *the Sequana*, the largest river of northern Gaul, now *the Seine.*

Sēquanus, -a, -um, *of the Sequani, Sequanian;* as subst., m., *a Sequanian;* pl., *the Sequanians, the Sequani*, a tribe of eastern Gaul, west of the Jura Mountains.

***sequor, sequī, secūtus**, *follow; follow up, pursue; attend, accompany; conform to, attach oneself to; keep to.*

Ser., the abbreviation for the praenomen **Servius**, *Servius.*

sermō, -ōnis, m., *talk, conversation.*

serō, serere, sēvī, satus, *sow, plant.*

sērō [sērus, *late*], adv., *late; too late.*

Sertōrius, -ī, m., *Sertorius*, a Roman nomen; *Quintus Sertorius*, a Roman general, who took sides with Marius in the First Civil War. After the death of Marius, Sertorius held Spain for a long time against the forces sent from Rome to recover it.

servīlis, -e [servus], *of a slave, of the slaves; slavish, servile.*

serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [servus], *serve; labor for; be ruled by, depend on, have regard to.*

***servitūs, -ūtis** [servus], f., *servitude, slavery, subjection.*

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make safe, deliver; protect, keep, preserve, maintain, save; observe, watch, keep in view; lay up, store.*

servus, -ī, m., *slave, servant.*

***sescentī, -ae, -a** (DC) [sex + centum], pl. adj., *six hundred.*

sēsē, acc. and abl. of **suī.**

sēsquipedālis, -e [sēsqui, *one and a half* + pēs], *a foot and a half* in measure.

sētius, comp. adv.; *less*, see **nihilum.**

seu, see **sīve.**

sevēritās, -ātis [sevērus, *strict*], f., *strictness, severity, sternness.*

sēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sē- + vocō], *call aside, call away, lead aside.*

***sex** (VI), indecl. adj., *six.*

***sexāgintā** (LX) [sex], indecl. adj., *sixty.*

Sextius, -ī, m., *Sextius*, a Roman nomen: (1) *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a brave centurion of Caesar's army; (2) *Titus Sextius*, one of Caesar's legates.

*sī, conj., *if; whether;* **quod sī,** *but if, now if, and if;* **sī quidem,** *if indeed, inasmuch as.*

sibi, dat. of **suī.**

Sibusātēs, -um, m. pl., *the Sibusates,* a tribe in Aquitania.

*sīc [sī], adv., *in this way, thus, so; accordingly, under these circumstances; as follows;* **sīc . . . ut,** *so . . . as, in the same way . . . as; so . . . that, to such a degree . . . that;* **ut . . . sīc,** *as . . . so, while . . . yet, though . . . still.*

siccitās, -ātis [siccus, *dry*], f., *dryness, drought.*

*sīcut or **sīcutī** [sīc + ut (utī)], adv., *just as; as if.*

sīdus, -deris, n., *heavenly body, star; constellation.*

sīgnifer, -erī [sīgnum + ferō], m., *standard-bearer.*

sīgnificātiō, -ōnis [sīgnificō], f., *sign, indication, signal; behavior.*

sīgnificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sīgnum + faciō], *make signs; show by signs, express, indicate, make known.*

*sīgnum, -ī, n., *sign, token, signal; military standard.* See Introd., p. 38.

Sīlānus, -ī, m., *Silanus,* a Roman cognomen; *Marcus Junius Silanus,* one of Caesar's legates.

silentium, -ī [silēns, *silent*], n., *silence, stillness.*

Sīlius, -ī, m., *Silius,* a Roman nomen; *Titus Silius,* an officer in Caesar's army.

*silva, -ae, f., *wood, forest.*

silvestris, -e [silva], *of a forest; wooded.*

similis, -e, *like, resembling, similar.*

similitūdō, -dinis [similis], f., *likeness, resemblance.*

*simul [similis], adv., *at the same time; at once; also, likewise;* **simul atque** (ac), sometimes **simul** alone, *as soon as;* **simul . . . simul,** *partly . . . partly, not only . . . but at the same time.*

simulācrum, -ī [simulō], n., *likeness, effigy, image; statue.*

*simulātiō, -ōnis [simulō], f., *show, semblance, pretense, feint.*

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [similis], *counterfeit, pretend.*

simultās, -ātis, f., *rivalry, jealousy.*

*sīn [sī + -ne, *not*], conj., *but if, if on the other hand, if however.*

sincērē [sincērus, *pure*], adv., *honestly, sincerely.*

*sine, prep. with abl., *without.*

singillātim [singulī], adv., *one by one, severally, singly.*

singulāris, -e [singulī], *single, one by one; singular, matchless, extraordinary.*

*singulī, -ae, -a, pl. adj., *one by one, one at a time, separate, single; one apiece;* **in annōs singulōs,** *year by year;* **inter singulās legiōnēs,** *between every two legions.*

*sinister, -tra, -trum, *left, on the left;* as subst., f. (sc. **manus**), *left hand.*

sinistrōrsus [sinister + versus], adv., *toward the left.*

situs, -ūs, m., *situation, position, site.*

*sīve or **seu** [sī + -ve], conj., *or if, or;* **sīve (seu) . . . sīve (seu),** *whether . . . or, either . . . or.*

socer, -erī, m., *father-in-law.*

societās, -ātis [socius], f., *association, league, alliance, union.*

*socius, -ī [sequor], m., *comrade; confederate, ally.*

*sōl, sōlis, m., *sun;* **occidēns sōl,** *west;* **oriēns sōl,** *east;* **Sōl,** *the Sun,* personified.

sōlācium, -ī [sōlor, *comfort*], n., *comfort, consolation, solace.*

soldūriī, -ōrum, m. pl., *soldurii, retainers, vassals, liegemen.*

soleō, solēre, solitus, *be wont, be accustomed.*

sōlitūdō, -dinis [sōlus], f., *loneliness; lonely place, wilderness.*

sollertia, -ae [sollers, *skilled*], f., *skill, adroitness.*

sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sollicitus, *agitated*], *stir, rouse, agitate; urge; incite to revolt, tamper with.*

sollicitūdō, -dinis [sollicitus, *agitated*], f., *uneasiness, apprehension, anxiety.*

solum, -ī, n., *bottom; ground, soil.*

***sōlum** [sōlus], adv., *alone, only;* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam,** *not only . . . but also.*

***sōlus, -a, -um,** *only, alone, single.*

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus [sē- + luō, *loose*], *loose, cast off;* sc. **nāvīs,** *set sail.*

sonitus, -ūs [sonō, *sound*], m., *sound, noise.*

sonus, -ī, m., *sound, noise.*

***soror, -ōris,** f., *sister;* **soror ex mātre,** *half-sister* (of the same mother).

***sors, sortis,** f., *lot; decision by lot.*

Sōtiātēs, -ium, m. pl., *the Sotiates,* an Aquitanian tribe, on the Garumna (Garonne).

***spatium, -ī,** n., *space, length, distance, interval, extent, room, course;* used of both space and time.

***speciēs, -ēī** [speciō, *look*], f., *appearance, spectacle, sight; pretense, display, show; form, shape.*

***spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [freq. of speciō, *look*], *look, face; look to, consider; lie, be situated.*

speculātor, -ōris [speculor], m., *spy.*

speculātōrius, -a, -um [speculātor], *for observation;* **speculātōrium nāvigium,** *spyboat.*

speculor, -ārī, -ātus [specula, *look-out*], *observe, watch, spy.*

***spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [spēs], *hope, look for, expect.*

***spēs, speī,** f., *hope, expectation; ground for hope;* **in spem venīre,** *conceive the hope.*

spīritus, -ūs [spīrō, *breathe*], m., *spirit, courage;* pl., *arrogance, airs.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [spolia, *booty*], *strip, rob, deprive.*

***spontis,** gen., found only in the gen. and abl. sing. [spondeō, *promise*], f., *free will;* **suā sponte,** *of his (their) own accord, voluntarily;* also sometimes *by his (their) own influence.*

stabiliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [stabilis, *firm*], *make firm, support.*

stabilitās, -ātis [stabilis, *firm*], f., *firmness, stability.*

***statim** [stō], adv., *at once, on the spot.*

***statiō, -ōnis** [stō], f., *station, post; guard, reserve, sentry, picket.*

***statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus** [status], *set up, set, erect; decide, determine; decree, order, pass sentence; think.*

statūra, -ae [stō], f., *height, stature.*

status, -ūs [stō], m., *attitude, condition, state.*

stimulus, -ī, m., *goad, spur.*

stīpendiārius, -a, -um [stīpendium], *paying tribute, tributary;* as subst., m., *payer of tribute, tributary.*

***stīpendium, -ī** [stips, *contribution,* + pendō], n., *tax, tribute.*

stīpes, -pitis, m., *trunk of a tree; post, stake.*

stirps, stirpis, f., *stock, race.*

stō, stāre, stetī, stātus, *stand; stand by.*

strāmentum, -ī [sternō, *spread out*], n., *thatch; pack-saddle.*

***strepitus, -ūs** [strepō, *make a noise*], m., *confused noise, din; rattle.*

***studeō, studēre, studuī**, *give attention to, strive for; wish, care for.*

studiōsē [studiōsus, *eager*], adv., *eagerly; carefully, earnestly.*

***studium, -ī** [studeō], n., *eagerness, earnestness; enthusiasm, zeal; endeavor, exertion, pursuit; good will, devotion, friendliness.*

stultitia, -ae [stultus, *foolish*], f., *folly.*

***sub**, prep.: (1) with acc., implying motion, literally or figuratively, *under, beneath; near to, up to; just before, toward, about;* (2) with abl., implying rest, *under, beneath; below, at the foot of, near; at the time of.* In comp., *under, below; from below, up; as help; slightly.*

subāctus, -a, -um, part. of **subigō.**

subdolus, -a, -um [sub + dolus], *crafty, subtle, deceptive.*

***subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus** [sub + dūcō], *lead up, withdraw; draw up from below, draw up on land, beach.*

subductiō, -ōnis [subdūcō], f., *drawing ashore, beaching.*

subductus, -a, -um, part. of **subdūcō.**

***subeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus** [sub + eō], *go under, enter; come up, approach; press forward; submit to, accept, endure, undergo.*

***subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus** [sub + iaciō], *hurl from below; place under; make subject, reduce; expose.*

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [sub + agō], *drive under, reduce, subdue; constrain.*

***subitō** [subitus], adv., *suddenly, immediately.*

***subitus, -a, -um** [part. of subeō], *sudden, unexpected, surprising, quick.*

sublātus, -a, -um, part. of **tollō.**

sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub + levō], *raise up, lift from beneath; hold up, support; lighten, lessen; assist, sustain;* **sē sublevāre**, *rise.*

sublica, -ae, f., *pile.*

subluō, -luere, -luī, -lūtus [sub + luō, *wash*], *wash at the foot, flow below.*

subministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub + ministrō, *serve*], *aid by giving, hand; furnish, supply.*

***submittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus** [sub + mittō], *send to help, furnish as reinforcement; send.*

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [sub + moveō], *drive off, drive back.*

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus [sub + ruō, *cast down*], *dig under, undermine.*

***subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus** [sub + sequor], *follow up, follow after, follow closely.*

***subsidium, -ī** [sub + sedeō, *sit*], n., *support, aid; protection; provision; troops in reserve, reserve; auxiliary troops.*

subsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessus [sub + sīdō, *sit down*], *settle down, establish oneself; stay behind.*

subsistō, -sistere, -stitī [sub + sistō, *cause to stand*], *make a stand, stand firm, resist.*

subsum, -esse [sub + sum], *be near, be at hand.*

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus

[sub + trahō], *draw from below, remove secretly, take away, withdraw.*

subvectiō, -ōnis [subvehō], f., *carrying, conveyance, transportation.*

subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus [sub + vehō, *carry*], *bring up, transport.*

subveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus [sub + veniō], *come to help, assist; relieve; rescue, save.*

***succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus** [sub + cēdō], *march up; approach; come next; succeed, take the place of, relieve; be successful, prosper.*

succendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsus [sub + candeō, *glow*], *set on fire below, set fire to.*

successus, -ūs [succēdō], m., *advance, approach.*

succīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [sub + caedō], *cut off below, cut down; reap.*

succumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitus [sub + -cumbō, *lie*], *yield, succumb.*

succurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursus [sub + currō, *run*], *run to help, run up; assist.*

sudis, -is, f., *stake.*

Suēbus, -a, -um, *Sueban;* as subst., m. and f., *a Sueban;* pl., *the Suebans, the Suebi.* The Suebi lived in Germany, but the exact locality is uncertain. Some think that several different German tribes were included under the name.

Suessiōnēs, -um, m. pl., *the Suessiones,* a tribe in the southern part of Belgium.

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [sub + faciō], *be sufficient, be adequate, suffice.*

suffodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus [sub + fodiō], *stab underneath.*

suffrāgium, -ī [suffrāgor, *vote for*], n., *ballot, vote.*

Sugambrī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Sugambri,* a German tribe.

suggestus, -ūs [sub + gerō], m., *raised place, platform, tribunal.*

***suī,** gen. (no nom.), reflex. pron., *himself, herself, itself, themselves; him, her, it, them;* **inter sē,** see **inter; inter sē dare,** *exchange;* **per sē,** see **per.**

Sulla, -ae, m., *Sulla,* a Roman cognomen; *Lucius Cornelius Sulla* (*Felix*), born 138 B.C., died 78 B.C. He was the bitter enemy of Marius, and leader of the aristocratic party.

Sulpicius, -ī, m., *Sulpicius,* a Roman nomen: (1) see **Galba;** (2) *Publius Sulpicius Rufus,* one of Caesar's legates.

***sum, esse, fuī, futūrus,** *be; come to pass, happen; be engaged;* with gen., *belong to, be the duty of;* with dat., *serve* (*for*); with dat. of possessor, which is to be translated as subject, *have, possess;* **tantī esse,** *be worth so much.*

***summa, -ae** [summus], f., *chief place; leadership, general management, control; decision; whole, amount, sum.*

***summus, -a, -um** [sup. of superus, *above*], *highest, greatest; highest part of, top of, summit of; first, best, utmost, extreme; most important, critical, momentous; exact, perfect;* as subst., n., *top, end, summit.*

***sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus** [sub + emō], *take, appropriate; obtain, get, procure; spend, consume, use, employ; take on oneself,*

assume, claim, arrogate; **supplicium sūmere,** *inflict punishment.*

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um [sūmptus], *very expensive, sumptuous.*

sūmptus, -ūs [sūmō], m., *expense, cost.*

***superbē** [superbus, *proud*], adv., *proudly, haughtily.*

***superior, -ius** [comp. of superus, *above*], *higher, upper; former, previous; more distinguished; superior, better, stronger.*

***superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [superus, *above*], *rise above, overtop, surmount; surpass; conquer, overcome, prevail; be left, survive.*

supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessus [super, *above* + sedeō, *sit*], *refrain from, keep from.*

***supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus** [super, *above* + sum], *be left, remain; survive.*

suppetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus [sub + petō], *be at hand, be available; be sufficient, hold out.*

supplēmentum, -ī [suppleō, *fill up*], n., *that which fills up; reinforcements.*

***supplex, -plicis** [sub + plācō], adj., *humbly entreating, suppliant;* as subst., m., *suppliant.*

supplicātiō, -ōnis [supplicō, *humbly entreat*], f., *public prayer; thanksgiving* (for victory).

***suppliciter** [supplex], adv., *suppliantly, humbly.*

supplicium, -ī [supplex], n., *punishment, penalty* (especially the death-penalty), *torture, suffering.*

supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub + portō], *bring up, bring forward, convey; supply.*

***suprā** [superus, *above*]: (1) adv., *above, before, previously;* (2) prep. with acc., *above; before.*

***suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus** [subs- = sub + capiō], *take up, undertake, take, enter upon.*

suspectus, -a, -um [part. of suspiciō, *look askance at*], *suspected.*

***suspīciō, -ōnis** [sub + speciō, *look*], f., *mistrust, distrust, suspicion.*

***suspicor, -ārī, -ātus** [cf. suspiciō, *look askance at*], *suspect; surmise, conjecture.*

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of sustineō], *sustain, endure;* **sustentātur,** *the attack is sustained.*

***sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus** [subs- = sub + teneō], *hold upright, keep up, hold; hold back, check, withstand; sustain, endure; hold out;* **sē sustinēre,** *stand.*

sustulī, see **tollō.**

***suus, -a, -um** [suī], *his (her, its, their) own; his, her, its, their; his well-known; favorable;* as subst., m. pl., *his (their) people, followers, soldiers,* or *fellow-countrymen;* as subst., n. pl., *his (their) possessions.*

T

T., the abbreviation for the praenomen **Titus,** *Titus.*

tabernāculum, -ī [dim. of taberna, *hut*], n., *tent.*

tabula, -ae, f., *board, plank; tablet, record, list.*

tabulātum, -ī [tabula], n., *floor, story.*

taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitus, *be silent, keep silent; be silent about, keep secret.*

tacitus, -a, -um [part. of taceō], *silent.*

tālea, -ae, f., *stake, bar, rod, block.*

tālis, -e [cf. tam], *such, of such a sort; so extreme.*

***tam,** adv., *so, so very, to such a degree.*

***tamen** [tam], adv., *yet, however, still, nevertheless.*

Tamēsis, -is, acc. **-im,** m., *the Tamesis, the Thames,* an important river of southern Britain.

tametsī [tam + etsī], conj., *although.*

***tandem** [tam], adv., *at length, finally;* **quid tandem,** *what, pray? what in the world?*

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus, *touch, border on, reach.*

***tantopere** [tantus + opus], adv., *so much, so greatly, so earnestly; just as much.*

tantulus, -a, -um [dim. of tantus], *so little, so trifling; unimportant.*

***tantum** [tantus], adv., *so far, only.*

tantummodo [tantum + modo], adv., *only, merely.*

tantundem [tantus + -dem; cf. īdem], adv., *just as much, just the same distance.*

***tantus, -a, -um** [tam], *so great, so much;* **tantum . . . quantum,** *so much (as much) . . . as;* **tantī,** *of so great value, so important.*

Tarbellī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Tarbelli,* a tribe in Aquitania.

***tardē** [tardus], adv., *tardily, slowly, late.*

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [tardus], *delay, hinder, check.*

***tardus, -a, -um,** *slow, late.*

Tarusātēs, -ium, m. pl., *the Tarusates,* a tribe in Aquitania.

Tasgetius, -ī, m., *Tasgetius,* a prince of the Carnutes.

taurus, -ī, m., *bull.*

Taximagulus, -ī, m., *Taximagulus,* a king of Cantium (Kent).

taxus, -ī, f., *yew, yew-tree.*

Tectosagēs, -um, m. pl., *Tectosages,* a division of the Volcae, living in the western part of the Roman province.

tēctum, -ī [part. of tegō], n., *roof; covered structure, house.*

tēctus, -a, -um, part. of **tegō.**

tegimentum, -ī [tegō], n., *covering, cover.*

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover; shelter, protect; conceal.*

***tēlum, -ī,** n., *missile, weapon, javelin, spear.*

temerārius, -a, -um [temere], *rash, inconsiderate, hasty, imprudent.*

***temere,** adv., *without plan, rashly, inconsiderately; easily.*

temeritās, -ātis [temere], f., *rashness, indiscretion, temerity.*

tēmō, -ōnis, m., *pole* of a chariot, *tongue.*

temperantia, -ae [temperāns, part. of temperō], f., *moderation, self-control.*

***temperātus, -a, -um** [part. of temperō], *moderate, temperate.*

***temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [tempus], *observe proper measure, restrain oneself, forbear, abstain, refrain.*

***tempestās, -ātis** [tempus], f., *weather; stormy weather, storm.*

***temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *try, attempt; make trial of, attack; incite, tempt, tamper with.*

***tempus, -poris,** n., *time; season; occasion, opportunity; circumstance, emergency, crisis;* **ad tempus,** *on time, punctually;* **prō tempore,** *as the time allows, according to circumstances;* **in reliquum tempus,** *for the future.*

Tencterī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Tencteri,* a tribe of Germans, living east of the Rhine.

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus

[teneō], *stretch out, extend; spread out; pitch* (tents), *encamp, be encamped.*

tenebrae, -ārum, f. pl., *shadows, darkness.*

***teneō, tenēre, tenuī,** *hold; keep, retain; occupy, possess, control, be master of; hold back, check, hinder; hold under obligation;* **sē tenēre,** *stay, remain;* **memoriā tenēre,** *remember.*

tener, -era, -erum, *tender; flexible, young.*

tenuis, -e [tendō], *thin; meager, trifling, slight; feeble, poor.*

tenuitās, -ātis [tenuis], f., *thinness; poverty.*

tenuiter [tenuis], adv., *thinly.*

***ter** [trēs], adv., *three times.*

teres, -etis [terō, *rub*], adj., *rounded; round, smooth.*

***tergum, -ī,** n., *back;* **ā tergō, post tergum,** *behind;* **terga vertere,** *turn in flight, flee.*

***ternī, -ae, -a** [ter], pl. adj., *three at a time, three apiece.*

***terra, -ae,** f., *earth, land; region, country; ground, soil;* **orbis terrārum,** see **orbis; in terrīs,** *on earth.*

Terrasidius, -ī, m., *Terrasidius,* a Roman nomen; *Titus Terrasidius,* an officer in Caesar's army.

terrēnus, -a, -um [terra], *of earth.*

terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus, *frighten, terrify; deter by frightening, prevent.*

territō, -āre [freq. of terreō], *alarm, fill with terror; threaten.*

terror, -ōris [terreō], m., *fear, alarm, panic.*

***tertius, -a, -um** [trēs], *third;* **tertius decimus,** *thirteenth.*

testāmentum, -ī [testor, *call as a witness*], n., *will,* '*last will and testament.*'

testimōnium, -ī [testis], n., *evidence, testimony, proof.*

testis, -is, m. and f., *witness; eyewitness.*

***testūdō, -dinis** [testa, *shell*], f., *tortoise; testudo, shed.* See Introd., pp. 46, 48.

Teutomatus, -ī, m., *Teutomatus,* a king of the Nitiobroges.

Teutonēs, -um, or **Teutonī, -ōrum,** m. pl., *the Teutones, Teutoni,* or *Teutons,* a German tribe. See Introd., p. 4.

tignum, -ī, n., *piece of timber, log, tree-trunk.*

Tigurīnus, -ī, m., *Tigurinus,* the name of one of the four cantons of the Helvetii; pl., *the Tigurini,* the people of this canton.

***timeō, timēre, timuī,** *fear, dread; be apprehensive.*

***timidē** [timidus], adv., *timidly, hesitatingly.*

***timidus, -a, -um** [timeō], *fearful, timid, afraid; cowardly.*

***timor, -ōris** [timeō], m., *fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension; cowardice.*

Titūrius, -ī, m., *Titurius,* a Roman nomen; *Quintus Titurius Sabinus,* one of Caesar's legates.

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. tollō], *endure, support; hold out.*

***tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus** [cf. tulī, perf. of ferō], *take up, lift up, raise; take on board, weigh* (anchor); *cheer, encourage, elate; take away, carry off; put out of the way, ruin, destroy; annul, interrupt, prevent.*

Tolōsa, -ae, f., *Tolosa,* a city of the Roman province, now *Toulouse.*

Tolōsātēs, -ium [Tolōsa], m. pl.,

the Tolosates, the people of Tolosa and the surrounding country.

tormentum, -ī [torqueō, *twist*], n., *windlass; engine* (pl. may be translated *artillery*, see Introd., p. 50); *instrument of torture, torture.*

torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostus, *dry; parch, scorch, burn.*

tot, indecl. adj., *so many.*

***totidem** [tot + -dem; cf. īdem], indecl. adj., *just as many, the same number.*

***tōtus**, **-a, -um**, *whole, the whole, entire; all;* often with the force of an adv., *wholly, entirely.*

***trabs, trabis**, f., *beam, timber.*

trāctus, **-a, -um**, part. of **trahō.**

***trādō**, **-dere, -didī, -ditus** [trāns + dō], *give over, hand over; pass along; give up, surrender, deliver; intrust; yield, leave; transmit; propound, teach; relate.*

***trādūcō**, **-dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus** [trāns + dūcō], *lead across, bring over; win over; transfer, promote.*

trāgula, **-ae**, f., *dart, javelin*, thrown by a strap or thong.

***trahō**, **trahere, trāxī, trāctus**, *drag, drag along.*

trāiciō, **-icere, -iēcī, -iectus** [trāns + iaciō], *throw across; strike through, stab through, transfix.*

trāiectus, **-ūs** [trāiciō], m., *crossing over, passage.*

trānō, **-āre, -āvī** [trāns + nō, *swim*], *swim over, swim across.*

tranquillitās, **-ātis** [tranquillus, *still*], f., *stillness, calm.*

***trāns**, prep. with acc., *across, over, to the further side of; beyond, on the other side of; through.* In comp., *across, over, through.*

Trānsalpīnus, **-a, -um** [trāns + Alpēs], *across the Alps, Transalpine;* **Gallia Trānsalpīna**, see Introd., p. 21.

trānscendō, **-scendere, -scendī** [trāns + scandō, *climb*], *climb over, pass over;* **trānscendere in nāvīs**, *board the ships.*

***trānseō**, **-īre, -īvī** (-iī), **-itus** [trāns + eō], *go across, cross over, cross; march through; pass by, elapse; be transferred, change;* **vadō trānsīre**, *ford.*

trānsferō, **-ferre, -tulī, -lātus** [trāns + ferō], *carry over, transfer.*

trānsfīgō, **-fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus** [trāns + fīgō, *fix*], *pierce through, drive through, transfix.*

trānsfodiō, **-fodere, -fōdī, -fossus** [trāns + fodiō], *run through, stab through.*

trānsgredior, **-gredī, -gressus** [trāns + gradior, *step*], *step across; cross; climb over, pass over.*

trānsitus, **-ūs** [transeō], m., *going over, passage.*

trānslātus, **-a, -um**, part. of **trānsferō.**

trānsmarīnus, **-a, -um** [trāns + mare], *beyond-sea, foreign.*

trānsmissus, **-ūs** [trānsmittō], m., *crossing, passage.*

trānsmittō, **-mittere, -mīsī, -missus** [trāns + mittō], *send across, carry over.*

***trānsportō**, **-āre, -āvī, -ātus** [trāns + portō], *carry over, take across, transport.*

Trānsrhēnānus, **-a, -um** [trāns + Rhēnus], *beyond* (on the German side of) *the Rhine;* as subst., m. pl., *the people dwelling beyond the Rhine.*

trānstrum, **-ī** [trāns], n., *cross-beam.*

trānsversus, **-a, -um** [trāns + ver-

sus, part. of vertō], *turned across, crosswise, transverse, at an angle.*

Trebius, -ī, m., *Trebius*, a Roman nomen; *Marcus Trebius Gallus*, an officer in Caesar's army.

Trebōnius, -ī, m., *Trebonius*, a Roman nomen: (1) *Gaius Trebonius*, one of Caesar's legates; (2) *Gaius Trebonius*, a Roman knight.

***trecentī, -ae, -a** (CCC) [trēs + centum], pl. adj., *three hundred.*

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [trepidus, *restless*], *bustle about, hurry in alarm, be agitated.*

***trēs, tria** (III), pl. adj., *three.*

Trēver, -erī, m., *a Treveran;* pl., *the Treverans, the Treveri*, a Gallic tribe living near the Rhine. The name survives in the modern Trèves.

Tribocī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Triboci*, a German tribe, perhaps dwelling on both sides of the Rhine.

***tribūnus, -ī** [tribus, *tribe*], m., *head of a tribe; tribune;* **tribūnus mīlitum**, see Introd., p. 33.

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus [tribus, *tribe*], *assign, confer, accord; yield, grant, concede; attribute, ascribe; give credit; distribute.*

tribūtum, -ī [part. of tribuō], n., *contribution, tribute.*

***trīduum, -ī** [trēs + diēs], n., *period of three days, three days.*

triennium, -ī [trēs + annus], n., *period of three years, three years.*

***trīgintā** (XXX) [trēs], indecl. adj., *thirty.*

***trīnī, -ae, -a** [trēs], pl. adj., *three at a time, three each; threefold; three.*

Trinovantēs, -um, m. pl., *the Trinovantes*, a tribe of southeastern Britain.

tripartītō [tripartītus, *divided into three parts*], adv., *in three parts, in three divisions.*

***triplex, -plicis** [trēs + plangō, *strike*], adj., *threefold, triple;* **triplex aciēs**, see Introd., p. 44.

triquetrus, -a, -um [trēs], *three-cornered, triangular.*

trīstis, -e, *sad, sorrowful, gloomy.*

trīstitia, -ae [trīstis], f., *sadness, sorrow, dejection.*

Troucillus, -ī, m., *Troucillus*, see **Valerius.**

truncus, -ī, m., *trunk* of a tree.

tū, tuī, pers. pron., *thou, you.*

***tuba, -ae,** f., *trumpet.*

tueor, tuērī, tūtus, *watch, care for, guard, defend.*

tulī, see **ferō.**

Tulingī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Tulingi*, a small tribe, living perhaps across the Rhine from the Helvetii.

Tullius, -ī, m., *Tullius*, a Roman nomen; see **Cicerō.**

Tullus, -ī, m., *Tullus*, a Roman cognomen; see **Volcācius.**

***tum,** adv., *then, at that time; next, afterwards; besides;* **cum . . . tum,** *while . . . also, as . . . so, not only . . . but also, both . . . and.*

tumultuor, -ārī, -ātus [tumultus], *make a disturbance, be in uproar.*

tumultuōsē [tumultuōsus, *full of uproar*], adv., *noisily.*

tumultus, -ūs [tumeō, *swell*], m., *uproar, noise, disturbance; outbreak, revolt.*

***tumulus, -ī** [tumeō, *swell*], m., *mound, hill.*

turma, -ae, f., *throng, body; troop* of cavalry, consisting of about thirty men.

Turonī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Turoni*, a tribe of western Gaul, on the Liger (Loire). The name survives in the modern Touraine.

turpis, -e, *unseemly; disgraceful, scandalous, dishonorable.*

turpiter [turpis], adv., *disgracefully, basely.*

turpitūdō, -dinis [turpis], f., *dishonor, disgrace, baseness.*

***turris, -is**, f., *tower;* see Introd., p. 48.

tūtō [tūtus], adv., *safely.*

tūtus, -a, -um [part. of tueor, in passive sense], *safe, secure, free from peril.*

tuus, -a, -um [tū], *thy, thine; your, yours.*

U

***ubi** [for cubi, from quis and quī]: (1) adv., *where, in which place;* (2) conj., *when, as;* **ubi prīmum**, *as soon as.*

Ubiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Ubii*, a powerful German tribe; **Ubius, -a, um**, as adj., *of the Ubii.*

***ubīque** [ubi + -que], adv., *everywhere, anywhere.*

***ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus**, *take vengeance on, punish; avenge.*

***ūllus, -a, -um** [dim. of ūnus], *any;* as subst., m. and f., *any one, anybody.*

***ulterior, -ius** [comp. from ultrā], *farther, more distant;* **Gallia Ulterior**, *Farther Gaul, Transalpine Gaul.*

***ultimus, -a, -um** [sup. from ultrā], *farthest, most remote.*

***ultrā** [cf. ultrō], prep. with acc., *on the farther side of, beyond.*

***ultrō** [cf. ultrā], adv., *to the farther side; besides, too; of oneself, unasked, spontaneously, voluntarily, without provocation; in spite of himself;* **ultrō citrōque**, *back and forth, to and fro.*

ultus, -a, -um, part. of **ulcīscor.**

ululātus, -ūs [ululō, *howl*], m., *howl, yell.*

umerus, -ī, m., *upper arm, shoulder.*

umquam [for cum-quam], adv., *ever, at any time.*

***ūnā** [abl. f. of ūnus; sc. viā], adv., *at the same time, together;* **ūnā cum**, *together with.*

***unde** [for cunde, from quis and quī], adv., *from what place? where? from which place, whence.*

***ūndecim** (XI) [ūnus + decem], indecl. adj., *eleven.*

ūndecimus, -a, -um [ūndecim], *eleventh.*

ūndēvīgintī (XVIIII) [ūnus + dē + vīgintī], indecl. adj., *nineteen.*

***undique** [unde + -que], adv., *from all sides; on all sides, all around, everywhere.*

ūniversus, -a, -um [ūnus + versus, part. of vertō], *all together, in a body, in a mass; whole, entire;* as subst., m. pl., *the whole body, all.*

***ūnus, -a, -um** (I), *one, a single; alone, sole, only; a, an; one and the same;* **ūnus ex**, *one of;* **ūnā ex parte**, *on one side;* **ad ūnum**, *to a man.*

urbānus, -a, -um [urbs], *of the city,* used chiefly of Rome.

urbs, urbis, f., *city, town,* used chiefly of Rome.

***urgeō, urgēre, ursī**, *press, push; press hard, crowd, beset.*

ūrus, -ī, m., *wild ox, aurochs, urus.*

Usipetēs, -um, m. pl., *the Usipetes*, a German tribe.

ūsitātus, -a, -um [part. of ūsitor, freq. of ūtor], *usual, common, familiar.*

ūsque, adv., *all the way, right on, even; all the time, continually;* **ūsque ad**, *even to, quite up to, until;* **ūsque eō**, *even to this extent.*

ūsus, -a, -um, part. of **ūtor.**

***ūsus, -ūs** [ūtor], m., *use, usefulness, utility; employment; experience, training, skill; practice, custom, usage; familiarity; need, necessity, occasion;* **ūsū venīre**, *take place, happen;* **ūsuī esse**, *be of use, be of service;* **ex ūsū**, *to the advantage, advantageous.*

***ut** or **utī** [for cutī, from quis and quī]: (1) adv., *how? in what way? as, just as; as if;* (2) conj., *when, as soon as, as; although, granting that;* with subj. in clauses of purpose, *in order that, that, to;* with subj. in clauses of result, *so that, that;* after expressions of fear, *that . . . not.*

***uter, utra, utrum** [for cuter, from quis and quī], *which* (of two)? *whichever one, the one* (of two) *who;* **uter . . . utrī**, *which . . . to the other.*

***uterque, utraque, utrumque** [uter + -que], *each* (of two), *either, both;* m. pl., *each side, each tribe, each party, both;* **ab utrōque latere**, *on both sides;* **in utramque partem**, *in either direction, in either case.* As distinguished from **ambō**, **uterque** is used of each one separately; see **ambō.**

utī, see **ut.**

ūtī, see **ūtor.**

***ūtilis, -e** [ūtor], *useful, profitable, expedient.*

ūtilitās, -ātis [ūtilis], f., *utility, profit, expediency, advantage.*

***ūtor, ūtī, ūsus**, *use, employ, make use of; accept, adopt, abide by; enjoy, find, have; exercise, practise; show, exhibit.*

***utrimque** [uterque], adv., *from each side; on either side, on both sides.*

***utrum** [uter], conj., *whether;* untranslatable in the first part of a direct double (disjunctive) question.

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife.*

V

Vacalus, -ī, m., *the Vacalus*, now *the Waal*, a branch of the Rhine, which flows westward and unites with the Mosa (Meuse).

vacātiō, -ōnis [vacō], f., *freedom, exemption.*

***vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *be empty, be uninhabited, be vacant, lie waste.*

***vacuus, -a, -um** [vacō], *empty, deserted, unoccupied; devoid of, without.*

***vadum, -ī** [cf. vādō, *go*], n., *shallow place, shoal; ford.*

vāgīna, -ae, f., *sheath, scabbard.*

***vagor, -ārī, -ātus** [vagus, *wandering*], *go to and fro, wander, roam.*

***valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus**, *be strong; have influence, be effective, prevail; have force, be able, avail.*

Valerius, -ī, m., *Valerius*, a Roman nomen: (1) *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, governor of Gaul in 83 B.C.; (2) *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul who received Roman citizenship from (1); (3) *Gaius Valerius Procillus* and (4) *Gaius Valerius Domnotaurus*, sons of (2); (5) *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus*, a legate who was killed in Aquitania a few years before 56 B.C.; (6) *Gaius Valerius Troucillus*, a prominent Gaul

of the province, friendly to Caesar. See also **Messāla.**

Valetiācus, -ī, m., *Valetiacus*, a prominent Haeduan, brother of Cotus.

valētūdō, -dinis [valeō], f., *state of health, health.*

***vallēs, -is,** f., *valley.*

***vāllum, -ī** [vāllus], n., *line of palisades, rampart, intrenchment, fortification, wall.*

vāllus, -ī, m., *stake, palisade.*

Vangionēs, -um, m. pl., *the Vangiones*, a German tribe.

varietās, -ātis [varius], f., *difference, diversity; variety of colors, mottled coloring.*

***varius, -a, -um,** *diverse, different, various.*

***vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [vāstus], *make empty, lay waste, devastate, make desolate.*

vāstus, -a, -um, *empty, unoccupied, waste; vast.*

vāticinātiō, -ōnis [vāticinor, *foretell*], f., *soothsaying, prediction.*

-ve, enclitic conj., *or;* **-ve . . . -ve,** *either . . . or.*

vectīgal, -ālis [vectīgālis], n., *payment to the state, tax, tribute; income, revenue.*

vectīgālis, -e [vehō, *carry*], *paying tribute, subject to tax;* as subst., m., *tributary.*

vectōrius, -a, -um [vehō, *carry*], *for transport, of burden, transport.*

vehementer [vehemēns, *furious*], adv., *furiously, eagerly, vigorously; greatly, extremely, exceedingly.*

***vel** [volō]: (1) conj., *or, or at least, or if you will;* **vel . . . vel,** *either . . . or;* (2) adv., *even.*

Velānius, -ī, m., *Velanius*, a Roman nomen; *Quintus Velanius*, an officer in Caesar's army.

Veliocassēs, -ium, or **Veliocassī, -ōrum,** m. pl., *the Veliocasses*, or *Veliocassi*, a Belgic tribe.

Vellaunodūnum, -ī [Celtic, *Goodtown*], n., *Vellaunodunum*, a town of the Senones, the exact situation of which is uncertain.

Vellāviī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Vellavii*, a tribe of southern Gaul, north of the province.

vēlōcitās, -ātis [vēlōx], f., *swiftness, speed.*

***vēlōciter** [vēlōx], adv., *swiftly, quickly.*

***vēlōx, -ōcis,** adj., *swift, fleet.*

***vēlum, -ī** [for vēxlum, from vehō, *carry*], n., *sail.*

***velut** [vel + ut], adv., *just as, even as, as.*

vēnātiō, -ōnis [vēnor, *hunt*], f., *hunt, chase, hunting expedition.*

vēnātor, -ōris [vēnor, *hunt*], m., *hunter.*

***vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditus** [vēnum, *sale* + -dō, *put*], *sell.*

Venellī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Venelli*, a tribe on the northwestern coast of Gaul.

Venetī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Veneti*, an important tribe on the northwestern coast of Gaul.

Venetia, -ae [Venetī], f., *Venetia*, the country of the Veneti.

Veneticus, -a, -um [Venetī], *pertaining to the Veneti, of* or *with the Veneti.*

venia, -ae, f., *indulgence, favor, pardon.*

***veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus,** *come; come up, arrive; advance; occur, arise;* **ubi ventum est,** *when he (they) arrived;* **venīre in,** with acc., *enter;* **in dēditiōnem venīre,** *surrender;* **in spem venīre,** *conceive the hope;* **in**

cruciātum venīre, *be put to torture;* **in eum locum venīre . . . ut**, *come to the point . . . that;* **subsidiō venīrī potest**, *help can come.*

ventitō, -āre, -āvī [freq. of veniō], *come often, be in the habit of coming, keep coming.*

***ventus, -ī**, m., *wind.*

vēr, vēris, n., *spring.*

Veragrī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Veragri*, a tribe living among the Alps.

Verbigenus, -ī, m., *Verbigenus*, the name of a canton of the Helvetii.

***verbum, -ī**, n., *word;* **facere verba**, *make a speech, act as spokesman;* **contumēlia verbōrum**, *verbal insults, taunts.*

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, m., *Vercassivellaunus*, an Arvernian general, cousin of Vercingetorix.

Vercingetorīx, -īgis [Celtic, *mighty king of warriors*], m., *Vercingetorix*, an Arvernian noble, commander of the united Gallic forces in 52 B.C.

***vereor, verērī, veritus**, *fear, be afraid of*, often involving the idea of awe or reverence; *dread, be anxious; hesitate, shrink.*

***vergō, vergere**, *turn, slope; lie, be situated.*

vergobretus, -ī, m., *vergobret*, the title of the chief magistrate among the Haedui.

veritus, -a, -um, part. of **vereor.**

***vērō** (postpositive) [vērus], adv., *in truth, in fact, indeed, certainly, surely; but, but in fact; while, however.*

***versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [freq. of vertō], *keep turning, change the circumstances of.*

***versor, -ārī, -ātus** [pass. of versō], *move about; busy oneself, be engaged, be busy; live, dwell, exist; be.*

versus, -a, -um, part. of **vertō.**

versus, -ūs [vertō], m., *line, verse.*

***versus** [vertō], prep. with acc., *in the direction of, toward;* it follows its noun (**ad** or **in** may stand before the noun, but only **versus** is to be translated).

Verticō, -ōnis, m., *Vertico*, a Nervian, friendly to the Romans.

***vertō, vertere, vertī, versus**, *turn, turn about;* **terga vertere**, see **tergum.**

Verucloetius, -ī, m., *Verucloetius*, a Helvetian noble.

***vērum, -ī** [vērus], n., *truth, fact;* **vērī similis**, *probable, likely.*

***vērus, -a, -um**, *true; right, fitting, just.*

verūtum, -ī [verū, *spit*], n., *javelin, dart.*

Vesontiō, -ōnis, m., *Vesontio*, the principal town of the Sequani, now *Besançon.*

***vesper, -erī** or **-eris**, m., *evening;* **sub vesperum**, *toward evening.*

vester, -tra, -trum [vōs], *your, yours.*

***vēstīgium, -ī** [vēstīgō, *trace*], n., *footprint, footstep, track; spot; instant;* **in vēstīgiō**, *on the spot, instantly, immediately.*

vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [vestis], *dress, clothe, cover.*

vestis, -is, f., *clothing.*

vestītus, -ūs [vestiō], m., *clothing, attire.*

veterānus, -a, -um [vetus], *old, veteran, consisting of veterans.*

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus, *not allow, forbid.*

***vetus, -teris**, adj., *old; long established, of long standing; former, earlier, ancient.*

vēxillum, -ī [dim. of vēlum], n., *banner, flag;* see Introd., p. 39.

***vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [freq. of vehō, *carry*], *disturb greatly, harass, trouble; ravage.*

***via, -ae**, f., *way, road, path, passage, pass; march.*

viātor, -ōris [via], m., *traveler.*

vīcēnī, -ae, -a [vīgintī], pl. adj., *twenty each, twenty.*

vīcēsimus, -a, -um [vīgintī], *twentieth.*

vīciēs [vīgintī], adv., *twenty times.*

vīcīnitās, -ātis [vīcīnus, *neighboring*], f., *neighborhood, vicinity;* pl., *neighbors.*

victima, -ae, f., *sacrifice, victim.*

***victor, -ōris** [vincō], m., *conqueror, victor;* often used adjectively, *victorious, conquering.*

***victōria, -ae** [victor], f., *victory.*

victus, -a, -um, part. of **vincō.**

***victus, -ūs** [vīvō], m., *that which sustains life, food; way of living, living; degree of civilization.*

***vīcus, -ī**, m., *village.*

***videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus**, *see, observe, notice, perceive;* often in pass., *seem, appear, be considered; seem suitable; seem good.*

Vienna, -ae, f., *Vienna*, an important town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone, now *Vienne.*

***vigilia, -ae** [vigil, *awake*], f., *wakefulness, watching, keeping guard; guard; watch* as a measure of time, the time from sunset to sunrise being divided into four equal watches.

***vīgintī** (XX), indecl. adj., *twenty.*

vīmen, -minis [vieō, *plait*], n., *flexible twig, osier.*

***vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctus** [vieō, *plait*], *bind, fetter.*

***vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus**, *conquer, subdue, overpower, vanquish; surpass, outdo, be superior to; prevail.*

vinctus, -a, -um, part. of **vinciō.**

vinculum, -ī [vinciō], n., *chain, fetter, bond.*

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *assert a claim; maintain; take vengeance, inflict punishment;* **in lībertātem vindicāre**, *claim for freedom, declare to be free.*

***vīnea, -ae** [vīnum], f., *vine-arbor; vinea, shed, mantelet* (see Introd., p. 47).

vīnum, -ī [vieō, *plait;* cf. vītis, *vine*], n., *wine.*

violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. vīs], *treat with violence, injure; ravage, invade.*

***vir, virī**, m., *man, husband.*

vīrēs, pl. of **vīs.**

virgō, -ginis, f., *maid, maiden, girl, young woman.*

virgulta, -ōrum [virgula, *little twig*], n. pl., *brushwood, brush.*

Viridomārus, -ī, m., *Viridomarus*, a leader of the Haedui.

Viridovīx, -īcis, m., *Viridovix*, a commander of the Venelli and their allies.

virītim [vir], adv., *man by man.*

Viromanduī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Viromandui*, a Belgic tribe, west of the Remi.

***virtūs, -ūtis** [vir], f., *manliness, worth, uprightness; courage, valor, fortitude; vigor;* pl., *noble qualities, virtues.*

***vīs, vīs**, f., *strength, vigor, power, energy; force; potency, influence; violence; supply, number, multitude;* pl., *strength;* **summā vī**, *with all one's might.*

vīsus, -a, -um, part. of **videō.**

vīta, -ae [for vīvita, from vīvō], f., *life; mode of living.*

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *avoid, shun, evade.*

vitrum, -ī, n., *woad*, a plant furnishing a blue dye.

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctus, *live, be alive; support life.*

vīvus, -a, -um [cf. vīvō], *alive, living.*

***vix**, adv., *with difficulty, barely, hardly, scarcely.*

Vocātēs, -ium, m. pl., *the Vocates*, a tribe of Aquitania, living probably on the Garumna (Garonne).

Vocciō, -ōnis, m., *Voccio*, a king of the Norici.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vōx], *call; call together; invite, summon; challenge.*

Vocontiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Vocontii*, a tribe in the eastern part of the province, west of the Alps.

Volcācius, -ī, m., *Volcacius*, a Roman nomen; *Gaius Volcacius Tullus*, an officer in Caesar's army.

Volcae, -ārum, m. pl., *the Volcae*, a people of the province; see **Arecomicī** and **Tectosagēs.**

***volō, velle, voluī**, *will, be willing, wish; plan, resolve;* **quid sibi vult**, *what does he mean? what are his intentions?*

voluntārius, -a, -um [voluntās], *willing, voluntary;* as subst., m., *volunteer.*

***voluntās, -ātis** [volō], f., *will, wish, desire, inclination; good will, friendliness, affection;* **voluntāte suā**, *of his (their) own will, with his (their) consent.*

voluptās, -ātis [volō], f., *pleasure, enjoyment, satisfaction.*

Volusēnus, -ī, m., *Volusenus*, a Roman name; *Gaius Volusenus Quadratus*, a tribune of the soldiers in Caesar's army.

Vorēnus, -ī, m., *Vorenus*, a Roman name; *Lucius Vorenus*, a brave centurion of Caesar's army.

vōs, pl. of **tū.**

Vosegus, -ī, m., with **mōns**, *the Vosegus Mountains*, now *the Vosges*, a range between the Rhine and the Moselle.

vōsmet, see **-met.**

voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtus, *promise solemnly, vow.*

***vōx, vōcis**, f., *voice; shout, cry; utterance, word, speech;* **magnā vōce**, *in a loud voice.*

Vulcānus, -ī, m., *Vulcan*, the god of fire and of workers in metal.

***vulgō** [vulgus], adv., *generally, commonly; everywhere.*

***vulgus, -ī**, n., *multitude, crowd; the people; the common soldiers.*

***vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [vulnus], *wound.*

***vulnus, -neris**, n., *wound, injury, blow.*

vultus, -ūs, m., *countenance, face; appearance, looks, expression.*

MACMILLAN'S LATIN SERIES

Prepared under the general editorship of J. C. KIRTLAND, Professor of Latin in the Phillips-Exeter Academy, Exeter, N.H. Each volume, 12mo, cloth.

Cornelius Nepos — Twenty Lives

Edited by J. E. BARSS, Latin Master in the Hotchkiss School, Lakeville, Conn. Maps and Illustrations. xiv + 316 pages. 90 cents *net.*

The Poems of Ovid — Selections

Edited by C. W. BAIN, Professor of Ancient Languages in South Carolina College, and recently Head-master of the Sewanee Grammar School of the University of the South. Illustrations. xiv + 461 pages. $1.10 *net.*

Marcus Tullius Cicero — Ten Orations, with the Letters to his Wife

Edited by R. A. VON MINCKWITZ, De Witt Clinton High School, New York City. Maps and Illustrations. xii + 518 pages. $1.25 *net.*

Cæsar — The Gallic War. Books I–VII

Edited by A. L. HODGES, Wadleigh High School, New York City. Maps and Illustrations. xiii + 522 pages. $1.10 *net.*

IN PREPARATION

Vergil — The Æneid

Edited by D. O. S. LOWELL, Roxbury Latin School, and C. W. GLEASON, Volkmann School, Boston.

Sallust — The Catiline

Edited by J. C. KIRTLAND, Phillips-Exeter Academy.

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

64-66 Fifth Avenue, New York

BOSTON **CHICAGO** **ATLANTA** **SAN FRANCISCO**

MACMILLAN'S LATIN SERIES

GENERAL PLAN OF THE SERIES

The volumes of this series have been prepared by practical teachers who have had actual experience in teaching Latin in secondary schools.

To furnish material for so-called reading at sight, a portion of the text of each author has been printed with only such brief notes as are absolutely necessary to the understanding of the text.

The notes refer to the latest editions of all the grammars in common use in this country.

The type is large and clear, generously spaced and leaded; the paper of a dull tint restful to the eyes; the binding firm, but such as to allow the books to open flat. Maps, plans, and illustrations are numerous, and are chosen not for ornament but for real illustration.

Cornelius Nepos

This edition contains all of the Lives that any teacher will care to have a class read. The Præfatio and thirteen of the Lives have been edited with full notes, the remaining Lives with footnotes for more rapid reading or for sight reading. The vocabulary covers both divisions of the text, and simple word-groups for the study of word-formation.

The Poems of Ovid

This edition consists of about three thousand verses, with a complete commentary, and about one thousand verses for rapid reading, with brief notes. The selections from the Metamorphoses, which form the greater part of the book, are put first, and are more fully annotated than the selections from the other writings. A brief summary of the general laws of prosody is given in the Introduction, together with copious exercises, and all long vowels are indicated in the earlier selections.

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

64-66 Fifth Avenue, New York

BOSTON CHICAGO ATLANTA SAN FRANCISCO

Marcus Tullius Cicero

Ten orations are here presented — the four against Catiline, those on the Manilian Law, for the poet Archias, and for Milo, the Fourteenth Philippic, and those for Marcellus and for Ligarius. The last two orations, together with the fourteenth book of the *Epistulae ad Familiares*, have been annotated with a view to sight reading, the notes being brief and placed at the corresponding page of Latin text. The orations selected are such as will satisfy the entrance requirements of any college or university in the United States.

The Introduction treats in a comprehensive, clear, and interesting way of the life and character of Cicero; of the orations presented in this edition; of the letters; and finally, of the Roman Constitution, with special reference to its bearing upon the subject-matter of the orations.

The Notes are the result of many years of class-room experience. They represent to some extent the need of explanation, as shown by the questions of students in their daily recitations.

Cæsar: The Gallic War

The text embraces the whole of Cæsar's Gallic War. Illustrated by maps and cuts in the text and also by a series of general maps in colors. A feature of the map scheme is the fact that all the maps used to show the principal campaigns are drawn on the same scale as the general map of Gaul. The result is that the student, instead of having a confused notion of the character of Cæsar's campaigns, as is caused by the several maps being drawn on entirely different scales, each one different from the other and all different from the general map, secures a very correct and accurate notion of the real extent of country covered by the individual campaigns in their relation to each other. The text will be supplemented by a comprehensive general introduction and also by notes and vocabulary especially prepared for this edition.

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

64-66 Fifth Avenue, New York

BOSTON CHICAGO ATLANTA SAN FRANCISCO

HIGH SCHOOL COURSE IN LATIN COMPOSITION

BY

CHARLES McCOY BAKER

Horace Mann High School, Teachers College

AND

ALEXANDER JAMES INGLIS

Horace Mann High School, Teachers College

Cloth 12mo xiii + 464 pages $1.00 net

The "High School Course in Latin Composition" is planned to furnish material for practice in writing Latin during the last three years of the course. The exercises are divided into three parts which correspond to the years in which Cæsar, Cicero, and Vergil are read.

Part I treats the syntax of nouns and the following subjects in the syntax of verbs: indirect questions, tense sequence, simple sentences in indirect discourse, purpose and result clauses, infinitives, gerunds and gerundives, *cum* clauses, participles, the ablative absolute, the passive periphrastic conjugation, and complex sentences in indirect discourse.

Part II develops the syntax of the verb and supplements the noun syntax of Part I.

The first twenty-four lessons of Part III review and supplement the syntax of Parts I and II; the rest are exercises in writing connected prose.

The exercises have been so based on the texts of Cæsar and Cicero usually read in our schools, as to summarize the content of those texts and to have sequence of thought from sentence to sentence. However, the text has not been so closely followed as to lead students to look for aid from that source.

A general English-Latin vocabulary is given at the end of the book. In addition a set of special vocabularies, consisting of twenty words, is given for each lesson, at the ends of Parts I, II, and III. Great care has been taken to make these vocabularies as serviceable as possible, and not only the individual words are given, but the idioms associated with those words and the references to the principles of syntax with them.

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

64-66 Fifth Avenue, New York

BOSTON CHICAGO ATLANTA SAN FRANCISCO

UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO
16 246 992

PA
6235
.H68
1909

312 517

Caesar

The Gallic war.

Bks I-VII ( )Hodges)

Emily Norton

Ag 7'41
Jl 7'42

PA
6235
.H68
1909

312 517

CLASSICS LIBRARY